



# The sip:carrier Handbook mr5.0.2

Sipwise GmbH  
<support@sipwise.com>

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1	About this Handbook . . . . .	1
1.2	What is the sip:carrier? . . . . .	1
1.3	The Advantages of the sip:carrier . . . . .	1
1.4	Who is the sip:carrier for? . . . . .	2
1.5	Getting Help . . . . .	2
1.5.1	Phone Support . . . . .	2
1.5.2	Ticket System . . . . .	2
<b>2</b>	<b>System Architecture</b>	<b>3</b>
2.1	Hardware Architecture . . . . .	3
2.2	Component Architecture . . . . .	4
2.2.1	Provisioning . . . . .	5
2.2.2	Signaling and Media Relay . . . . .	8
2.2.3	Scaling beyond one Hardware Chassis . . . . .	10
2.2.4	Architecture for central core and local satellites . . . . .	11
<b>3</b>	<b>VoIP Service Configuration Scenario</b>	<b>13</b>
3.1	Creating a Customer . . . . .	13
3.2	Creating a Subscriber . . . . .	18
3.3	Domain Preferences . . . . .	23
3.4	Subscriber Preferences . . . . .	25
3.5	Creating Peerings . . . . .	26
3.5.1	Creating Peering Groups . . . . .	26
3.5.2	Creating Peering Servers . . . . .	28
3.5.3	Authenticating and Registering against Peering Servers . . . . .	37
3.6	Configuring Rewrite Rule Sets . . . . .	40
3.6.1	Inbound Rewrite Rules for Caller . . . . .	43

3.6.2	Inbound Rewrite Rules for Callee . . . . .	45
3.6.3	Outbound Rewrite Rules for Caller . . . . .	46
3.6.4	Outbound Rewrite Rules for Callee . . . . .	47
3.6.5	Emergency Number Handling . . . . .	47
3.6.6	Assigning Rewrite Rule Sets to Domains and Subscribers . . . . .	48
3.6.7	Creating Dialplans for Peering Servers . . . . .	49
<b>4</b>	<b>Features</b>	<b>50</b>
4.1	Managing System Administrators . . . . .	50
4.1.1	Configuring Administrators . . . . .	50
4.1.2	Access Rights of Administrators . . . . .	51
4.2	Access Control for SIP Calls . . . . .	54
4.2.1	Block Lists . . . . .	54
4.2.2	NCOS Levels . . . . .	56
4.2.3	IP Address Restriction . . . . .	61
4.3	Call Forwarding and Call Hunting . . . . .	62
4.3.1	Setting a simple Call Forward . . . . .	62
4.3.2	Advanced Call Hunting . . . . .	63
4.4	Local Number Porting . . . . .	66
4.4.1	Local LNP Database . . . . .	67
4.4.2	External LNP via LNP API . . . . .	70
4.5	Header Manipulation . . . . .	74
4.5.1	Header Filtering . . . . .	74
4.5.2	Codec Filtering . . . . .	74
4.5.3	Enable History and Diversion Headers . . . . .	75
4.6	SIP Trunking with SIPconnect . . . . .	75
4.6.1	User provisioning . . . . .	75
4.6.2	Inbound calls routing . . . . .	75
4.6.3	Number manipulations . . . . .	75

4.6.4 Registration . . . . .	78
4.7 Trusted Subscribers . . . . .	79
4.8 Fax Server . . . . .	79
4.8.1 Fax2Mail Architecture . . . . .	79
4.8.2 Sendfax and Mail2Fax Architecture . . . . .	80
4.9 Voicemail System . . . . .	81
4.9.1 Accessing the IVR Menu . . . . .	81
4.9.2 IVR Menu Structure . . . . .	82
4.9.3 Type Of Messages . . . . .	83
4.9.4 Folders . . . . .	84
4.9.5 Flowcharts with Voice Prompts . . . . .	84
4.10 Configuring Subscriber IVR Language . . . . .	89
4.11 Sound Sets . . . . .	89
4.11.1 Configuring Early Reject Sound Sets . . . . .	90
4.12 Conference System . . . . .	94
4.12.1 Configuring Call Forward to Conference . . . . .	94
4.12.2 Configuring Conference Sound Sets . . . . .	95
4.12.3 Joining the Conference . . . . .	97
4.12.4 Conference Flowchart with Voice Prompts . . . . .	97
4.13 Malicious Call Identification (MCID) . . . . .	99
4.13.1 Setup . . . . .	99
4.13.2 Usage . . . . .	100
4.13.3 Advanced configuration . . . . .	100
4.14 Subscriber Profiles . . . . .	100
4.14.1 Subscriber Profile Sets . . . . .	100
4.15 SIP Loop Detection . . . . .	103
4.16 Call-Through Application . . . . .	103
4.16.1 Administrative Configuration . . . . .	104



4.16.2 Call Flow . . . . .	106
4.17 Calling Card Application . . . . .	107
4.17.1 Administrative Configuration . . . . .	108
4.17.2 Call Flow . . . . .	110
4.18 Invoices and Invoice Templates . . . . .	111
4.18.1 Invoices Management . . . . .	111
4.18.2 Invoice Templates . . . . .	113
4.18.3 Invoices Generation . . . . .	123
4.19 Email Reports and Notifications . . . . .	125
4.19.1 Email events . . . . .	125
4.19.2 Initial template values and template variables . . . . .	125
4.19.3 Password reset email template . . . . .	125
4.19.4 New subscriber notification email template . . . . .	126
4.19.5 Invoice email template . . . . .	127
4.19.6 Email templates management . . . . .	128
4.20 The Vertical Service Code Interface . . . . .	130
4.20.1 Vertical Service Codes for PBX customers . . . . .	130
4.20.2 Configuration of Vertical Service Codes . . . . .	131
4.20.3 Voice Prompts for Vertical Service Code Configuration . . . . .	131
4.21 Handling WebRTC Clients . . . . .	132
4.22 XMPP and Instant Messaging . . . . .	133
<b>5 Customer Self-Care Interface and Menus</b>	<b>134</b>
5.1 The Customer Self-Care Web Interface . . . . .	134
5.1.1 Login Procedure . . . . .	134
5.1.2 Site Customization . . . . .	134
5.2 The Voicemail Menu . . . . .	134
<b>6 Billing Configuration</b>	<b>136</b>
6.1 Billing Profiles . . . . .	136

6.1.1	Creating Billing Profiles	136
6.1.2	Creating Billing Fees	138
6.1.3	Creating Off-Peak Times	140
6.2	Prepaid Accounting	142
6.3	Fraud Detection and Locking	143
6.3.1	Fraud Lock Levels	143
6.4	Billing Customizations	144
6.4.1	Billing Networks	145
6.4.2	Profile Mapping Schedule	147
6.4.3	Profile Packages	150
6.4.4	Vouchers	161
6.4.5	Top-up	164
6.4.6	Balance Overviews	165
6.4.7	Usage Examples	169
6.5	Billing Data Export	171
6.5.1	File Name Format	172
6.5.2	File Format	172
6.5.3	File Transfer	181
<b>7</b>	<b>Provisioning REST API Interface</b>	<b>182</b>
7.1	API Workflows for Customer and Subscriber Management	182
<b>8</b>	<b>Configuration Framework</b>	<b>188</b>
8.1	Configuration templates	188
8.1.1	.tt2 and .customtt.tt2 files	188
8.1.2	.prebuild and .postbuild files	189
8.1.3	.services files	190
8.2	config.yml, constants.yml and network.yml files	191
8.3	ngcpcfg and its command line options	191
8.3.1	apply	191

8.3.2	build	191
8.3.3	commit	191
8.3.4	decrypt	192
8.3.5	diff	192
8.3.6	encrypt	192
8.3.7	help	192
8.3.8	initialise	192
8.3.9	pull	192
8.3.10	push	192
8.3.11	services	192
8.3.12	status	193
<b>9</b>	<b>Network Configuration</b>	<b>194</b>
9.1	General Structure	194
9.1.1	Available Host Options	195
9.1.2	Interface Parameters	196
9.2	Advanced Network Configuration	197
9.2.1	Extra SIP Sockets	197
9.2.2	Extra SIP and RTP Sockets	198
9.2.3	Cluster Sets	200
<b>10</b>	<b>Software Upgrade</b>	<b>204</b>
10.1	Release Notes	204
10.2	Overview	204
10.3	Planning a Software Upgrade	205
10.4	Preparing to a Software Upgrade	205
10.4.1	Log into the inactive management server (web01a/db01a).	205
10.4.2	Log into all servers.	206
10.5	Upgrading the sip:carrier	208
10.5.1	Upgrading the first inactive management node "A" ONLY (web01a/db01a)	208

10.5.2 Upgrading inactive database node "A" (db*a)	209
10.5.3 Upgrading other inactive nodes "A" (lb*a/prx*a)	209
10.5.4 Promote ALL inactive nodes "A" to active.	210
10.5.5 Upgrading ALL inactive nodes "B" (web*b/db*b/lb*b/prx*b)	210
10.6 Post-upgrade Checks	210
<b>11 Backup, Recovery and Database Maintenance</b>	<b>211</b>
11.1 sip:carrier Backup	211
11.1.1 What data to back up	211
11.1.2 The built-in backup solution	211
11.2 Recovery	212
11.3 Reset Database	212
11.4 Accounting Data (CDR) Cleanup	212
11.4.1 Cleanup tools Configuration	213
11.4.2 Accounting Database Cleanup	213
11.4.3 Exported CDR Cleanup	216
<b>12 Platform Security, Performance and Troubleshooting</b>	<b>217</b>
12.1 Sipwise SSH access to sip:carrier	217
12.2 Firewalling	217
12.3 Password management	218
12.4 SSL certificates.	219
12.5 Securing your sip:carrier against SIP attacks	220
12.5.1 Denial of Service	220
12.5.2 Bruteforcing SIP credentials	221
12.6 System Requirements and Performance	221
12.7 Troubleshooting	224
12.7.1 Collecting call information from logs	226
12.7.2 Collecting SIP traces	227

<b>13 Monitoring and Alerting</b>	<b>228</b>
13.1 Internal Monitoring . . . . .	228
13.2 Statistics Dashboard . . . . .	228
13.3 External Monitoring Using SNMP . . . . .	228
13.3.1 Overview and Initial Setup . . . . .	228
13.3.2 Details . . . . .	229
<b>14 Extensions and Additional Modules</b>	<b>235</b>
14.1 Cloud PBX . . . . .	235
14.1.1 Configuring the Device Management . . . . .	235
14.1.2 Preparing PBX Rewrite Rules . . . . .	244
14.1.3 Creating Customers and Pilot Subscribers . . . . .	248
14.1.4 Creating Regular PBX Subscribers . . . . .	258
14.1.5 Assigning Subscribers to Devices . . . . .	264
14.1.6 Configuring Sound Sets for the Customer PBX . . . . .	270
14.1.7 Configuring Auto Attendant . . . . .	272
14.1.8 Configuring Call Queues . . . . .	277
14.1.9 Device Auto-Provisioning Security . . . . .	279
14.1.10 Device Bootstrap and Resync Workflows . . . . .	281
14.1.11 Device Provisioning and Deployment Workflows . . . . .	289
14.1.12 List of available pre-configured devices . . . . .	292
14.1.13 Phone features . . . . .	296
14.2 Sipwise sip:phone App (SIP client) . . . . .	327
14.2.1 Zero Config Launcher . . . . .	328
14.2.2 Mobile Push Notification . . . . .	332
14.3 Lawful Interception . . . . .	353
14.3.1 Introduction . . . . .	353
14.3.2 Architecture and Configuration of LI Service . . . . .	355
14.3.3 X1, X2 and X3 Interface Specification . . . . .	361

<b>A Basic Call Flows</b>	<b>376</b>
A.1 General Call Setup . . . . .	376
A.2 Endpoint Registration . . . . .	377
A.3 Basic Call . . . . .	380
A.4 Session Keep-Alive . . . . .	381
A.5 Voicebox Calls . . . . .	382
<b>B NGCP configs overview</b>	<b>384</b>
B.1 config.yml Overview . . . . .	384
B.1.1 apps . . . . .	384
B.1.2 asterisk . . . . .	384
B.1.3 autoprov . . . . .	385
B.1.4 backuptools . . . . .	386
B.1.5 bootenv . . . . .	387
B.1.6 cdrexport . . . . .	387
B.1.7 checktools . . . . .	388
B.1.8 cleanuptools . . . . .	390
B.1.9 cluster_sets . . . . .	391
B.1.10 database . . . . .	391
B.1.11 faxserver . . . . .	392
B.1.12 general . . . . .	392
B.1.13 haproxy . . . . .	392
B.1.14 heartbeat . . . . .	393
B.1.15 intercept . . . . .	393
B.1.16 kamailio . . . . .	393
B.1.17 lnpd . . . . .	398
B.1.18 mediator . . . . .	398
B.1.19 nginx . . . . .	398
B.1.20 ntp . . . . .	399

B.1.21 ossbss . . . . .	399
B.1.22 pbx (only with additional cloud PBX module installed) . . . . .	401
B.1.23 prosody . . . . .	401
B.1.24 pushd . . . . .	401
B.1.25 qos . . . . .	402
B.1.26 rate-o-mat . . . . .	403
B.1.27 redis . . . . .	403
B.1.28 reminder . . . . .	403
B.1.29 rsyslog . . . . .	404
B.1.30 rtpproxy . . . . .	404
B.1.31 security . . . . .	405
B.1.32 sems . . . . .	405
B.1.33 snmpagent . . . . .	406
B.1.34 sshd . . . . .	407
B.1.35 voisniff . . . . .	407
B.1.36 www_admin . . . . .	407
B.2 constants.yml Overview . . . . .	410
B.3 network.yml Overview . . . . .	410
<b>C NGCP-Faxserver Configuration</b>	<b>414</b>
C.1 Faxserver Components . . . . .	414
C.2 Enabling Faxserver . . . . .	414
C.3 Fax Templates Configuration . . . . .	414
C.4 Fax Services Configuration per Subscriber . . . . .	415
C.5 Fax2Mail and SendFax Settings . . . . .	416
C.6 Mail2Fax Settings . . . . .	417
C.7 Sending Fax from Web Panel . . . . .	418
C.8 Faxserver Mail2Fax Configuration . . . . .	419
C.9 Sending Fax Using E-mail Clients . . . . .	420

C.10 Managing Faxes via the REST API . . . . .	421
C.10.1 Configuring Fax Settings . . . . .	421
C.10.2 Sending a Fax . . . . .	422
C.10.3 Receiving a Fax . . . . .	422
C.10.4 Configuring Mail2Fax Settings . . . . .	423
C.10.5 Using Advanced Faxserver and Mail2Fax Settings via the REST API . . . . .	424
C.11 Troubleshooting . . . . .	424
C.11.1 Session ID (SID) . . . . .	425
C.11.2 Fax Storage Location . . . . .	425
<b>D RTC:engine</b>	<b>426</b>
D.1 Overview . . . . .	426
D.2 RTC:engine enabling . . . . .	426
D.2.1 Enabling services via CLI . . . . .	426
D.2.2 Enabling via Panel for resellers and subscribers . . . . .	427
D.2.3 Create RTC:engine session . . . . .	427
D.3 RTC:engine protocol details . . . . .	428
D.3.1 Terminology . . . . .	428
D.3.2 Messages . . . . .	429
D.3.3 Account . . . . .	431
D.3.4 Call . . . . .	435
D.3.5 Session . . . . .	441
<b>E NGCP Internals</b>	<b>443</b>
E.1 Pending reboot marker . . . . .	443
E.2 Redis id constants . . . . .	443
E.2.1 Redis monitoring keys . . . . .	444
E.3 Enum preferences . . . . .	445



# 1 Introduction

## 1.1 About this Handbook

This handbook describes the architecture and the operational steps to install, operate and modify the Sipwise sip:carrier.

In various chapters, it describes the system architecture, the installation and upgrade procedures and the initial configuration steps to get your first users online. It then dives into advanced preference configurations such as rewrite rules, call blockings, call forwards, etc.

There is a description of the customer self-care interface, how to configure the billing system and how to provision the system via the provided APIs.

Finally, it describes the internal configuration framework, the network configuration and gives hints about tweaking the system for security and performance.

## 1.2 What is the sip:carrier?

The sip:carrier is a SIP based Open Source Class5 VoIP soft-switch platform providing rich telephony services. It offers a wide range of features to end users (call forwards, voicemail, conferencing, call blocking, click-to-dial, call-lists showing near-realtime accounting information, etc.), which can be configured by them using the customer-self-care web interface. For operators, it offers a fully web-based administrative panel, allowing them to configure users, peerings, billing profiles, etc., as well as viewing real-time statistics of the system. For tight integration into existing infrastructures, it provides a powerful REST API.

The sip:carrier comes pre-installed on six+ servers in one+ IBM Flex Chassis, see [Section 2](#). Apart from your product specific configuration, there is no initial configuration or installation to be done to get started.

## 1.3 The Advantages of the sip:carrier

Opposed to other free VoIP software, the sip:carrier is not a single application, but a whole software platform, the Sipwise NGCP (Sipwise Next Generation Communication Platform), which is based on Debian GNU/Linux.

Using a highly modular design approach, the NGCP leverages popular open-source software like MySQL, NGINX, Kamailio, SEMS, Asterisk, etc. as its core building blocks. These blocks are glued together using optimized and proven configurations and workflows and are complemented by functionality developed by Sipwise to provide fully-featured and easy to operate VoIP services.

The installed applications are managed by the NGCP Configuration Framework, which makes it possible to change system parameters in a single place, so administrators don't need to have any knowledge of the dozens of different configuration files of the different packages. This provides a very easy and bullet-proof way of operating, changing and tweaking the otherwise quite complex system.

Once configured, integrated web interfaces are provided for both end users and administrators to use the sip:carrier. By using the provided provisioning and billing APIs, it can be integrated tightly into existing OSS/BSS infrastructures to optimize workflows.

## 1.4 Who is the sip:carrier for?

The sip:carrier is specifically tailored to companies who want to provide fully-featured SIP-based VoIP service without having to go through the steep learning curve of SIP signalling, integrating the different building blocks to make them work together in a reasonable way. The sip:carrier is already deployed all around the world by all kinds of VoIP operators, using it as Class5 soft-switch, as Class4 termination platform or even as Session Border Controller with all kinds of access networks, like Cable, DSL, WiFi and Mobile networks.

## 1.5 Getting Help

### 1.5.1 Phone Support

Depending on your support contract, you are eligible to contact our Support Team by phone either in business hours or around the clock. Business hours refer to the UTC+1 time zone (Europe/Vienna). Please check your support contract to find out the type of support you've purchased.

Before calling our Support Team, please also open a ticket in our Ticket System and provide as much detail as you can for us to understand the problems, fix them and investigate the cause. Please provide the number of your newly created ticket when asked by our support personnel on the phone.

You can find phone numbers, Ticket System URL, and account information in your support contract. Please make this information available to the persons in your company maintaining the sip:carrier.

### 1.5.2 Ticket System

Depending on your support contract, you can create either a limited or an unlimited amount of support tickets on our Web-based Ticket System. Please provide as much information as possible when opening a ticket, especially the following:

- **WHAT** is affected (e.g. the whole system is unreachable, or customers can't register or place calls)
- **WHO** is affected (e.g. all customers, only parts of it, and **WHICH** parts - only customers in a particular domain or customers with specific devices, etc.)
- **WHEN** did the problem occur (time frames, or after the firmware of specific devices types have been updated, etc.)

Our Support Team will ask further questions via the Ticket System along the way of troubleshooting your issue. Please provide the information as soon as possible to solve your issue promptly.

## 2 System Architecture

### 2.1 Hardware Architecture

The sip:carrier starts with a minimum deployment of 50.000 subscribers, requiring one chassis with two web servers, two db servers, two load balancers and two proxies. A fully deployed sip:carrier for 250.000 subscribers fills the chassis up with 14 servers, containing two web servers, two db servers, two load balancers and 8 proxies.



Figure 1: Hardware setup for single chassis

The system is based on an IBM Flex Chassis taking up rack space of 10U with 14 computing nodes based on IBM x220 servers.

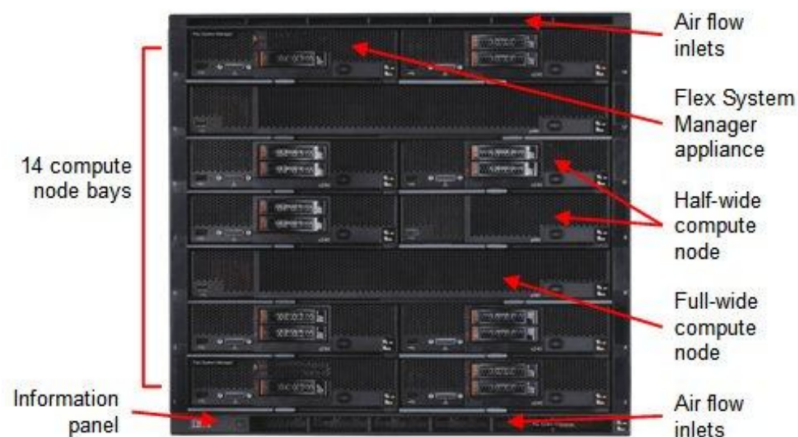


Figure 2: Chassis front view

All nodes are equipped equally with two hard disks in Raid-1 mode.

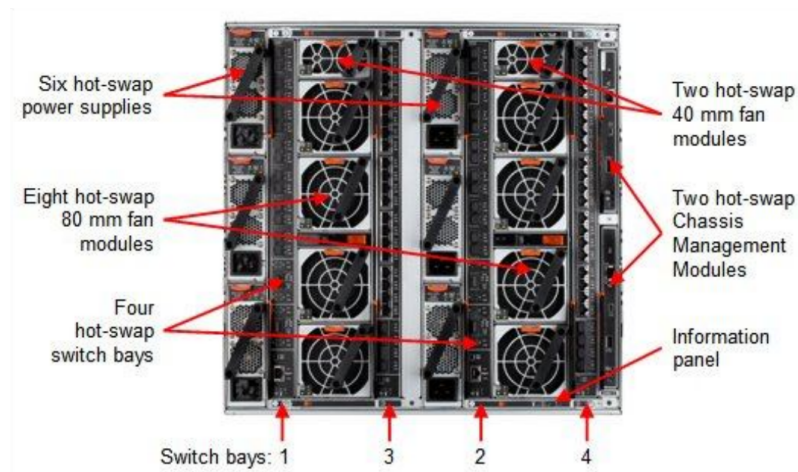


Figure 3: Chassis back view

The power supply is designed fully redundant in an N+N fashion with N=3, for example to feed 3 PSUs with normal power and 3 PSUs with UPS power.



Figure 4: Chassis switch module

Each chassis is equipped with two EN2092 Gigabit Ethernet switches providing 10 GbE uplinks each. Four 10GbE uplinks are optional and need to be licensed separately if needed.

## 2.2 Component Architecture

The sip:carrier is composed by a cluster of four different node types, which are all deployed in active/standby pairs:

- **Web-Servers** (web1a/web1b): Provide northbound interfaces (CSC, API) via HTTPS for provisioning
- **DB-Servers** (db1a/db1b): Provide the central persistent SQL data store for customer data, peering configuration, billing data etc.
- **Proxy-Servers** (proxy1a/proxy1b .. proxy4a/proxy4b): Provide the SIP and XMPP signalling engines, application servers and media relays to route Calls and IM/Presence and serve media to the endpoints.

- **Load-Balancers** (lb1a/lb1b): Provide a perimeter for SIP and XMPP signalling.

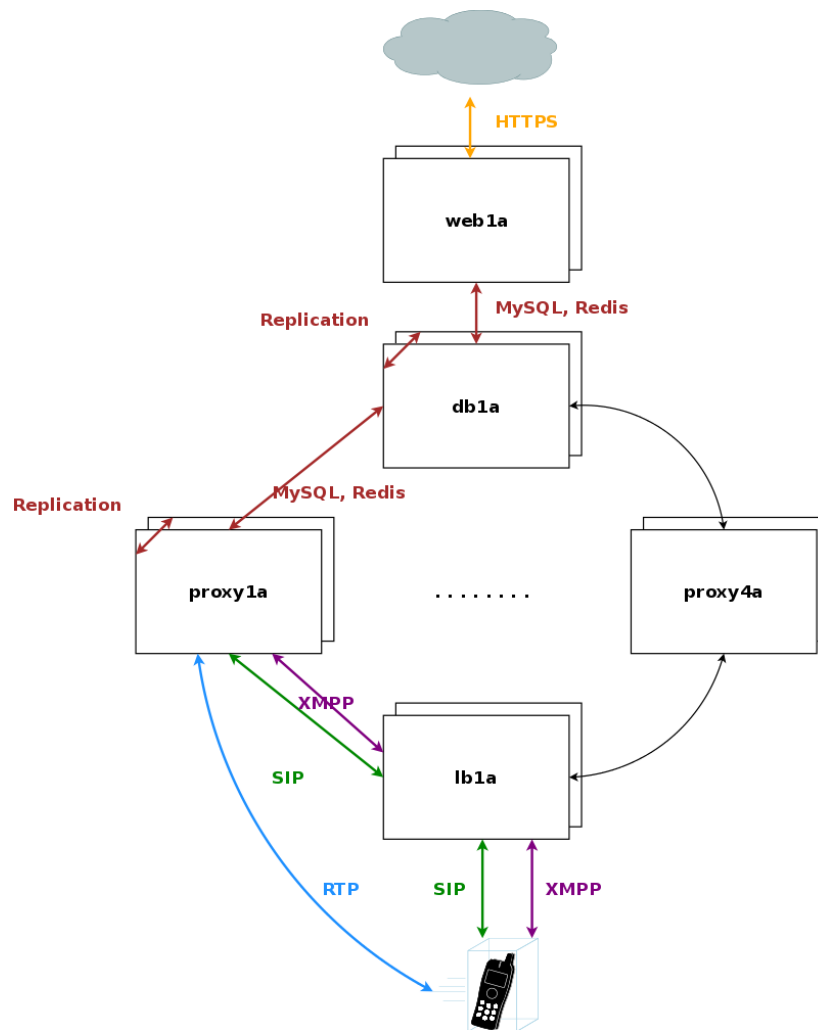


Figure 5: Architecture Overview

The system is provisioned via the web servers on a central pair of db servers. Signalling is entering the system via the lb servers to a cluster of proxies, which in turn communicate directly (caching and shared data) and indirectly (static provisioning data replicated via master/slave) with the db servers. Each pair of proxy is capable of handling any subscriber, so subscribers are not bound to specific "home proxies". Once a call starts on a proxy pair, it is ensured that the full range of services is provided on that pair (voicemail, media, billing, ...) until call-teardown. Failures on an active proxy node cause a fail-over to the corresponding stand-by node within the proxy pair, taking over the full signalling and media without interruptions.

### 2.2.1 Provisioning

Any HTTPS traffic for provisioning (web interfaces, northbound APIs) but also for phone auto-provisioning enters the platform on the active web server. The web server runs an nginx instance acting as a reverse proxy for the ngcp-panel process, which in turn provides the provisioning functionality.

The web server is connected to the db server pair, which provides a persistent relational data store via MySQL and a high-performance system cache using Redis key-value store.

### 2.2.1.1 API and Web Interface

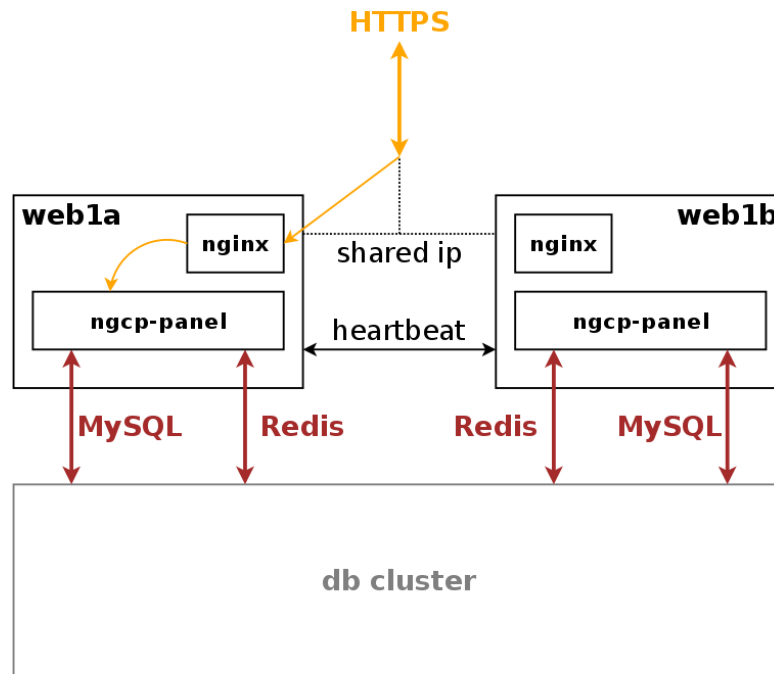


Figure 6: Web Server Overview

The web server pair is an active/standby pair of nodes connected via heartbeat. If one of the servers fail (by losing connection to the outside while the standby server is still connected, or caused by a hardware failure, or if it's down due to maintenance), the standby server takes over the shared IP address of the active node and continues serving the provisioning interface.

### 2.2.1.2 Provisioning Database

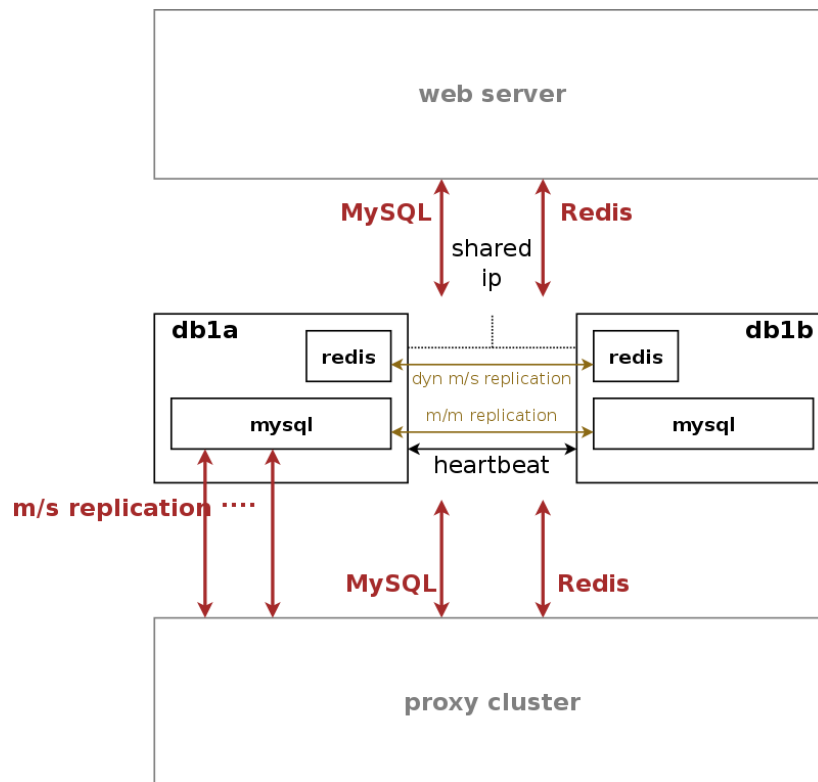


Figure 7: DB Server Overview

The db server pair is another active/standby pair with automatic fail-over. Nodes in the pair are running a MySQL master/master replication with replication integrity checks to ensure data redundancy and safety. Any changes via provisioning interfaces are stored in the MySQL cluster. The second service is a redis master/slave replication with automatic master propagation on fail-over. This redis cluster is used as a high-performance volatile system cache for various components which need to share state information across nodes.

### 2.2.1.3 Persistent MySQL Database

The MySQL instances on the db nodes synchronize via row-based master/master replication. In theory, any of the two servers in the pair can be used to write data to the database, however in practice a shared IP is used towards clients accessing the service, so only one node will receive the write requests. This is done to ensure transparent and instant convergence of the db cluster on fail-over for the clients.

On top of that, the first node of the db pair also acts as a master in a master/slave replication towards all proxy nodes in the system. That way, proxies can access read-only provisioning data directly from their local databases, resulting in reduced latency and significant off-loading of read queries on the central db cluster.

### 2.2.1.4 Central Redis Cache

A redis master/slave setup is used to provide a high-performance key/value storage for global system data shared across proxies. This includes concurrent call counters for customers and subscribers, as a subscriber could place two simultaneous calls via two different proxy pairs.

## 2.2.2 Signaling and Media Relay

Any signalling traffic enters and leaves the system via load balancers, which act as a perimeter towards the customer devices and performs NAT handling, DoS and DDoS mitigation. New connections are routed to a random pair of proxy servers, which do the actual routing for SIP and XMPP. The proxy servers also engage media relays for voice and video streams, which bypass the load balancers and communicate directly with the customer devices for performance reasons.

### 2.2.2.1 Load Balancing of Signalling

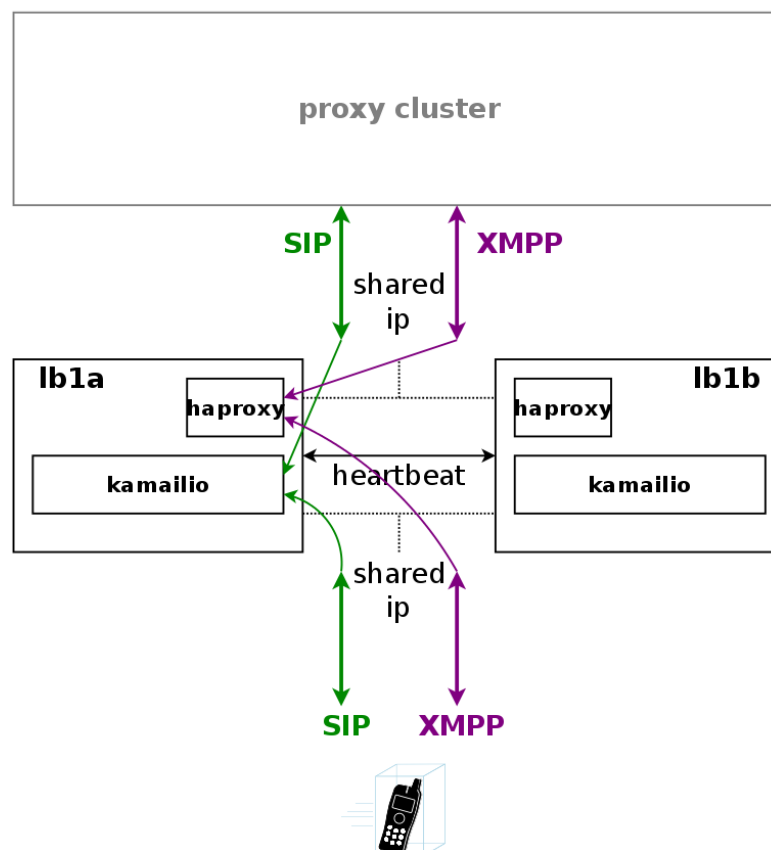


Figure 8: Load Balancer Overview

A node in a load balancer pair runs two services besides the usual heartbeat.

One is a state-less instance of kamailio, providing an extremely fast relay of SIP messages. Kamailio takes care of converting



TCP and TLS connections from the customer devices to UDP for internal communication towards proxies, and it performs far-end NAT traversal by inspecting the SIP messages and comparing it to the actual source address where packets have been received from, then modifying the SIP messages accordingly. If a SIP message is received by the load balancer, it distinguishes between new and ongoing SIP transactions by inspecting the To-Tags of a message, and it determines whether the message is part of an established dialog by inspecting the Route header. Sanity checks are performed on the headers to make sure the call flows adhere to certain rules for not being able to bypass any required element in the routing path. In-dialog messages are routed to the corresponding proxy servers according to the Route defined in the message. Messages initiating a new transaction and/or dialog (registrations, calls etc) are routed to a randomly selected proxy. The selection algorithm is based on a hash over the Call-ID of the message, so the same proxy sending a authentication challenge to an endpoint will receive the authenticated message again.

The second service running on a load balancer is haproxy, which is acting as load balancing instance for XMPP messages. The same way the SIP load balancer routes SIP messages to the corresponding proxy, the haproxy passes XMPP traffic on to the proxy maintaining a session with a subscriber, or randomly selects a proxy in case of a new connection while automatically failing over on timeouts.

### 2.2.2.2 Message Routing and Media Relay

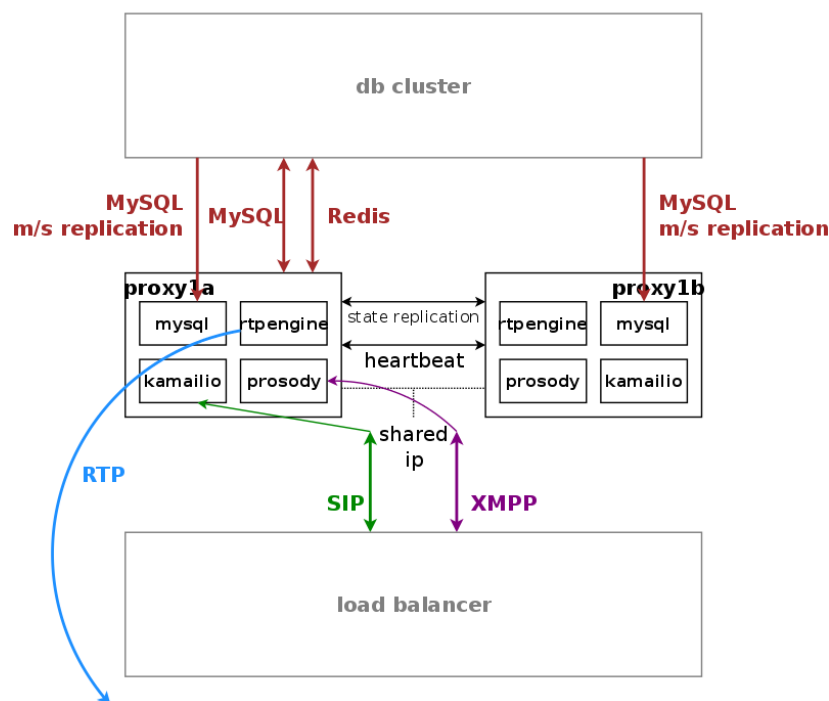


Figure 9: Proxy Server Overview

Proxy servers also come in pairs, and by default there are four pairs of proxies in a standard sip:carrier setup.

The proxies are responsible for doing the actual SIP routing and media handling and the XMPP presence and chat message deliveries. Each proxy pair can handle any subscriber on the overall system, compared to the concept of "home proxies" in other architectures. The advantage of this approach is that the overall system can be scaled extremely easily by adding more proxy pairs without having to redistribute subscribers.

Once a load balancer sends a new message to a proxy, the SIP transaction and/or dialog gets anchored to this proxy. That way it is ensured that a call starting on a proxy is also ended on the same proxy. Hence, the full range of feature handling like media relay, voicemail, fax, billing and rating is performed on this proxy. So, there is no a central point for various tasks, potentially leading to a non-scalable bottleneck. Due to the anchoring, proxies come in pairs and replicate all internal state information to the standby node via redis. In case of fail-over, the full signalling and media are moved to the standby node without interruption.

The complete static subscriber information like authentication credentials, number mappings, feature settings etc. are replicated from the db cluster down to the local MySQL instance of the proxies. The ratio of db read requests of static subscriber data versus reading and writing volatile and shared data is around 15:1, and this approach moves the majority of the static read operations from the central db cluster to the local proxy db.

Volatile and shared information needed by all proxies in the cluster is read from and written to the db cluster. This mainly includes SIP registration information and XMPP connection information.

Billing and rating is also performed locally on the proxies, and only completed CDRs (rated or unrated depending on whether rating is enabled) are transferred to the central db cluster for consumption via the northbound interfaces.

For SIP, the relevant instances on a proxy are kamailio acting as a stateful proxy for SIP registration and call routing, seds acting as a back-to-back user-agent for prepaid billing and application server, rtpengine as media relay and RTP/SRTP transcoder, and asterisk as voicemail server. XMPP is handled by an instance of prosody, and several billing processes mediate start and stop records into CDRs and rate them according to the relevant billing profiles.

### 2.2.3 Scaling beyond one Hardware Chassis

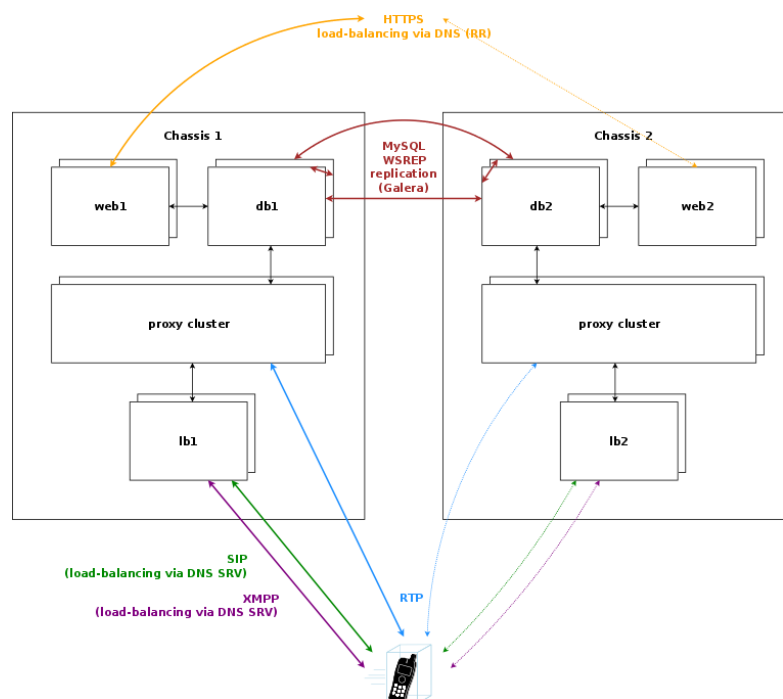


Figure 10: Scaling beyond one chassis

If the sip:carrier is scaled beyond 250.000 subscribers and therefore exceeds one chassis, a second chassis is put into place. This chassis provides another two web servers, two db servers, two load balancers and 8 proxies, doubling the capacity of the system.

#### **2.2.3.1 Scaling the DB cluster**

The DB cluster is the only node type which requires a notable change on the architecture. Once more than one db pair is deployed, the replication mechanism between db nodes changes from master/master between the nodes of the db1 pair to a synchronous multi-master replication over all db nodes on the system using Galera. This change makes it possible to scale both read and write requests over multiple nodes, while being transparent to all other nodes.

#### **2.2.3.2 Scaling the proxy cluster**

New proxy nodes replicate via master/slave from the first db node in the chassis as usual. Since the db cluster holds all provisioning information of all subscribers, the proxy nodes join the cluster transparently and will start serving subscribers as soon as all services on a new proxy are reachable from the load balancers.

#### **2.2.3.3 Scaling the load balancers**

Load balancers are completely stateless, so they start serving subscribers as soon as they are made visible to the subscribers. This could either be done via DNS round-robin, but the better approach is to configure a DNS SRV record, which allows for more fine-grained control like weighting load-balancer pairs and allowing fail-over from one pair to another on the client side.

The load balancers use the Path extension of SIP to make sure during SIP registration that calls targeted to a subscriber are routed via the same load balancer pair which the subscriber used during registration for proper traversal of symmetric NAT at the customer premise.

A SIP or XMPP request reaching a load balancer can be routed to any available proxy in the whole system, or only to proxies belonging to the same chassis as the load balancer, depending on the system configuration.

#### **2.2.3.4 Scaling the web servers**

New web server pairs are made available to web clients via DNS round-robin. Any pair of web servers can be used to read or write provisioning information via the web interfaces or the API.

### **2.2.4 Architecture for central core and local satellites**

---

#### **Tip**

This architecture is not part of the standard deployment and is to be defined in the project plan!

---

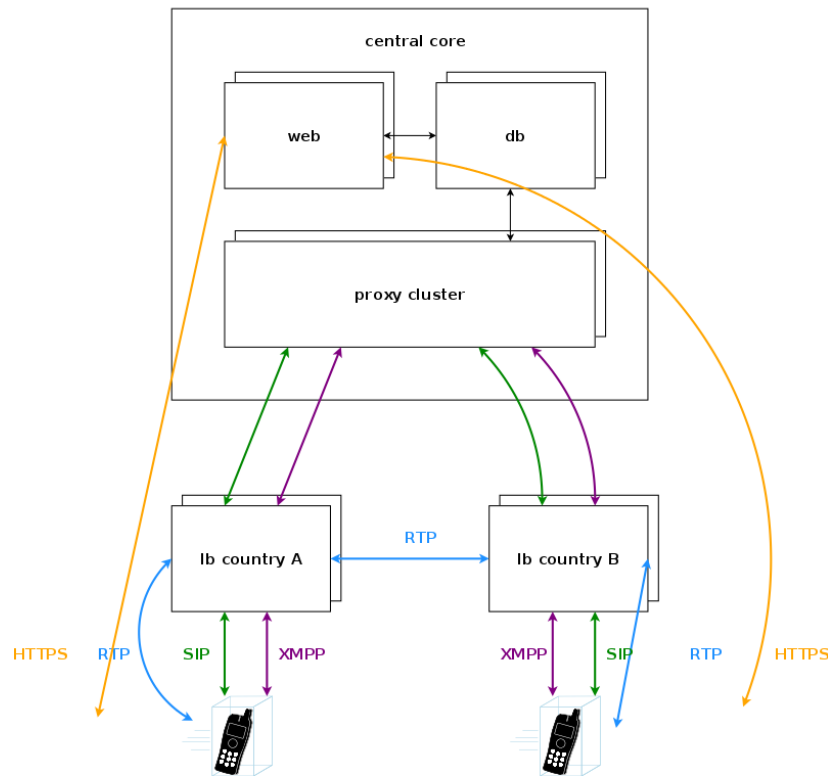


Figure 11: Central core with local breakouts

In case of a geographically distributed system spanning across multiple countries, different regulatory requirements have to be met for signalling and media, especially when it comes to if, where and how subscriber traffic can be intercepted. Countries might have the requirement to intercept traffic in the country, so the signalling and media must be anchored to an element in the country. Also if a media stream stays within a country, it is preferred to keep the media as close to the subscribers as possible to reduce latency, so relaying streams via a central core has to be avoided.

For this scenario, the sip:carrier makes it possible to move the load balancers directly into the countries. DNS settings for subscribers within the country ensure that they will always contact those load balancers, either using separate DNS settings per country for a SIP domain, or using GeoIP mechanisms in DNS to return the closest load balancer based on the location of the subscriber. To anchor media to the countries, the rtpengine instances are moved from the proxies to the load balancers and are controlled via the stateless kamailio instances on the load balancers instead of the kamailio instances on the proxies.

### 3 VoIP Service Configuration Scenario

To be able to configure your first test clients, you will need a Customer, a SIP domain and some subscribers in this domain. Throughout this steps, let's assume you're running the NGCP on the IP address `1.2.3.4`, and you want this IP to be used as SIP domain. This means that your subscribers will have an URI like `user1@1.2.3.4`.

---

#### Tip

You can of course set up a DNS name for your IP address (e.g. letting `sip.yourdomain.com` point to `1.2.3.4`) and use this DNS name throughout the next steps, but we'll keep it simple and stick directly with the IP as a SIP domain for now.

---



---

#### Warning

Once you started adding subscribers to a SIP domain, and later decide to change the domain, e.g. from `1.2.3.4` to `sip.yourdomain.com`, you'll need to recreate all your subscribers in this new domain. It's currently not possible to easily change the domain part of a subscriber.

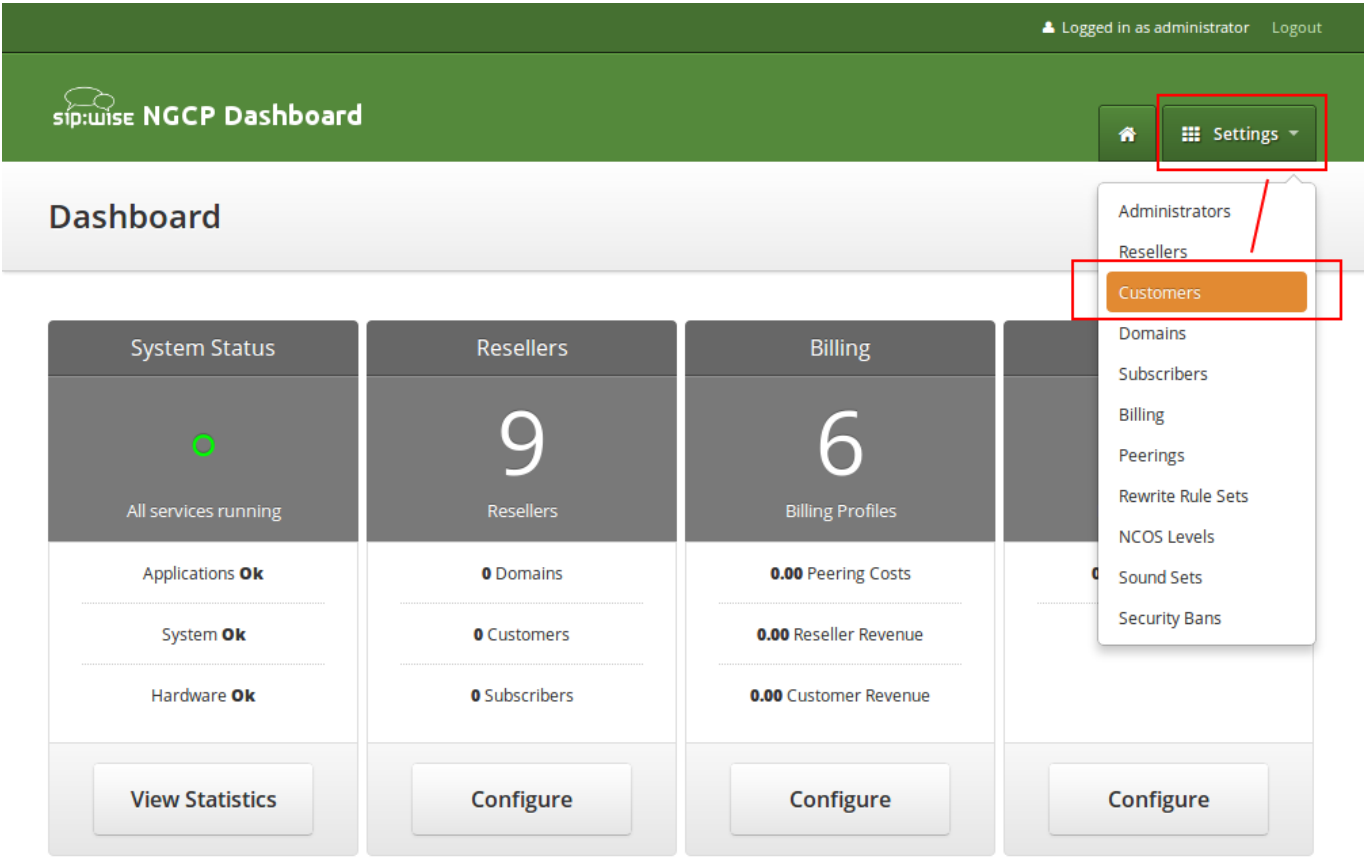
---

Go to the *Administrative Web Panel (Admin Panel)* running on `https://<ip>:1443/login/admin` and follow the steps below. The default user on the system is *administrator* with the password *administrator*, if you haven't changed it already.

#### 3.1 Creating a Customer

A Customer is a special type of contract on the system acting as billing container for SIP subscribers. You can create as many SIP subscribers within a Customer as you want.

To create a Customer, got to *Settings*→*Customers*.



Click on *Create Customer*.

The screenshot shows the sip:wise NGCP Dashboard. At the top, it says "Logged in as administrator" and "Logout". The dashboard title is "sip:wise NGCP Dashboard". Below the title, there are two buttons: "Home" and "Settings". The main section is titled "Customers". Below this, there are two buttons: "Back" and "Create Customer". The "Create Customer" button is highlighted with a red box. To the right of these buttons is a search bar labeled "Search:". Below the buttons and search bar is a table with the following columns: "#", "External #", "Reseller", "Contact Email", "Billing Profile", and "Status". The table is currently empty, with the message "No data available in table" displayed below the header. Below the table, it says "Showing 0 to 0 of 0 entries". At the bottom of the dashboard, there is a footer that says "© 2013 Sipwise GmbH, all rights reserved."

Each *Customer* needs a *Contact*. We can either reuse the default one, but for a clean setup, we create a new *Contact* for each *Customer* to be able to identify the *Customer*. Click on *Create Contact* to create a new *Contact*.

The screenshot shows the 'Create Contract' dialog in the sip:wise application. The dialog has a green header bar with the title 'Create Contract' and a close button. Below the header, there are two sections: 'Contact' and 'Billing Profile'. Each section has a search bar and a table of existing entries. The 'Contact' table has columns: #, Reseller, First Name, Last Name, and Email. It contains one entry with #1, Reseller 'default', First Name 'Contact first name', Last Name 'Contact last name', and Email 'default-customer@default.invalid.contact'. The 'Billing Profile' table has columns: #, Reseller, and Profile. It contains one entry with #1, Reseller 'default', and Profile 'Default Billing Profile'. Below each table is a 'Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries' message and a set of navigation buttons. A red box highlights the 'Create Contact' button in the 'Contact' section. At the bottom right of the dialog is a 'Save' button.

Logged in as administrator Logout

sip:wise

### Create Contract

Contact

Search:

#	Reseller	First Name	Last Name	Email
1	default	Contact first name	Contact last name	default-customer@default.invalid.contact

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries

Create Contact

Billing Profile

Search:

#	Reseller	Profile
1	default	Default Billing Profile

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries

Create Billing Profile

Save

We assign the Contact to the default *Reseller*. You can create a new one if you want, but for a simple setup the default *Reseller* is sufficient. Select the *Reseller* and enter the contact details (at least an *Email* is required), then press *Save*.



Logged in as administrator Logout

### Create Contact

Reseller Search:

#	Name	Contract #	Status	
1	default	1	active	1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries

Create Reseller

First Name

Last Name

2 Email

Company

3 Save

© 2013 Sip:wise. All rights reserved.

You will be redirected back to the *Customer* form. The newly created *Contact* is selected by default now, so you only have to select a *Billing Profile*. Again you can create a new one on the fly, but we will go with the default profile for now. Select it and press *Save*.

You will now see your first *Customer* in the list. Hover over the customer and click *Details* to view the details.

Logged in as administratorLogout

sip:wise NGCP Dashboard

HomeSettings

Customers

BackCreate Customer

Contract successfully created

Search:

#	External #	Reseller	Contact Email	Billing Profile	Status	
20		default	myfirstcontact@example.org	Default Billing Profile	active	<div>EditTerminateDetails</div>


Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries



1

3.2 Creating a Subscriber

In your *Customer* details view, click on the *Subscribers* row, then click the *Create Subscriber*.

Logged in as administratorLogout

 **NGCP Dashboard**

  Settings ▾

Customer Details

← Back

✎ Edit

Reseller

Contact Details

Billing Profiles

1Subscribers

★ Create Subscriber

2

SIP URI	Primary Number	Registered Devices
---------	----------------	--------------------

Contract Balance

As you can see, we don't have any *SIP Domains* yet, so click on *Create Domain* to create one.

Logged in as administrator Logout

### Create Subscriber

Web Username

Web Password

E164 Number

SIP Username

1 Domain Search:

#	Reseller	Domain
No data available in table		

Showing 0 to 0 of 0 entries

2 Create Domain

Save

Select the *Reseller* (make sure to use the same reseller where your *Customer* is created in) and enter your domain name, then press *Save*.

Logged in as administrator Logout

sip:wise

### Create Domain

Reseller Search:

#	Name	Contract #	Status
1	default	1	active

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries

1

2 SIP Domain 1.2.3.4

3 Save

Create Reseller

© 2013 Sipwise GmbH, all rights reserved.

Your *Domain* will be preselected now, so fill out the rest of the form:

- **Web Username:** This is the user part of the username the subscriber may use to log into her *Customer Self Care Interface*. The user part will be automatically suffixed by the SIP domain you choose for the **SIP URI**. Usually the web username is identical to the **SIP URI**, but you may choose a different naming schema.



#### Caution

The web username needs to be unique. The system will return a fault if you try to use the same web username twice.

- **Web Password:** This is the password for the subscriber to log into her *Customer Self Care Interface*. It must be at least 6 characters long.
- **E164 Number:** This is the telephone number mapped to the subscriber, separated into *Country Code (CC)*, *Area Code (AC)* and *Subscriber Number (SN)*. For the first tests, you can set a made-up number here and change it later when you get number blocks assigned by your PSTN interconnect partner. So in our example, we'll use 43 as CC, 99 as AC and 1001 as SN to form the phantasy number +43 99 1001.

#### Tip

This number can actually be used to place calls between local subscribers, even if you don't have any PSTN interconnection. This comes in handy if you use phones instead of soft-clients for your tests. The format in which this number can be dialled so the subscriber is reached is defined in [Section 3.6](#).

**Important**

NGCP allows a single subscriber to have multiple E.164 numbers to be used as aliases for receiving incoming calls. Also, NGCP supports so called "implicit" extensions. If a subscriber has phone number 012345, but somebody calls 012345100, then NGCP first tries to send the call to number 012345100 (even though the user is registered as 012345). If NGCP then receives the 404 - Not Found response, it falls back to 012345 (the user-part with which the callee is registered).

- **SIP Username:** The user part of the SIP URI for your subscriber.
- **SIP Domain:** The domain part of the SIP URI for your subscriber.
- **SIP Password:** The password of your subscriber to authenticate on the SIP proxy. It must be at least 6 characters long.
- **Status:** You can lock a subscriber here, but for creating one, you will most certainly want to use *active*.
- **External ID:** You can provision an arbitrary string here (e.g. an ID of a 3rd party provisioning/billing system).
- **Administrative:** If you have multiple subscribers in one account and set this option for one of them, this subscriber can administer other subscribers via the *Customer Self Care Interface*.

**Create Subscriber**

Web Password

1 E164 Number

2 SIP Username

Domain Search:

#	Reseller	Domain	
6	default	1.2.3.4	3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries

4 SIP Password

5

Repeat the creation of *Customers* and *Subscribers* for all your test accounts. You should have at least 3 subscribers to test the functionality of the NGCP.

---

**Tip**

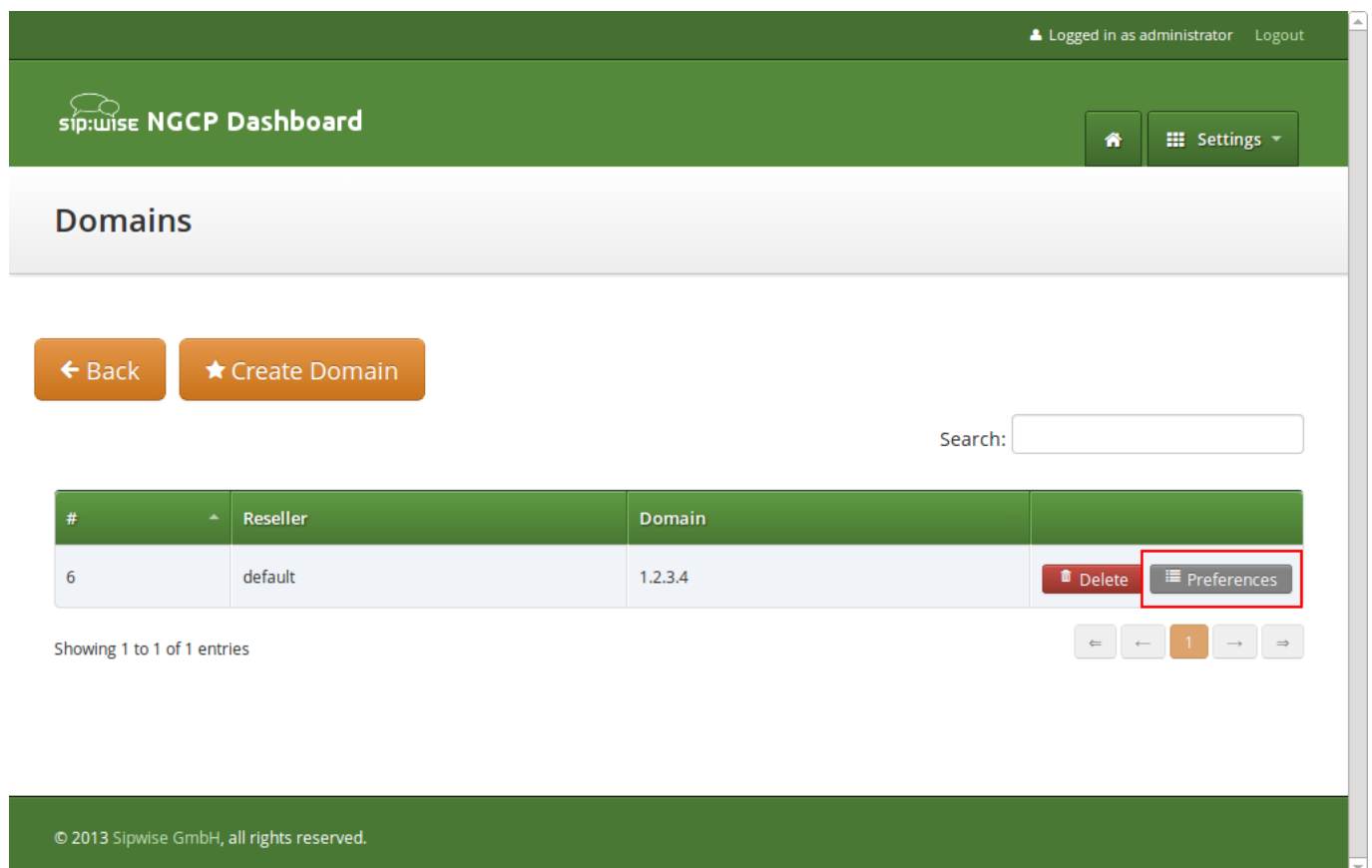
At this point, you're able to register your subscribers to the NGCP and place calls between these subscribers.

---

You should now revise the *Domain* and *Subscriber Preferences*.

### 3.3 Domain Preferences

The *Domain Preferences* are the default settings for *Subscriber Preferences*, so you should set proper values there if you don't want to configure each subscriber separately. You can later override these settings in the *Subscriber Preferences* if particular subscribers need special settings. To configure your *Domain Preferences*, go to *Settings*→*Domains* and click on the *Preferences* button of the domain you want to configure.



Logged in as administrator Logout

sip:wise NGCP Dashboard

Settings

## Domains

← Back ★ Create Domain

Search:

#	Reseller	Domain	
6	default	1.2.3.4	Delete Preferences

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries

© 2013 Sipwise GmbH, all rights reserved.

The most important settings are in the *Number Manipulations* group.

Here you can configure the following:

- for incoming calls - which SIP message headers to take numbers from
- for outgoing calls - where in the SIP messages to put certain numbers to

- for both - how these numbers are normalized to E164 format and vice versa

To assign a *Rewrite Rule Set* to a *Domain*, create a set first as described in Section 3.6, then assign it to the domain by editing the *rewrite\_rule\_set* preference.

## Domain "1.2.3.4" – Preferences

[← Back](#)

Call Blockings

Access Restrictions

1 **Number Manipulations**

	Name	Value	
?	rewrite_rule_set	<div></div>	2 <div>Edit</div>
?	extension_in_npn	<input type="checkbox"/>	
?	inbound_upn	<div>From-Username</div>	
?	outbound_from_user	<div>User-Provided-Number</div>	
?	outbound_from_display	<div>None</div>	

Select the *Rewrite Rule Set* and press *Save*.



1

rewrite\_rule\_set test

2 Save

	Name	Value
?	rewrite_rule_set	
?	extension_in_npn	
?	inbound_upn	From-Username

Then, select the field you want the *User Provided Number* to be taken from for inbound INVITE messages. Usually the *From-Username* should be fine, but you can also take it from the *Display-Name* of the From-Header, and other options are available as well.

### 3.4 Subscriber Preferences

You can override the *Domain Preferences* on a subscriber basis as well. Also, there are *Subscriber Preferences* which don't have a default value in the *Domain Preferences*.

To configure your *Subscriber*, go to *Settings*→*Subscribers* and click *Details* on the row of your subscriber. There, click on the *Preferences* button on top.

You want to look into the *Number Manipulations* and *Access Restrictions* options in particular, which control what is used as user-provided and network-provided calling numbers.

- For outgoing calls, you may define multiple numbers or patterns to control what a subscriber is allowed to send as user-provided calling numbers using the *allowed\_cli* preference.
- If *allowed\_cli* does not match the number sent by the subscriber, then the number configured in *cli* (the network-provided number) preference will be used as user-provided calling number instead.
- You can override any user-provided number coming from the subscriber using the *user\_cli* preference.

**Note**

Subscribers preference *allowed\_clis* will be synchronized with subscribers primary number and aliases if *oss-bss→provisioning→auto\_allow\_cli* is set to **1** in */etc/ngcp-config/config.yml*.

**Note**

Subscribers preference *cli* will be synchronized with subscribers primary number and aliases if *oss-bss→provisioning→auto\_sync\_cli* is set to **yes** in */etc/ngcp-config/config.yml*.

### 3.5 Creating Peerings

If you want to terminate calls at or allow calls from 3<sup>rd</sup> party systems (e.g. PSTN gateways, SIP trunks), you need to create SIP peerings for that. To do so, go to *Settings→Peerings*. There you can add peering groups, and for each peering group add peering servers and rules controlling which calls are routed over these groups. Every peering group needs a peering contract for correct interconnection billing.

#### 3.5.1 Creating Peering Groups

Click on *Create Peering Group* to create a new group.

In order to create a group, you must select a peering contract. You will most likely want to create one contract per peering group.

The screenshot shows the 'Create SIP Peering Groups' modal window. At the top, it says 'Contract' and 'Search:'. Below is a table with headers '#', 'Status', and 'Billing Profile'. The table body contains the text 'No data available in table'. Below the table, it says 'Showing 0 to 0 of 0 entries'. To the right of this text are navigation buttons: '<=>', '<=>', '<=>', and '<=>'. A 'Create Contract' button is highlighted with a red box. Below the table, there are input fields for 'Name', 'Priority' (set to 1), and 'Description'. At the bottom right is a 'Save' button. The background shows the sip:wise interface with a sidebar and a top bar indicating 'Logged in as administrator'.

Click on *Create Contract* create a *Contact*, then select a *Billing Profile*.

Logged in as administrator Logout

### Create Contract

Contact Search:

#	Reseller	First Name	Last Name	Email	
1	default	Contact first name	Contact last name	default-customer@default.invalid.contact	1.1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
17	default			myfirstcontact@example.org	<input type="checkbox"/>

Showing 1 to 2 of 2 entries

or 1.2

Billing Profile Search:

#	Reseller	Profile	
1	default	Default Billing Profile	2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries

3

Click *Save* on the *Contacts* form, and you will get redirected back to the form for creating the actual *Peering Group*. Put a name, priority and description there, for example:

- **Peering Contract:** select the id of the contract created before
- **Name:** test group
- **Priority:** 1
- **Description:** peering to a test carrier

Contract

Search:

#	Status	Billing Profile	
21	active	Default Billing Profile	1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries

Create Contract

2 Name

3 Priority

4 Description

Save

© 2013 Sipwise GmbH, all rights reserved.

The *Priority* option defines which *Peering Group* to favor if two peering groups have peering rules matching an outbound call. *Peering Rules* are described below.

Then click *Save* to create the group.

### 3.5.2 Creating Peering Servers

In the group created before, you need to add peering servers to route calls to and receive calls from. To do so, click on *Details* on the row of your new group in your peering group list.

To add your first *Peering Server*, click on the *Create Peering Server* button.

**Peering Servers**

[← Back](#) [★ Create Peering Server](#)

Show 5 entries Search

#	^	Name	IP Address	Hostname	Port	Protocol	Weight	Via Route Set	Enabled
No data available in table									

Showing 0 to 0 of 0 entries

**Outbound Peering Rules**

ANY of the rules must match to choose the peering group for outbound calls.

[★ Create Outbound Peering Rule](#)

Show 5 entries Search

#	^	Callee Prefix	Callee Pattern	Caller Pattern	Description	Enabled
No data available in table						

Showing 0 to 0 of 0 entries

**Inbound Peering Rules**

ALL of the rules must match to choose the peering group for inbound calls.

[★ Create Inbound Peering Rule](#)

Show 5 entries Search

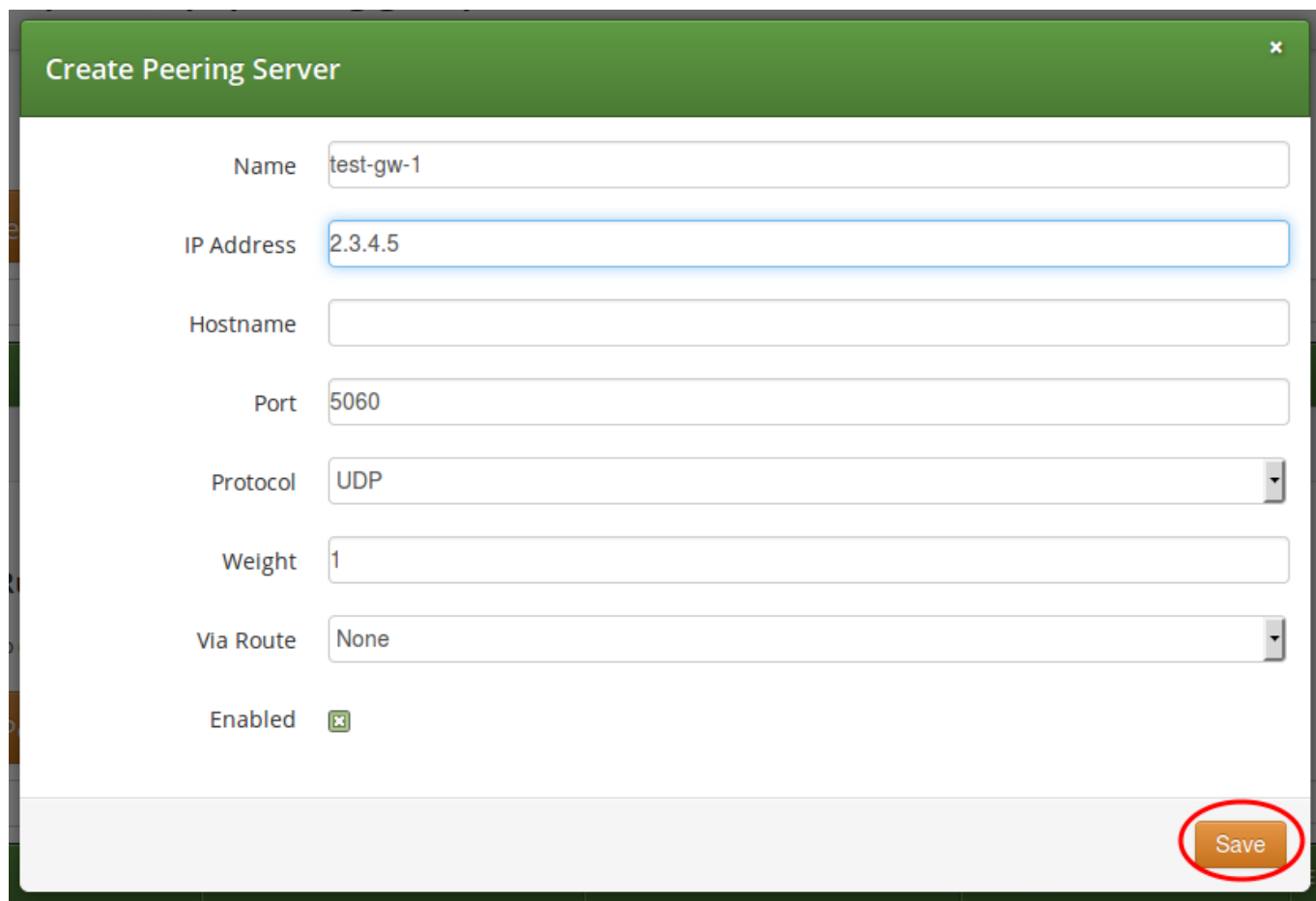
Priority	^	#	Field	Pattern	Reject Code	Reject Reason	Enabled
No data available in table							

Showing 0 to 0 of 0 entries

Figure 12: Create Peering Server

In this example, we will create a peering server with IP 2.3.4.5 and port 5060:

- **Name:** test-gw-1
- **IP Address:** 2.3.4.5
- **Hostname:** leave empty
- **Port:** 5060
- **Protocol:** UDP
- **Weight:** 1
- **Via Route:** None



**Create Peering Server**

Name

IP Address

Hostname

Port

Protocol

Weight

Via Route

Enabled ☒

**Save**

Figure 13: Peering Server Properties

Click **Save** to create the peering server.

---

**Tip**

The *hostname* field for a peering server is optional. Usually, the IP address of the peer is used as the **domain** part of the Request URI. Fill in this field if a peer requires a particular hostname instead of the IP address. The IP address must always be given though as the request will always be sent to the specified IP address, no matter what you put into the *hostname* field.

---

---

**Tip**

If you want to add a peering server with an IPv6 address, enter the address without surrounding square brackets into the *IP Address* column, e.g. `::1`.

---

You can force an additional hop (e.g. via an external SBC) towards the peering server by using the *Via Route* option. The available options you can select there are defined in `/etc/ngcp-config/config.yml`, where you can add an array of SIP URIs in `kamailio→lb→external_sbc` like this:

```
kamailio:
  lb:
```

```
external_sbc:
  - sip:192.168.0.1:5060
  - sip:192.168.0.2:5060
```

Execute `ngcpconfig apply added external sbc gateways`, then edit your peering server and select the hop from the *Via Route* selection.

Once a peering server has been created, this server can already send calls to the system.

### 3.5.2.1 Outbound Peering Rules



#### Important

To be able to send outbound calls towards the servers in the *Peering Group*, you also need to define *Outbound Peering Rules*. They specify which source and destination numbers are going to be terminated over this group. To create a rule, click the *Create Outbound Peering Rule* button.

**Peering Servers**

← Back   ★ Create Peering Server

Peering server successfully created

Show 5 entries   Search:

#	Name	IP Address	Hostname	Port	Protocol	Weight	Via Route Set	Enabled
29	test-gw-1	2.3.4.5		5060	1	1		1

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries

**Outbound Peering Rules**

ANY of the rules must match to choose the peering group for outbound calls.

★ Create Outbound Peering Rule

Show 5 entries   Search:

#	Callee Prefix	Callee Pattern	Caller Pattern	Description	Enabled
No data available in table					

Showing 0 to 0 of 0 entries

**Inbound Peering Rules**

ALL of the rules must match to choose the peering group for inbound calls.

★ Create Inbound Peering Rule

Figure 14: Create Outbound Peering Rule

Since the previously created peering group will be the only one in our example, we have to add a default rule to route *all* calls via

this group. To do so, create a new peering rule with the following values:

- **Callee Prefix:** leave empty
- **Callee Pattern:** leave empty
- **Caller Pattern:** leave empty
- **Description:** Default Rule

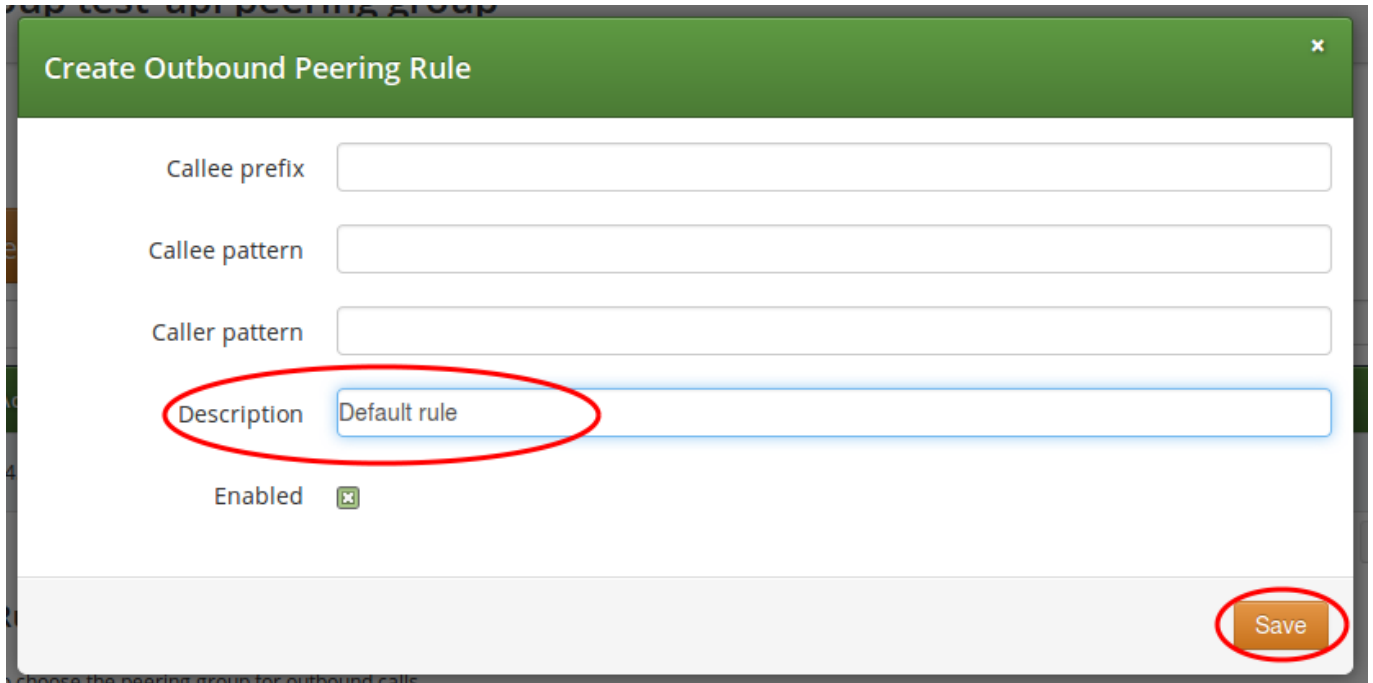


Figure 15: Outbound Peering Rule Properties

Then click *Save* to add the rule to your group.

---

**Tip**

In contrast to the callee/caller pattern, the callee prefix has a regular alphanumeric string and can not contain any regular expression.

---

---

**Tip**

If you set the caller or callee rules to refine what is routed via this peer, enter all phone numbers in full E.164 format, that is `<cc><ac><sn>`.

---

---

**Tip**

The *Caller Pattern* field covers the whole URI including the subscriber domain, so you can only allow certain domains over this peer by putting for example `@example\.com` into this field.

---



### 3.5.2.2 Inbound Peering Rules

Starting from *mr5.0* release, Sipwise NGCP supports filtering SIP INVITE requests sent by SIP peers. The system administrator may define one or more matching rules for SIP URIs that are present in the headers of SIP INVITE requests, and select which SIP header (or part of the header) must match the pattern declared in the rule.

If the incoming SIP INVITE message has the proper headers, NGCP will accept and further process the request. If the message does not match the rule it will be rejected.



#### Caution

An incoming SIP INVITE message must match **all the inbound peering rules** so that NGCP does not reject the request.

In order to **create an inbound peering rule** you have to select a peering group, press *Details* and then press *Create Inbound Peering Rule* button.

#### Peering Servers

← Back
★ Create Peering Server

Show 5 entries
Search:

#	^	Name	IP Address	Hostname	Port	Protocol	Weight	Via Route Set	Enabled
29		test-gw-1	2.3.4.5		5060	1	1		1

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries

#### Outbound Peering Rules

ANY of the rules must match to choose the peering group for outbound calls.

★ Create Outbound Peering Rule

Show 5 entries
Search:

#	^	Callee Prefix	Callee Pattern	Caller Pattern	Description	Enabled
1					Default rule	1

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries

#### Inbound Peering Rules

ALL of the rules must match to choose the peering group for inbound calls.

★ Create Inbound Peering Rule

Show 5 entries
Search:

Priority	#	Field	Pattern	Reject Code	Reject Reason	Enabled
No data available in table						

Showing 0 to 0 of 0 entries

Figure 16: Create Inbound Peering Rule

An inbound peering rule has the following **properties**:

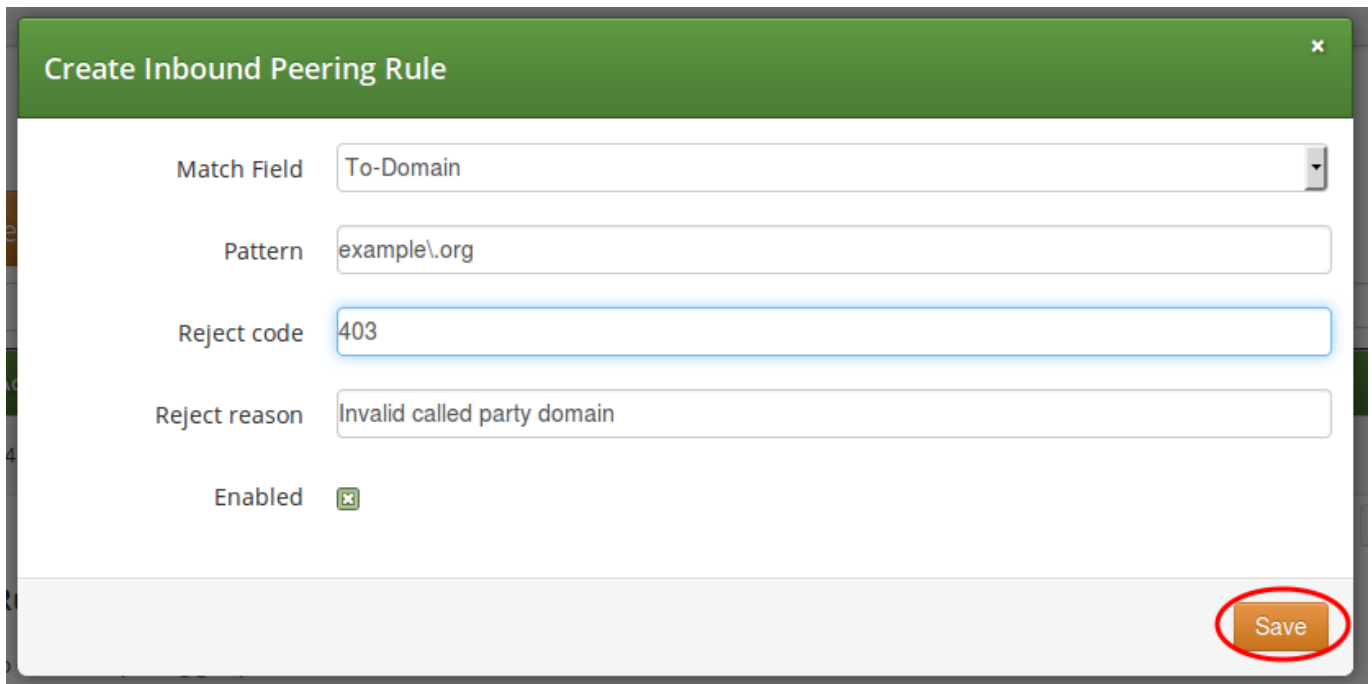


Figure 17: Inbound Peering Rule Properties

- **Match Field**: select which header and which part of that header in a SIP INVITE message will be checked for matching the pattern
- **Pattern**: a POSIX regular expression that defines the accepted value of a header; example: `^sip:.*@example\.org$` —this will match a SIP URI that contains "example.org" in the domain part
- **Reject code**: optional; a SIP status code that will be sent as a response to an INVITE request that does not match the pattern; example: 403
- **Reject reason**: optional; an arbitrary text that will be included in the SIP response sent with the *reject code*
- **Enabled**: a flag to enable / disable the particular inbound peering rule

---

#### Note

Both of the properties **Reject code** and **Reject reason** must be left empty if a peering server (i.e. a specific IP address) is part of more peering groups. Such a configuration is useful when an incoming SIP INVITE request needs to be treated differently in the affected peering groups, based on its content, and that's why if the INVITE message only partly matches an inbound peering rule it should not simply be rejected.

---

When all settings for a peering group are done the details of the group look like:

**Peering Servers**

[← Back](#)
[★ Create Peering Server](#)

Show  entries Search:

#	^	Name	IP Address	Hostname	Port	Protocol	Weight	Via Route Set	Enabled
29		test-gw-1	2.3.4.5		5060	1	1		1

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries 
[←](#)
[←](#)
[1](#)
[→](#)
[⇒](#)

**Outbound Peering Rules**

ANY of the rules must match to choose the peering group for outbound calls.

[★ Create Outbound Peering Rule](#)

Show  entries Search:

#	^	Callee Prefix	Callee Pattern	Caller Pattern	Description	Enabled
1					Default rule	1

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries 
[←](#)
[←](#)
[1](#)
[→](#)
[⇒](#)

**Inbound Peering Rules**

ALL of the rules must match to choose the peering group for inbound calls.

[★ Create Inbound Peering Rule](#)

Show  entries Search:

Priority	#	Field	Pattern	Reject Code	Reject Reason	Enabled
50	1	to_domain	example\org	403	Invalid called party domain	1

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries 
[←](#)
[←](#)
[1](#)
[→](#)
[⇒](#)

Figure 18: Peering Servers Overview

### 3.5.2.3 Peering Group Selection Procedure

The selection of peering groups and peering servers for outgoing calls is done in the following way:

1. All peering groups are selected as candidates that meet the following criteria:
  - Callee's username matches *callee prefix*
  - Callee's URI matches *callee pattern*
  - Caller's URI matches *caller pattern* of the outbound peering rule.
2. From the peering group candidates those are considered for further selection where the longest match with *callee prefix* occurs.
3. **Priority** of the peering group will decide the order in which peering groups will be tried for routing the outbound call.

**Important**

A lower priority value means higher effective priority.

The valid range of values is: from "0" for highest priority to "255" for lowest priority.

4. All peering servers in the group with the highest priority (i.e. with the lowest priority value) are tried one by one. The **weight** of the peering servers in the selected peering group will influence the order in which the servers will be tried for routing the outbound call. The weight of a server is an integer value in the range of "1" to "254".

**Important**

A server with higher weight value does *not* always take precedence over a server with lower weight, although the former one has a higher chance to be the first. The weight of a peering server just defines the probability that it will get a call first.

In order to find out this probability knowing the weights of peering servers, use the following script:

```
#!/usr/bin/php
<?php

// This script can be used to find out actual probabilities
// that correspond to a list of peering weights.

if ($argc < 2) {
    echo "Usage: lcr_weight_test.php <list of weights (integers 1-254)>\n";
    exit;
}

$iters = 10000;

$rand = array();
for ($i = 1; $i <= $iters; $i++) {
    $elem = array();
    for ($j = 1; $j < $argc; $j++) {
        $elem["$j"] = $argv[$j] * (rand() >> 8);
    }
    $rand[] = $elem;
}

$sorted = array();
foreach ($rand as $r) {
    asort($r);
    $sorted[] = $r;
}
```

```
$counts = array();
for ($j = 1; $j < $argc; $j++) {
    $counts["$j"] = 0;
}

foreach ($sorted as $rand) {
    end($rand);
    $counts[key($rand)]++;
}

for ($j = 1; $j < $argc; $j++) {
    echo "Peer with weight " . $argv[$j] . " has probability " . $counts["$j"]/$iters . "\n";
}
?>
```

Let us say you have 2 peering servers, one with weight 1 and another with weight 2. At the end—running the script as below—you will have the following traffic distribution:

```
# lcr_weight_test.php 1 2

Peer with weight 1 has probability 0.2522
Peer with weight 2 has probability 0.7478
```

If a peering server replies with SIP codes 408, 500 or 503, or if a peering server doesn't respond at all, the next peering server in the current peering group is tried as a fallback. All the servers within the group are tried one after another until the call succeeds. If no more servers are left in the current peering group, the next group which matches the outbound peering rules is used.

### 3.5.3 Authenticating and Registering against Peering Servers

#### 3.5.3.1 Proxy-Authentication for outbound calls

If a peering server requires the sip:carrier to authenticate for outbound calls (by sending a 407 as response to an INVITE), then you have to configure the authentication details in the *Preferences* view of your peer host.

### Peering Servers

[← Back](#) [★ Create Peering Server](#)

Show  entries Search:

#	^	Name	IP Address	Hostname	Port	Protocol	Weight	Via Route Set	Enabled	
29		test-gw-1	2.3.4.5		5060	1	1		1	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> <a href="#">Preferences</a>

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries ← 1 →

### Outbound Peering Rules

ANY of the rules must match to choose the peering group for outbound calls.

[★ Create Outbound Peering Rule](#)

Show  entries Search:

#	^	Callee Prefix	Callee Pattern	Caller Pattern	Description	Enabled	
1					Default rule	1	

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries ← 1 →

### Inbound Peering Rules

ALL of the rules must match to choose the peering group for inbound calls.

[★ Create Inbound Peering Rule](#)

Figure 19: Select Peering Server Preferences

To configure this setting, open the *Remote Authentication* tab and edit the following three preferences:

- **peer\_auth\_user:** <username for peer auth>
- **peer\_auth\_pass:** <password for peer auth>
- **peer\_auth\_realm:** <domain for peer auth>

[< Back](#)

Preference peer\_auth\_realm successfully updated.

Access Restrictions

Number Manipulations

NAT and Media Flow Control

Remote Authentication

	Name	Value	
?	peer_auth_user 1	peeruser1	
?	peer_auth_pass 2	peerpass1	
?	peer_auth_realm 3	testpeering.com	
?	peer_auth_register	<input type="checkbox"/>	
?	find_subscriber_by_uuid	<input type="checkbox"/>	

Session Timers

### Important



If you do NOT authenticate against a peer host, then the caller CLI is put into the From and P-Asserted-Identity headers, e.g. "+4312345" <sip:+4312345@your-domain.com>. If you DO authenticate, then the From header is "+4312345" <sip:your\_peer\_auth\_user@your\_peer\_auth\_realm> (the CLI is in the Display field, the peer\_auth\_user in the From username and the peer\_auth\_realm in the From domain), and the P-Asserted-Identity header is as usual like <sip:+4312345@your-domain.com>. So for presenting the correct CLI in *CLIP no screening* scenarios, your peering provider needs to extract the correct user either from the From Display-Name or from the P-Asserted-Identity URI-User.

### Tip

You will notice that these three preferences are also shown in the *Subscriber Preferences* for each subscriber. There you can override the authentication details for all peer host if needed, e.g. if every user authenticates with his own separate credentials at your peering provider.

### Tip

If **peer\_auth\_realm** is set, the system may overwrite the Request-URI with the peer\_auth\_realm value of the peer when sending the call to that peer or peer\_auth\_realm value of the subscriber when sending a call to the subscriber. Since this is rarely a desired behavior, it is disabled by default starting with NGCP release 3.2. If you need the replacement, you should set `set_ruri_to_peer_auth_realm: 'yes'` in `/etc/ngcp-config/config.yml`.

### 3.5.3.2 Registering at a Peering Server

Unfortunately, the credentials configured above are not yet automatically used to register the sip:carrier at your peer hosts. There is however an easy manual way to do so, until this is addressed.

Configure your peering servers with the corresponding credentials in `/etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/ngcp-sems/etc/reg_agent.conf.tt2`, then execute `ngcpcfg apply 'added upstream credentials'`.

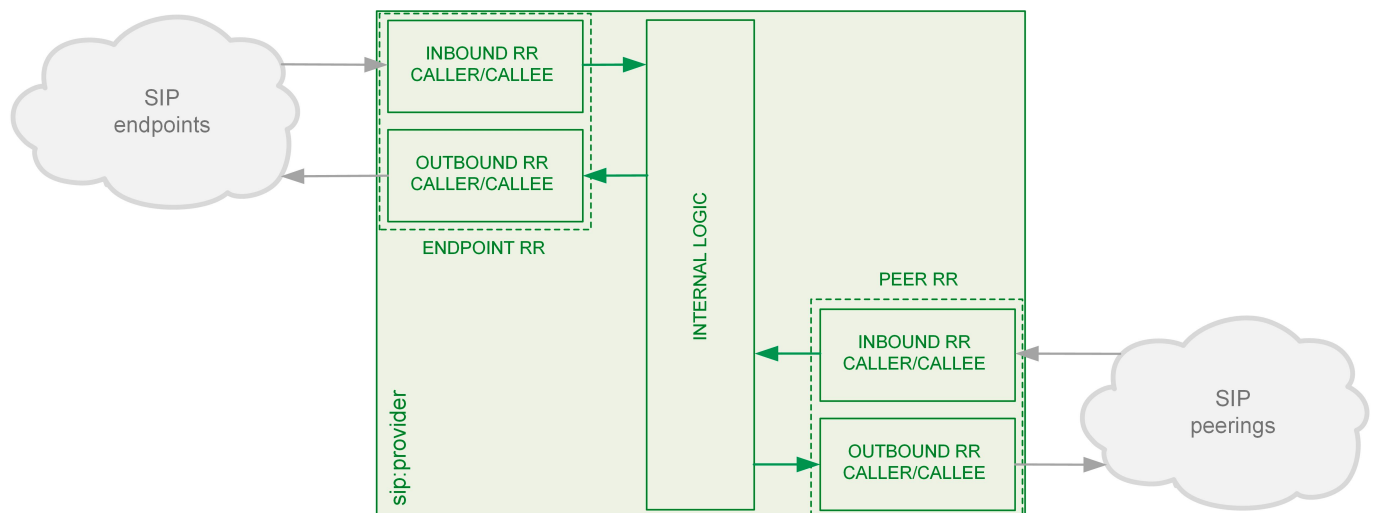


#### Important

Be aware that this will force SEMS to restart, which will drop all calls.

## 3.6 Configuring Rewrite Rule Sets

On the NGCP, every phone number is treated in E.164 format `<country code><area code><subscriber number>`. Rewrite Rule Sets is a flexible tool to translate the caller and callee numbers to the proper format before the routing lookup and after the routing lookup separately. The created Rewrite Rule Sets can be assigned to the domains, subscribers and peers as a preference. Here below you can see how the Rewrite Rules are used by the system:



As from the image above, following the arrows, you will have an idea about which type of Rewrite Rules are applied during a call. In general:

- Call from local subscriber A to local subscriber B: Inbound RR from local Domain/Subscriber A and Outbound Rewrite Rules from local Domain/Subscriber B.
- Call from local subscriber A to the peer: Inbound RR from local Domain/Subscriber A and Outbound Rewrite Rules from the peer.
- Call from peer to local subscriber B: Inbound RR from the Peer and Outbound Rewrite Rules from local Domain/Subscriber B.

You would normally begin with creating a Rewrite Rule Set for your SIP domains. This is used to control what an end user can dial



for outbound calls, and what is displayed as the calling party on inbound calls. The subscribers within a domain inherit Rewrite Rule Sets of that domain, unless this is overridden by a subscriber Rewrite Rule Set preference.

You can use several special variables in the Rewrite Rules, below you can find a list of them. Some examples of how to use them are also provided in the following sections:

- `${caller_cc}` : This is the value taken from the subscriber's preference CC value under Number Manipulation
- `${caller_ac}` : This is the value taken from the subscriber's preference AC value under Number Manipulation
- `${caller_emergency_cli}` : This is the value taken from the subscriber's preference emergency\_cli value under Number Manipulation
- `${caller_emergency_prefix}` : This is the value taken from the subscriber's preference emergency\_prefix value under Number Manipulation
- `${caller_emergency_suffix}` : This is the value taken from the subscriber's preference emergency\_suffix value under Number Manipulation
- `${caller_cloud_pbx_base_cli}` : This is the value taken from the *Primary Number* field from section *Details* → *Master Data* of the *Pilot Subscriber* for a particular PBX customer.

To create a new Rewrite Rule Set, go to *Settings* → *Rewrite Rule Sets*. There you can create a Set identified by a name. This name is later shown in your peer-, domain- and user-preferences where you can select the rule set you want to use.

Logged in as administrator Logout

**sip:wise NGCP Dashboard** Settings

## Rewrite Rule Sets

← Back ★ Create Rewrite Rule Set

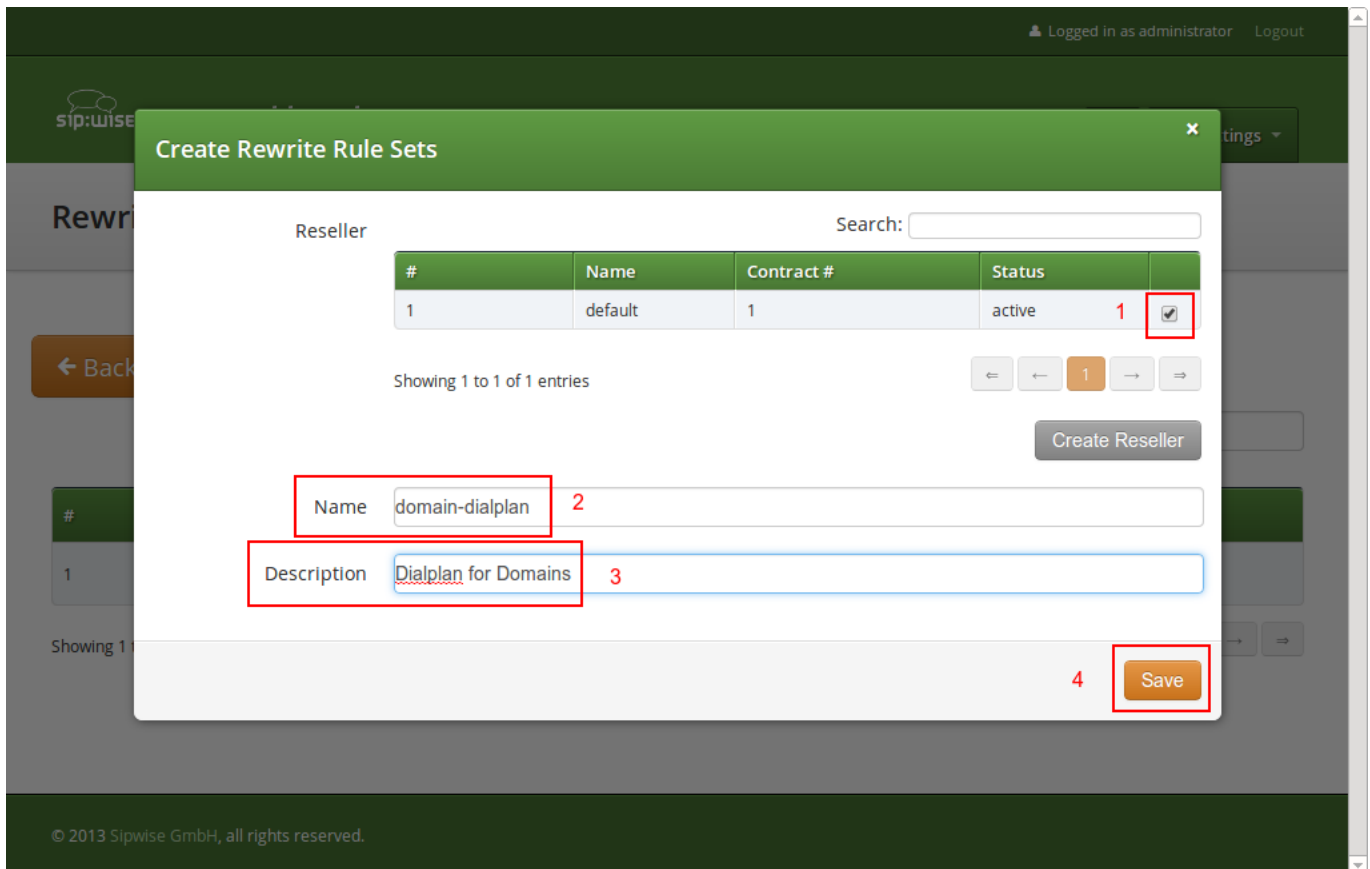
Search:

#	Reseller	Name	Description
1	default	defaultdom	Default Domain

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries


© 2013 Sipwise GmbH, all rights reserved.

Click *Create Rewrite Rule Set* and fill in the form accordingly.



Press the *Save* button to create the set.

To view the *Rewrite Rules* within a set, hover over the row and click the *Rules* button.


**NGCP Dashboard**

Logged in as administrator
Logout

Home
Settings

## Rewrite Rule Sets

← Back
★ Create Rewrite Rule Set

Rewrite rule set successfully created

Search:

#	Reseller	Name	Description	
1	default	defaultdom	Default Domain	
2	default	domain-dialplan	Dialplan for Domains	<span>Edit</span> <span>Delete</span> <span>Rules</span>

Showing 1 to 2 of 2 entries

←
←
1
→
→

The rules are ordered by *Caller* and *Callee* as well as direction *Inbound* and *Outbound*.

### Tip

In Europe, the following formats are widely accepted: `+<cc><ac><sn>`, `00<cc><ac><sn>` and `0<ac><sn>`. Also, some countries allow the areacode-internal calls where only subscriber number is dialed to reach another number in the same area. Within this section, we will use these formats to show how to use rewrite rules to normalize and denormalize number formats.

### 3.6.1 Inbound Rewrite Rules for Caller

These rules are used to normalize user-provided numbers (e.g. passed in *From Display Name* or *P-Preferred-Identity* headers) into E.164 format. In our example, we'll normalize the three different formats mentioned above into E.164 format.

To create the following rules, click on the *Create Rewrite Rule* for each of them and fill them with the values provided below.

STRIP LEADING 00 OR +

- Match Pattern: `^(00|\+)([1-9][0-9]+)$`
- Replacement Pattern: `\2`
- Description: `International to E.164`
- Direction: `Inbound`

- Field: Caller

REPLACE 0 BY CALLER'S COUNTRY CODE:

- Match Pattern: `^0([1-9][0-9]+)$`
- Replacement Pattern: `${caller_cc}\1`
- Description: National to E.164
- Direction: Inbound
- Field: Caller

NORMALIZE LOCAL CALLS:

- Match Pattern: `^([1-9][0-9]+)$`
- Replacement Pattern: `${caller_cc}${caller_ac}\1`
- Description: Local to E.164
- Direction: Inbound
- Field: Caller

The screenshot shows the 'Create Rule' dialog in the sip:wise interface. The dialog is a green box with a close button (X) in the top right. It contains several input fields, each with a red box and a red number indicating a step:

- Match pattern: `^([00|+)([1-9][0-9]+)$`
- Replacement Pattern: `\2`
- Description: International to E.164
- Direction: Inbound (dropdown menu)
- Field: Caller (dropdown menu)
- Save button

The background shows a sidebar with 'Rewrite' and 'Inbound'/'Outbound' buttons, and a top bar with 'Logged in as administrator' and 'Logout'.

Normalization for national and local calls is possible with special variables `${caller_cc}` and `${caller_ac}` that can be used in Replacement Pattern and are substituted by the country and area code accordingly during the call routing.

**Important**

These variables are only being filled in when a call originates from a subscriber (because only then the cc/ac information is known by the system), so you can not use them when a calls comes from a SIP peer (the variables will be just empty in this case).

**Tip**







When routing a call, the rewrite processing is stopped after the first match of a rule, starting from top to bottom. If you have two rules (e.g. a generic one and a more specific one), where both of them would match some numbers, reorder them with the up/down arrows into the appropriate position.

## Rewrite Rules for domain-dialplan

[< Back](#)
[★ Create Rewrite Rule](#)

Rewrite rule successfully created

### Inbound Rewrite Rules for Caller

	Match Pattern	Replacement Pattern	Description	
1	 	^(00 \+)([1-9][0-9]+)\$	\2	International to E.164
	  2	^0([1-9][0-9]+)\$	\${caller_cc}\1	National to E.164
	 	^([1-9][0-9]+)\$	\${caller_cc}\${caller_ac}\1	Local to E.164

### Inbound Rewrite Rules for Callee

### Outbound Rewrite Rules for Caller

### Outbound Rewrite Rules for Callee

### 3.6.2 Inbound Rewrite Rules for Callee

These rules are used to rewrite the number the end user dials to place a call to a standard format for routing lookup. In our example, we again allow the three different formats mentioned above and again normalize them to E.164, so we put in the same rules as for the caller.

STRIP LEADING 00 OR +

- Match Pattern: ^ (00|\+) ([1-9] [0-9]+) \$
- Replacement Pattern: \2

- **Description:** International to E.164
- **Direction:** Inbound
- **Field:** Callee

REPLACE 0 BY CALLER'S COUNTRY CODE:

- **Match Pattern:** `^0([1-9][0-9]+)$`
- **Replacement Pattern:** `${caller_cc}\1`
- **Description:** National to E.164
- **Direction:** Inbound
- **Field:** Callee

NORMALIZE AREACODE-INTERNAL CALLS:

- **Match Pattern:** `^([1-9][0-9]+)$`
- **Replacement Pattern:** `${caller_cc}${caller_ac}\1`
- **Description:** Local to E.164
- **Direction:** Inbound
- **Field:** Callee

---

#### Tip

Our provided rules will only match if the caller dials a numeric number. If he dials an alphanumeric SIP URI, none of our rules will match and no rewriting will be done. You can however define rules for that as well. For example, you could allow your end users to dial `support` and rewrite that to your support hotline using the match pattern `^support$` and the replace pattern `43800999000` or whatever your support hotline number is.

---

### 3.6.3 Outbound Rewrite Rules for Caller

These rules are used to rewrite the calling party number for a call to an end user. For example, if you want the device of your end user to show `0<ac><sn>` if a national number calls this user, and `00<cc><ac><sn>` if an international number calls, put the following rules there.

REPLACE AUSTRIAN COUNTRY CODE 43 BY 0

- **Match Pattern:** `^43([1-9][0-9]+)$`
- **Replacement Pattern:** `0\1`
- **Description:** E.164 to Austria National

- **Direction:** Outbound
- **Field:** Caller

#### PREFIX 00 FOR INTERNATIONAL CALLER

- **Match Pattern:** `^([1-9][0-9]+)$`
- **Replacement Pattern:** `00\1`
- **Description:** E.164 to International
- **Direction:** Outbound
- **Field:** Caller

---

#### Tip

Note that both of the rules would match a number starting with 43, so reorder the national rule to be above the international one (if it's not already the case).

---

### 3.6.4 Outbound Rewrite Rules for Callee

These rules are used to rewrite the called party number immediately before sending out the call on the network. This gives you an extra flexibility by controlling the way request appears on a wire, when your SBC or other device expects the called party number to have a particular tech-prefix. It can be used on calls to end users too if you want to do some processing in intermediate SIP device, e.g. apply legal intercept selectively to some subscribers.

#### PREFIX SIPSP# FOR ALL CALLS

- **Match Pattern:** `^([0-9]+)$`
- **Replacement Pattern:** `sipsp#\1`
- **Description:** Intercept this call
- **Direction:** Outbound
- **Field:** Callee

### 3.6.5 Emergency Number Handling

Configuring Emergency Numbers is also done via Rewrite Rules.

For Emergency Calls from a subscriber to the platform, you need to define an *Inbound Rewrite Rule For Callee*, which adds a prefix `emergency_` to the number (and can rewrite the number completely as well at the same time). If the proxy detects a call to a SIP URI starting with `emergency_`, it will enter a special routing logic bypassing various checks which might make a normal call fail (e.g. due to locked or blocked numbers, insufficient credits or exceeding the max. amount of parallel calls).

#### TAG AN EMERGENCY CALL

- Match Pattern: `^(911|112)$`
- Replacement Pattern: `emergency_\1`
- Description: Tag Emergency Numbers
- Direction: Inbound
- Field: Callee

To route an Emergency Call to a Peer, you can select a specific peering group by adding a peering rule with a *callee prefix* set to `emergency_` to a peering group.

In order to normalize the emergency number to a valid format accepted by the peer, you need to assign an *Outbound Rewrite Rule For Callee*, which strips off the `emergency_` prefix. You can also use the variables `${caller_emergency_cli}`, `${caller_emergency_prefix}` and `${caller_emergency_suffix}` as well as `${caller_ac}` and `${caller_cc}`, which are all configurable per subscriber to rewrite the number into a valid format.

#### NORMALIZE EMERGENCY CALL FOR PEER

- Match Pattern: `^emergency_(.+)$`
- Replacement Pattern: `${caller_emergency_prefix}${caller_ac}\1`
- Description: Normalize Emergency Numbers
- Direction: Outbound
- Field: Callee

### 3.6.6 Assigning Rewrite Rule Sets to Domains and Subscribers

Once you have finished to define your Rewrite Rule Sets, you need to assign them. For sets to be used for subscribers, you can assign them to their corresponding domain, which then acts as default set for all subscribers. To do so, go to *Settings*→*Domains* and click *Preferences* on the domain you want the set to assign to. Click on *Edit* and select the Rewrite Rule Set created before.



← Back

Call Blockings

Access Restrictions 1

Number Manipulations

	Name	Value	
?	rewrite_rule_set 2	defaultdom	3  Edit
?	extension_in_npn	<input type="checkbox"/>	
?	inbound_upn	From-Username	
?	outbound_from_user	User-Provided-Number	

You can do the same in the *Preferences* of your subscribers to override the rule on a subscriber basis. That way, you can finely control down to an individual user the dial-plan to be used. Go to *Settings*→*Subscribers*, click the *Details* button on the subscriber you want to edit, then click the *Preferences* button.

### 3.6.7 Creating Dialplans for Peering Servers

For each peering server, you can use one of the Rewrite Rule Sets that was created previously as explained in Section 3.6 (keep in mind that special variables `${caller_ac}` and `${caller_cc}` can not be used when the call comes from a peer). To do so, click on the name of the peering server, look for the preference called *Rewrite Rule Sets*.

If your peering servers don't send numbers in E.164 format `<cc><ac><sn>`, you need to create *Inbound Rewrite Rules* for each peering server to normalize the numbers for caller and callee to this format, e.g. by stripping leading + or put them from national into E.164 format.

Likewise, if your peering servers don't accept this format, you need to create *Outbound Rewrite Rules* for each of them, for example to append a + to the numbers.

## 4 Features

The sip:carrier provides plenty of subscriber features to offer compelling VoIP services to end customers, and also to cover as many deployment scenarios as possible. In this chapter, we provide the features overview and describe their function and use cases.

### 4.1 Managing System Administrators

The sip:carrier offers the platform operator with an easy to use interface to manage users with administrative privileges. Such users are representatives of resellers, and are entitled to manage configuration of services for *Customers*, *Subscribers*, *Domains*, *Billing Profiles* and other entities on Sipwise NGCP.

Administrators, as user accounts, are also used for client authentication on the REST API of NGCP.

There is a single administrator, whose account is enabled by default and who belongs to the *default reseller*. This user is the *superuser* of the NGCP administrative web interface (the so-called "admin panel"), and he has the right to modify administrators of other *Resellers* as well.

#### 4.1.1 Configuring Administrators

Configuration of access rights of system administrators is possible through the admin panel of NGCP. In order to do that, please navigate to *Settings* → *Administrators*.

**Administrators**

← Back   **★ Create Administrator**

Administrator successfully updated

Show 5 entries   Search

#	Reseller	Login	Master	Active	Read Only	Show Passwords	Show CDRs	Show Billing Info	Lawful Intercept
1	default	administrator	1	1	0	1	1	1	1
3	Demo Reseller	demoadmin	1	1	0	1	1	0	0

Showing 1 to 2 of 2 entries

1

Figure 20: List of System Administrators

You have 2 options:

- If you'd like to **create** a new administrator user press *Create Administrator* button.

- If you'd like to **update** an existing administrator user press *Edit* button in its row.

There are some generic attributes that have to be set for each administrator:

**Edit Administrator** ✕

Reseller Search:

#	Name	Contract #	Status	
16	Demo Reseller	200	active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
1	default	1	active	<input type="checkbox"/>
		137	active	<input type="checkbox"/>

Showing 1 to 3 of 3 entries

← ← 1 → →

Create Reseller

Login

Password

Is superuser ☐

Save

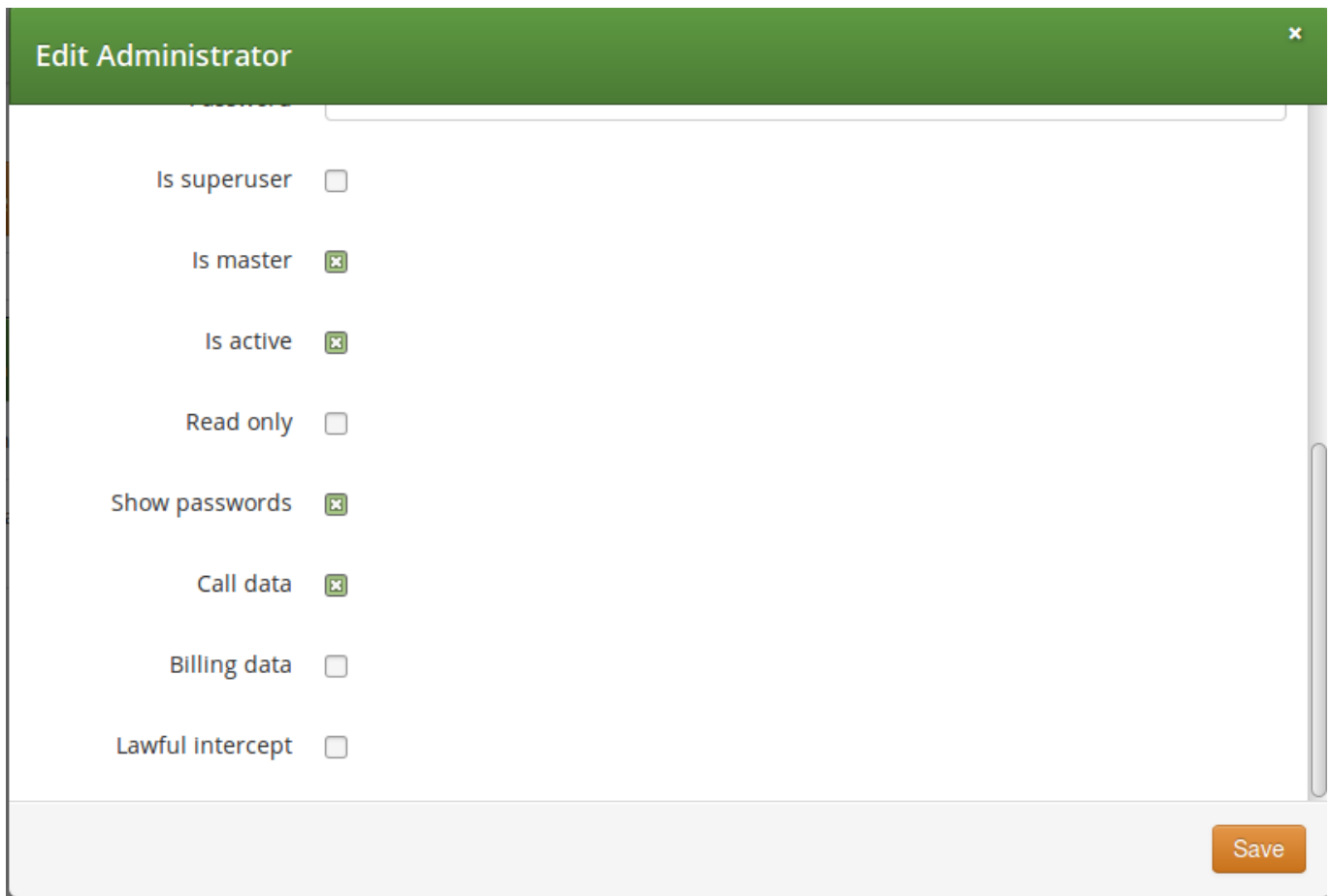
Figure 21: Generic System Administrator Attributes

- *Reseller*: each administrator user must belong to a *Reseller*. There is always a default reseller (ID: 1, Name: default), but the administrator has to be assigned to his real reseller, if such an entity (other than default) exists.
- *Login*: the login name of the administrator user
- *Password*: the password of the administrator user for logging in the admin panel, or for authentication on REST API

The second set of attributes is a list of access rights that are discussed in subsequent section of the handbook.

#### 4.1.2 Access Rights of Administrators

The various access rights of administrators are shown in the figure and summarized in the table below.



The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Edit Administrator" with a green header bar. Below the header, there is a list of access rights, each with a label and a checkbox. The checkboxes for "Is master", "Is active", "Show passwords", "Call data", and "Billing data" are checked, while "Is superuser", "Read only", and "Lawful Intercept" are unchecked. A "Save" button is located at the bottom right of the form.

Access Right	Checked
Is superuser	<input type="checkbox"/>
Is master	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Is active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Read only	<input type="checkbox"/>
Show passwords	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Call data	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Billing data	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Lawful Intercept	<input type="checkbox"/>

Figure 22: Access Rights of System Administrators

Table 1: Access Rights of System Administrators

Label in admin list	Access Right	Description
<i>not shown</i>	Is superuser	The user is allowed to modify data on Reseller level and — among others — is able to modify administrators of other resellers. There should be only 1 user on Sipwise NGCP with this privilege.
Master	Is master	The user is allowed to create, delete or modify other Admins who belong to the same Reseller.
Active	Is active	The user account is active, i.e. the admin user can login on the web panel or authenticate himself on REST API; otherwise user authentication will fail.

Table 1: (continued)

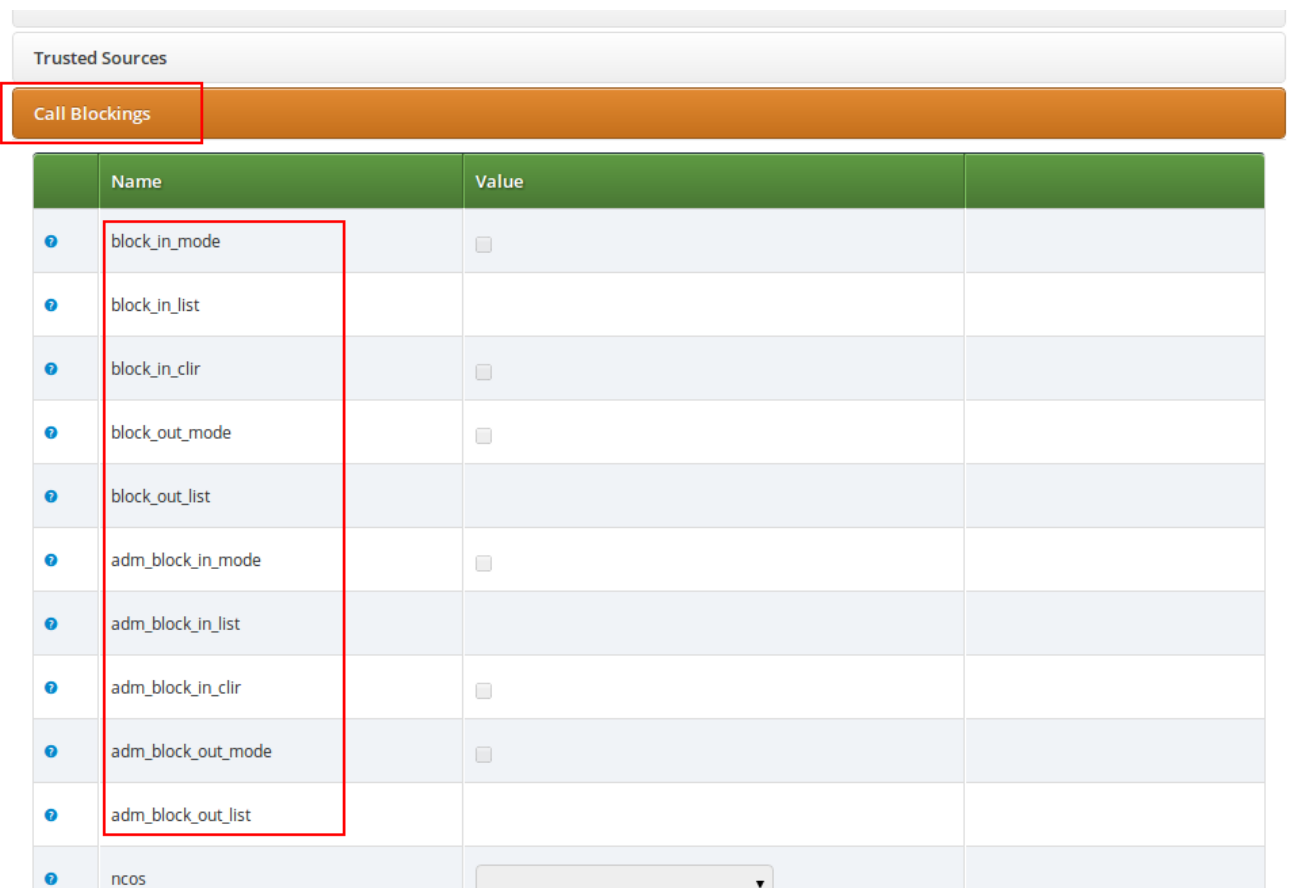
Label in admin list	Access Right	Description
Read Only	Read only	<p>The user will only be able to list various data but is not allowed to modify anything.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For the <b>web interface</b> this means that <i>Create...</i> and <i>Edit</i> buttons will be hidden or disabled.</li> <li>For the <b>REST API</b> this means that only <code>GET</code>, <code>HEAD</code>, <code>OPTIONS</code> HTTP request methods are accepted, and NGCP will reject those targeting data modification: <code>PUT</code>, <code>PATCH</code>, <code>POST</code>, <code>DELETE</code>.</li> </ul>
Show Passwords	Show passwords	<p>The user sees subscriber passwords (in plain text) on the web interface.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>Admin panel user passwords are stored in an unreadable way (cryptographic hash digest) in the database, while subscriber passwords are basically always stored in plain text. The latter happens on purpose, e.g. to make subscriber data migration possible.</p> <hr/>
Show CDRs	Call data	<p>This privilege has effect on 2 items that will be displayed on admin panel of NGCP, when <i>Subscriber</i> → <i>Details</i> is selected:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>PBX Groups</i> list</li> <li>2. <i>Captured Dialogs</i> list</li> </ol>
Show Billing Info	Billing data	<p>Some REST API resources that are related to billing are disabled: HTTP requests on <code>/api/vouchers</code>, <code>/api/topupcash</code> and <code>/api/topupvoucher</code> resources are rejected.</p>
Lawful Intercept	Lawful intercept	<p>If the privilege is selected then the REST API for interceptions (that is: <code>/api/interceptions</code>) is enabled; if the privilege is not selected then the interceptions API is disabled.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>This means that besides enabling LI in <code>config.yml</code> configuration file one also needs to enable the API via the LI privilege of an administrator user, so that NGCP can really provide LI service.</p> <hr/>

## 4.2 Access Control for SIP Calls

There are two different methods to provide fine-grained call admission control to both subscribers and admins. One is *Block Lists*, where you can define which numbers or patterns can be called from a subscriber to the outbound direction and which numbers or patterns are allowed to call a subscriber in the inbound direction. The other is *NCOS Levels*, where the admin predefines rules for outbound calls, which are grouped in certain levels. The subscriber can then just choose the level, or the admin can restrict a subscriber to a certain level. Also sip:carrier offers some options to restrict the IP addresses that subscriber is allowed to use the service from. The following sections describe these features in detail.

### 4.2.1 Block Lists

*Block Lists* provide a way to control which users/numbers can call or be called, based on a subscriber level, and can be found in the *Call Blockings* section of the subscriber preferences.



	Name	Value
?	block_in_mode	<input type="checkbox"/>
?	block_in_list	
?	block_in_clir	<input type="checkbox"/>
?	block_out_mode	<input type="checkbox"/>
?	block_out_list	
?	adm_block_in_mode	<input type="checkbox"/>
?	adm_block_in_list	
?	adm_block_in_clir	<input type="checkbox"/>
?	adm_block_out_mode	<input type="checkbox"/>
?	adm_block_out_list	
?	ncos	<input type="text"/>

Block Lists are separated into *Administrative Block Lists* (*adm\_block\_\**) and *Subscriber Block Lists* (*block\_\**). They both have the same behaviour, but Administrative Block Lists take higher precedence. Administrative Block Lists are only accessible by the system administrator and can thus be used to override any Subscriber Block Lists, e.g. to block certain destinations. The following break-down of the various block features apply to both types of lists.

#### 4.2.1.1 Block Modes

Block lists can either be *whitelists* or *blacklists* and are controlled by the User Preferences *block\_in\_mode*, *block\_out\_mode* and their administrative counterparts.

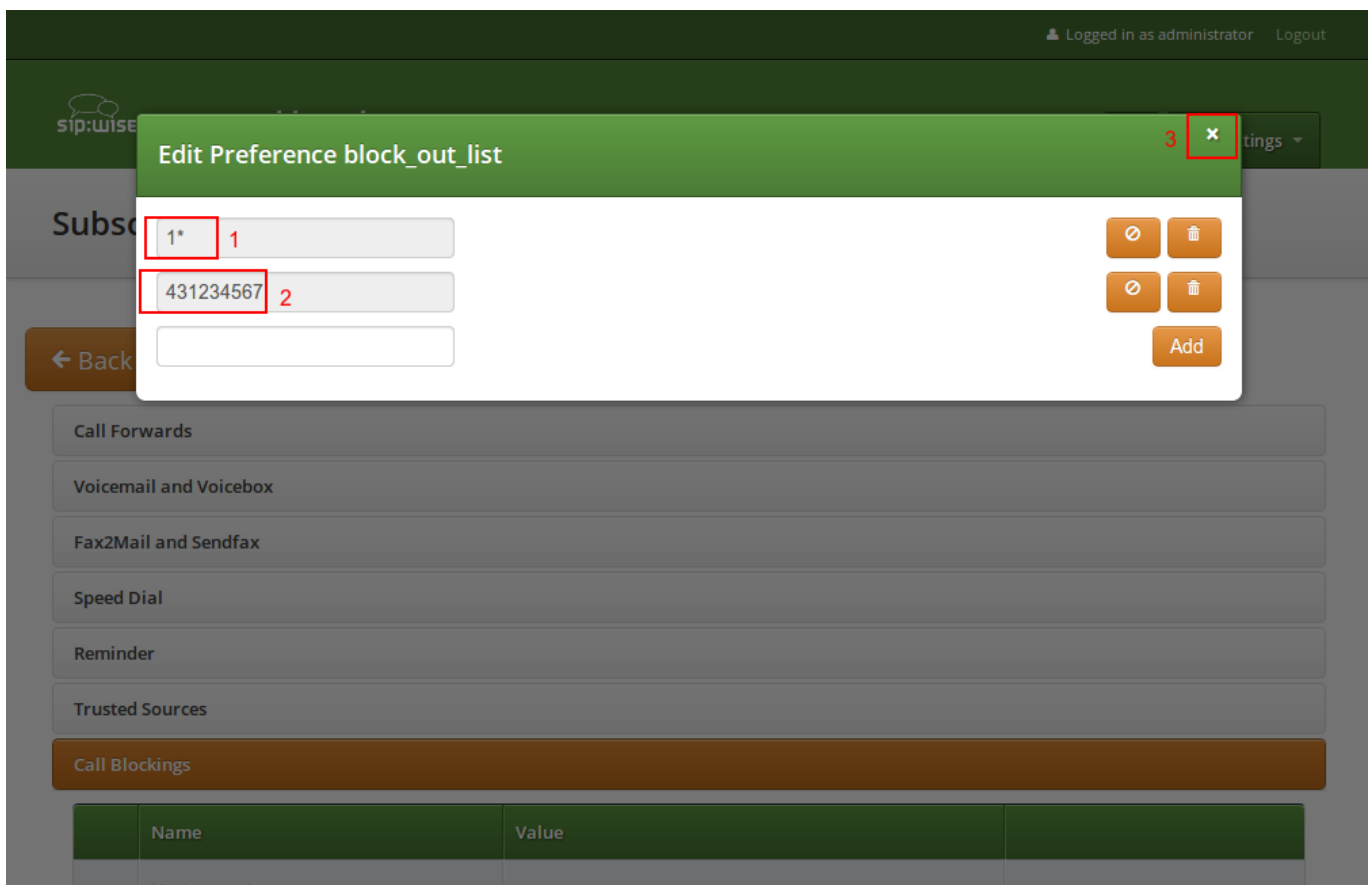
- The *blacklist* mode (option is not checked) tells the system to **allow anything except the entries in the list**. Use this mode if you just want to block certain numbers and allow all the rest.
- The *whitelist* mode indicates to **reject anything except the entries in the list**. Use this mode if you want to enforce a strict policy and allow only selected destinations or sources.

You can change a list mode from one to the other at any time.

#### 4.2.1.2 Block Lists

The list contents are controlled by the User Preferences *block\_in\_list*, *block\_out\_list* and their administrative counterparts. Click on the *Edit* button in the *Preferences* view to define the list entries.

In block list entries, you can provide shell patterns like `*` and `[]`. The behavior of the list is controlled by the *block\_xxx\_mode* feature (so they are either allowed or rejected). In our example above we have *block\_out\_mode* set to *blacklist*, so all calls to US numbers and to the Austrian number +431234567 are going to be rejected.



Click the *Close* icon once you're done editing your list.

#### 4.2.1.3 Block Anonymous Numbers

For incoming call, the User Preference *block\_in\_clir* and *adm\_block\_in\_clir* controls whether or not to reject incoming calls with number suppression (either "[Aa]nonymous" in the display- or user-part of the From-URI or a header *Privacy: id* is set). This flag is independent from the Block Mode.

#### 4.2.2 NCOS Levels

*NCOS Levels* provide predefined lists of allowed or denied destinations for outbound calls of local subscribers. Compared to *Block Lists*, they are much easier to manage, because they are defined on a global scope, and the individual levels can then be assigned to each subscriber. Again there is the distinction for user- and administrative-levels.

If case of a conflict, when the Block Lists feature allows a number and NCOS Levels rejects the same number or vice versa, the number will be rejected.

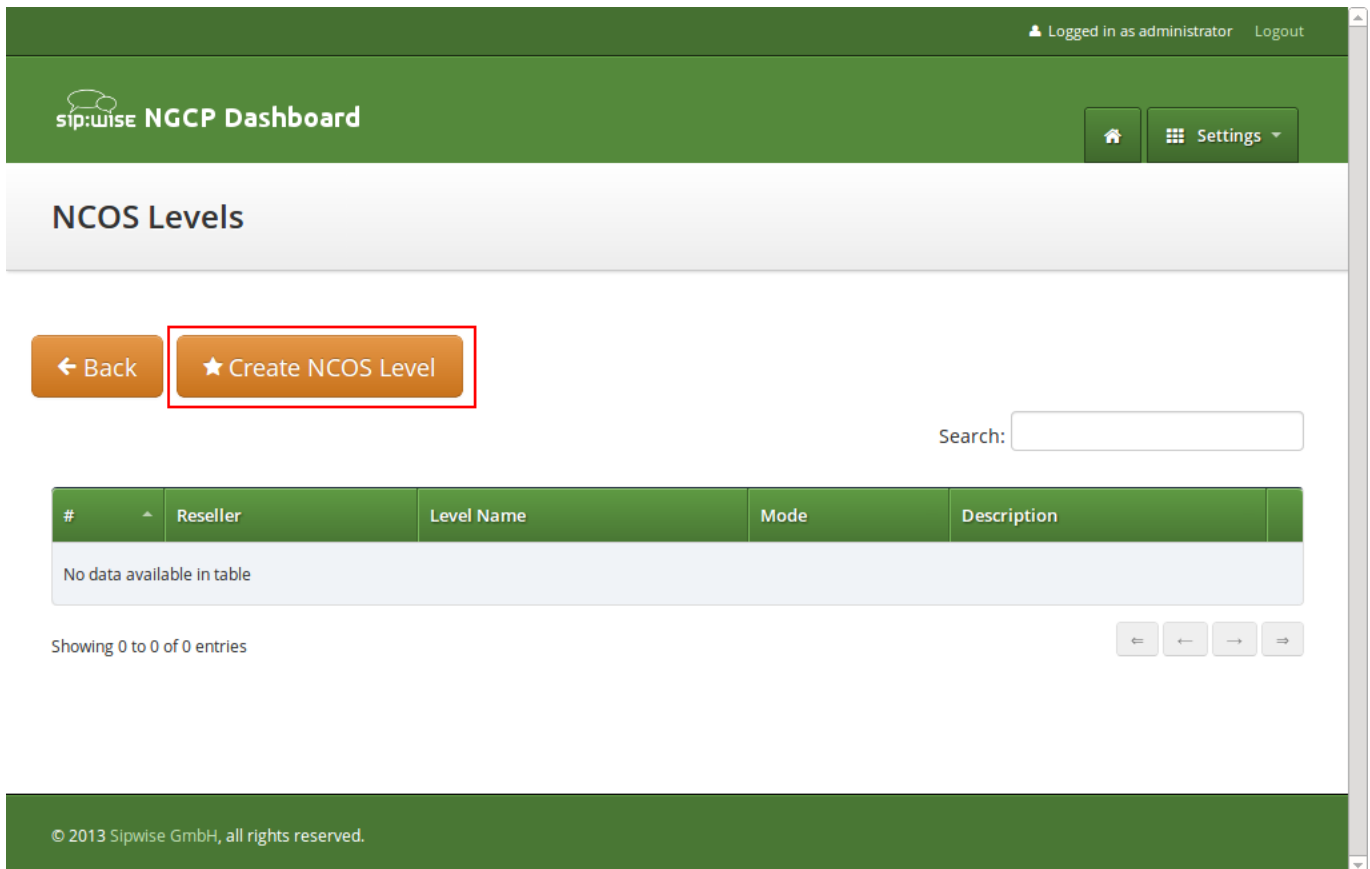
NCOS levels can either be *whitelists* or *blacklists*.

- The *blacklist* mode indicates to **allow everything except the entries in this level**. This mode is used if you want to just block certain destinations and allow all the rest.
- The *whitelist* mode indicates to **reject anything except the entries in this level**. This is used if you want to enforce a strict policy and allow only selected destinations.

##### 4.2.2.1 Creating NCOS Levels

To create an NCOS Level, go to *Settings*→*NCOS Levels* and press the *Create NCOS Level* button.





The screenshot shows the NGCP Dashboard interface. At the top, there is a green header bar with the 'sip:wise NGCP Dashboard' logo on the left and 'Logged in as administrator Logout' on the right. Below the header, there is a white bar with the title 'NCOS Levels'. Underneath, there are two orange buttons: '← Back' and '★ Create NCOS Level'. The 'Create NCOS Level' button is highlighted with a red rectangular box. To the right of these buttons is a search input field labeled 'Search:'. Below the buttons and search field is a table with the following columns: '#', 'Reseller', 'Level Name', 'Mode', and 'Description'. The table is currently empty, displaying the message 'No data available in table'. Below the table, it says 'Showing 0 to 0 of 0 entries' and there are four navigation buttons: '←', '←', '→', and '⇒'. At the bottom of the dashboard, there is a green footer bar with the text '© 2013 Sipwise GmbH, all rights reserved.'

Select a reseller, enter a name, select the mode and add a description, then click the *Save* button.

Logged in as administrator Logout

### Create NCOS Levels

Reseller Search:

#	Name	Contract #	Status	
1	default	1	active	1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries

Create Reseller

Level Name  2

Mode  3


Description  4



5

© 2013 Sipwise GmbH, all rights reserved.

#### 4.2.2.2 Creating Rules per NCOS Level

To define the rules within the newly created NCOS Level, click on the *Patterns* button of the level.

 **NGCP Dashboard**

  Settings ▾

## NCOS Levels






[< Back](#) [★ Create NCOS Level](#)

NCOS level successfully created

Search:

#	Reseller	Level Name	Mode	Description	
1	default	test	blacklist	NCOS Test Level	<a href="#">✎ Edit</a> <a href="#">🗑 Delete</a> <a href="#">📄 Patterns</a>

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries

   1  

© 2013 Sipwise GmbH, all rights reserved.

In the *Number Patterns* view you can create multiple patterns to define your level, one after the other. Click on the *Create Pattern Entry* Button on top and fill out the form.

Logged in as administrator Logout

sip:wise

### Create Number Pattern

Pattern  1

Description  2

3

#	Pattern	Description
2	^439	Austrian Premium Numbers

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries

☐ Include local area code

In this example, we block (since the mode of the level is *blacklist*) all numbers starting with 439. Click the *Save* button to save the entry in the level.

The option *include local area code in list* for a blacklist means that calls within the area code of the subscribers are denied, and for whitelist that they are allowed, respectively. For example if a subscriber has country-code 43 and area-code 1, then selecting this checkbox would result in an implicit entry `^431`.

#### 4.2.2.3 Assigning NCOS Levels to Subscribers/Domains

Once you've defined your NCOS Levels, you can assign them to local subscribers. To do so, navigate to *Settings*→*Subscribers*, search for the subscriber you want to edit, press the *Details* button and go to the *Preferences* View. There, press the *Edit* button on either the *ncos* or *adm\_ncos* setting in the *Call Blockings* section.

Call Blockings

1

	Name	Value	
	block_in_mode	<input type="checkbox"/>	
	block_in_list		
	block_in_clir	<input type="checkbox"/>	
	block_out_mode	<input type="checkbox"/>	
	block_out_list	1* 431234567	
	adm_block_in_mode	<input type="checkbox"/>	
	adm_block_in_list		
	adm_block_in_clir	<input type="checkbox"/>	
	adm_block_out_mode	<input type="checkbox"/>	
	adm_block_out_list		
	ncos 2	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; display: flex; align-items: center;"> <span style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 0 10px;">ncos</span> <span style="margin-left: 5px;">▼</span> </div>	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center; justify-content: flex-end;"> <span style="margin-right: 10px;">3</span> <div style="border: 1px solid red; padding: 2px 5px; background-color: #f4a460; font-weight: bold;">  Edit         </div> </div>

You can assign the NCOS level to all subscribers within a particular domain. To do so, navigate to *Settings*→*Domains*, select the domain you want to edit and click *Preferences*. There, press the *Edit* button on either *ncos* or *admin\_ncos* in the *Call Blockings* section.

Note: if both domain and subscriber have same NCOS preference set (either *ncos* or *adm\_ncos*, or both) the subscriber's preference is used. This is done so that you can override the domain-global setting on the subscriber level.

#### 4.2.2.4 Assigning NCOS Level for Forwarded Calls to Subscribers/Domains


In some countries there are regulatory requirements that prohibit subscribers from forwarding their numbers to special numbers like emergency, police etc. While the sip:carrier does not deny provisioning Call Forward to these numbers, the administrator can prevent the incoming calls from being actually forwarded to numbers defined in the NCOS list: just select the appropriate NCOS level in the domain's or subscriber's preference *adm\_cf\_ncos*. This NCOS will apply only to the Call Forward from the subscribers and not to the normal outgoing calls from them.

#### 4.2.3 IP Address Restriction

The sip:carrier provides subscriber preference *allowed\_ips* to restrict the IP addresses that subscriber is allowed to use the service from. If the REGISTER or INVITE request comes from an IP address that is not in the allowed list, the sip:carrier will reject it with a 403 message. Also a voice message can be played when the call attempt is rejected (if configured).

By default, *allowed\_ips* is an empty list which means that subscriber is not restricted. If you want to configure a restriction, navigate

to *Settings*→*Subscribers*, search for the subscriber you want to edit, press *Details* and then *Preferences* and press *Edit* for the *allowed\_ips* preference in the *Access Restrictions* section.

Call Blockings			
Access Restrictions			
1			
	Name	Value	
	lock		
	concurrent_max		
	concurrent_max_out		
	allowed_clis		
	reject_emergency	<input type="checkbox"/>	
	concurrent_max_per_account		
	concurrent_max_out_per_account		
	allowed_ips 2		3  Edit
	man_allowed_ips		
	ignore_allowed_ips	<input type="checkbox"/>	
	allow_out_foreign_domain	<input type="checkbox"/>	

Press the Edit button to the right of empty drop-down list.

You can enter multiple allowed IP addresses or IP address ranges one after another. Click the *Add* button to save each entry in the list. Click the *Delete* button if you want to remove some entry.

## 4.3 Call Forwarding and Call Hunting

The sip:carrier provides the capabilities for normal *call forwarding* (deflecting a call for a local subscriber to another party immediately or based on events like the called party being busy or doesn't answer the phone for a certain number of seconds) and *serial call hunting* (sequentially executing a group of deflection targets until one of them succeeds). Targets can be stacked, which means if a target is also a local subscriber, it can have another call forward or hunt group which is executed accordingly.

Call Forwards and Call Hunting Groups can either be executed unconditionally or based on a *Time Set Definition*, so you can define deflections based on time period definitions (e.g. Monday to Friday 8am to 4pm etc).

### 4.3.1 Setting a simple Call Forward

Go to your *Subscriber Preferences* and click *Edit* on the Call Forward Type you want to set (e.g. *Call Forward Unconditional*).

Logged in as administrator Logout

sip:wise

### Edit Call Forward Unconditional

Destination

- ☐ Voicemail
- ☐ Conference
- ☒ URI/Number

1

2 URI/Number 4312345

for (seconds) 300

3

Advanced View Save

Subs...

← Back

Call For...

Type

Call Fo...

Call Fo...

Call Forward Timeout

Call Forward Unavailable

Voicemail and Voicebox

If you select *URI/Number* in the *Destination* field, you also have to set a *URI/Number*. The timeout defines for how long this destination should be tried to ring.

#### 4.3.2 Advanced Call Hunting

If you want multiple destinations to be executed one after the other, you need to change into the *Advanced View* when editing your call forward. There, you can select multiple *Destination Set/Time Set* pairs to be executed.

A *Destination Set* is a list of destinations to be executed one after another.

A *Time Set* is a time definition when to execute this *Destination Set*.

##### 4.3.2.1 Configuring Destination Sets

Click on *Manage Destination Sets* to see a list of available sets. The *quickset\_cfu* has been implicitly created during our creation of a simple call forward. You can edit it to add more destinations, or you can create a new destination set.

1 Name my test set

Destination ☐ Voicemail ☒ 2 URI/Number

3 URI/Number 12345

for (seconds) 300

4 Priority 1

Remove

optional 5 Add another destination

6 Save

When you close the *Destination Set Overview*, you can now assign your new set in addition or instead of the *quickset\_cfu* set.



1 Destination Set quickset\_cfu

during Time Set <always>

optional 2 via "Add more"

Destination Set my test set

during Time Set <always>

Add more

3

Save

Press *Save* to store your settings.

#### 4.3.2.2 Configuring Time Sets

Click on *Manage Time Sets* in the advanced call-forward menu to see a list of available time sets. By default there are none, so you have to create one.

You need to provide a *Name*, and a list of *Periods* where this set is active. If you only set the top setting of a date field (like the *Year* setting in our example above), then it's valid for just this setting (like the full year of 2013 in our case). If you provide the bottom setting as well, it defines a period (like our *Month* setting, which means from beginning of April to end of September). For example, if a CF is set with the following timeset: "hour { 10-12 } minute { 20-30 }", the CF will be matched within the following time ranges:

- from 10.20am to 10.30am
- from 11.20am to 11.30am
- from 12.20am to 12.30am



#### Important

the period is a *through* definition, so it covers the full range. If you define an *Hour* definition 8-16, then this means from 08:00 to 16:59:59 (unless you filter the *Minutes* down to something else).

If you close the *Time Sets* management, you can assign your new time set to the call forwards you're configuring.

## 4.4 Local Number Porting

The Sipwise NGCP platform comes with two ways of accomplishing local number porting (LNP):

- one is populating the integrated LNP database with porting data,
- the other is accessing external LNP databases via the Sipwise LNP daemon using the LNP API.

---

**Note**

Accessing external LNP databases is available for PRO and CARRIER products only.

---

#### 4.4.1 Local LNP Database

The local LNP database provides the possibility to define LNP Carriers (the owners of certain ported numbers or number blocks) and their corresponding LNP Numbers belonging to those carriers. It can be configured on the admin panel in *Settings*→*Number Porting* or via the API. The LNP configuration can be populated individually or via CSV import/export both on the panel and the API.

##### 4.4.1.1 LNP Carriers

LNP Carriers are defined by an arbitrary *Name* for proper identification (e.g. *British Telecom*) and contain a *Prefix* which can be used as routing prefix in LNP Rewrite Rules and subsequently in Peering Rules to route calls to the proper carriers. The LNP prefix is written to CDRs to identify the selected carrier for post processing and analytics purposes of CDRs. LNP Carrier entries also have an *Authoritative* flag indicating that the numbers in this block belong to the carrier operating the sip:carrier. This is useful to define your own number blocks, and in case of calls to those numbers reject the calls if the numbers are not assigned to local subscribers (otherwise they would be routed to a peer, which might cause call loops). Finally the *Skip Rewrite* flag skips executing of LNP Rewrite Rules if no number manipulation is desired for an LNP carrier.

##### 4.4.1.2 LNP Numbers

LNP Carriers contain one or more LNP Numbers. Those LNP Numbers are defined by a *Number* entry in E164 format (*<cc><ac><sn>*) used to match a number against the LNP database. Number matching is performed on a longest match, so you can define number blocks without specifying the full subscriber number (e.g. a called party number *431999123* is going to match an entry *431999* in the LNP Numbers).

For an LNP Numbers entry, an optional *Routing Number* can be defined. This is useful to translate e.g. premium 900 or toll-free 800 numbers to actual routing numbers. If a Routing Number is defined, the called party number is implicitly replaced by the Routing Number and the call processing is continued with the latter.

An optional *Start Date* and *End Date* allows to schedule porting work-flows up-front by populating the LNP database with certain dates, and the entries are only going to become active with those dates. Empty values for start indicate a start date in the past, while empty values for end indicate an end time in the future during processing of a call, allowing to define infinite date ranges. As intervals can overlap, the LNP number record with a start time closest to the current time is selected.

#### 4.4.1.3 Enabling local LNP support

In order to activate Local LNP during routing, the feature must be activated in *config.yml*. Set *kamailio→proxy→lnp→enabled* to *yes* and *kamailio→proxy→lnp→type* to *local*.

#### 4.4.1.4 LNP Routing Procedure

##### ***Calls to non-authoritative Carriers***

When a call arrives at the system, the calling and called party numbers are first normalized using the *Inbound Rewrite Rules for Caller* and *Inbound Rewrite Rules for Callee* within the rewrite rule set assigned to the calling party (a local subscriber or a peer).

If the called party number is not assigned to a local subscriber, or if the called party is a local subscriber and has the subscriber/-domain preference *lnp\_for\_local\_sub* set, the LNP lookup logic is engaged, otherwise the call proceeds without LNP lookup. The further steps assume that LNP is engaged.

If the call originated from a peer, and the peer preference *caller\_lnp\_lookup* is set for this peer, then an LNP lookup is performed using the normalized calling party number. The purpose for that is solely to find the LNP prefix of the calling peer, which is then stored as *source\_lnp\_prefix* in the CDR. If the LNP lookup does not return a result (e.g. the calling party number is not populated in the local LNP database), but the peer preference *default\_lnp\_prefix* is set for the originating peer, then the value of this preference is stored in *source\_lnp\_prefix* of the CDR.

Next, an LNP lookup is performed using the normalized called party number. If no number is found (using a longest match), no further manipulation is performed.

If an LNP number entry is found, and the *Routing Number* is set, the called party number is replaced by the routing number. Also, if the *Authoritative* flag is set in the corresponding LNP Carrier, and the called party number is not assigned to a local subscriber, the call is rejected. This ensures that numbers allocated to the system but not assigned to subscribers are dropped instead of routed to a peer.

---

##### **Important**



If the system is serving a local subscriber with only the routing number assigned (but not e.g. the premium number mapping to this routing number), the subscriber will not be found and the call will either be rejected if the called party premium number is within an authoritative carrier, or the call will be routed to a peer. This is due to the fact that the subscriber lookup is performed with the dialled number, but not the routing number fetched during LNP. So make sure to assign e.g. the premium number to the local subscriber (optionally in addition to the routing number if necessary using alias numbers) and do not use the LNP routing number mechanism for number mapping to local subscribers.

---

Next, if the the LNP carrier does not have the *Skip Rewriting* option set, the *LNP Rewrite Rules for Callee* are engaged. The rewrite rule set used is the one assigned to the originating peer or subscriber/domain via the *rewrite\_rule\_set* preference. The variables available in the match and replace part are, beside the standard variables for rewrite rules:

- `${callee_lnp_prefix}`: The prefix stored in the LNP Carrier
- `${callee_lnp_basenum}`: The actual number entry causing the match (may be shorter than the called party number due to longest match)

Typically, you would create a rewrite rule to prefix the called party number with the *callee\_lnp\_prefix* by matching `^([0-9]+)$` and replacing it by `${callee_lnp_prefix}\1`.

Once the LNP processing is completed, the system checks for further preferences to finalize the number manipulation. If the originating local subscriber or peer has the preference *lnp\_add\_npdi* set, the Request URI user-part is suffixed with `;npdi`. Next, if the preference *lnp\_to\_rn* is set, the Request URI user-part is suffixed with `;rn=LNP_ROUTING_NUMBER`, where *LNP\_ROUTING\_NUMBER* is the *Routing Number* stored for the number entry in the LNP database, and the originally called number is kept in place. For example, if *lnp\_to\_rn* is set and the number *1800123* is called, and this number has a routing number *1555123* in the LNP database, the resulting Request-URI is `sip:1800123;rn=1555123@example.org`.

Finally, the *destination\_lnp\_prefix* in the CDR table is populated either by the prefix defined in the Carrier of the LNP database if a match was found, or by the *default\_lnp\_prefix* preference of the destination peer or subscriber/domain.

#### 4.4.1.5 Transit Calls using LNP

If a call originated from a peer and the peer preference *force\_outbound\_calls\_to\_peer* is set to *force\_nonlocal\_lnp* (the *if callee is not local and is ported* selection in the panel), the call is routed back to a peer selected via the peering rules.

This ensures that if a number once belonged to your system and is ported out, but other carriers are still sending calls to you (e.g. selecting you as an anchor network), the affected calls can be routed to the carrier the number got ported to.

#### 4.4.1.6 CSV Format

The LNP database can be exported to CSV, and in the same format imported back to the system. On import, you can decide whether to drop existing data prior to applying the data from the CSV.

The CSV file format contains the fields in the following order:

carrier\_name carrier\_prefix number routing\_number start end authoritative skip\_rewrite

Table 2: LNP CSV Format

Name	Description
Carrier Name	The <i>Name</i> in the LNP Carriers table (string, e.g. <i>My Carrier</i> )
Carrier Prefix	The <i>Prefix</i> in the LNP Carriers table (string, e.g. <i>DD55</i> )
Number	The <i>Number</i> in the LNP Numbers table (E164 number, e.g. <i>1800666</i> )
Routing Number	The <i>Routing Number</i> in the LNP Numbers table (E164 number or empty, e.g. <i>1555666</i> )
Start	The <i>Start</i> in the LNP Numbers table (YYYY-MM-DD or empty, e.g. <i>2016-01-01</i> )
End	The <i>End</i> in the LNP Numbers table (YYYY-MM-DD or empty, e.g. <i>2016-12-30</i> )
Authoritative	The <i>Authoritative</i> flag in the LNP Carriers table (0 or 1)
Skip Rewrite	The <i>Skip Rewrite</i> flag in the LNP Carriers table (0 or 1)

#### 4.4.2 External LNP via LNP API

External LNP relies on the *Sipwise LNP Daemon (lnpd)* which kamailio-proxy is talking to via a defined JSONRPC protocol. The proxy sends the A and B number to *lnpd*, which in the current release translates it to a SIP Message sent to an external server (typically a Squire SIP-to-INAP gateway. This external gateway is performing an SS7 INAP request to fetch the LNP result, which is passed back as a binary blob in a 3xx response to the *lnpd*. The *lnpd* extracts the TCAP body of the response and returns the information back to the proxy.

##### 4.4.2.1 Enabling LNP lookup via API

In order to activate LNP lookup via API during call routing, the feature must be activated in `/etc/ngcp-config/config.yml`. Set these parameters:

- `kamailio→proxy→lnp→enabled: yes`
- `kamailio→proxy→lnp→type: api`
- `lnpd→enabled: yes`

There is a possibility to explicitly allow (whitelist) or deny (blacklist) certain number ranges for which an LNP lookup may be done. The relevant configuration parameters are at `kamailio→proxy→lnp→lnp_request_whitelist` and `kamailio→proxy→lnp→lnp_request_blacklist`. For each entry in the list a POSIX regex expression may be used, see the following example:

```
lnp:
  lnp_request_whitelist:
    - '^9'
    - '^800'
  lnp_request_blacklist:
    - '^1'
    - '^900'
    - '^110'
    - '^112'
```

Interpretation of the above lists (that are based on numbers represented in national format):

- **whitelist:** *do* LNP lookup for any called number that starts with *9* or *800*
- **blacklist:** *do not* perform LNP lookup for any called number that starts with *1*, *900*, *110* or *112*



#### Important

If both whitelist and blacklist are defined, the LNP lookup is only performed when the called number matches any of the whitelist patterns and does not match any of the blacklist patterns.

---

#### 4.4.2.2 The Redundancy Feature

It is possible to set up *LNP daemon* to provide a kind of redundant service to the Proxy. This means the *LNP daemon* will send its LNP query to more LNP serving nodes that are predefined in a list. (See [Configuration of LNP daemon](#) Section 4.4.2.3 chapter for details.) The LNP query may happen in 2 ways:

- **round-robin**: *LNP daemon* sends the query to one of the serving nodes then waits for the response for a configurable timeout. If it does not get the response in time, it sends the LNP query to the next serving node.
- **parallel**: *LNP daemon* sends the query to all of the serving nodes then waits for the response, and will accept the first response that it receives.

#### 4.4.2.3 Configuration of Sipwise LNP Daemon

*LNP daemon* takes its active configuration from `/etc/ngcp-lnpd/config.yml` file. The file is generated automatically—when a new NGCP configuration is applied (`ngcpcfg apply...`)—from the main Sipwise NGCP configuration file: `/etc/ngcp-config/config.yml` and a template: `/etc/ngcp-config/template/etc/ngcp-lnpd/config.yml.tt2`. System administrators are only expected to modify the `lnpd.config` section of main configuration file `/etc/ngcp-config/config.yml`.

A sample *LNP daemon* configuration file (`/etc/ngcp-lnpd/config.yml`) looks like:

```
daemon:
  json-rpc:
    ports:
      - 54321
      - 12345
    interfaces:
      - 127.0.0.1
      - 192.168.1.90
      - ::1

  sip:
    port: 5095
    address: 0.0.0.0

  threads: 4
  foreground: false
  pidfile: /tmp/lnpd.pid
  loglevel: 7

instances:
  default:
    module: sigtran
    destination: 192.168.1.99
    from-domain: test.example.com
    headers:
```

```

        - header: INAP-Service-Key
          value: 2
      reply:
        tcap: raw-tcap
  redundant:
    module: sigtran
    destinations:
      - 192.168.1.99
      - 192.168.1.95
      - 192.168.1.90
    mechanism: round-robin
    retry-time: 30
    timeout: 5
    from-domain: test.example.com
    headers:
      - header: INAP-Service-Key
        value: 2
    reply:
      tcap: raw-tcap
  parallel:
    module: sigtran
    destinations:
      - 192.168.1.99
      - 192.168.1.95
      - 192.168.1.90
    mechanism: parallel
    retry-time: 30
    timeout: 10
    from-domain: test.example.com
    headers:
      - header: INAP-Service-Key
        value: 2
    reply:
      tcap: raw-tcap
  mock1:
    module: mock-tcap
    numbers:
      - number: '4311003'
        routing-number: '4318881003'
    reply:
      tcap: raw-tcap

```

The corresponding NGCP main configuration file contains:

```

daemon:
  foreground: 'false'
  json-rpc:
    ports:

```



```

    - '54321'
    - '12345'
  loglevel: '7'
  sip:
    port: '5095'
    threads: '4'
  instances:
<< These are the same entries as in /etc/ngcp-lnpd/config.yml file >>

```

### Description of configuration parameters in `/etc/ngcp-config/config.yml` file

- **daemon** section:
  - `foreground`: determines if the LNP daemon runs as foreground or background process
  - `json-rpc.ports`: port numbers where LNP daemon listens for incoming JSONRPC requests from NGCP Proxy
  - `loglevel`: how detailed information LNP daemon writes in its log file
  - `sip.port`: listening port number used for SIP sessions with LNP serving nodes; LNP daemon will listen on first available (shared) IP address that is taken from `/etc/ngcp-config/network.yml` file
  - `threads`: number of threads LNP daemon will use internally; this value determines how many requests the daemon can serve in parallel
- **instances** section: at least one `default` instance must be defined here. Others are also useful for providing redundancy, please check `redundant` and `parallel` entries above.
  - `module`: only `sigtran` is used for normal operations

---

#### Important



The module `mock-tcap` is only meant for developers. In this case the LNP daemon does not produce a SIP request that it sends to LNP serving nodes, but instead it uses the `numbers` parameter to match a called number with a routing number. The `numbers` parameter contains a list of number—routing-number pairs and is used as a database for number lookups. Finally LNP daemon returns the routing number as a response on LNP query.

---

- `destinations`: list of nodes to which LNP daemon sends the LNP query
- `mechanism`: either `parallel` or `round-robin`, defining the method of redundant queries
- `retry-time`: a period of time in seconds while LNP daemon considers an LNP serving node being unreachable after an LNP query timeout
- `timeout`: the period of time while LNP daemon waits for a response on an LNP query from one of the LNP serving nodes  
*PLEASE NOTE:* `retry-time` and `timeout` are used with both the `parallel` and the `round-robin` redundancy methods
- `from-domain`: the domain that will be used in SIP *From* header when LNP daemon sends the LNP query
- `headers`: this is a list of header name—value pairs; these custom headers will be included in SIP request that LNP daemon sends to an LNP serving node
- `reply.tcap`: determines the format of reply sent to NGCP Proxy; currently only `raw-tcap` is supported, which means LNP daemon will not decode the TCAP response it gets from an LNP serving node but it forwards the raw TCAP message body

## 4.5 Header Manipulation

### 4.5.1 Header Filtering

Adding additional SIP headers to the initial INVITEs relayed to the callee (second leg) is possible by modifying the following template file: `/etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/ngcp-sems/etc/ngcp.sbcprofile.conf.customtt.tt2`. The following section can be changed:

```
header_filter=whitelist
header_list=[%IF kamailio.proxy.debug == "yes"%]P-NGCP-CFGTEST, [%END%]
P-R-Uri,P-D-Uri,P-Preferred-Identity,P-Asserted-Identity,Diversion,Privacy,
Allow,Supported,Require,RAck,RSeq,Rseq,User-Agent,History-Info,Call-Info
[%IF kamailio.proxy.presence.enable == "yes"%],Event,Expires,
Subscription-State,Accept [%END%] [%IF kamailio.proxy.allow_refer_method
== "yes"%],Referred-By,Refer-To,Replaces [%END%]
```

By default the system will remove from the second leg all the SIP headers which are not in the above list. If you want to keep some additional/custom SIP headers, coming from the first leg, into the second leg you just need to add them at the end of the `header_list=` list. After that, as usual, you need to apply and push the changes. In this way the system will keep your headers in the INVITE sent to the destination subscriber/peer.



#### Warning

DO NOT TOUCH the list if you don't know what you are doing.

### 4.5.2 Codec Filtering

Sometimes you may need to filter some audio CODEC from the SDP payload, for example if you want to force your subscribers to do not talk a certain codecs or force them to talk a particular one. To achieve that you just need to change the `/etc/ngcp-config/config.yml`, in the following section:

```
sdp_filter:
  codecs: PCMA,PCMU,telephone-event
  enable: yes
  mode: whitelist
```

In the example above, the system is removing all the audio CODECS from the initial INVITE except G711 alaw,ulaw and telephone-event. In this way the callee will be notified that the caller is able to talk only PCMA. Another example is the `blacklist` mode:

```
sdp_filter:
  codecs: G729,G722
  enable: yes
  mode: blacklist
```

In this way the G729 and G722 will be removed from the SDP payload. In order to apply the changes, as usual, you need to run `ngcpcfg apply Enable CODEC filtering` and push the changes .

### 4.5.3 Enable History and Diversion Headers

It may be useful and mandatory - specially with NGN interconnection - to enable SIP History header and/or Diversion header for outbound requests to a peer or even for on-net calls. In order to do so, you should enable the following preferences in Domain's and Peer's Preferences:

- Domain's Preferences: *inbound\_uprn* = **Forwarder's NPN**
- Peer's Preferences: *outbound\_history\_info* = **UPRN**
- Peer's Preferences: *outbound\_diversion* = **UPRN**
- Domain's Preferences: *outbound\_history\_info* = **UPRN** (if you want to allow History Header for on-net call as well)
- Domain's Preferences: *outbound\_diversion* = **UPRN** (if you want to allow Diversion Header for on-net call as well)

## 4.6 SIP Trunking with SIPconnect

### 4.6.1 User provisioning

For the purpose of external SIP-PBX interconnect with sip:carrier the platform admin should create a subscriber with multiple aliases representing the numbers and number ranges served by the SIP-PBX.

- Subscriber username - any SIP username that forms an "email-style" SIP URI.
- Subscriber Aliases - numbers in the global E.164 format without leading plus.

To configure the Subscriber, go to *Settings*→*Subscribers* and click *Details* on the row of your subscriber. There, click on the *Preferences* button on top.

You should look into the *Number Manipulations* and *Access Restrictions* sections in particular, which control the calling and called number presentation.

### 4.6.2 Inbound calls routing

Enable preference *Number Manipulations*→*e164\_to\_ruri* for routing inbound calls to SIP-PBX. This ensures that the Request-URI will comprise a SIP-URI containing the dialed alias-number as user-part, instead of the user-part of the registered AOR (which is normally a static value).

### 4.6.3 Number manipulations

The following sections describe the recommended configuration for correct call routing and CLI presentation according to the SIPconnect 1.1 recommendation.

#### 4.6.3.1 Rewrite rules

The SIP PBX by default inherits the domain dialplan which usually has rewrite rules applied to normal Class 5 subscribers with inbound rewrite rules normalizing the dialed number to the E.164 standard. If most users of this domain are Class 5 subscribers the dialplan may supply calling number in national format - see Section 3.6. While the SIP-PBX trunk configuration can be sometimes amended it is a good idea in sense of SIPconnect recommendation to send only the global E.164 numbers.

Moreover, in mixed environments with the sip:carrier Cloud PBX sharing the same domain with SIP trunking (SIP-PBX) customers the subscribers may have different rewrite rules sets assigned to them. The difference is caused by the fact that the dialplan for Cloud PBX is fundamentally different from the dialplan for SIP trunks due to extension dialing, where the Cloud PBX subscribers use the break-out code (see Section 14.1.2) to dial numbers outside of this PBX.

The SIPconnect compliant numbering plan can be accommodated by assigning Rewrite Rules Set to the SIP-PBX subscriber. Below is a sample Rewrite Rule Set for using the global E.164 numbers with plus required for the calling and called number format compliant to the recommendation.

##### INBOUND REWRITE RULE FOR CALLER

- Match Pattern: `^(00|\+)([1-9][0-9]+)$`
- Replacement Pattern: `\2`
- Description: `International to E.164`
- Direction: `Inbound`
- Field: `Caller`

##### INBOUND REWRITE RULE FOR CALLEE

- Match Pattern: `^(00|\+)([1-9][0-9]+)$`
- Replacement Pattern: `\2`
- Description: `International to E.164`
- Direction: `Inbound`
- Field: `Callee`

##### OUTBOUND REWRITE RULE FOR CALLER

- Match Pattern: `^([1-9][0-9]+)$`
- Replacement Pattern: `+\1`
- Description: `For the calls to SIP-PBX add plus to E.164`
- Direction: `Outbound`
- Field: `Caller`

#### OUTBOUND REWRITE RULE FOR CALLEE

- Match Pattern: `^ ([1-9] [0-9]+) $`
- Replacement Pattern: `+\1`
- Description: For the calls to SIP-PBX add plus to E.164
- Direction: Outbound
- Field: Callee

Assign the aforementioned Rewrite Rule Set to the SIP-PBX subscribers.



#### Warning

Outbound Rewrite Rules for Callee shall NOT be applied to the calls to normal SIP UAs like IP phones since the number with plus does not correspond to their SIP username.

#### 4.6.3.2 User parameter

The following configuration is needed for your platform to populate the From and To headers and Request-URI of the INVITE request with "user=phone" parameter as per RFC 3261 Section 19.1.1 (if the user part of the URI contains telephone number formatted as a telephone-subscriber).

- Domain's Preferences: `outbound_from_user_is_phone = Y`
- Domain's Preferences: `outbound_to_user_is_phone = Y`

#### 4.6.3.3 Forwarding number

The following is our common configuration that covers the calling number presentation in a variety of use-cases, including the incoming calls, on-net calls and Call Forward by the platform:

- Domain's Preferences: `inbound_uprn = Forwarder's NPN`
- Domain's Preferences: `outbound_from_user = UPRN (if set) or User-Provided Number`
- Domain's Preferences: `outbound_pai_user = UPRN (if set) or Network-Provided Number`
- Domain's Preferences: `outbound_history_info = UPRN` (if the called user expects History-Info header)
- Domain's Preferences: `outbound_diversion = UPRN` (if the called user expects Diversion header)
- Domain's Preferences: `outbound_to_user = Original (Forwarding) called user` if the callee expects the number of the subscriber forwarding the call, otherwise leave default.

The above parameters can be tuned to operator specifics as required. You can of course override these settings in the Subscriber Preferences if particular subscribers need special settings.

---

**Tip**

On outgoing call from SIP-PBX subscriber the Network-Provided Number (NPN) is set to the *cli* preference prefilled with main E.164 number. In order to have the full alias number as NPN on outgoing call set preference *extension\_in\_npn* = Y.

---

**Externally forwarded call** If the call forward takes place inside the SIP-PBX it can use one of the following specification for signaling the diversion number to the platform:

- using **Diversion** method (RFC 5806): configure Subscriber's Preferences: *inbound\_uprn* = **Forwarder's NPN / Received Diversion**
- using **History-Info** method (RFC 7044): NGCP platform extends the History-Info header received from the PBX by adding another level of indexing according to the specification RFC 7044.

#### 4.6.3.4 Allowed CLIs

- For correct calling number presentation on outgoing calls, you should include the pattern matching all the alias numbers of SIP-PBX or each individual alias number under the *allowed\_clis* preference.
- If the signalling calling number (usually taken from From user-part, see *inbound\_upn* preferences) does not match the *allowed\_clis* pattern, the *user\_cli* or *cli* preference (Network-Provided Number) will be used for calling number presentation.

#### 4.6.4 Registration

SIP-PBX can use either Static or Registration Mode. While SIPconnect 1.1 continues to require TLS support at MUST strength, one should note that using TLS for signaling does not require the use of the SIPS URI scheme. SIPS URI scheme is obsolete for this purpose.

**Static Mode** While SIPconnect 1.1 allows the use of Static mode, this poses additional maintenance overhead on the operator. The administrator should create a static registration for the SIP-PBX: go to Subscribers, *Details*→*Registered Devices*→*Create Permanent Registration* and put address of the SIP-PBX in the following format: sip:username@ipaddress:5060 where username=username portion of SIP URI and ipaddress = IP address of the device.

**Registration Mode** It is recommended to use the Registration mode with SIP credentials defined for the SIP-PBX subscriber.

**Important**

The use of RFC 6140 style "bulk number registration" is discouraged. The SIP-PBX should register one AOR with email-style SIP URI. The sip:carrier will take care of routing the aliases to the AOR with *e164\_to\_ruri* preference.

---

##### 4.6.4.1 Trusted sources

If a SIP-PBX can not be configured to perform digest authentication, you can enable IP-based authentication in sip:carrier for it. For this go to the subscriber's preferences (*Details*→*Preferences*→*Trusted Sources*) and specify the IP address of the SIP-PBX in the *Source IP* field.

When this feature is configured, the sip:carrier will authenticate all calls of this user that arrive from the specified IP without sending a challenge.

**Important**

If the same IP address is mistakenly specified as trusted for different subscribers, the sip:carrier will not know which subscriber should be responsible for the call and will randomly select one.

---

## 4.7 Trusted Subscribers

In some cases, when you have a device that cannot authenticate itself towards sip:carrier, you may need to create Trusted Subscriber. Trusted Subscribers use IP-based authentication and they have a Permanent SIP Registration URI in order to receive messages from sip:carrier. In order to create a Trusted Subscriber you just need to create a normal subscriber, then Create a Permanent Registration via (*Subscribers→Details→Registered Devices→Create Permanent Registration*) and also you need to add the devices IP as Trusted Source in your subscriber's preferences (*Details→Preferences→Trusted Sources*). In this way, all messages coming from your device IP will be trusted (and authenticate just via the source IP), on the other side all the SIP messages to your devices will be sent to the SIP URI specified in the Permanent Registration.

## 4.8 Fax Server

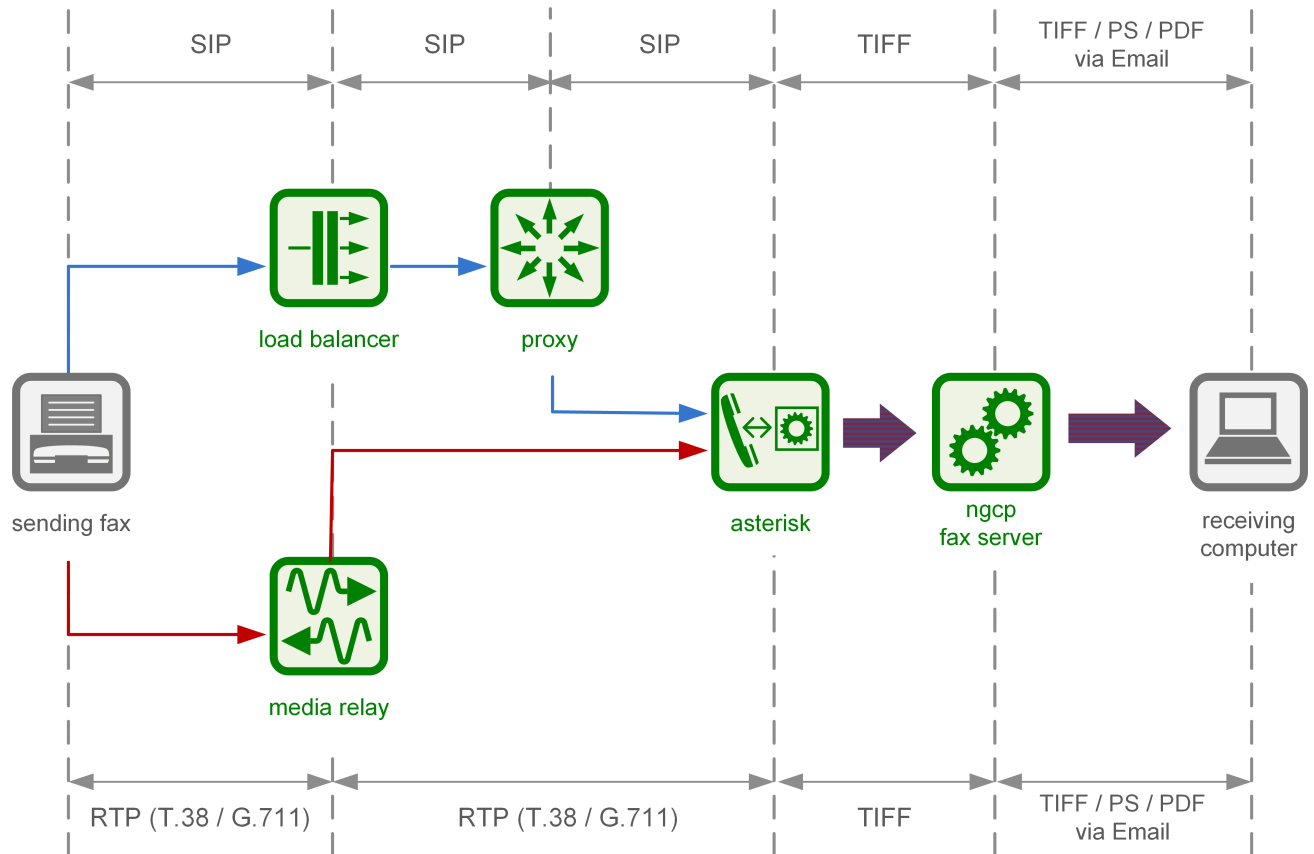
There is a Fax Server included in the sip:carrier. The following sections describe its architecture.

The Fax Server is included on the platform and requires no additional hardware. It supports both T38 and G711 codecs and provides a cost-effective paper-free office solution.

For the details of Fax Server configuration options, please see [Faxserver Configuration](#) Appendix C chapter in this handbook.

### 4.8.1 Fax2Mail Architecture

To receive faxes via email, a phone call from a sender is connected to the fax application module (Asterisk + NGCP Fax Server) on the sip:carrier. The received fax document is converted to the format the receiver has configured (either PS, PDF or TIFF) via the components outlined in the figure below. The email is delivered to one or more configured addresses.



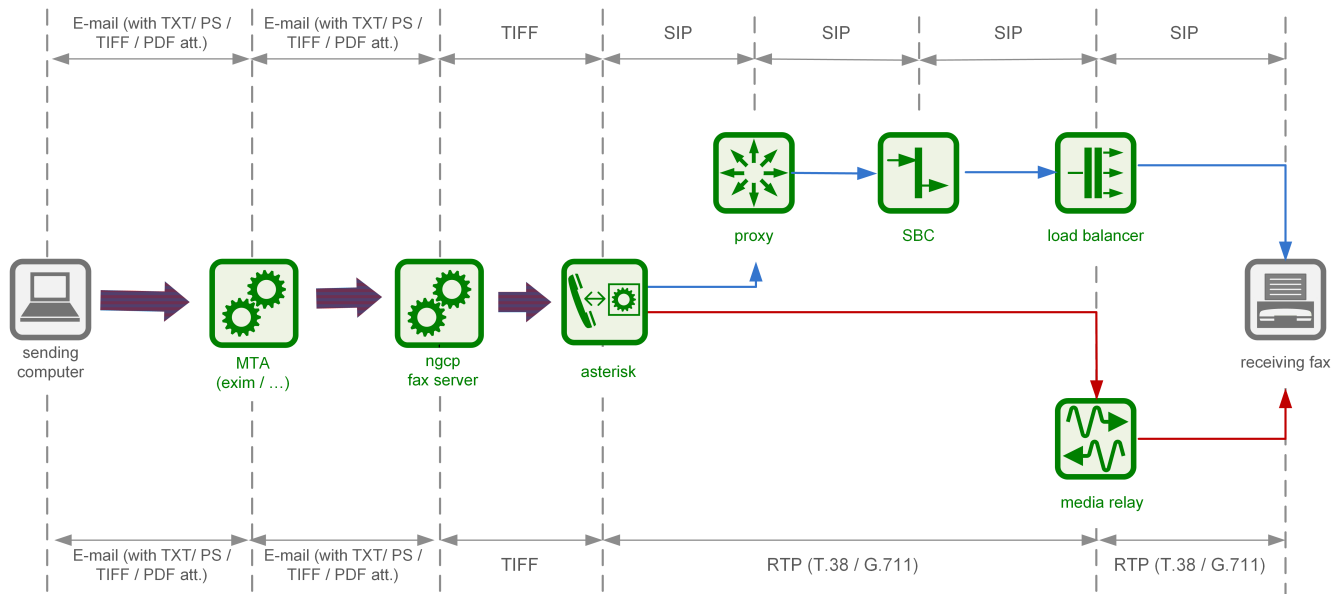
#### 4.8.2 Sendfax and Mail2Fax Architecture

To send faxes via the sip:carrier a sender can use any email client or an interface such as Webfax or REST API.

Currently, supported formats are TXT, PS, TIFF and PDF.

The document is sent to the NGCP Fax Server instance on the sip:carrier. Once successfully queued by the fax server, it is converted to an internal TIFF format and is sent via the components outlined in the below figure to the specified phone number. Of course, a fax device that can receive the document must be connected on the destination side.





## 4.9 Voicemail System

### 4.9.1 Accessing the IVR Menu

For a subscriber to manage his voicebox via IVR, there are two ways to access the voicebox. One is to call the URI `voicebox@yourdomain` from the subscriber itself, allowing password-less access to the IVR, as the authentication is already done on SIP level. The second is to call the URI `voiceboxpass@yourdomain` from any number, causing the system to prompt for a mailbox and the PIN. The PIN can be set in the *Voicemail and Voicebox* section of the *Subscriber Preferences*.

#### 4.9.1.1 Mapping numbers and codes to IVR access

Since access might need to be provided from external networks like PSTN/Mobile, and since certain SIP phones do not support calling alphanumeric numbers to dial `voicebox`, you can map any number to the voicebox URIs using rewrite rules.

To do so, you can provision a match pattern e.g. `^(00|\+ )12345$` with a replace pattern `voicebox` or `voiceboxpass` to map a number to either password-less or password-based IVR access respectively. Create a new rewrite rule with the `Inbound` direction and the `Callee` field in the corresponding rewrite rule set.

For inbound calls from external networks, assign this rewrite rule set to the corresponding incoming peer. If you also need to map numbers for on-net calls, assign the rewrite rule set to subscribers or the whole SIP domain.

#### 4.9.1.2 External IVR access

When reaching `voiceboxpass`, the subscriber is prompted for her mailbox number and a password. All numbers assigned to a subscriber are valid input (primary number and any alias number). By default, the required format is in E.164, so the subscriber needs to enter the full number including country code, for example `4912345` if she got assigned a German number.

You can globally configure a rewrite rule in `config.yml` using `asterisk.voicemail.normalize_match` and `asterisk`

`isk.voicemail.normalize_replace`, allowing you to customize the format a subscriber can enter, e.g. having `^0 ([1-9] [0-9]+) $` as match part and `49$1` as replace part to accept German national format.

#### 4.9.2 IVR Menu Structure

The following list shows you how the voicebox menu is structured.

- 1 Read voicemail messages
  - 3 Advanced options
    - \* 3 To Hear messages Envelope
    - \* \* Return to the main menu
  - 4 Play previous message
  - 5 Repeat current message
  - 6 Play next message
  - 7 Delete current message
  - 9 Save message in a folder
    - \* 0 Save in new Messages
    - \* 1 Save in old Messages
    - \* 2 Save in Work Messages
    - \* 3 Save in Family Messages
    - \* 4 Save in Friends Messages
    - \* # Return to the main menu
- 2 Change folders
  - 0 Switch to new Messages
  - 1 Switch to old Messages
  - 2 Switch to Work Messages
  - 3 Switch to Family Messages
  - 4 Switch to Friends Messages
  - # Get Back
- 3 Advanced Options
  - \* To return to the main menu
- 0 Mailbox options
  - 1 Record your unavailable message
    - \* 1 accept it
    - \* 2 Listen to it

- \* 3 Rerecord it
- 2 Record your busy message
  - \* 1 accept it
  - \* 2 Listen to it
  - \* 3 Rerecord it
- 3 Record your name
  - \* 1 accept it
  - \* 2 Listen to it
  - \* 3 Rerecord it
- 4 Record your temporary greetings
  - \* 1 accept it / or re-record if one already exist
  - \* 2 Listen to it / or delete if one already exist
  - \* 3 Rerecord it
- 5 Change your password
- \* To return to the main menu
- \* Help
- # Exit

### 4.9.3 Type Of Messages

A message/greeting is a short message that plays before the caller is allowed to record a message. The message is intended to let the caller know that you are not able to answer their call. It can also be used to convey other information like when you will be available, other methods to contact you, or other options that the caller can use to receive assistance.

The IVR menu has three types of greetings.

#### 4.9.3.1 Unavailable Message

The standard voice mail greeting is the "unavailable" greeting. This is used if you don't answer the phone and so the call is directed to your voice mailbox.

- You can record a custom unavailable greeting.
- If you have not recorded your unavailable greeting but have recorded your name, the system will play a generic message like: "Recorded name is unavailable."
- If you have not recorded your unavailable greeting, the phone system will play a generic message like: "Digits-of-number-dialed is unavailable".

#### 4.9.3.2 Busy Message

If you wish, you can record a custom greeting used when someone calls you and you are currently on the phone. This is called your "Busy" greeting.

- You can record a custom busy greeting.
- If you have not recorded your busy greeting but have recorded your name, the phone system will play a generic message: "Recorded name is busy."
- If you have not recorded your busy greeting and have not recorded your name (see below), the phone system will play a generic message: "Digits-of-number-dialed is busy."

#### 4.9.3.3 Temporary Greeting

You can also record a temporary greeting. If it exists, a temporary greeting will always be played instead of your "busy" or "unavailable" greetings. This could be used, for example, if you are going on vacation or will be out of the office for a while and want to inform people not to expect a return call anytime soon. Using a temporary greeting avoids having to change your normal unavailable greeting when you leave and when you come back.

#### 4.9.4 Folders

The Voicemail system allows you to save and organize your messages into folders. There can be up to ten folders.

##### 4.9.4.1 The Default Folder List

- 0 - New Messages
- 1 - Old Messages
- 2 - Work Messages
- 3 - Family Messages
- 4 - Friends Messages

When a caller leaves a message for you, the system will put the message into the "New Messages" folder. If you listen to the message, but do not delete the message or save the message to a different folder, it will automatically move the message to the "Old Messages" folder. When you first log into your mailbox, the Voicemail System will make the "New Messages" folder the current folder if you have any new messages. If you do not have any new messages the it will make the "Old Messages" folder the current folder.

#### 4.9.5 Flowcharts with Voice Prompts

This section shows flowcharts of calls to the voicemail system. Flowcharts contain the name of prompts as they are identified among *Asterisk* voice prompts.

## 4.9.5.1 Listening to New Messages

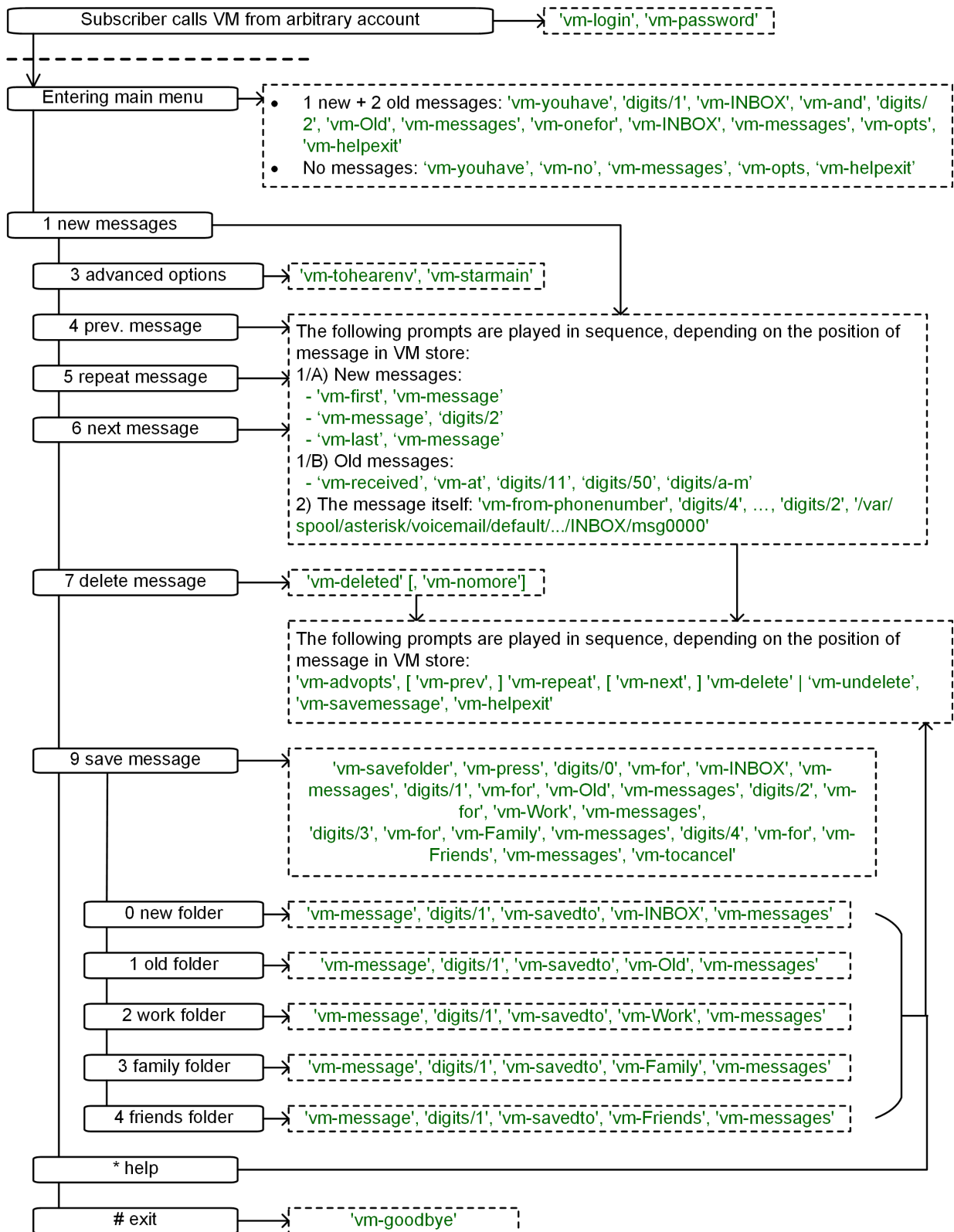


Figure 23: Flowchart of Listening to New Messages

#### 4.9.5.2 Changing Voicemail Folders

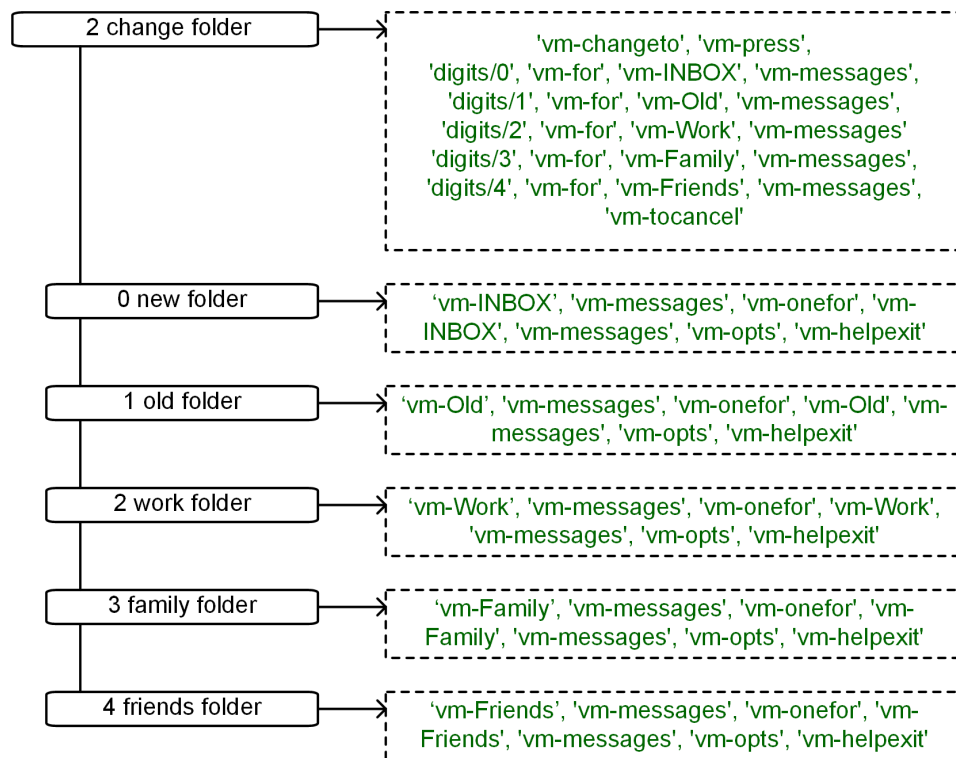


Figure 24: Flowchart of Changing Voicemail Folders

## 4.9.5.3 Mailbox Options

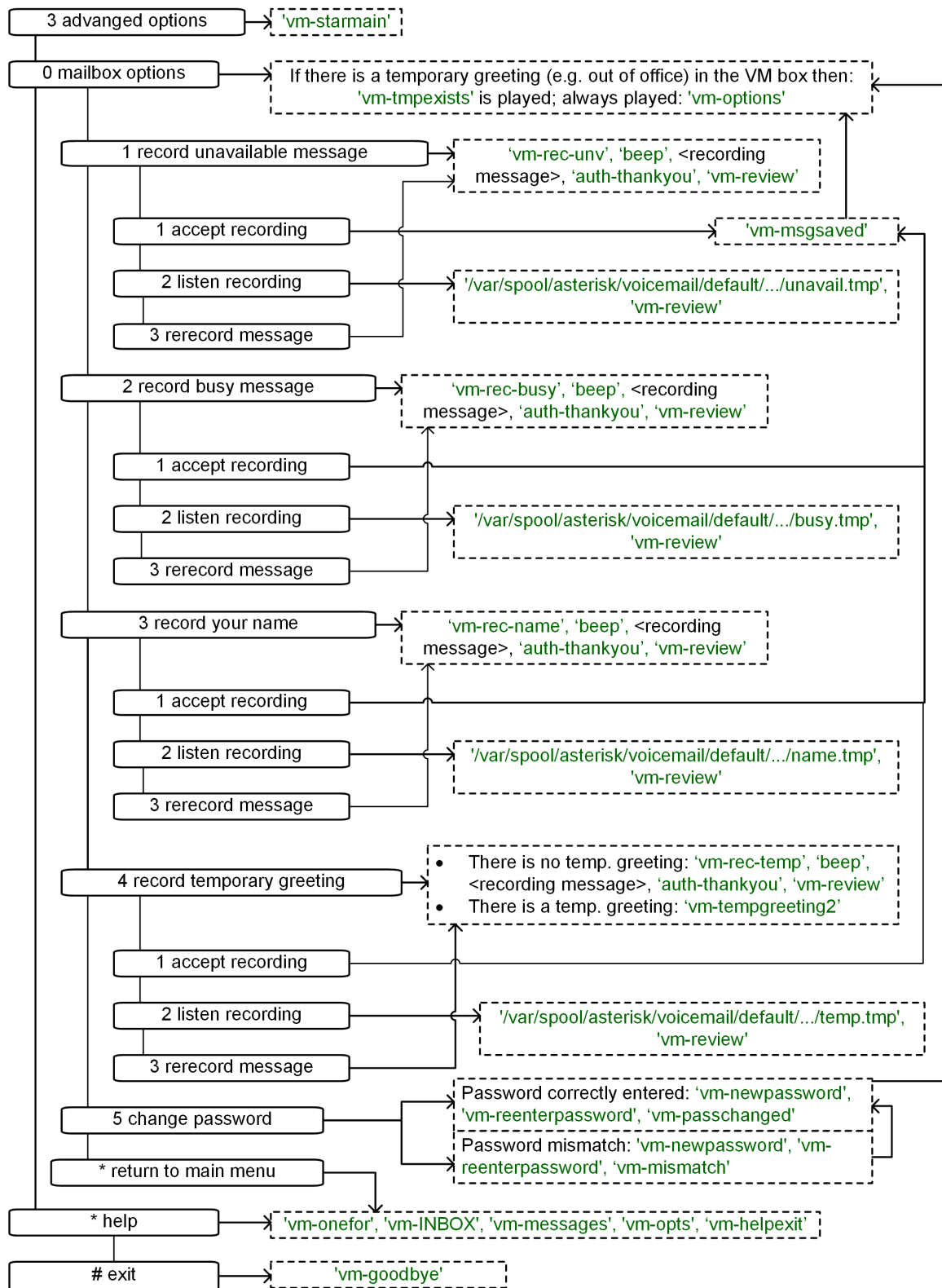


Figure 25: Flowchart of Changing Mailbox Options

## 4.9.5.4 Leaving a Message

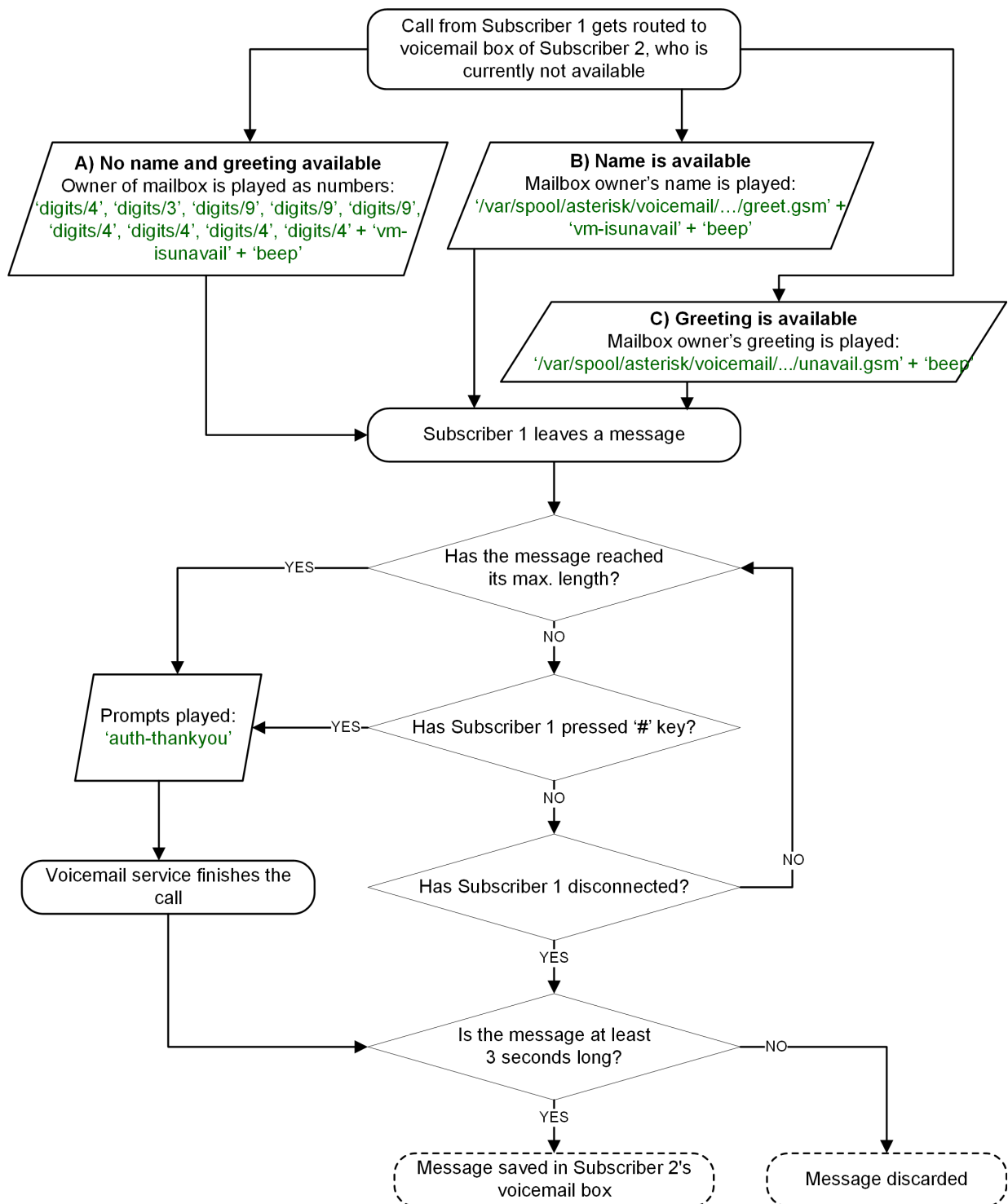


Figure 26: Flowchart of Leaving a Voice Message



## 4.10 Configuring Subscriber IVR Language

The language for the Voicemail system IVR or Vertical Service Codes (VSC) IVRs may be set using the subscriber or domain preference *language*.

The screenshot shows a web interface with a modal dialog titled "Edit Preference 'Language for voicemail and app server'". The dialog has a green header bar with a close button (X) in the top right corner. Inside the dialog, there is a label "language" followed by a dropdown menu. The dropdown menu is open, showing "Spanish" as the selected option, which is highlighted with a red rectangular box. To the right of the dropdown is a "Save" button. In the background, a table of preferences is visible, including parameters like gpp8, gpp9, conference\_pin, ua\_header\_mode, force\_outbound\_calls\_to\_peer, and language.

gpp8	General Purpose Parameter 8		
gpp9	General Purpose Parameter 9		
conference_pin	PIN for access to pin-protected conference	29165	
ua_header_mode	User-Agent header passing mode	Strip	
force_outbound_calls_to_peer	Force outbound calls from user or peer to peer	use domain default	
language	Language for voicemail and app server	use domain default	


The sip:carrier provides the pre-installed prompts for the Voicemail in the English, Spanish, French and Italian languages and the pre-installed prompts for the Vertical Service Codes IVRs in English only.


The other IVRs such as the Conference system and the error announcements use the Sound Sets configured in NGCP Panel and uploaded by the administrator in his language of choice.

## 4.11 Sound Sets

The sip:carrier provides the administrator with ability to upload the voice prompts such as conference prompts or call error announcements on the *Sound Sets* page. There is a preference *sound\_set* in the *NAT and Media Flow Control* section on Domain and Subscriber levels to link subscribers to the sound set that they should hear (as usual the subscriber preference overrides the domain one). Sound Sets can be defined in *Settings*→*Sound Sets*. To create a new Sound Set, click *Create Sound Set*. Then click the *Files* button.

Logged in as administratorLanguageLogout

 **NGCP Dashboard**

 Monitoring & StatisticsSettings

## Sound Sets





[← Back](#) [★ Create Sound Set](#)

Sound set successfully created

Show  entries Search:

#	Reseller	Customer	Name	Description	
1	default		Conference		<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> <a href="#">Files</a>
2	default		Early media rejects	Failed call attempt announcements	

Showing 1 to 2 of 2 entries

  1  

### Note

You may use 8 or 16 bit mono WAV audio files for all of the voice prompts.

#### 4.11.1 Configuring Early Reject Sound Sets

The call error announcements are grouped under *Early Rejects* section. Unfold the section and click *Upload* next to the sound handles (Names) that you want to use. Choose a WAV file from your file system, and click the Loopplay setting if you want to play the file in a loop instead of just once. Click Save to upload the file.

early_rejects			
Name	Filename	Loop	
block_in		■	 Upload
block_out		■	
block_ncos		■	
block_override_pin_wrong		■	
locked_in		■	
locked_out		■	
max_calls_in		■	
max_calls_out		■	
max_calls_peer		■	
unauth_caller_ip		■	

The call error announcements are played to the user in early media hence the name "Early Reject". If you don't provide the sound files for any handles they will not be used and the sip:carrier will fallback to sending the error response code back to the user.

Table 3: Early Reject Sound Sets

Handle	Description	Message played
block_in	This is what the calling party hears when a call is made from a number that is blocked by the incoming block list ( <i>adm_block_in_list</i> , <i>block_in_list</i> subscriber preferences)	Your call is blocked by the number you are trying to reach.
block_out	This is what the calling party hears when a call is made to a number that is blocked by the outgoing block list ( <i>adm_block_out_list</i> , <i>block_out_list</i> subscriber preferences)	Your call to the number you are trying to reach is blocked.
block_ncos	This is what the calling party hears when a call is made to a number that is blocked by the NCOS level assigned to the subscriber or domain (the NCOS level chosen in <i>ncos</i> and <i>adm_ncos</i> preferences)	Your call to the number you are trying to reach is not permitted.

Table 3: (continued)

Handle	Description	Message played
block_override_pin_wrong	Announcement played to calling party if it used wrong PIN code to override the outgoing user block list or the NCOS level for this call (the PIN set by <i>block_out_override_pin</i> and <i>adm_block_out_override_pin</i> preferences)	The PIN code you have entered is not correct.
locked_in	Announcement played on incoming call to a subscriber that is locked for incoming calls	The number you are trying to reach is currently not permitted to receive calls.
locked_out	Announcement played on outgoing call to subscriber that is locked for outgoing calls	You are currently not allowed to place outbound calls.
max_calls_in	Announcement played on incoming call to a subscriber who has exceeded the <i>concurrent_max</i> limit by sum of incoming and outgoing calls or whose customer has exceeded the <i>concurrent_max_per_account</i> limit by sum of incoming and outgoing calls	The number you are trying to reach is currently busy. Please try again later.
max_calls_out	Announcement played on outgoing call to a subscriber who has exceeded the <i>concurrent_max</i> (total limit) or <i>concurrent_max_out</i> (limit on number of outbound calls) or whose customer has exceeded the <i>concurrent_max_per_account</i> or <i>concurrent_max_out_per_account</i> limit	All outgoing lines are currently in use. Please try again later.
max_calls_peer	Announcement played on calls from the peering if that peer has reached the maximum number of concurrent calls (configured by admin in <i>concurrent_max</i> preference of peering server)	The network you are trying to reach is currently busy. Please try again later.
unauth_caller_ip	This is what the calling party hears when it tries to make a call from unauthorized IP address or network ( <i>allowed_ips</i> , <i>man_allowed_ips</i> preferences)	You are not allowed to place calls from your current network location.

Table 3: (continued)

Handle	Description	Message played
relaying_denied	Announcement played on inbound call from trusted IP (e.g. external PBX) with non-local Request-URI domain	The network you are trying to reach is not available.
invalid_speeddial	This is what the calling party hears when it calls an empty speed-dial slot	The speed dial slot you are trying to use is not available.
cf_loop	Announcement played when the called subscriber has the call forwarding configured to itself	The number you are trying to reach is forwarded to an invalid destination.
callee_offline	Announcement played on incoming call to the subscriber which is currently not registered	The number you are trying to reach is currently not available. Please try again later.
callee_busy	Announcement played on incoming call to the subscriber which is currently busy (486 response from the UAS)	The number you are trying to reach is currently busy. Please try again later.
callee_unknown	Announcement that is played on call to unknown or invalid number (not associated with any of our subscribers/hunt groups)	The number you are trying to reach is not in use.
callee_tmp_unavailable	Announcement played on incoming call to the subscriber which is currently unavailable (408, other 4xx or no response code or 30x with malformed contact)	The number you are trying to reach is currently not available. Please try again later.
peering_unavailable	Announcement played in case of outgoing off-net call when there is no peering rule matching this destination and/or source	The network you are trying to reach is not available.
voicebox_unavailable	Announcement played on call to voicebox if the voicemail server is not configured (system operation is impaired)	The voicemail of the number you are trying to reach is currently not available. Please try again later.
emergency_unsupported	Announcement played when emergency destination is dialed but the emergency calls are administratively prohibited for this user or domain ( <i>reject_emergency</i> preference is enabled)	You are not allowed to place emergency calls from this line. Please use a different phone.
emergency_geo_unavailable	Announcement played when emergency destination is dialed but the destination is not provisioned for the location of the user.	The emergency number you have dialed is not available in your region.

Table 3: (continued)

Handle	Description	Message played
no_credit	Announcement played when prepaid account has insufficient balance to make a call to this destination	You don't have sufficient credit balance for the number you are trying to reach.

## 4.12 Conference System

The sip:carrier provides the simple pin-protected conferencing service built using the SEMS DSM scripting language. Hence it is open for all kinds of modifications and extensions.

Template files for the sems conference scripts stored in `/etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/ngcp-sems/`:

- IVR script: `/etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/ngcp-sems/dsm/confpin.dsm.tt2`
- Config: `/etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/ngcp-sems/dsm/confpin.conf.tt2`

### 4.12.1 Configuring Call Forward to Conference

Go to your *Subscriber Preferences* and click *Edit* on the Call Forward Type you want to set (e.g. *Call Forward Unconditional*).

Logged in as administrator | Language | Logout

### Edit Call Forward Unconditional

Destination

- ☐ Voicemail
- ☒ Conference
- ☐ URI/Number

URI/Number

for (seconds)

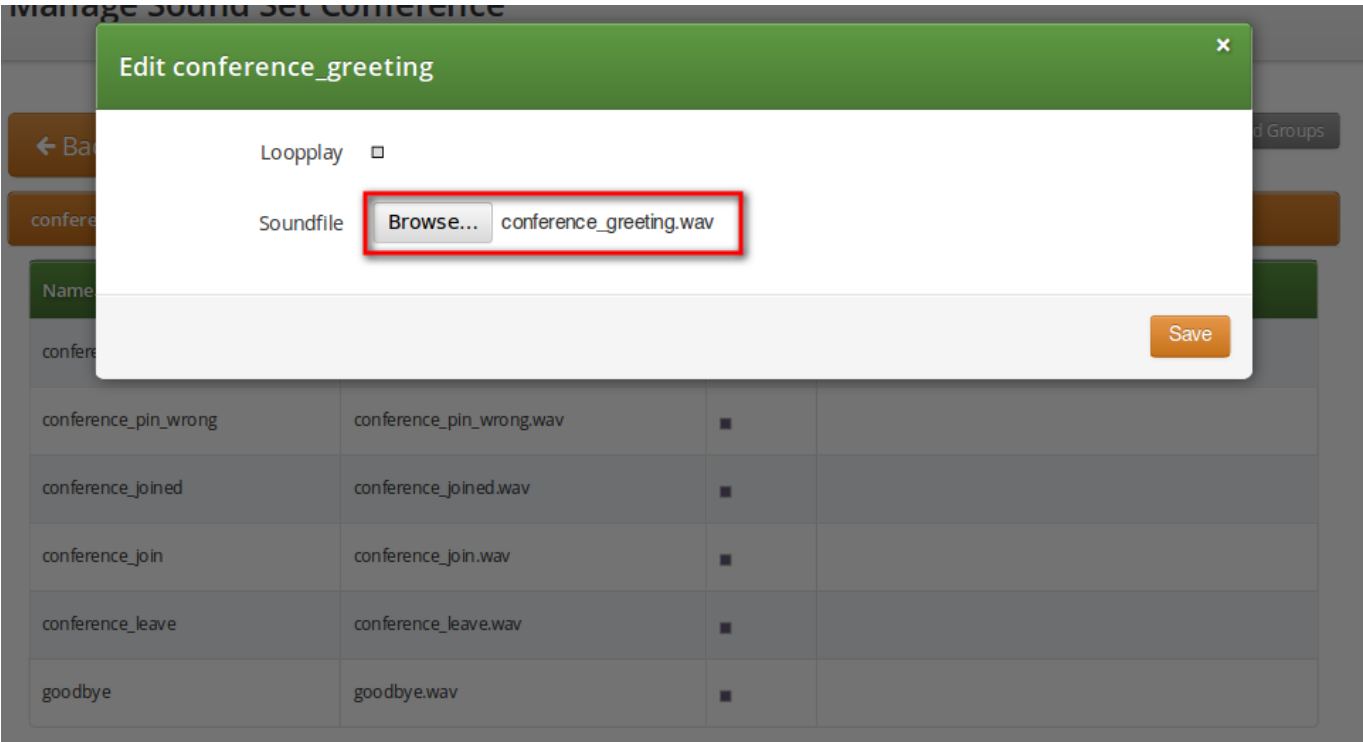
Advanced View Save

Type	Call Forward			
Call Forward				
Call Forward Busy				
Call Forward Timeout				
Call Forward Unavailable				

You should select *Conference* option in the *Destination* field and leave the *URI/Number* empty. The timeout defines for how long this destination should be tried to ring.

#### 4.12.2 Configuring Conference Sound Sets

Sound Sets can be defined in *Settings*→*Sound Sets*. To create a new Sound Set, click *Create Sound Set*. Then click the *Files* button.



Upload the following files:

Table 4: Conference Sound Sets

Handle	Message played
conference_greeting	Welcome to the conferencing service.
conference_pin	Please enter your PIN, followed by the pound key.
conference_pin_wrong	You have entered an invalid PIN number. Please try again.
conference_joined	You will be placed into the conference.
conference_first	You are the first person in the conference.
conference_join	A person has joined the conference.
conference_leave	A person has left the conference.
conference_max_participants	All conference lines are currently in use. Please try again later.
conference_waiting_music	... waiting music...
goodbye	Goodbye.

**Note**

You may use 8 or 16 bit mono WAV audio files.

Then set the preference *sound\_set* on the Domain or Subscriber level in order to assign the Sound Set you have just created to the subscriber (as usual the subscriber preference overrides the domain one).



### 4.12.3 Joining the Conference

There are 2 ways of joining a conference: with or without PIN code. The actual way of joining the conference depends on *Subscriber* settings. A subscriber who has activated the conference through call forwarding may set a PIN in order to protect the conference from unauthorized access. To activate the PIN one has to enter a value in *Subscriber* → *Details* → *Preferences* → *Internals* → *conference\_pin* field.

The screenshot shows a web interface for editing preferences. A modal dialog titled "Edit Preference 'PIN for access to pin-protected conference'" is open. Inside the dialog, there is a text input field labeled "conference\_pin" which contains the value "29165". The input field is highlighted with a red rectangle. To the right of the input field is an orange "Save" button. Below the dialog, a table of preferences is visible, showing the "conference\_pin" entry with its description and the value "29165".

gpp0	General Purpose Parameter 0		
gpp9	General Purpose Parameter 9		
conference_pin	PIN for access to pin-protected conference	29165	
ua_header_mode	User-Agent header passing mode	Strip	
force_outbound_calls_to_peer	Force outbound calls from user or peer to peer	use domain default	
language	Language for voicemail and app server	use domain default	

Figure 27: Setting Conference PIN

In case the PIN protection for the conference is activated, when someone calls the subscriber who has enabled the conference, the caller is prompted to enter the PIN of the conference. Upon the successful entry of the PIN the caller hears the announcement that he is going to be placed into the conference and at the same time this is announced to all participants already in the conference.

### 4.12.4 Conference Flowchart with Voice Prompts

The following 2 sections show flowcharts with voice prompts that are played to a caller when he dials the conference.

## 4.12.4.1 Conference Flowchart with PIN Validation

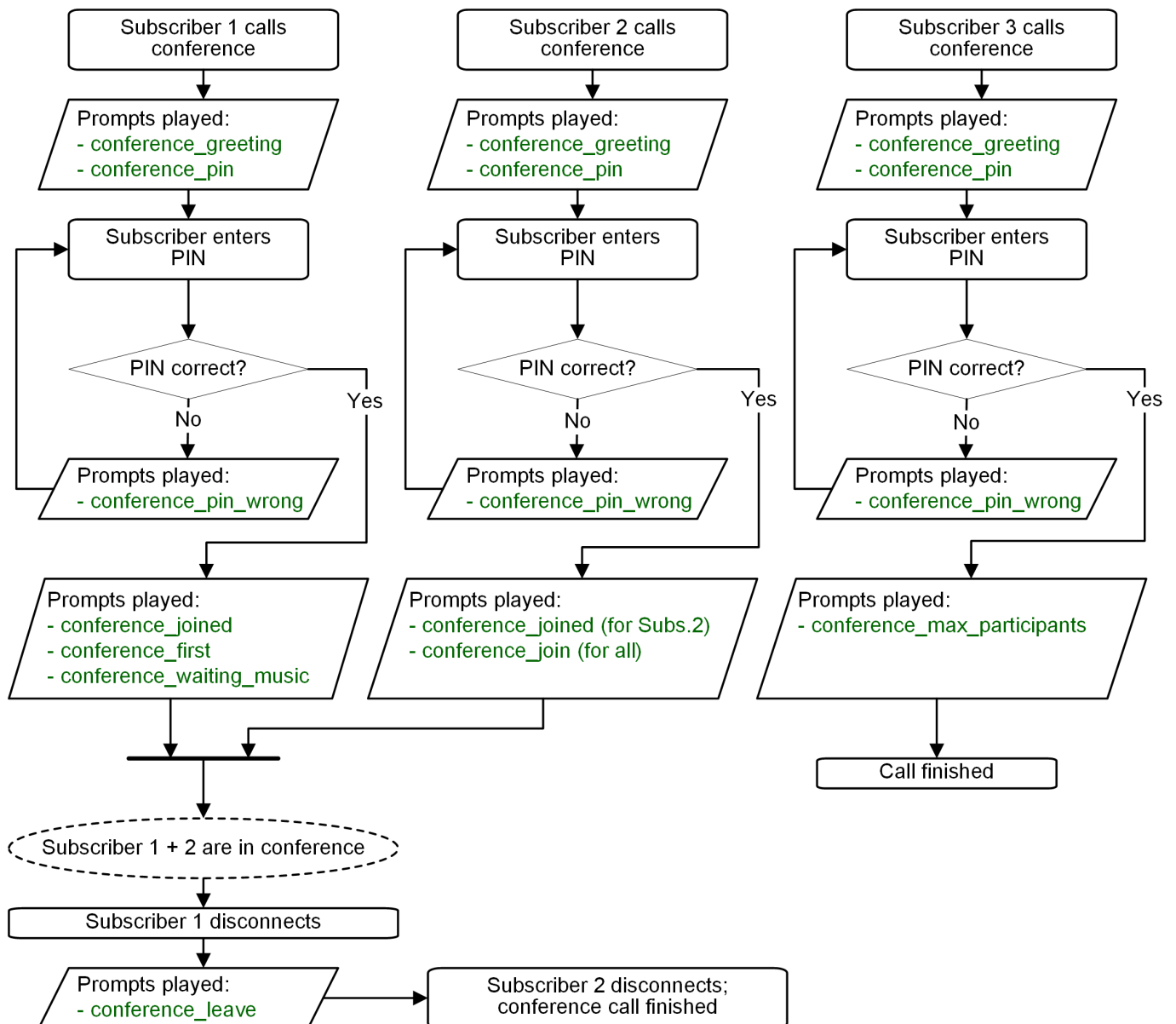


Figure 28: Flowchart of Conference with PIN Validation

#### 4.12.4.2 Conference Flowchart without PIN

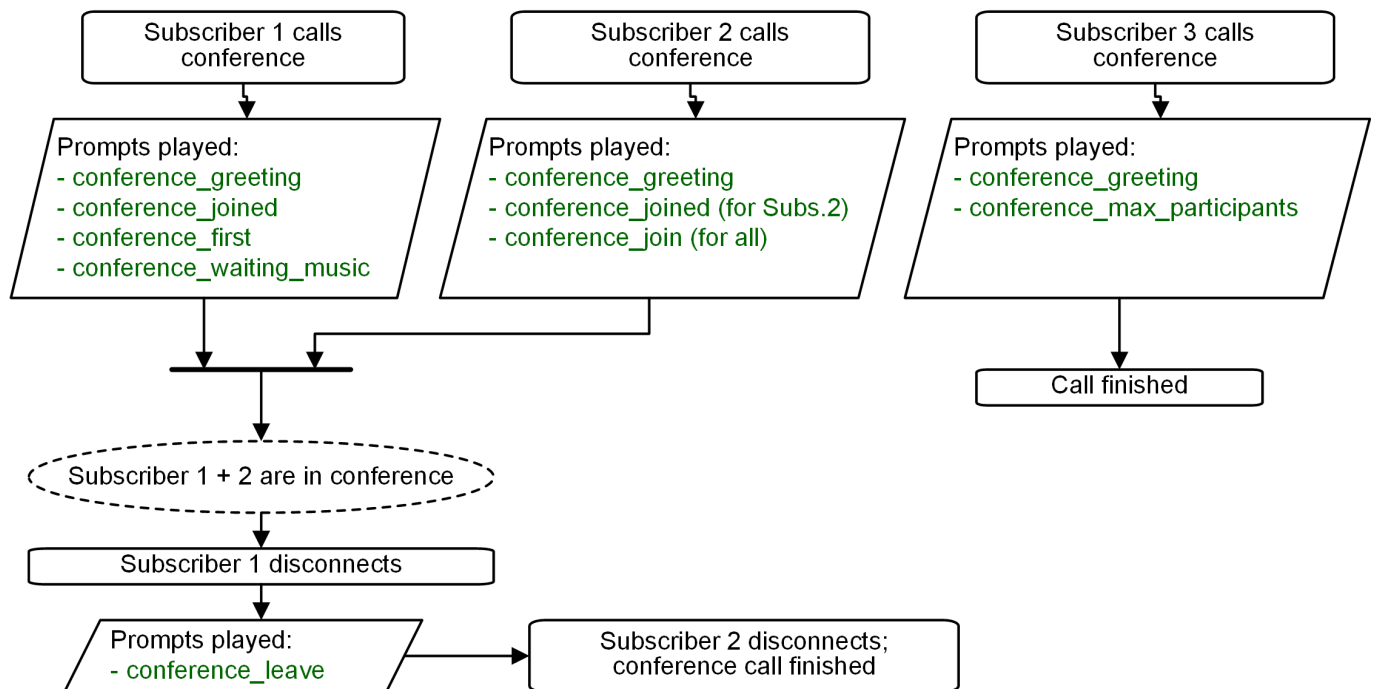


Figure 29: Flowchart of Conference without PIN

### 4.13 Malicious Call Identification (MCID)

MCID feature allows customers to report unwanted calls to the platform operator.

#### 4.13.1 Setup

To enable the feature first edit `config.yml` and enable there `apps:malicious_call:yes` and `kamailio:store_recentcalls:yes`. The latter option enables kamailio to store recent calls per subscriber UUID in the redis DB (the amount of stored recent calls will not exceed the amount of provisioned subscribers).

Next step is to create a system sound set for the feature. In *Settings*→*Sound Sets* either use your already existing *Sound Set* or create a new *Sound Set* and then assign it to your domain or subscribers. In the *Sound Set* there is a fileset *malicious\_call\_identification*→ for that purpose.

Once the *Sound Set* is created the Subscriber's Preferences *Malicious Call Identification* must be enabled under *Subscriber*→*Preferences*→*Applications* menu. The same parameter can be set in the Customer's preferences to enable this feature for all its subscribers.

The final step is to create a new *Rewrite Rule* and to route calls to, for instance `*123` → MCID application. For that you create a *Callee Inbound* rewrite rule `^(\\*123)$ → malicious_call`

Finally you run `ngcpcfg apply Enabling MCID` to recreate the templates and automatically restart depended services.

### 4.13.2 Usage

As a subscriber, to report a malicious call you call to either *malicious\_call* or to your custom number assigned for that purpose. Please note that you can report only your last received call. You will hear the media reply from the *Sound Set* you have previously configured.

To check reported malicious calls as the platform operator open *Settings*→*Malicious Calls* tab where you will see a list of registered calls. You can selectively delete records from the list and alternatively you can manage the reported calls by using the REST API.

### 4.13.3 Advanced configuration

By default the expiration time for the most recent call per subscriber is 3600 seconds (1 hour). If you wish to prolong or shorten the expiration time open `constants.yml` and set there `recentcalls:expire:3600` to a new value, and issue `ngcpcfg apply Enabling MCID` afterwards.

## 4.14 Subscriber Profiles

The preferences a subscriber can provision by himself via the CSC can be limited via profiles within profile sets assigned to subscribers.

### 4.14.1 Subscriber Profile Sets

Profile sets define containers for profiles. The idea is to define profile sets with different profiles by the administrator (or the reseller, if he is permitted to do so). Then, a subscriber with administrative privileges can re-assign profiles within his profile sets for the subscribers of his customer account.

Profile Sets can be defined in *Settings*→*Subscriber Profiles*. To create a new Profile Set, click *Create Subscriber Profile Set*.

The screenshot shows the NGCP Dashboard interface. At the top, there is a header bar with the text "sip:wise NGCP Dashboard" and navigation links for "Monitoring & Statistics" and "Settings". A user is logged in as "administrator".

The main content area displays a modal window titled "Create Subscriber Profile Sets". This modal contains a section for selecting a "Reseller". It features a search bar and a table with the following data:

#	Name	Contract #	Status	
1	default	1	active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
2	test	2	active	<input type="checkbox"/>

Below the table, it indicates "Showing 1 to 2 of 2 entries". There are navigation buttons (back, first, 1, last, forward) and a "Create Reseller" button.

Underneath the reseller selection, there are input fields for "Name" (containing "testset") and "Description" (containing "Test Set"). A "Save" button is located at the bottom right of the modal.

At the bottom of the dashboard, a footer note states: "© 2013 Sipwise GmbH, all rights reserved."

You need to provide a reseller, name and description.

To create Profiles within a Profile Set, hover over the Profile Set and click the *Profiles* button.

Profiles within a Profile Set can be created by clicking the *Create Subscriber Profile* button.

Logged in as administrator | Language | Logout

sip:wise NGCP Dashboard

### Create Subscriber Profile

Name: test

Description: Test Profile

Default Profile: ☒

block\_in\_mode: ☐

block\_in\_list: ☐

block\_in\_clir: ☐

block\_out\_mode: ☐

block\_out\_list: ☐

cfu: ☐

Save

© 2013 Sipwise GmbH, all rights reserved.

Checking the *Default Profile* option causes this profile to get assigned automatically to all subscribers, who have the profile set assigned. Other options define the user preferences which should be made available to the subscriber.

#### Note

When the platform administrator selects *Preferences* of the Subscriber Profile he will get an empty page like in the picture below, if none or only certain options are selected in the Subscriber Profile.


sip:wise NGCP Dashboard

Home | Documentation | Monitoring & Statistics | Tools | Settings

### Subscriber Profile "First test profile" - Preferences

Back

Some of the options, like `ncos` (NCOS level), will enable the definition of that preference within the Subscriber Profile Preferences. Thus all subscribers who have this profile assigned to will have the preference activated by default. The below picture shows the preferences linked to the sample Subscriber Profile:


 **NGCP Dashboard**

[Home](#) [Documentation](#) [Monitoring & Statistics](#) [Tools](#) [Settings](#)

Subscriber Profile "Test profile 1 for NCOS" - Preferences

[← Back](#) [Expand Groups](#)

Call Blockings

	Attribute	Name	Value
	ncos	NCOS Level	Test NCOS for blocking outca

4.15 SIP Loop Detection

In order to detect a SIP loop ( incoming call as a response for a call request ) sip:carrier checks the combination of *SIP-URI*, *To* and *From* headers.

This check can be enabled in config.yml by setting kamailio.proxy.loop\_detection.enable: 'yes'. The system tolerates kamailio.proxy.loop\_detection.expire seconds. Higher occurrence of loops will be reported with a SIP 482 "Loop Detected" error message

4.16 Call-Through Application

Call-through allows telephony client to dial into an IVR system and specify (in two-stage dialing fashion) a new destination number which is then dialed by the sip:carrier to connect the client to the destination. As the call-through system needs to be protected from unauthorized use, a list of CLIs which are allowed to use the call-through system is stored in the sip:carrier platform.

Table 5: Call-Through Mappings

Column	Description
uuid	The internal UUID of the call-through subscriber
auth_key	Authentication key (CLI)
source_uuid	The internal UUID of the subscriber that is authorized for outgoing call leg (same as uuid in call-through scenario)

## 4.16.1 Administrative Configuration

### 4.16.1.1 Subscriber provisioning

In order to manage the call-through CLIs for subscriber, navigate to *Settings*→*Subscribers*, search for the subscriber you want to edit, press *Details* and then *Preferences*, scroll down to the *Callthrough CLIs* section and press *Edit Callthrough CLIs* button.

Logged in as administrator

sip:wise NGCP Dashboard

Documentation Monitoring & Statistics

### Subscriber Preferences for 43993006@10.15.20.133

← Back

Successfully updated ccmappings

- Call Forwards
- Voicemail and Voicebox
- Fax Features
- Speed Dial
- Reminder
- Callthrough CLIs**

★ Edit Callthrough CLIs

Show 5 entries Search:

#	CLI	Source UUID
1	431234567890	8bb71bde-ab29-42cc-85dd-dff55e8b33d4

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries

Using the NGCP Panel the user then creates Call Forward to destination *Call Through*.

### 4.16.1.2 Forward to local user

If the subscriber has a Call Forward to the call-through application but caller's CLI is not in the authorized CLIs list for call-through, sems responds with error back to proxy and proxy advances to the next number in the Call Forward destinations set. User can enter special destination *Local Subscriber* as next target after *Call Through* in the destinations set in order to terminate the call to the subscriber as if the subscriber didn't exist. This way the user may reach the call-through application from his authorized CLI (e.g. mobile number) and all other callers would reach the SIP subscriber's registered phone as usual.



NGCP Dashboard

Subscriber Preferences

Call Forwards

Call Forward Unconditional

Call Forward Busy

Call Forward Timeout

Call Forward Unavailable

Voicemail and Voicebox

Fax Features

Speed Dial

Reminder

Callthrough CLIs

Trusted Sources

**Edit Destination Set**

Name: quickset\_cfu

Destination:

- ☐ Voicemail
- ☐ Conference
- ☐ Fax2Mail
- ☐ Calling Card
- ☒ Call Through
- ☐ Local Subscriber
- ☐ URI/Number

URI/Number:

for (seconds): 300

Priority: 1

Remove

Destination:


- ☐ Voicemail
- ☐ Conference
- ☐ Fax2Mail
- ☐ Calling Card
- ☐ Call Through
- ☒ Local Subscriber



#### 4.16.1.3 Sound Set provisioning

In order for the Callthrough application to work a Sound Set must be created and associated with the Domain or Subscriber.

Sound Sets can be defined in *Settings*→*Sound Sets*. To create a new Sound Set, click *Create Sound Set*. Then click the *Files* button. Administrator can upload the default sounds in one of supported languages or uploaded by the administrator manually in his language of choice.

There is a preference *sound\_set* on Domain and Subscriber levels to link subscribers to the sound set that they should hear (as usual the subscriber preference overrides the domain one).

 **NGCP Dashboard**

  Documentation ▾

Manage Sound Set Calling Card and Call-through

← Back

★ Load Default Files

Sound set successfully loaded with default files.

calling_card			
Name	Filename	Loop	
and	and.wav	<input type="checkbox"/>	
busy_ringback_tone		<input type="checkbox"/>	
calling_card_not_found	calling_card_not_found.wav	<input type="checkbox"/>	
connecting	connecting.wav	<input type="checkbox"/>	
could_not_connect	could_not_connect.wav	<input type="checkbox"/>	

**Note**  
You may use 8 or 16 bit mono WAV audio files for all of the voice prompts.

4.16.2 Call Flow

The call arrives at sems application server with Request-URI user `callthrough`.

4.16.2.1 Internal Header Parameters

The INVITE contains an extra SIP header `P-App-Param` with the following parameters:

Table 6: SIP Header parameters for call-through application

Name	Meaning
uuid	The internal UUID of the call-through subscriber

Table 6: (continued)

Name	Meaning
srcnumber	Caller's CLI for the authentication
outgoing_cli	New CLI to be used by sems application for the outgoing call leg

#### 4.16.2.2 Caller authorization

Caller is authorized using mapping shown in table above: `select source_uuid from provisioning.voip_cc_mapping where uuid=$uuid and auth_key=$srcnumber;`

If the check fails return the configured error response code. Then proceed with the call setup as follows.

#### 4.16.2.3 Outgoing call

Sems requests the user to enter destination and starts digit collection. Digit collection process is terminated after 5 seconds (configurable in sems config file) or by pressing the # key. User can start entering destination while the voice prompt is being played.

Sems sends INVITE to the proxy with Request-URI: `sip:$number@$outboundproxy;sw_domain=$subscriber.domain`

`From:$outgoing_cli`

On receiving the 401 or 407 response from the proxy the application authenticates using the digest credentials retrieved for the call-through subscriber from the `voip_subscribers` table: `select s.username, s.password, d.domain from provisioning.voip_subscribers s, provisioning.voip_domains d where s.uuid=$source_uuid and s.domain_id=d.id;`

If the call setup fails the application plays back the "could\_not\_connect" sound file. If successful the application acts transparently and does not provide any voice announcements or DTMF detection.

#### 4.16.2.4 CLI configuration

The CLI on the outgoing call from the call-through module is set to the Network-Provided Number (NPN) of the call-through subscriber. There is nothing to configure.

### 4.17 Calling Card Application

Calling card application uses a similar concept to call-through except that authorization process operates on the PIN code entered by user using DTMF instead of the CLI. The sip:carrier maps incoming UUID of the pilot subscriber to the list of PINs for calling card

application with their corresponding subscriber UUIDs for outbound call leg using table `provisioning.voip_cc_mapping`

```
table {"uuid", "auth_key", "source_uuid"}
```

Table 7: Calling Cards

Column	Description
uuid	The internal UUID of the pilot subscriber
auth_key	Authentication key (PIN)
source_uuid	The internal UUID of the subscriber that is authorized for outgoing call leg

#### 4.17.1 Administrative Configuration

##### 4.17.1.1 Subscriber provisioning


In order to use the calling cards service the user creates a Call Forward to destination *Calling Card* for the designated subscriber that will be used as access number for this service.



##### 4.17.1.2 Sound Set provisioning

In order for the Calling Card application to work a Sound Set must be created and associated with the Domain or Subscriber.

Sound Sets can be defined in *Settings*→*Sound Sets*. To create a new Sound Set, click *Create Sound Set*. Then click the *Files* button. Administrator can upload the default sounds in one of supported languages or uploaded by the administrator manually in his language of choice.

There is a preference *sound\_set* on Domain and Subscriber levels to link subscribers to the sound set that they should hear (as usual the subscriber preference overrides the domain one).




 Documentation

## Manage Sound Set Calling Card and Call-through

[< Back](#)
[★ Load Default Files](#)

Sound set successfully loaded with default files.

calling_card			
Name	Filename	Loop	
and	and.wav	<input type="checkbox"/>	
busy_ringback_tone		<input type="checkbox"/>	
calling_card_not_found	calling_card_not_found.wav	<input type="checkbox"/>	
connecting	connecting.wav	<input type="checkbox"/>	
could_not_connect	could_not_connect.wav	<input type="checkbox"/>	

### Note

You may use 8 or 16 bit mono WAV audio files for all of the voice prompts.

#### 4.17.1.3 CLI configuration

The CLI on the outgoing call from the calling card app can be configured in one of the following ways using subscriber preferences:

- 1) Show original caller's CLI: the calling card subscriber shall have `allowed_clis:*` (any). Sems application sends the original caller's CLI in the From header, it is validated by the SIP proxy and sent to outside.
- 2) Show number of the pilot (calling card) subscriber: the calling card subscriber shall have an empty `allowed_clis` and desired number set as value of `user_cli` preference. The SIP proxy overrides the original caller's CLI in UPN with the value of the `user_cli` preference. The peer must have set `outbound_from_user`, `outbound_from_display:User-Provided Number` (UPN).

### 4.17.2 Call Flow

The call arrives at sems application server with Request-URI user `callingcard`.

#### 4.17.2.1 Internal Header Parameters

The INVITE contains an extra SIP header `P-App-Param` with the following parameters:

Table 8: SIP Header parameters for calling card application

Name	Meaning
uuid	The internal UUID of the pilot subscriber
outgoing_cli	New CLI to be used by sems application for the outgoing call leg

#### 4.17.2.2 Caller authorization

- Sems requests the user to enter PIN and starts digit collection. Digit collection process is terminated after 5 seconds (configurable in sems config file) or by pressing the `#` key. User can start entering destination while the voice prompt is being played.
- Sems checks that PIN is valid and belongs to the pilot subscriber using mapping as shown in the table. It fetches UUID of the subscriber to be used for outgoing call leg: `select source_uuid from provisioning.voip_cc_mapping where uuid=$uuid and auth_key=$pin;`
- If the check fails sems will request the user to re-enter PIN up to the configured number of times.
- If successful proceed with the call setup making call on behalf of subscriber determined by the `source_uuid` key as follows.

#### 4.17.2.3 Outgoing call

Sems application plays back the available balance of the customer. Sems requests the user to enter destination and starts digit collection. Digit collection process is terminated after 5 seconds (configurable in sems config file) or by pressing the `#` key. User can start entering destination while the voice prompt is being played.

Sems sends INVITE to the proxy with Request-URI: `sip:$number@$outboundproxy;sw_domain=$subscriber.domain`

`From:$outgoing_cli`

On receiving the 401 or 407 response from the proxy the application authenticates using the digest credentials retrieved for the subscriber for outgoing call leg from the `voip_subscribers` table: `select s.username, s.password, d.domain from provisioning.voip_subscribers s, provisioning.voip_domains d where s.uuid=$source_uuid and s.domain_id=d.id;`

#### 4.17.2.4 Voucher recharge

During the destination collection phase in calling card application user can enter special code \*1\*<pin># (configurable in sems config file) to transfer balance from other calling card customer to the currently authorized customer. Sems transfers all remaining balance from that customer to the current customer.

#### 4.17.2.5 Billing

The call via calling card application as well as call-through generates three CDRs:

- A to B: The incoming call from any source to the call-through subscriber.
- B to callingcard@app.local or callthrough@app.local: The call forward to the sems application.
- B to C: The outgoing call to the final destination. The three CDRs are handled by the billing process as usual, exported and shown in all call lists. .

### 4.18 Invoices and Invoice Templates

Content and vision of the invoices are customizable by [invoice templates](#) Section [4.18.2](#).

---

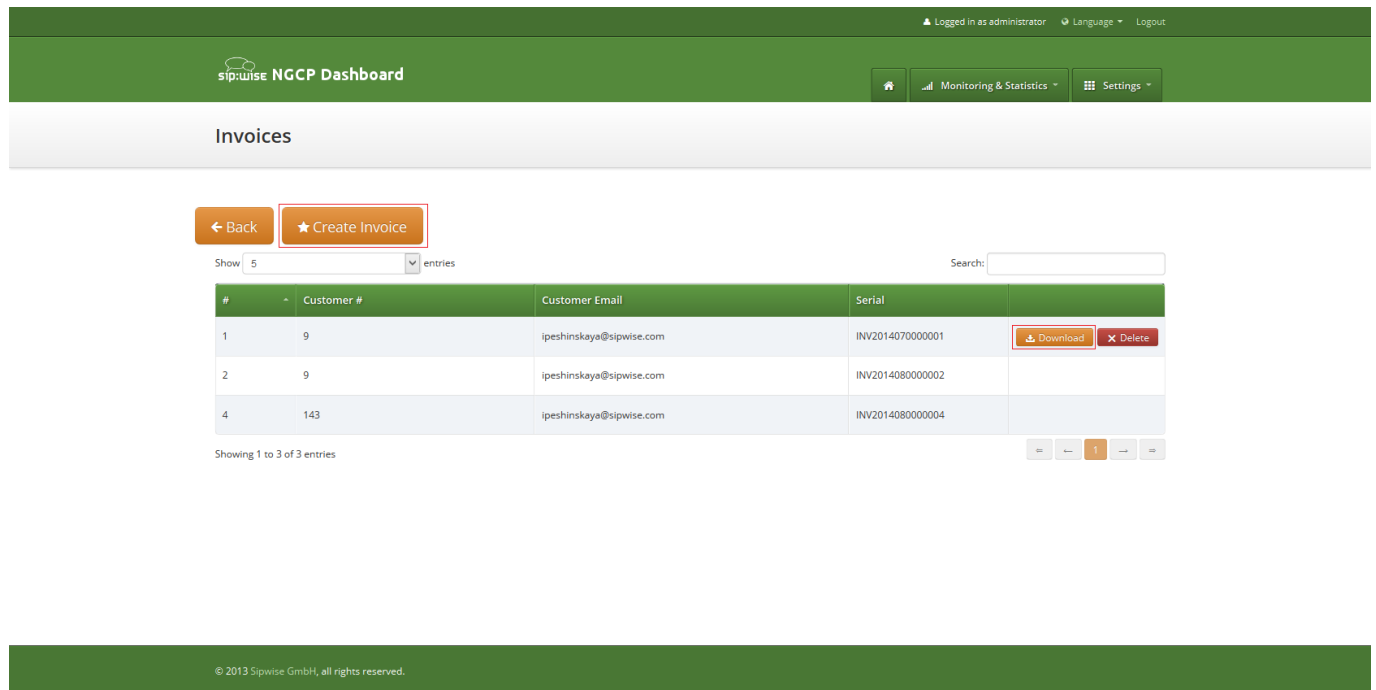
#### Note

The sip:carrier generates invoices in pdf format.

---

#### 4.18.1 Invoices Management

Invoices can be requested for generation, searched, downloaded and deleted in the invoices interface.



Logged in as administrator | Language | Logout

**sip:wise NGCP Dashboard**

Monitoring & Statistics | Settings

## Invoices

← Back | ★ Create Invoice

Show 5 entries | Search:

#	Customer #	Customer Email	Serial	
1	9	ipeshinskaya@sipwise.com	INV2014070000001	Download   Delete
2	9	ipeshinskaya@sipwise.com	INV2014080000002	
4	143	ipeshinskaya@sipwise.com	INV2014080000004	

Showing 1 to 3 of 3 entries

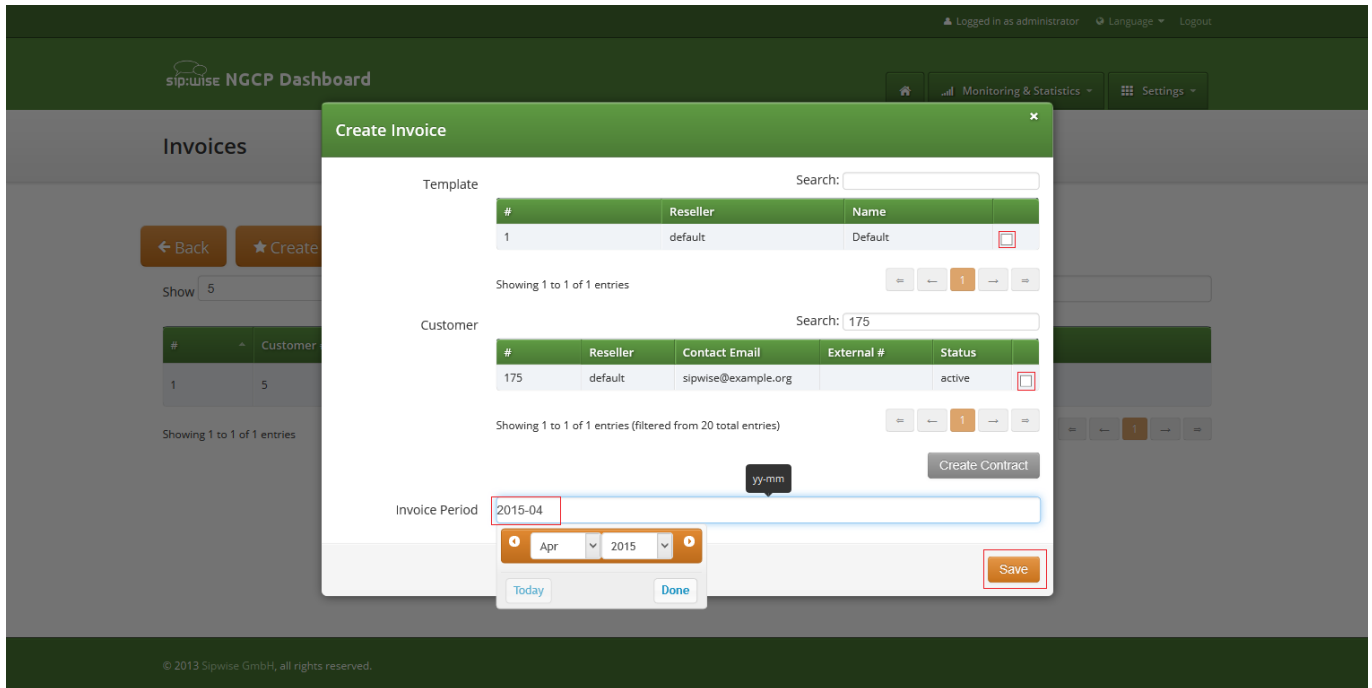
© 2013 Sipwise GmbH, all rights reserved.

To request invoice generation for the particular customer and period press "Create invoice" button. On the invoice creation form following parameters are available for selection:

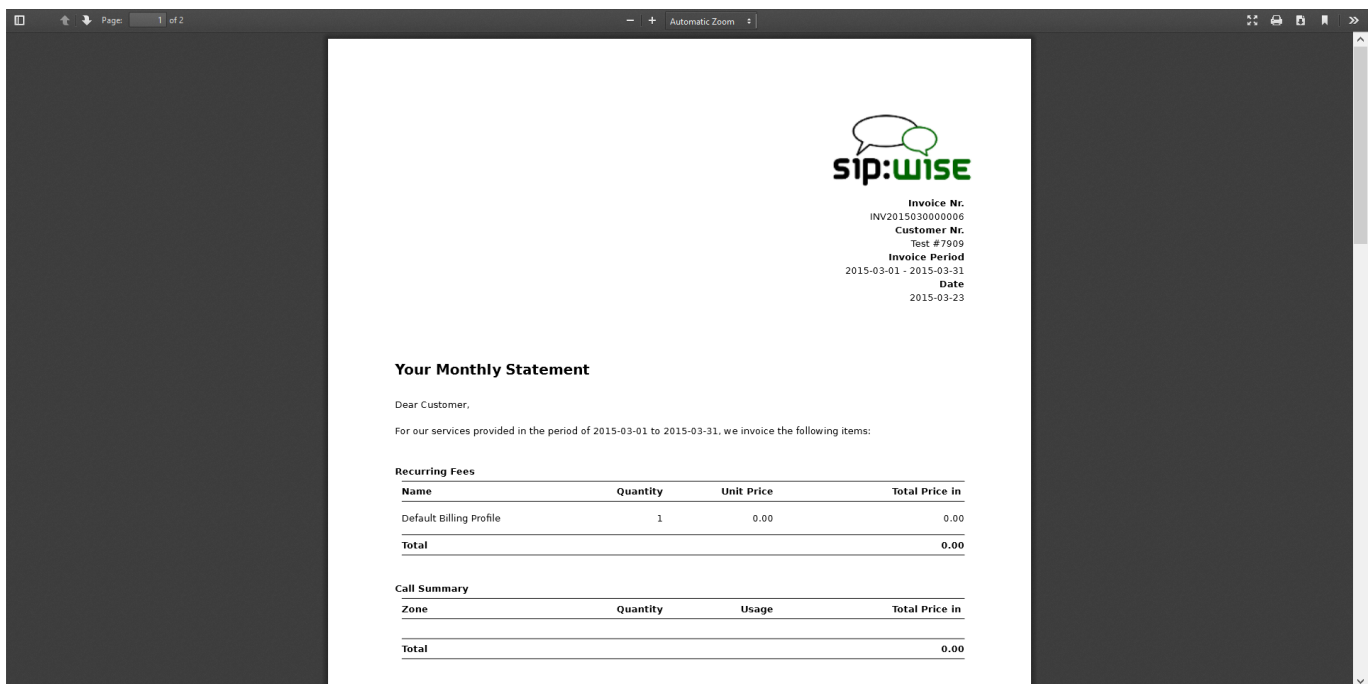
- **Template:** any of existent invoice template can be selected for the invoice generation.
- **Customer:** owner of the billing account, recipient of the invoice.
- **Invoice period:** billing period. Can be specified only as one calendar month. Calls with start time between first and last second of the period will be considered for the invoice

All form fields are mandatory.





Generated invoice can be downloaded as pdf file.



To do it press button "Download" against invoice in the invoice management interface.

Respectively press on the button "Delete" to delete invoice.

#### 4.18.2 Invoice Templates

Invoice template defines structure and look of the generated invoices. The sip:carrier makes it possible to create some invoice templates. Multiple invoice templates can be used to send invoices to the different customers using different languages.

**Important**

At least one invoice template should be created to enable invoice generation. Each customer has to be associated to one of the existent invoice template, otherwise invoices will be not generated for this customer.

Customer can be linked to the invoice template in the customer interface.

#### 4.18.2.1 Invoice Templates Management

Invoice templates can be searched, created, edited and deleted in the invoice templates management interface.

Logged in as administrator | Language | Logout

sip:wise NGCP Dashboard

Monitoring & Statistics | Settings

### Invoice Templates

← Back | ★ Create Invoice Template

Search:

#	Reseller	Name	Type	
1	default	Default	svg	<a href="#">Edit Meta</a> <a href="#">Edit Content</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries

© 2013 Sipwise GmbH, all rights reserved.

Invoice template creation is separated on two steps:

- Register new invoice template meta information.
- Edit content (template itself) of the invoice template.

To register new invoice template press "Create Invoice Template" button.

On the invoice template meta information form following parameters can be specified:

- **Reseller:** reseller who owns this invoice template. Please note, that it doesn't mean that the template will be used for the reseller customers by default. After creation, invoice template still need to be linked to the reseller customers.
- **Name:** unique invoice template name to differentiate invoice templates if there are some.
- **Type:** currently sip:carrier supports only svg format of the invoice templates.

All form fields are mandatory.

The screenshot shows the 'Create Invoice Template' modal in the sip:wise NGCP Dashboard. The modal has a green header and a white body. At the top, there's a 'Reseller' search bar with the value '424093730 3'. Below it is a table with one entry:

#	Name	Contract #	Status
7	test reseller 1424093730 3	131	active

Below the table, it says 'Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries (filtered from 8 total entries)'. There are navigation buttons (first, previous, next, last) and a 'Create Reseller' button. In the form section, the 'Name' field contains 'English invoice template' and has a tooltip that says 'The invoice template type (only svg for now)'. The 'Type' field is set to 'SVG'. A 'Save' button is at the bottom right.

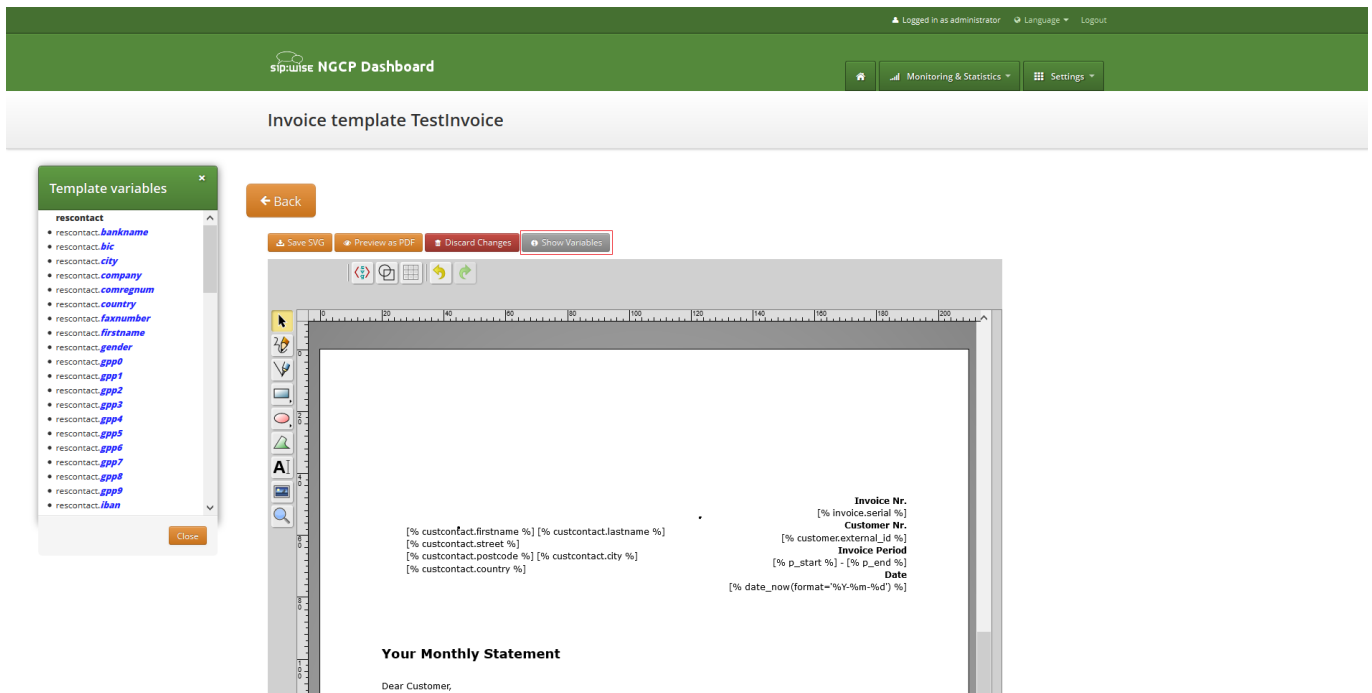
After registering new invoice template you can change invoice template structure in WYSIWYG SVG editor and preview result of the invoice generation based on the template.

#### 4.18.2.2 Invoice Template Content

Invoice template is a XML SVG source, which describes content, look and position of the text lines, images or other invoice template elements. The sip:carrier provides embedded WYSIWYG SVG editor svg-edit 2.6 to customize default template. The sip:carrier svg-edit has some changes in layers management, image edit, user interface, but this [basic introduction](#) still may be useful.

Template refers to the owner reseller contact ("rescontact"), customer contract ("customer"), customer contact ("custcontact"), billing profile ("billprof"), invoice ("invoice") data as variables in the "[%%]" mark-up with detailed information accessed as field name after point e.g. [%invoice.serial%]. During invoice generation all variables or other special tokens in the "[% %]" mark-ups will be replaced by their database values.

Press on "Show variables" button on invoice template content page to see full list of variables with the fields:



You can add/change/remove embedded variables references directly in main svg-edit window. To edit text line in svg-edit main window double click on the text and place cursor on desired position in the text.

After implementation of the desired template changes, invoice template should be [saved](#) Section 4.18.2.3.

To return to the sip:carrier invoice template **default** content you can press on the "Discard changes" button.



### Important

"Discard changes" operation can't be undone.

## Layers

Default template contains three groups elements (<g/>), which can be thought of as pages, or in terms of svg-edit - layers. Layers are:

- **Background:** special layer, which will be repeated as background for every other page of the invoice.
- **Summary:** page with a invoice summary.
- **CallList:** page with calls made in a invoice period. Is invisible by default.

To see all invoice template layers, press on "Layers" vertical sign on right side of the svg-edit interface:

Logged in as administratorLanguageLogout

sipwise NGCP DashboardMonitoring & StatisticsSettings

Invoice template TestInvoice

Back

Save SVGPreview as PDFDiscard ChangesShow Variables

Layers

114

100

Invoice Nr.  
[% invoice.serial %]  
Customer Nr.  
[% customer.external\_id %]  
Invoice Period  
[% p\_start %] - [% p\_end %]  
Date  
[% date\_now(format="%Y-m-%d") %]

[% custcontact.firstname %] [% custcontact.lastname %]  
[% custcontact.street %]  
[% custcontact.postcode %] [% custcontact.city %]  
[% custcontact.country %]

Your Monthly Statement

Dear Customer,  
For our services provided in the period of [% p\_start %] to [% p\_end %], we invoice the following items:

Recurring Fees

Name	Quantity	Unit Price	Total Price in [% cur %]
[% billprof.name %]	1	[% fixfee %]	[% fixfee %]
Total			[% fixfee %]

Call Summary

Zone	Quantity	Usage	Total Price in [% cur %]
Total			[% zonefee %]

Summary

	in [% cur %]
Total Summary	[% netfee %]
VAT ([% customer.vat_rate %])	[% vatfee %]
Amount Due	[% allfee %]

The amount is automatically charged via SEPA within 30 days using Mandate ID MID12345 and Creditor ID CID12345 from your account with IBAN [% rescontact.iban %] and BIC [% rescontact.bic %].  
With best regards,  
Your [% rescontact.company %] Service Team

[% rescontact.company %]  
[% rescontact.street %]  
[% rescontact.postcode %] [% custcontact.city %]  
[% rescontact.country %]

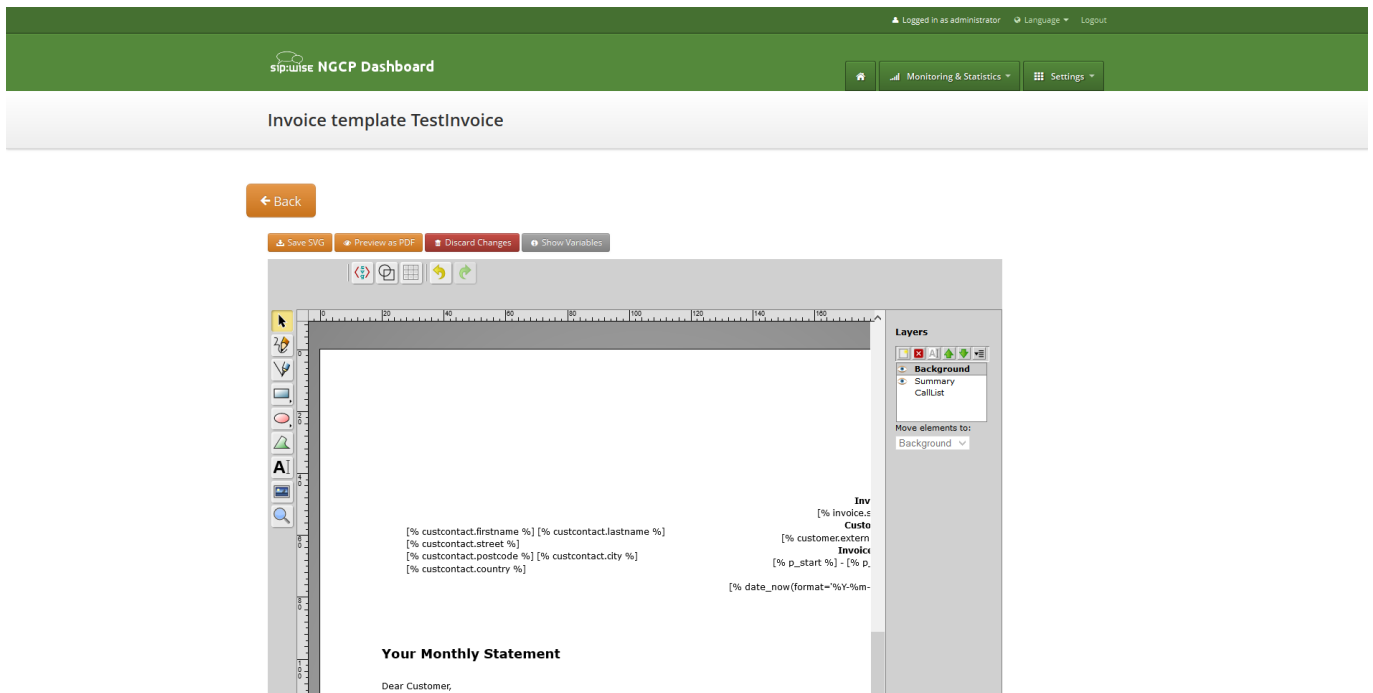
Company Reg.Nr.: [% rescontact.comregnum %]  
VAT.Nr.: [% rescontact.vatnum %]  
IBAN: [% rescontact.iban %]  
BIC: [% rescontact.bic %]

Page [% aux.page %]

© 2013 Sipwise GmbH, all rights reserved.

Side panel with layers list will be shown.

117

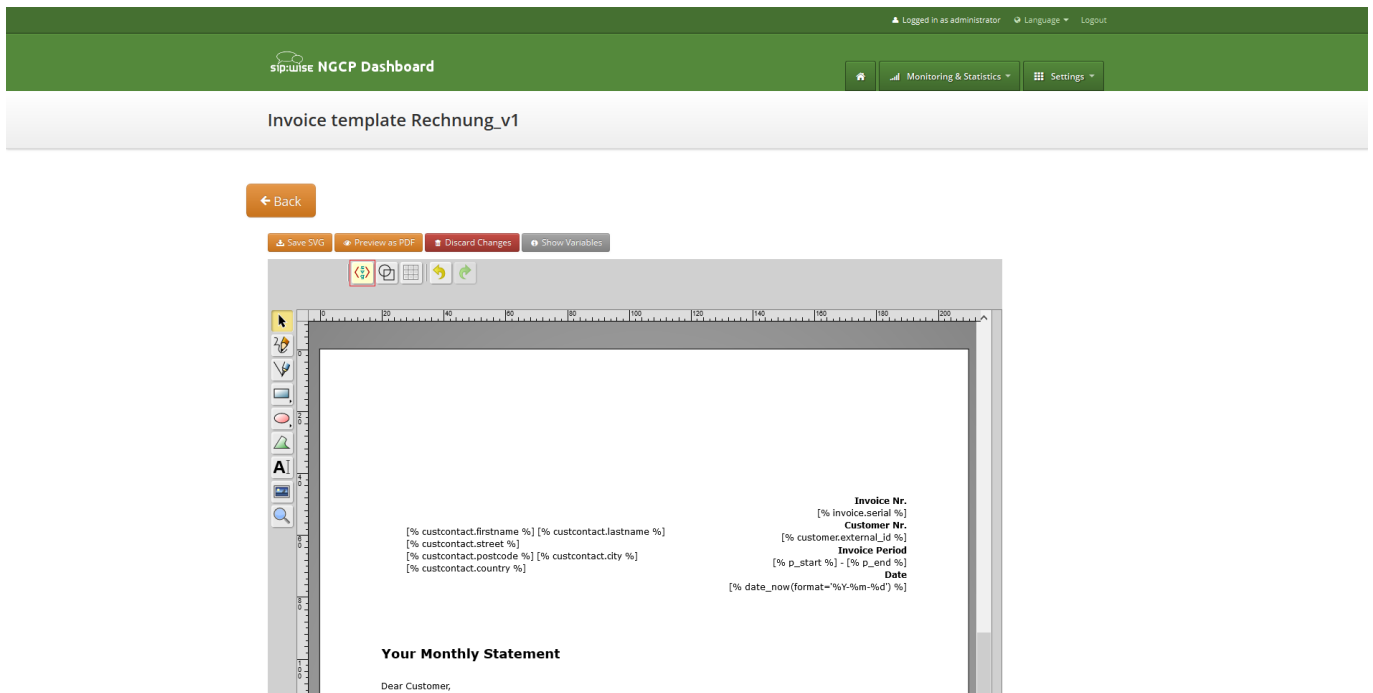


One of the layers is active, and its element can be edited in the main svg-edit window. Currently active layer's name is **bold** in the layers list. The layers may be visible or invisible. Visible layers have "eye" icon left of their names in the layers list.

To make a layer active, click on its name in the layers list. If the layer was invisible, its elements became visible on activation. Thus you can see mixed elements of some layers, then you can switch off visibility of other layers by click on their "eye" icons. It is good idea to keep visibility of the "Background" layer on, so look of the generated page will be seen.

### **Edit SVG XML source**

Sometimes it may be convenient to edit svg source directly and svg-edit makes it possible to do it. After press on the <svg> icon in the top left corner of the svg-edit interface:



SVG XML source of the invoice template will be shown.

SVG source can be edited in place or just copy-pasted as usual text.

### Note

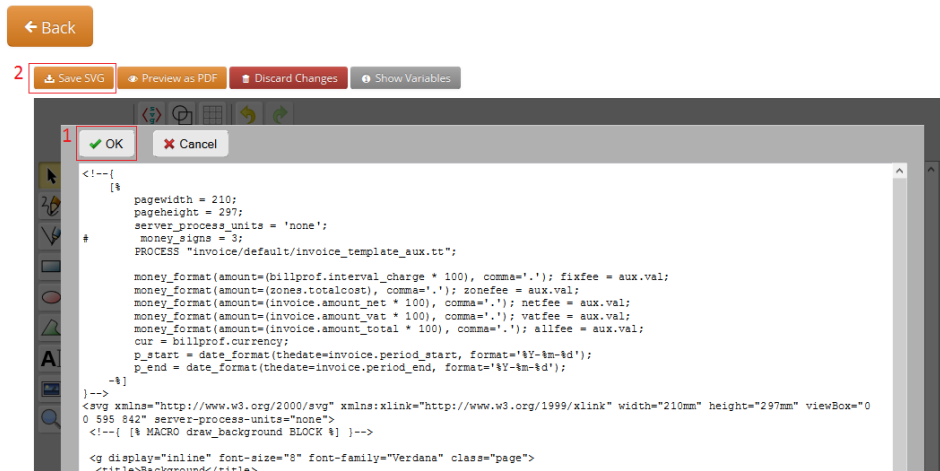
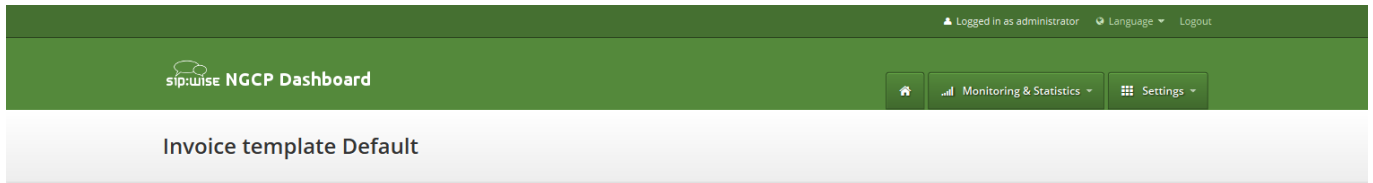
Template keeps sizes and distances in pixels.



### Important

When edit svg xml source, please change very carefully and thinkfully things inside special comment mark-up "<!--{ }-->". Otherwise invoice generation may be broken. Please be sure that document structure repeats default invoice template: has the same groups (<g/>) elements on the top level, text inside special comments mark-up "<!--{ }-->" preserved or changed appropriately, svg xml structure is correct.

To save your changes in the svg xml source, first press "OK" button on the top left corner of the source page:



And then [save invoice template changes](#) Section 4.18.2.3.

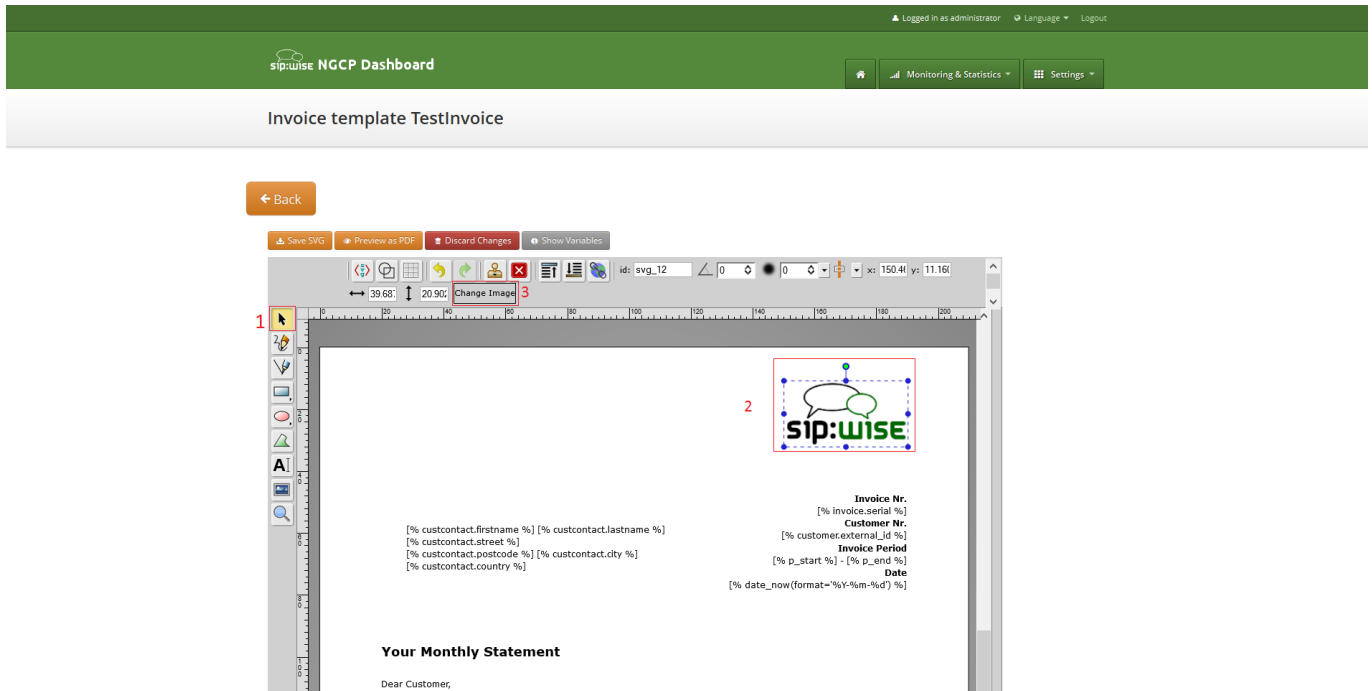
### Note

You can copy and keep the svg source of your template as a file on the disk before start experimenting with the template. Later you will be able to return to this version replacing svg source.

### Change logo image

- Make sure that "Select tool" is active.
- Select default logo, clicking on the logo image.
- Press "Change image" button, which should appear on the top toolbar.

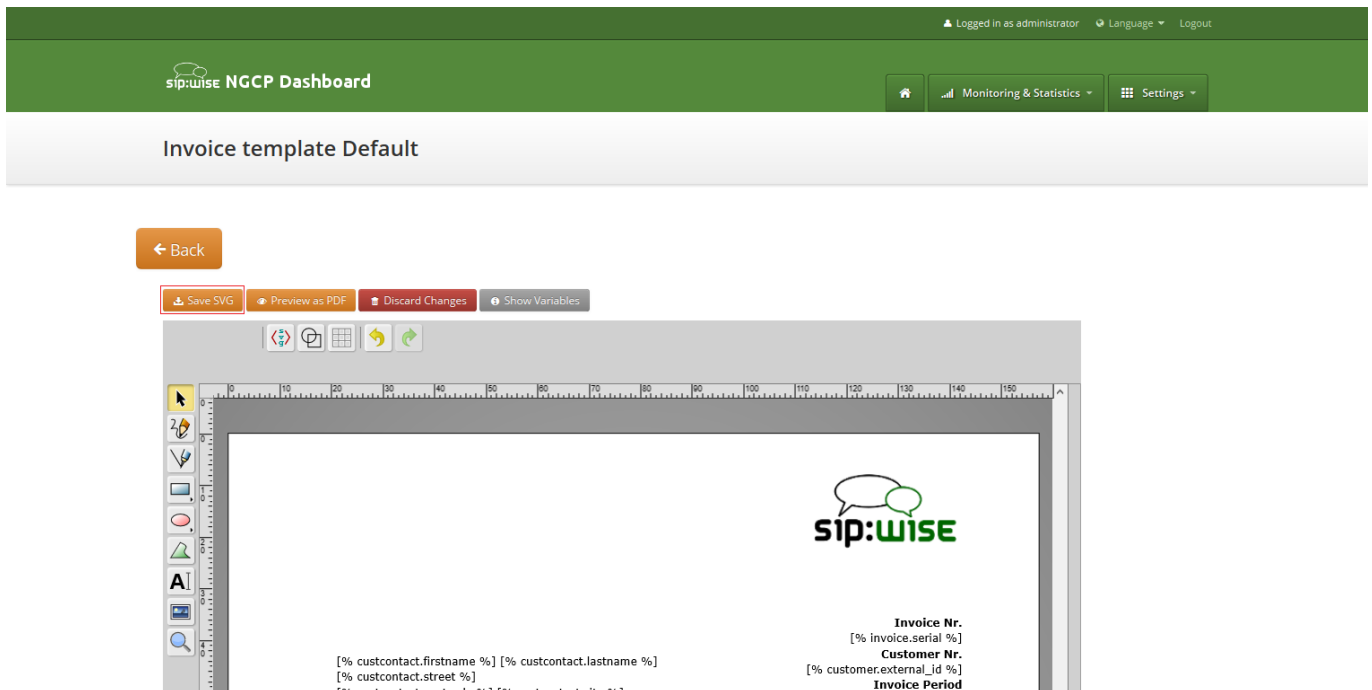




After image uploaded [save invoice template changes](#) Section 4.18.2.3.

#### 4.18.2.3 Save and preview invoice template content

To save invoice template content changes press button "Save SVG".



You will see message about successfully saved template. You can preview your invoice look in PDF format. Press on "Preview as PDF" button.

Logged in as administrator Language Logout

sip:wise NGCP Dashboard

Monitoring & Statistics Settings

## Invoice template Default

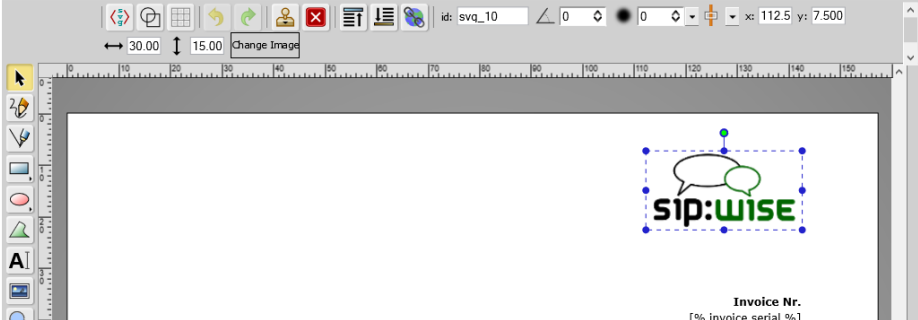
← Back

Invoice template successfully saved

Save SVG Preview as PDF Discard Changes Show Variables

id: svq\_10 0 0 x: 112.5 y: 7.500

30.00 15.00 Change Image



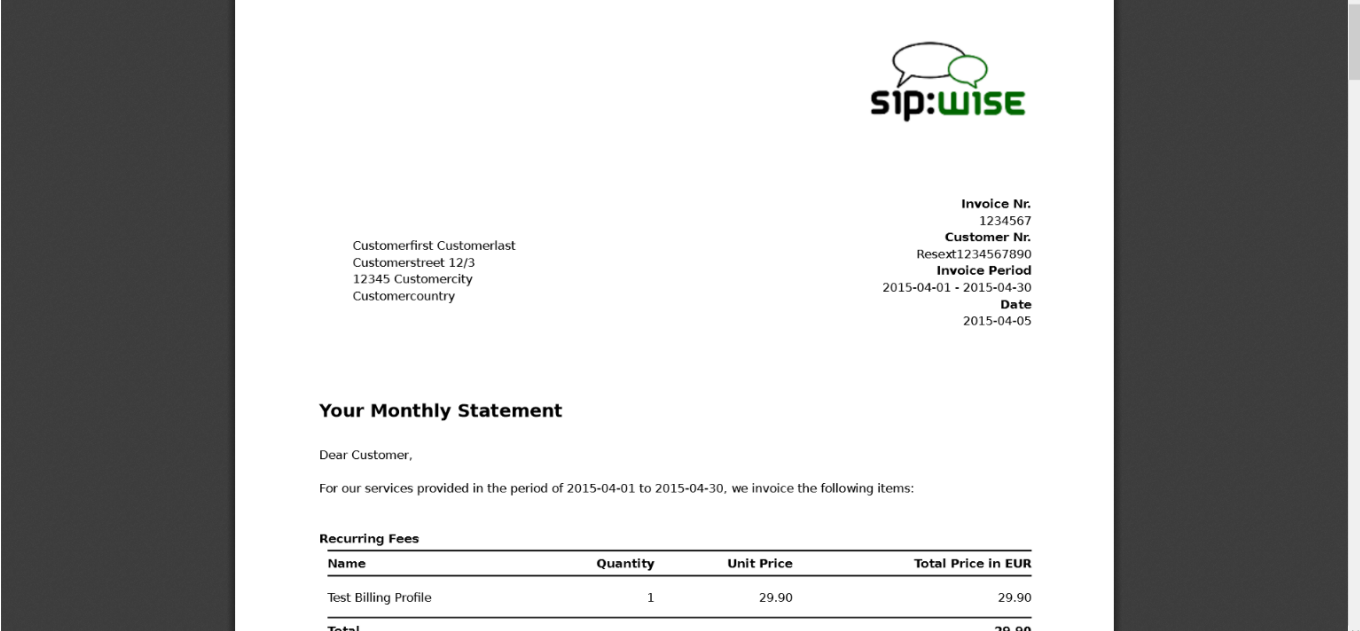
Invoice Nr.  
[% invoice.serial %]

Invoice preview will be opened in the new window.

### Note

Example fake data will be used for preview generation.

Page: 1 of 4 Automatic Zoom



Customerfirst Customerlast  
Customerstreet 12/3  
12345 Customercity  
Customercountry

Invoice Nr.  
1234567  
Customer Nr.  
Resext1234567890  
Invoice Period  
2015-04-01 - 2015-04-30  
Date  
2015-04-05

### Your Monthly Statement

Dear Customer,

For our services provided in the period of 2015-04-01 to 2015-04-30, we invoice the following items:

Recurring Fees			
Name	Quantity	Unit Price	Total Price in EUR
Test Billing Profile	1	29.90	29.90
<b>Total</b>			<b>29.90</b>

### 4.18.3 Invoices Generation

Besides generating invoices on demand using web interface, Sipwise NGCP contains an *invoice generator script* that allows for producing invoices automatically, at regular intervals, for all customers, using the *cron* system tool.



#### Warning

***Automated invoice generation is deprecated since mr4.0 release of NGCP. The invoice generator script will damage billing records in the database.*** The rest of the description in "Invoices Generation" section is kept in the handbook for reference purposes only.

---

Script is located at: `/usr/share/ngcp-panel/tools/generate_invoices.pl`

In short:

- To generate and immediately send invoices for the previous month:

```
perl /usr/share/ngcp-panel/tools/generate_invoices.pl --send --prevmonth
```

- To generate invoices for the previous month without sending:

```
perl /usr/share/ngcp-panel/tools/generate_invoices.pl --prevmonth
```

- To send already generated invoices for the previous month:

```
perl /usr/share/ngcp-panel/tools/generate_invoices.pl --sendonly --prevmonth
```

- Regenerate invoices for the specified period:

```
perl /usr/share/ngcp-panel/tools/generate_invoices.pl --stime="2015-01-01 00:00:00" --etime="2015-01-31 00:00:00" --regenerate
```

Some not obvious options:

- *\*--allow\_terminated\** Generates invoices for the terminated contracts too.
- *\*--force\_unrated\** Generate invoices despite unrated calls existence in the specified generation period.
- *\*--no\_empty\** Skip invoices for the contracts without calls in the specified period and with null permanent fee for the billing profile.

To see all possible script options use `--help` or `--man`:

```
/usr/share/ngcp-panel/tools/generate_invoices.pl --man
```

Script will be run periodically as configured by the cron files. Cron files templates can be found at:

- /etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/cron.d/ngcp-invoice-gen.tt2
- /etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/cron.d/ngcp-invoice-gen.services

After applying your configuration cron file will be located at:

- /etc/cron.d/ngcp-invoice-gen

Script uses configuration file located at: /etc/ngcp-invoice-gen/invoice-gen.conf

Except common DB connection configuration following specific options can be defined in the config file:

- **RESELLER\_ID** 1,2,3,... N

Comma separated resellers id. Invoice generation will be performed only for the specified resellers.

- **CLIENT\_CONTRACT\_ID** 1,2,3,... N

Comma separated customers id. Invoice generation will be performed only for the specified customers.

- **STIME** YYYY-mm-DD HH:MM:SS

Usually is not necessary. Script option --prevmonth will define correct start and end time for the previous month billing period. Generated invoices will include all calls with call start time more then STIME value and less the ETIME value.

- **ETIME** YYYY-mm-DD HH:MM:SS

Usually is not necessary. Script option --prevmonth will define correct start and end time for the previous month billing period. Generated invoices will include all calls with call start time more then STIME value and less the ETIME value.

- **SEND** [0/1]

Generated invoices will be immediately sent to the customers.

- **RESEND** [0/1]

Invoices, already sent to the customers, will be sent again.

- **REGENERATE** [0/1]

Already presented invoices files will be generated again. Otherwise they will stay untouched.

- **ALLOW\_TERMINATED** [0/1]

Generate invoices for the already terminated customers too.

- **ADMIN\_EMAIL** *your@email.com*

Purposed for notifications about invoices generation fails. Not in use now.

All generated invoices can be seen in the [invoice management interface](#) Section 4.18.1.

On request each invoice will be sent to the proper customer as e-mail with the invoice PDF in the attachment. Letter content is defined by the invoice email template.

## 4.19 Email Reports and Notifications

### 4.19.1 Email events

The sip:carrier makes it possible to customize content of the emails sent on the following actions:

- Web password reset requested. Email will be sent to the subscriber, whom password was requested for resetting. If the subscriber doesn't have own email, letter will be sent to the customer, who owns the subscriber.
- New subscriber created. Email will be sent to the newly created subscriber or to the customer, who owns new subscriber.
- Letter with the invoice. Letter will be sent to the customer.

### 4.19.2 Initial template values and template variables

Default email templates for each of the email events are inserted on the initial sip:carrier database creation. Content of the default template is described in the corresponding sections. Default email templates aren't linked to any reseller and can't be changed through sip:carrier Panel. They will be used to initialize default templates for the newly created reseller.

Each email template refers to the values from the database using special mark-ups "[%" and "%]". Each email template has fixed set of the variables. Variables can't be added or changed without changes in the sip:carrier Panel code.

### 4.19.3 Password reset email template

Email will be sent after subscriber or subscriber administrator requested password reset for the subscriber account. Letter will be sent to the subscriber. If subscriber doesn't have own email, letter will be sent to the customer owning the subscriber.

Default content of the password reset email template is:

<b>Template name</b>	<b>passreset_default_email</b>
<b>From</b>	<a href="mailto:default@sipwise.com">default@sipwise.com</a>
<b>Subject</b>	Password reset email

<b>Body</b>	<p>Dear Customer,</p> <p>Please go to [%url%] to set your password and log into your self-care interface. ↩</p> <p>Your faithful Sipwise system</p> <p>--</p> <p>This is an automatically generated message. Do not reply.</p>
-------------	--

Following variables will be provided to the email template:

- [%url%]: specially generated url where subscriber can define his new password.
- [%subscriber%]: **username@domain** of the subscriber, which password was requested for reset.

#### 4.19.4 New subscriber notification email template

Email will be sent on the new subscriber creation. Letter will be sent to the newly created subscriber if it has an email. Otherwise, letter will be sent to the customer who owns the subscriber.

---

#### Note

By default email content template is addressed to the customer. Please consider this when create the subscriber with an email.

---

<b>Template name</b>	<b>subscriber_default_email</b>
<b>From</b>	<b>default@sipwise.com</b>
<b>Subject</b>	Subscriber created
<b>Body</b>	<p>Dear Customer,</p> <p>A new subscriber [%subscriber%] has been created for you.</p> <p>Your faithful Sipwise system</p> <p>--</p> <p>This is an automatically generated message. Do not reply.</p>

Following variables will be provided to the email template:

- [%url%]: specially generated url where subscriber can define his new password.
- [%subscriber%]: `username@domain` of the subscriber, which password was requested for reset.

#### 4.19.5 Invoice email template

<b>Template name</b>	<b>invoice_default_email</b>
<b>From</b>	<code>default@sipwise.com</code>
<b>Subject</b>	Invoice #[%invoice.serial%] from [%invoice.period_start_obj.ymd%] to [%invoice.period_end_obj.ymd%]
<b>Body</b>	<p>Dear Customer,</p> <p>Please find your invoice #[%invoice.serial%] for [%invoice. ← period_start_obj.month_name%], [%invoice.period_start_obj.year%] in attachment letter.</p> <p>Your faithful Sipwise system</p> <p>--</p> <p>This is an automatically generated message. Do not reply.</p>

Variables passed to the email template:

- [%invoice%]: container variable for the invoice information.

---

##### Invoice fields

- [%invoice.**serial**%]
- [%invoice.**amount\_net**%]
- [%invoice.**amount\_vat**%]
- [%invoice.**amount\_total**%]
- [%invoice.**period\_start\_obj**%]
- [%invoice.**period\_end\_obj**%]

The fields [%invoice.period\_start\_obj%] and [%invoice.period\_end\_obj%] provide methods of the perl package DateTime for the invoice start date and end date. Further information about DateTime can be obtained from the package documentation: `man DateTime`

---

- [%**provider**%]: container variable for the reseller contact. All database contact values will be available.
- [%**client**%]: container variable for the customer contact.

---

**Contact fields example for the "provider". Replace "provider" to client to access proper "customer" contact fields.**

- [%provider.**gender**%]
- [%provider.**firstname**%]
- [%provider.**lastname**%]
- [%provider.**comregnum**%]
- [%provider.**company**%]
- [%provider.**street**%]
- [%provider.**postcode**%]
- [%provider.**city**%]
- [%provider.**country**%]
- [%provider.**phonenum**%]
- [%provider.**mobilenumber**%]
- [%provider.**email**%]
- [%provider.**newsletter**%]
- [%provider.**faxnumber**%]
- [%provider.**iban**%]
- [%provider.**bic**%]
- [%provider.**vatnum**%]
- [%provider.**bankname**%]
- [%provider.**gpp0** - provider.**gpp9**%]

---

#### 4.19.6 Email templates management

Email templates linked to the resellers can be customized in the email templates management interface. For the administrative account email templates of all the resellers will be shown. Respectively for the reseller account only owned email templates will be shown.



Logged in as administrator | Language | Logout

sip:wise NGCP Dashboard | Monitoring & Statistics | Settings

## Email Templates

← Back | ★ Create Email Template

Show 5 entries | Search:

#	Reseller	Name	From	Subject	
10	New Reseller	subscriber_default_email	default@sipwise.com	Subscriber created	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>
11	New Reseller	passreset_default_email	default@sipwise.com	Password reset email	
12	New Reseller	invoice_default_email	default@sipwise.com	Invoice #[%invoice.serial%] from [%invoice.period_start_obj.ymd%] to [%invoice.period_end_obj.ymd%]	

Showing 1 to 3 of 3 entries

To create new email template press button "Create Email Template".

Logged in as administrator | Language | Logout

sip:wise NGCP Dashboard | Monitoring & Statistics | Settings

## Email Template

← Back | ★ Create

Show 5 entries

#	Reseller
10	New Reseller
11	New Reseller
12	New Reseller

Showing 1 to 3 of 3 entries

Search: New Reseller

#	Name	Contract #	Status
21	New Reseller	184	active

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries (filtered from 9 total entries)

Create Reseller

Name:

From Email Address:

Subject:

Body Template: Dear Customer,  
A new subscriber (% subscriber %) has been created for you

Save

On the email template form all fields are mandatory:

- **Reseller:** reseller who owns this email template.
- **Name:** currently only email template with the following names will be considered by the sip:carrier on the [appropriate event](#) Section 4.19.1 :
  - passreset\_default\_email;
  - subscriber\_default\_email;

- invoice\_default\_email;
- **From Email Address:** email address which will be used in the From field in the letter sent by the sip:carrier.
- **Subject:** Template of the email subject. Subject will be processed with the same template variables as the email body.
- **Body:** Email text template. Will be processed with appropriate template variables.

## 4.20 The Vertical Service Code Interface

*Vertical Service Codes* (VSC) are codes a user can dial on his phone to provision specific features for his subscriber account. The format is `*<code>*<value>` to activate a specific feature, and `#<code>` or `#<code>#` to deactivate it. The *code* parameter is a two-digit code, e.g. 72. The *value* parameter is the value being set for the corresponding feature.



### Important

The *value* user input is normalized using the Rewrite Rules Sets assigned to domain as described in Section [3.6](#).

---

By default, the following codes are configured for setting features. The examples below assume that there is a domain rewrite rule normalizing the number format `0<ac><sn>` to `<cc><ac><sn>` using 43 as country code.

- **72** - enable *Call Forward Unconditional* e.g. to 431000 by dialing `*72*01000`, and disable it by dialing `#72`.
- **90** - enable *Call Forward on Busy* e.g. to 431000 by dialing `*90*01000`, and disable it by dialing `#90`.
- **92** - enable *Call Forward on Timeout* e.g. after 30 seconds of ringing to 431000 by dialing `*92*30*01000`, and disable it by dialing `#92`.
- **93** - enable *Call Forward on Not Available* e.g. to 431000 by dialing `*93*01000`, and disable it by dialing `#93`.
- **50** - set *Speed Dial Slot*, e.g. set slot 1 to 431000 by dialing `*50*101000`, which then can be used by dialing `*1`.
- **55** - set *One-Shot Reminder Call* e.g. to 08:30 by dialing `*55*0830`.
- **31** - set *Calling Line Identification Restriction* for one call, e.g. to call 431000 anonymously dial `*31*01000`.
- **32** - enable *Block Incoming Anonymous Calls* by dialing `*32*`, and disable it by dialing `#32`.
- **80** - call using *Call Block Override PIN*, number should be prefixed with a block override PIN configured in admin panel to disable the outgoing user/admin block list and NCOS level for a call. For example, when override PIN is set to 7890, dial `*80*789001000` to call 431000 bypassing block lists.

### 4.20.1 Vertical Service Codes for PBX customers

Subscribers under the same PBX customer can enjoy some PBX-specific features by means of special VSCs.

NGCP provides the following PBX-specific VSCs:

- **97 - Call Parking:** during a conversation the subscriber can park the call with his phone to a "parking slot" and later on continue the conversation from another phone. To do that, a destination must be dialled as follows: \*97\*3; this will park the call to slot no. 3.

**PLEASE NOTE:**

- Cisco IP phones provide a softkey for Call Parking, that means the subscriber must only dial the parking slot number after pressing "Park" softkey on the phone.
- Other IP phones can perform Call Parking as a *blind transfer*, where the destination of the transfer must be dialled in the format described above.
- Both the caller and the callee can park the call.
- **98 - Call Unparking:** if a call has been parked, a subscriber may continue the conversation from any extension (phone) under the same PBX customer. To do that, the subscriber must dial the following sequence: \*98\*3; this will pick up the call that was parked at slot no. 3.
- **99 - Directed Call Pickup:** if a subscriber's phone is ringing (e.g. extension 23) and another subscriber wants to answer the call instead of the original callee, he may pick up the call by dialling \*99\*23 on his phone.

#### 4.20.2 Configuration of Vertical Service Codes

You can change any of the codes (but not the format) in `/etc/ngcp-config/config.yml` in the section `sems→vsc`. After the changes, execute `ngcpcfg apply 'changed VSC codes'`.



**Caution**

If you have the EMTAs under your control, make sure that the specified VSCs don't overlap with EMTA-internal VSCs, because the VSC calls must be sent to the NGCP via SIP like normal telephone calls.

#### 4.20.3 Voice Prompts for Vertical Service Code Configuration

Table 9: VSC Voice Prompts

Prompt Handle	Related VSC	Message
vsc_error	any	An error has occurred. Please try again later.
vsc_invalid	wrong code	Invalid feature code.
reject_vsc	any	Vertical service codes are disabled for this line.
vsc_cfu_on	72 (Call Forward Unconditional)	Your unconditional call forward has successfully been activated.
vsc_cfu_off	72 (Call Forward Unconditional)	Your unconditional call forward has successfully been deactivated.
vsc_cfb_on	90 (Call Forward Busy)	Your call forward on busy has successfully been activated.

Table 9: (continued)

Prompt Handle	Related VSC	Message
vsc_cfb_off	90 (Call Forward Busy)	Your call forward on busy has successfully been deactivated.
vsc_cft_on	92 (Call Forward on Timeout)	Your call forward on ring timeout has successfully been activated.
vsc_cft_off	92 (Call Forward on Timeout)	Your call forward on ring timeout has successfully been deactivated.
vsc_cfna_on	93 (Call Forward on Not Available)	Your call forward while not reachable has successfully been activated.
vsc_cfna_off	93 (Call Forward on Not Available)	Your call forward while not reachable has successfully been deactivated.
vsc_speeddial	50 (Speed Dial Slot)	Your speed dial slot has successfully been stored.
vsc_reminder_on	55 (One-Shot Reminder Call)	Your reminder has successfully been activated.
vsc_reminder_off	55 (One-Shot Reminder Call)	Your reminder has successfully been deactivated.
vsc_blockinclr_on	32 (Block Incoming Anonymous Calls)	Your rejection of anonymous calls has successfully been activated.
vsc_blockinclr_off	32 (Block Incoming Anonymous Calls)	Your rejection of anonymous calls has successfully been deactivated.

## 4.21 Handling WebRTC Clients

WebRTC is an open project providing browsers and mobile applications with Real-Time Communications (RTC) capabilities. Configuring your platform to offer WebRTC is quite easy and straightforward. This allows you to have a SIP-WebRTC bridge in place and make audio/video call towards normal SIP users from WebRTC clients and vice versa. Sip Provider listens, by default, on the following WebSockets and WebSocket Secure: `ws://your-ip:5060/ws`, `wss://your-ip:5061/ws` and `wss://your-ip:1443/wss/sip/`.

The WebRTC subscriber is just a normal subscriber which has just a different configuration in his Preferences. You need to change the following preferences under *Subscribers→Details→Preferences→NAT and Media Flow Control*:

- **use\_rtpproxy**: Always with rtpproxy as additional ICE candidate
- **transport\_protocol**: RTP/SAVPF (encrypted SRTP with RTCP feedback)

The `transport_protocol` setting may change, depending on your WebRTC client/browser configuration. Supported protocols are the following:

- Transparent (Pass through using the client's transport protocol)
- RTP/AVP (Plain RTP)
- RTP/SAVP (encrypted SRTP)
- RTP/AVPF (RTP with RTCP feedback)
- RTP/SAVPF (encrypted SRTP with RTCP feedback)
- UDP/TLS/RTP/SAVP (Encrypted SRTP using DTLS)
- UDP/TLS/RTP/SAVPF (Encrypted SRTP using DTLS with RTCP feedback)

**Warning**

The below configuration is enough to handle a WebRTC client/browser. As mentioned, you may need to tune a little bit your `transport_protocol` configuration, depending on your client/browser settings.

---

In order to have a bridge between normal SIP clients (using plain RTP for example) and WebRTC client, the normal SIP clients' preferences have to have the following configuration:

**transport\_protocol:** RTP/AVP (Plain RTP)

This will teach Sip Provider to translate between Plain RTP and RTP/SAVPF when you have calls between normal SIP clients and WebRTC clients.

## 4.22 XMPP and Instant Messaging

Instant Messaging (IM) based on XMPP comes with sip:carrier out of the box. sip:carrier uses `prosody` as internal XMPP server. Each subscriber created on the platform have assigned a XMPP user, reachable already - out of the box - by using the same SIP credentials. You can easily open an XMPP client (e.g. Pidgin) and login with your SIP `username@domain` and your SIP `password`. Then, using the XMPP client options, you can create your buddy list by adding your buddies in the format `user@domain`.

## 5 Customer Self-Care Interface and Menus

There are two ways for end users to maintain their subscriber settings: via the *Customer Self-Care Web Interface* and via *Vertical Service Codes* using their SIP phones.

### 5.1 The Customer Self-Care Web Interface

The NGCP provides a web panel for end users (CSC panel) to maintain their subscriber accounts, which is running on `https://<ce-ip>`. Every subscriber can log in there, change subscriber feature settings, view their call lists, retrieve voicemail messages and trigger calls using the click-to-dial feature.

#### 5.1.1 Login Procedure

To log into the CSC panel, the end user has to provide his full web username (e.g. `user1@1.2.3.4`) and the web password defined in Section 3.2. Once logged in, he can change his web password in the *Account* section. This will NOT change his SIP password, so if you control the end user devices, you can auto-provision the SIP password into the device and keep it secret, and just hand over the web password to the customer. This way, the end user will only be able to place calls with this auto-provisioned device and not with an arbitrary soft-phone, but can nonetheless manage his account via the CSC panel.

#### 5.1.2 Site Customization

As an operator (as well as a Reseller), you can change the branding logo of the CSC panel by modifying the CSS via web interface. For changing the branding logo you just need to access the web interface as administrator and move to *Reseller\_menu*. Once there click on *Details* button for "default" reseller. Then on *Branding* → *Edit Branding*. Now you can upload your logo and copy/paste the CSS code line in the `CSS__` field. The logo will be visible into the Customer Self Care interface.

Also Reseller can customize their web page (CSC and Admin interface) by uploading their logo and change the CSS. To do that, just access the Admin interface with the Reseller web credentials and then access the *Panel Branding* menu. From them you can upload the logo as explained before. The logo will appear in the CSC web page related to that reseller as well as to the Admin page of the reseller.

You can also enable/disable specific languages a user can choose from in the CSC panel. Currently, English (`en`), German (`de`), Spanish (`es`) and Russian (`ru`) are supported and English is activated by default. You can change the default language provided by CSC by changing the parameter *force\_language* in `config.yml`.

### 5.2 The Voicemail Menu

NGCP offers several ways to access the Voicemail box.

The CSC panel allows your users to listen to voicemail messages from the web browser, delete them and call back the user who left the voice message. User can setup voicemail forwarding to the external email and the PIN code needed to access the voicebox from any telephone also from the CSC panel.

**To manage the voice messages from SIP phone:** simply dial internal voicemail access number 2000.

To change the access number: look for the parameter *voicemail\_number* in */etc/ngcp-config/config.yml* in the section *sems*→*vsc*. After the changes, execute *ngcpcfg apply 'changed voicebox number'*.

---

**Tip**

To let the callers leave a voice message when user is not available he should enable Call Forward to Voicebox. The Call Forward can be provisioned from the CSC panel as well as by dialing Call Forward VSC with the voicemail number. E.g. when parameter *voicemail\_number* is set to 9999, a Call Forward on Not Available to the Voicebox is set if the user dials \*93\*9999. As a result, all calls will be redirected to the Voicebox if SIP phone is not registered.

---

**To manage the voice messages from any phone:**

- As an operator, you can setup some DID number as external voicemail access number: for that, you should add a special rewrite rule (Inbound Rewrite Rule for Callee, see Section 3.6.) on the incoming peer, to rewrite that DID to "voiceboxpass". Now when user calls this number the call will be forwarded to the voicemail server and he will be prompted for mailbox and password. The mailbox is the full E.164 number of the subscriber account and the password is the PIN set in the CSC panel.
- The user can also dial his own number from PSTN, if he setup Call Forward on Not Available to the Voicebox, and when reaching the voicemail server he can interrupt the "user is unavailable" message by pressing \* key and then be prompted for the PIN. After entering PIN and confirming with # key he will enter own voicemail menu. PIN is random by default and must be kept secret for that reason.

## 6 Billing Configuration

This chapter describes the steps necessary to rate calls and export rated CDRs (call detail records) to external systems.

### 6.1 Billing Profiles

Service billing on the NGCP is based on billing profiles, which may be assigned to customers and SIP peerings. The design focuses on a simple, yet flexible approach, to support arbitrary dial-plans without introducing administrative overhead for the system administrators. The billing profiles may define a base fee and free time or free money per billing interval. Unused free time or money automatically expires at the end of the billing interval.

Each profile may have call destinations (usually based on E.164 number prefix matching) with configurable fees attached. Call destination fees each support individual intervals and rates, with a different duration and/or rate for the first interval. (e.g.: charge the first minute when the call is opened, then every 30 seconds, or make it independent of the duration at all) It is also possible to specify different durations and/or rates for peak and off-peak hours. Peak time may be specified based on weekdays, with additional support for manually managed dates based on calendar days. The call destinations can finally be grouped for an overview on user's invoices by specifying a zone in two detail levels. (E.g.: national landline, national mobile, foreign 1, foreign 2, etc.)

#### 6.1.1 Creating Billing Profiles

The first step when setting up billing data is to create a billing profile, which will be the container for all other billing related data. Go to *Settings*→*Billing* and click on *Create Billing Profile*.



Logged in as administrator Logout

### Create Billing Profiles

Reseller Search:

#	Name	Contract #	Status	
1	default	1	active	1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries

← 1 →

Create Reseller

Handle  2

Name  3

Prepaid ☐

Interval charge

4

© 2013 Sip

The fields *Reseller*, *Handle* and *Name* are mandatory.

- **Reseller:** The reseller this billing profile belongs to.
- **Handle:** A unique, permanently fixed string which is used to attach the billing profile to a customer or SIP peering contract.
- **Name:** A free form string used to identify the billing profile in the *Admin Panel*. This may be changed at any time.
- **Interval charge:** A base fee for the billing interval, specifying a monetary amount (represented as a floating point number) in whatever currency you want to use.
- **Interval free time:** If you want to include free calling time in your billing profile, you may specify the number of seconds that are available every billing interval. See *Creating Billing Fees* below on how to select destinations which may be called using the free time.
- **Interval free cash:** Same as for *interval free time* above, but specifies a monetary amount which may be spent on outgoing calls. This may be used for example to implement a minimum turnover for a contract, by setting the *interval charge* and *interval free cash* to the same values.
- **Fraud monthly limit:** The monthly fraud detection limit (in Cent) for accounts with this billing profile. If the call fees of an account reach this limit within a billing interval, an action can be triggered.
- **Fraud monthly lock:** a choice of *none*, *foreign*, *outgoing*, *incoming*, *global*. Specifies a lock level which will be used to lock the account and his subscribers when *fraud monthly limit* is exceeded.
- **Fraud monthly notify:** An email address or comma-separated list of email addresses that will receive notifications when *fraud monthly limit* is exceeded.

- **Fraud daily limit:** The fraud detection limit (in Cent) for accounts with this billing profile. If the call fees of an account reach this limit within a calendar day, an action can be triggered.
- **Fraud daily lock:** a choice of *none*, *foreign*, *outgoing*, *incoming*, *global*. Specifies a lock level which will be used to lock the account and his subscribers when *fraud daily limit* is exceeded.
- **Fraud daily notify:** An email address or comma-separated list of email addresses that will receive notifications when *fraud daily limit* is exceeded.
- **Currency:** The currency symbol for your currency. Any UTF-8 character may be used and will be printed in web interfaces.
- **VAT rate:** The percentage of value added tax for all fees in the billing profile. Currently for informational purpose only and not used further.
- **VAT included:** Whether VAT is included in the fees entered in web forms or uploaded to the platform. Currently for informational purpose only and not used further.

### 6.1.2 Creating Billing Fees

Each *Billing Profile* holds multiple *Billing Fees*.

To set up billing fees, click on the *Fees* button of the billing profile you want to configure. Billing fees may be uploaded using a configurable CSV file format, or entered directly via the web interface by clicking *Create Fee Entry*. To configure the CSV field order for the file upload, rearrange the entries in the `www_admin→fees_csv→element_order` array in `/etc/ngcp-config/config.yml` and execute the command `ngcpcfg apply changed fees element order`. The following is an example of working CSV file to upload (pay attention to double quotes):

```
".", "^1", out, "EU", "ZONE EU", 5.37, 60, 5.37, 60, 5.37, 60, 5.37, 60, 0, 0
"^01.+$", "^02145.+$", out, "AT", "ZONE Test", 0.06250, 1, 0.06250, 1, 0.01755, 1, 0.01733, 1, 0
```

For input via the web interface, just fill in the text fields accordingly.

**Create Billing Fees**

Zone Search:

#	Zone	Zone Detail
2	test	test zone <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries

Source

3 Destination

4 Direction

Onpeak Init rate

1

created by "Create Zone" button below

In both cases, the following information may be specified independently for every destination:

- **Zone:** A zone for a group of destinations. May be used to group destinations for simplified display, e.g. on invoices. (e.g. foreign zone 1)
- **Source:** The source pattern. This is a POSIX regular expression matching the complete source URI (e.g. `^.*@sip\.example\.org$` or `^someone@sip\.sipwise\.com$` or just `.` to match everything). If you leave this field empty, the default pattern `.` matching everything will be set implicitly. Internally, this pattern will be matched against the `<source_cli>`@`<source_domain>` fields of the CDR.
- **Destination:** The destination pattern. This is a POSIX regular expression matching the complete destination URI (e.g. `someone@sip\.example\.org` or `^43`). This field must be set.
- **Direction:** `Outbound` for standard origination fees (applies to callers placing a call and getting billed for that) or `Inbound` for termination fees (applies to callees if you want to charge them for receiving various calls, e.g. for 800-numbers). *If in doubt, use Outbound.* If you upload fees via CSV files, use `out` or `in`, respectively.



#### Important

The {source, destination, direction} combination needs to be unique for a billing profile. The system will return an error if such a set is specified twice, both for the file upload and the input via the web interface.

**Important**

There are several internal services (vsc, conference, voicebox) which will need a specific destination entry with a domain-based destination. If you don't want to charge the same (or nothing) for those services, add a fee for destination `\.local$` there. If you want to charge different amounts for those services, break it down into separate fee entries for `@vsc\.local$`, `@conference\.local$` and `@voicebox\.local$` with the according fees. **NOT CREATING EITHER THE CATCH-ALL FEE OR THE SEPARATE FEES FOR THE `.local` DOMAIN WILL BREAK YOUR RATING PROCESS!**

- **Onpeak init rate:** The rate for the first rating interval in cent (of whatever currency, represented as a floating point number) per second. Applicable to calls during onpeak hours.
- **Onpeak init interval:** The duration of the first billing interval, in seconds. Applicable to calls during onpeak hours.
- **Onpeak follow rate:** The rate for subsequent rating intervals in cent (of whatever currency, represented as a floating point number) per second. Applicable to calls during onpeak hours. Defaults to *onpeak init rate*.
- **Onpeak follow interval:** The duration of subsequent billing intervals, in seconds. Applicable to calls during onpeak hours. Defaults to *onpeak init interval*.
- **Offpeak init rate:** The rate for the first rating interval in cent (of whatever currency, represented as a floating point number) per second. Applicable to calls during off-peak hours. Defaults to *onpeak init rate*.
- **Offpeak init interval:** The duration of the first billing interval, in seconds. Applicable to calls during off-peak hours. Defaults to *onpeak init interval*.
- **Offpeak follow rate:** The rate for subsequent rating intervals in cent (of whatever currency, represented as a floating point number) per second. Applicable to calls during off-peak hours. Defaults to *offpeak init rate* if that one is specified, or to *onpeak follow rate* otherwise.
- **Offpeak follow interval:** The duration of subsequent billing intervals, in seconds. Applicable to calls during off-peak hours. Defaults to *offpeak init interval* if that one is specified, or to *onpeak follow interval* otherwise.
- **Use free time:** Specifies whether free time minutes may be used when calling this destination. May be specified in the file upload as 0, n[o], f[alse] and 1, y[es], t[rue] respectively.

### 6.1.3 Creating Off-Peak Times

To be able to differentiate between on-peak and off-peak calls, the platform stores off-peak times for every billing profile based on weekdays and/or calendar days. To edit the settings for a billing profile, go to *Settings*→*Billing* and press the *Off-Peaktimes* button on the billing profile you want to configure.

To set off-peak times for a weekday, click on *Edit* next to the according weekday. You will be presented with two input fields which both receive a timestamp in the form of *hh:mm:ss* specifying a time of day for the start and end of the off-peak period. If any of the fields is left empty, the system will automatically insert *00:00:00* (*start* field) or *23:59:59* (*end* field). Click on *Add* to store the setting in the database. You may create more than one off-peak period per weekday. To delete a range, just click *Delete* next to the entry. Click the *close* icon when done.

Logged in as administratorLogout

sip:wise

Off-p

← Back

Weekdays

Weekday	Start - End	
Monday	00:00:00 – 07:59:59	
Tuesday		
Wednesday		
Thursday		
Friday		
Saturday		

Edit Monday

00:00:00 – 07:59:59

18:00:0023:59:59

3Add

To specify off-peak ranges based on calendar dates, click on *Create Special Off-Peak Date*. Enter a date in the form of *YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss* into the *Start Date/Time* input field and *End Date/Time* input field to define a range for the off-peak period.

1 Start Date/Time 2013-12-24 00:00:00

2 End Date/Time 2013-12-24 23:59:59

3 Save

Weekday	Start - End
Monday	00:00:00 – 07:59:59 18:00:00 – 23:59:59
Tuesday	
Wednesday	
Thursday	
Friday	

## 6.2 Prepaid Accounting

In a normal post-paid accounting scenario, each customer accumulates debt in their billing account, which at the end of the billing interval is then billed to the customer. A *prepaid* billing profile reverses this sequence: the customer first has to provide credit to their account balance, and the costs for all calls are then deducted from that account balance. Once the balance reaches zero, no further calls from this customer are accepted, with the exception of free calls. Additionally, if the balance drops to zero while any calls are currently active, NGCP will disconnect those calls as soon as that happens.

With prepaid billing enabled, all details of the billing profile and all details of the billing fees behave as they normally do, including interval free time. If any interval free time is given, the free time will be used before the account's credit is.

### Important



For technical reasons, the system can make the distinction between on-peak and off-peak times only at call establishment time. In other words, if the currently active call fee at the moment when the call is established is an off-peak fee, then the same off-peak fee will remain active for the whole length of this call, even if the call actually transitions into an on-peak fee (and vice versa).



### Important

For technical reasons, prepaid billing can't charge local endpoint calls to Voicebox, VSC calls or calls to a Conference Room.

The Sipwise NGCP platform offers advanced billing features which are especially designed for pre-paid billing scenarios. For details please visit [Billing Customizations](#) Section 6.4 section of the handbook.

## 6.3 Fraud Detection and Locking

The NGCP supports a fraud detection feature, which is designed to detect accounts causing unusually high customer costs, and then to perform one of several actions upon those accounts. This feature can be enabled and configured through two sets of billing profile options described in Section 6.1.1, namely the monthly (*fraud monthly limit*, *fraud monthly lock* and *fraud monthly notify*) and daily limits (*fraud daily limit*, *fraud daily lock* and *fraud daily notify*). Either monthly/daily limits or both of them can be active at the same time.

Monthly fraud limit check runs once a day, shortly after midnight local time and daily fraud limit check runs every 30min. A background script (managed by cron daemon) automatically checks all accounts which are linked to a billing profile enabled for fraud detection, and selects those which have caused a higher cost than the *fraud monthly limit* configured in the billing profile, within the currently active billing interval (e.g. in the current month), or a higher cost than the *fraud daily limit* configured in the billing profile, within the calendar day. It then proceeds to perform at least one of the following actions on those accounts:

- If **fraud lock** is set to anything other than *none*, it will lock the account accordingly (e.g. if **fraud lock** is set to *outgoing*, the account will be locked for all outgoing calls).
- If anything is listed in **fraud notify**, an email will be sent to the email addresses configured. The email will contain information about which account is affected, which subscribers within that account are affected, the current account balance and the configured fraud limit, and also whether or not the account was locked in accordance with the **fraud lock** setting. It should be noted that this email is meant for the administrators or accountants etc., and not for the customer.

### 6.3.1 Fraud Lock Levels

Fraud lock levels are various protection (and notification) settings that are applied to subscribers of a *Customer*, if fraud detection is enabled in the currently active billing profile and the *Customer's* daily or monthly fraud limit has been exceeded.

The following lock levels are available:

- `none`: no account locking will happen
- `foreign calls`: only calls within the subscriber's own domain, and emergency calls, are allowed
- `all outgoing calls`: subscribers of the customer cannot place any calls, except calls to free and emergency destinations
- `incoming and outgoing`: subscribers of the customer cannot place and receive any calls, except calls to free and emergency destinations
- `global`: same restrictions as at `incoming and outgoing` level, additionally subscribers are not allowed to access the Customer Self Care (CSC) interface
- `ported`: only automatic call forwarding, due to number porting, is allowed

**Important**

You can override fraud detection and locking settings of a billing profile on a per-account basis via REST API or the Admin interface.

---

**Caution**

Accounts that were automatically locked by the fraud detection feature will **not** be automatically unlocked when the next billing interval starts. This has to be done manually through the administration panel or through the provisioning interface.

---

**Important**

If fraud detection is configured to only send an email and not lock the affected accounts, it will continue to do so for over-limit accounts every day. The accounts must either be locked in order to stop the emails (only currently active accounts are considered when the script looks for over-limit accounts) or some other action to resolve the conflict must be taken, such as disabling fraud detection for those accounts.

---

**Note**

It is possible to fetch the list of fraud events and thus get fraud status of *Customers* by using the REST API and referring to the resource: `/api/customerfraudevents`.

---

**Note**

Apart from the daily fraud detection check service, NGCP also provides instant, "hard" locking for prepaid use cases, by means of billing profile packages. See [Billing Profile Packages](#) Section 6.4.3 for reference.

---

## 6.4 Billing Customizations

The standard way of doing the billing—i.e. having fixed billing intervals of a calendar month, starting on the 1st day of month—may not fit all billing profiles and intervals that sip:carrier platform operators would like to use.

The sip:carrier supports—starting from its mr4.2.1 version—alternate ways of defining billing profiles and intervals which are especially worthy for pre-paid scenarios. New functionality is covered by the following titles:

1. [Billing Networks](#) Section 6.4.1
2. [Profile Mappings Schedule](#) Section 6.4.2
3. [Profile Packages](#) Section 6.4.3
4. [Vouchers](#) Section 6.4.4
5. [Top-up](#) Section 6.4.5
6. [Balance Overviews](#) Section 6.4.6



## 7. Usage Examples Section 6.4.7

Subsequent sections will provide an introduction and configuration instructions to these advanced features of sip:carrier.

### 6.4.1 Billing Networks

The idea is to dynamically select billing profiles (including fees) depending on the IP network the caller's SIP client is using to connect. The caller's IP is populated in a call's CDR, and effectively processed by:

- the rating engine component („rate-o-mat“) and the
- prepaid interception module (libswrate).

The billing profile for rating a call is identified by matching the source IP against network ranges linked to the customer contract's billing mappings records. This feature is sometimes also referred to as *roaming*.

A *Billing Network* is defined as a series of *network blocks* where each network block consists of a *single IP address* or an *IP subnet*. Blocks of a particular billing network can be defined by either IPv4, or IPv6 addresses but not mixed.

The screenshot shows a 'Create Billing Network' dialog box. At the top, there's a green header with the title and a close button. Below the header, there's a 'Reseller' section with a search bar and a table. The table has columns: #, Name, Contract #, Status, and an action column. It contains one entry: #16, Demo Reseller, Contract #200, Status active, and a delete icon. Below the table, it says 'Showing 9 to 9 of 9 entries' and has pagination controls. To the right of the table is a 'Create Reseller' button. Below the table, there are three input fields: 'Billing Network Name' (containing 'Demo Billing Net 1'), 'Description' (containing 'Some text'), and 'Billing Network Block' (containing '10.0.1.0 / 24'). To the right of the 'Billing Network Block' field is a 'Remove' button. At the bottom right of the dialog is a 'Save' button.

#	Name	Contract #	Status	
16	Demo Reseller	200	active	

Showing 9 to 9 of 9 entries

Create Reseller

Billing Network Name: Demo Billing Net 1

Description: Some text

Billing Network Block: 10.0.1.0 / 24

Remove

Save

Figure 30: Creation of Billing Network

The new `/api/billingnetworks/` **REST API** resource allows to manage billing networks. The example billing network that is shown in the figure above may be defined through the API with this JSON structure:

```
{ "blocks" : [ { "ip" : "10.0.1.0", // subnet: 10.0.1.0 .. 10.0.1.255
                  "mask" : 24
                },
                { "ip" : "10.0.2.2" // single ip
                }
            ],
  "description" : "Some text",
  "name" : "Demo Billing Net 1", //unique per reseller
  "reseller_id" : 1
}
```

**Input validation** of the network blocks is automatically performed by sip:carrier during their definition in a way that it prevents specifying overlapping blocks by means of Interval Trees; billing networks themselves may overlap though.

The screenshot shows a web form titled "Create Billing Network". It has a green header bar with a close button. The form contains the following fields:

- Billing Network Name:** "Demo Billing Net 3"
- Description:** "description net 3"
- Billing Network Block:** Two rows. The first row has "10.0.1.0" and "28". The second row has "10.0.1.10" and "26". Each row has a "Remove" button to its right.
- Error Message:** A red box at the bottom left says "Block '10.0.1.10/26' overlaps with block(s) '10.0.1.0/28'".
- Buttons:** "Add another billing network block" (orange) and "Save" (orange) at the bottom right.

Figure 31: Overlapping Block Prevention

## 6.4.2 Profile Mapping Schedule

Using the default settings related to billing when creating a new *Reseller* or *Customer* on the administrative web panel results in applying the standard billing profile mapping schedule: the same billing profile is always used.

### 6.4.2.1 Definition of Profile Mapping Schedules

The idea of *billing profile mapping schedule* is to extend the billing mappings logic to utilize it as a schedule for billing profiles (and associated fees) for the *Customer* or *Reseller* contract. So far, billing mapping records provided only a history showing which profile was in effect at a given time in the past, which is for example required for delayed rating of calls.

Now it is also possible to define in advance, when specific billing profiles should become active in the future, e.g. to plan campaigns or special offers.

**Billing profile mappings** represent a schedule of overlapping time intervals with *Billing Profiles* and *Billing Networks*, which are assigned to (customer) contracts when creating or editing them.

*Mapping intervals* can be of type:

- open: no start time + no end time
- half-open:
  - left-open: no start time + definite end time
  - right-open: definite start time + no end time
- closed: definite start time + definite end time

### 6.4.2.2 Schedule Example

id	Billing Profile Interval Schedule Example	Mai 2015			Jun 2015										
		29	30	31	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
1	open: base/fallback (profile 1, no/any network)														
2	closed: (profile 2 , network 1) from June, 2nd. – 4th.														
3	right open: (profile 3 , network 1) starting on June, 1st.														
4	right open: (profile 4 , network 2) starting on June, 1st.														
5	closed: (profile 5 , no/any network) from June, 3rd. – 10th.														

Figure 32: Profile Mapping Schedule Example

Applying the profile mapping schedule shown in the above figure will result in billing profiles being active as provided in the table below.

Table 10: Active Billing Profiles

Time	Web Panel shows	Rating		
		Caller IP in Network 1	Caller IP in Network 2	Caller IP in other network
May 30	Profile 1	Profile 1	Profile 1	Profile 1
June 1	Profile 4	Profile 3	Profile 4	Profile 1
June 2	Profile 2	Profile 2	Profile 4	Profile 1
June 5	Profile 5	Profile 3	Profile 4	Profile 5

#### 6.4.2.3 Configuration of Schedules

A Customer's default billing profile mapping can be changed to scheduled mappings when editing its properties, at the parameter "Set billing profiles", selecting: `schedule (billing mapping intervals)`

**Edit Customer #202**

Set billing profiles: schedule (billing mapping intervals)

**Billing Profiles**

actual	Date	Billing Profile Name	Billing Network Name
<input type="text" value="x"/>	NULL - NULL	Demo Billing Profile	

Start:

End:

**Profile**

Search:

#	Reseller	Profile	
106	Demo Reseller	Demo Billi...	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Showing 49 to 49 of 49 entries

**Network**

Search:

#	Reseller	Network	
31	Demo Reseller	Demo Billi...	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
33	Demo Reseller	Demo Billi...	<input type="checkbox"/>

**Save**

Figure 33: Profile Mapping Schedule Creation

**Tip**

Assigning a *Billing Network* to a billing profile mapping is optional. Without selecting the network, the *Billing Profile* will be applied to all calls.

The profile mapping schedule assigned to a *Customer* is also listed among *Customer's* properties. See *Settings* → *Customers* → *Details* → *Billing Profile Schedule*.

**Customer Details for #202 (Cloud PBX Account)**

[← Back](#back)
[⚙ Preferences](#preferences)
[✎ Edit](#edit)

[↗ Expand Groups](#expand)

Reseller

Contact Details

Billing Profile Schedule

actual	Date	Billing Profile Name	Prepaid	Billing Network Name
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	NULL - NULL	Demo Billing Profile	<input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="checkbox"/>	2016-11-01T00:00:00 - 2016-12-31T00:00:00	Demo Billing Profile	<input type="checkbox"/>	Demo Billing Net 1
<input type="checkbox"/>	2017-01-01T00:00:00 - 2017-12-31T00:00:00	Demo Billing Profile	<input type="checkbox"/>	

Subscribers

PBX Groups

Figure 34: Profile Mapping Schedule List

**Note**

Profile mappings that started in the past, like the default one, are displayed with a strike-through font in order to indicate that those can not be modified.

The currently active mapping is depicted by a checked box.

#### 6.4.2.4 REST API for Profile Mapping Schedules

The `/api/customers/` API resource was extended to provide three different modes of defining profile mappings:

1. `billing_profiles` field: explicitly declare profile mappings in form of (billing profile, billing network, start time, stop time) tuples
2. `billing_profile_id` field (legacy API spec): a single profile mapping interval is appended (billing profile, no network /any caller IP respectively, starting now)

3. `profile_package_id` field: profile mappings starting now are appended by using lists of (`billing profile`, `billing network`) tuples from the given profile package

With regards to *Resellers*, the `/api/contracts/` API resource was enhanced as well, but supports method 1. and 2. only, and without billing networks.

### Mapping Intervals

Intervals can be of open, half-open (left-open, right-open) or closed type. When specifying profile mappings discretely, allowed interval types are restricted, depending on create/update situation:

Table 11: Allowed Mapping Intervals

Interval Type	Start	Stop	POST (create)	PUT / PATCH (update)
open	undefined	undefined	1..*	0
left-open	undefined	defined	0	0
right-open	> now()	undefined	*	*
closed	> now()	> start	*	*

### Example Profile Mapping

An example JSON structure for definition of profile mapping schedules shown in [Billing Profile Schedule List](#) Figure 34 :

```
{ ...,
  "billing_profile_definition" : "profiles", // i.e. use 'billing_profiles' field
  "billing_profiles" : [ { "network_id" : "236",
    "profile_id" : "236",
    "start" : "2016-11-01 00:00:00",
    "stop" : "2016-12-31 00:00:00"
  }, // closed future interval, with network
    { "network_id" : null,
      "profile_id" : "237",
      "start" : "2017-01-01 00:00:00",
      "stop" : "2017-12-31 00:00:00"
    } ], // closed future interval, without network
  "contact_id" : 141,
  ...
}
```

### 6.4.3 Profile Packages

By introducing billing profile packages, general billing parameters can be defined for a customer contract:

- Balance interval duration (regular/constant or aligned to top-up events)
- The first interval's start date
- The cash-balance carry-over/discard behaviour upon interval transitions
- Subscriber lock levels and profile sets to get applied upon:
  - top-up
  - balance threshold underrun
- Initial balance and billing profiles

*Profile Packages* are fundamental for pre-paid billing scenarios, since in such a billing scheme the traditional, fixed monthly periods prove to be insufficient to cover the business needs of the NGCP platform operator. As an example: pre-paid subscribers typically have their "billing periods" between account balance top-ups.

#### 6.4.3.1 Elements of Profile Packages

A *Profile Package* consists of various elements that will be discussed in subsequent sections of the sip:carrier handbook. In order to set the parameters of a profile package one must navigate to: *Settings* → *Profile Packages* → *Create Profile Package*, or alternatively, in order to update an existing profile package: select the package and press *Edit* button.

##### **Basic Balance Intervals Setup**

- Interval duration (n hours, days, weeks, months)
- Interval start mode:
  - 1st of month (1st): billing interval is 1 calendar month; this is the default for each *Customer* created on Sipwise NGCP platform

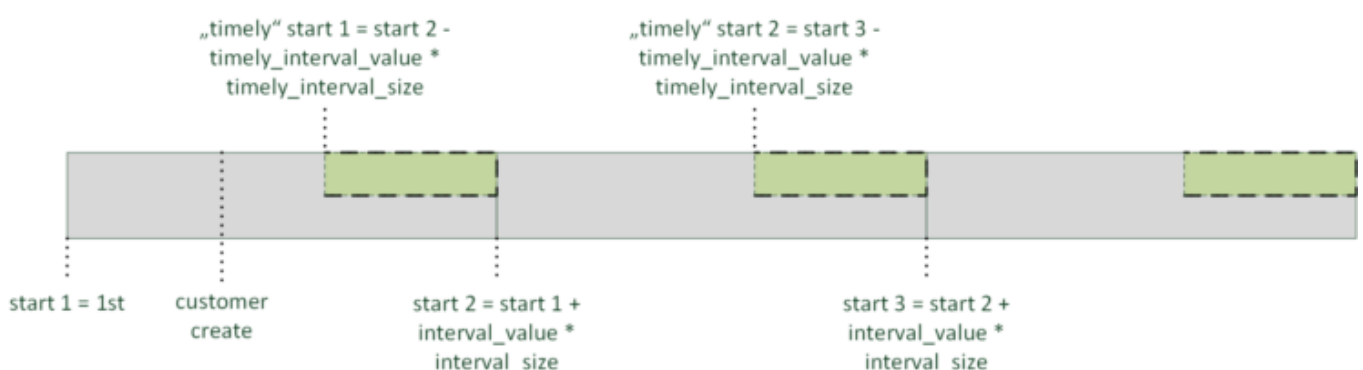


Figure 35: Interval Start Mode: 1st

- upon customer creation (create): (the initial) billing interval starts when the *Customer* is created

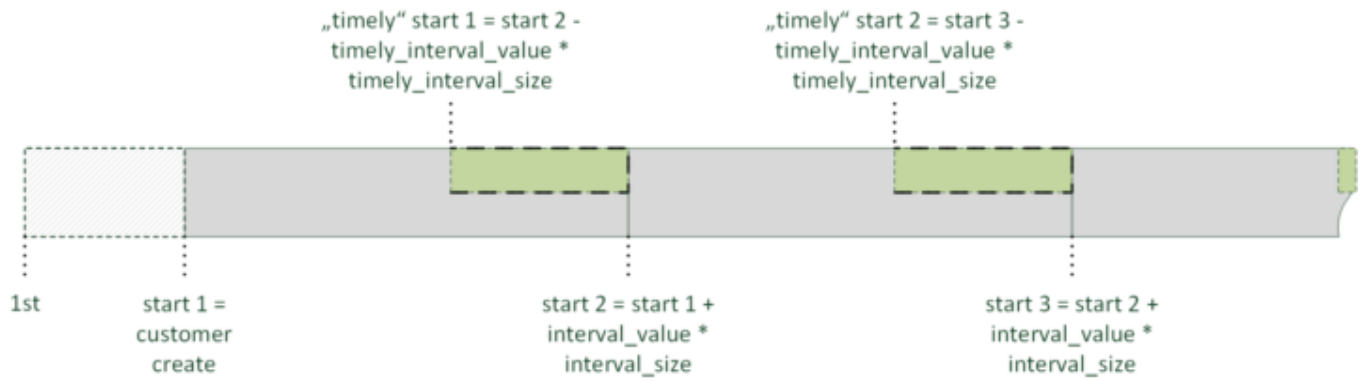


Figure 36: Interval Start Mode: create

- upon topup (topup\_interval): interval starts at *first topup* event and its length is defined by `interval duration` parameter of the profile package

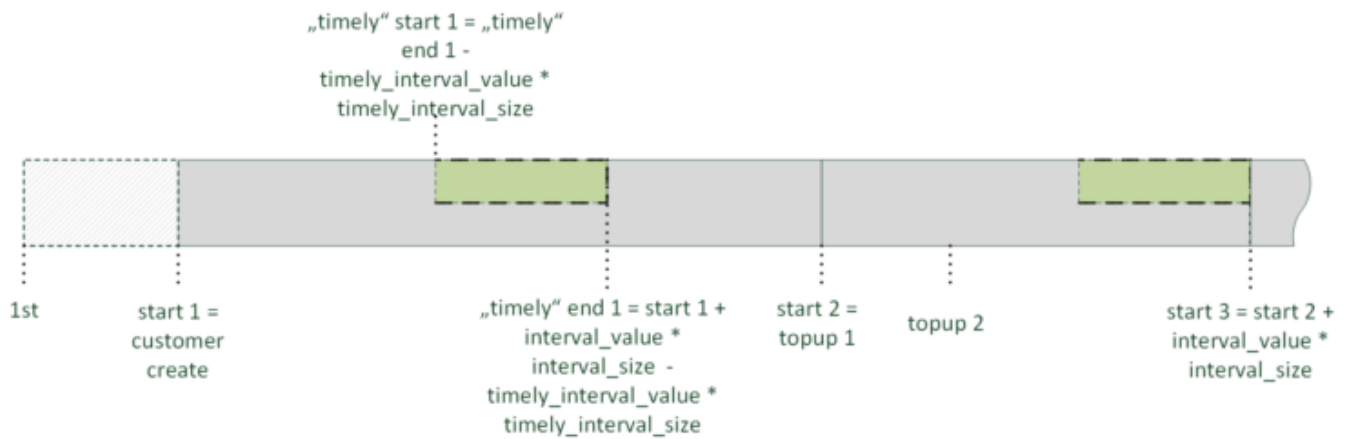


Figure 37: Interval Start Mode: topup\_interval

- intervals from topup to topup (topup): interval starts at *any topup* event and its length is defined by `interval duration` parameter of the profile package; intervals can overlap in this case



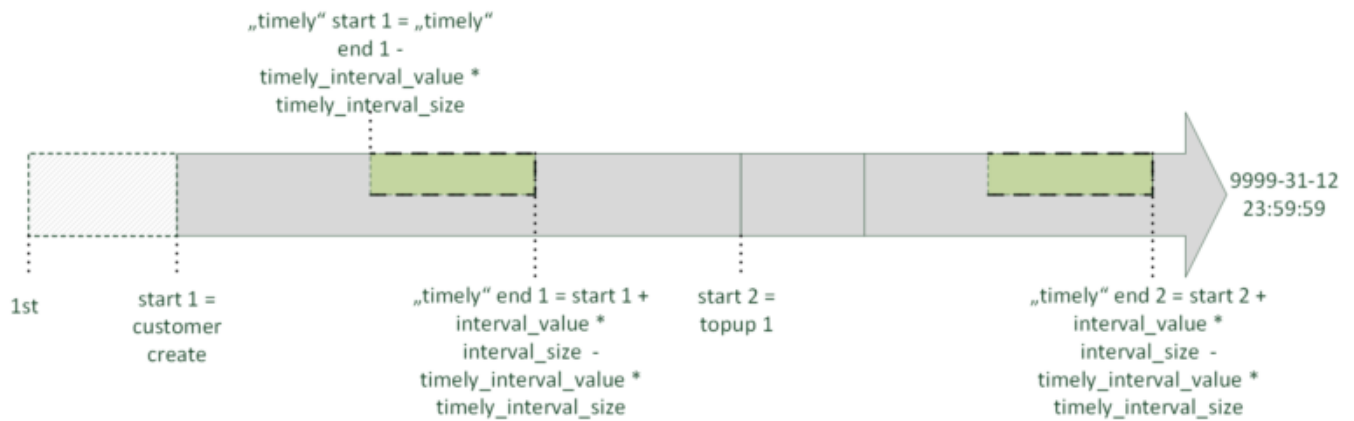


Figure 38: Interval Start Mode: topup

- Initial balance: the initial value of account balance (e.g. every new customer gets 5 Euros as a starting bonus)

### Balance Carry Over

- Carry Over: balance carry over behaviour upon interval transitions:
  - `carry-over`: always keep balance
  - `carry-over only if topped-up timely`: keep balance in case of a *timely* top-up only; where **timely** means the topup happens within a pre-defined time span before the end of the balance interval
  - `discard`: discard balance at the end of each interval
- Timely Duration: duration of the *timely* period
- Discard balance after intervals: for how many balance intervals the remaining account balance is kept before its disposal

### Underrun Settings

- Underrun lock threshold: when account balance reaches this amount the subscriber will be locked to a restricted set of services
- Underrun lock level: this level of services will apply when an account balance underruns
  - `don't change`: no change in the available set of services
  - `no lock`: all services are available
  - `foreign`: only calls within subscriber's own domain are allowed
  - `outgoing`: all outgoing calls are prohibited
  - `all calls`: all calls (incoming + outgoing) are prohibited
  - `global`: all calls + access to Customer Self Care web interface are prohibited
  - `ported`: only automatic call forwarding, due to number porting, is allowed
- Underrun profile threshold: when account balance reaches this amount the *Underrun Billing Profile* will be applied

### Basic Top-up Settings

- Top-up lock level: subscriber lock (unlock) levels to apply upon top-up event
- Service charge: (always) subtract this value from the voucher amount, if topup happens via the usage of a voucher

### Profile mappings

A lists of (billing profile, billing network) tuples for appending profile mappings:

- Initial Billing Profile: when creating or manually changing the customers package (initial\_profiles)
- Underrun Billing Profile: when the balance underuns a cash threshold (underrun\_profiles)
- Top-up Billing Profile: when the customer tops-up using a voucher associated with the package (topup\_profiles)

#### 6.4.3.2 Examples

##### Profile Package Configuration

1. Definition of basic profile package parameters

Create Profile Package

Name

DemoProfPack1

Description

Profile package for demo 1

Initial Balance

500

Initial Billing Profile/Network

Profile

Search: demo

#	Reseller	Profile	
106	Demo Reseller	Demo Billi...	<input type="checkbox"/>
107	Demo Reseller	Demo Pre-p...	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
109	Demo Reseller	Demo Pre-p...	<input type="checkbox"/>
111	Demo	Demo Pre-p...	<input type="checkbox"/>

Network

Search:

#	Reseller	Network	
1	default	test billi...	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	default	test billi...	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	default	test ipv6 ...	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	default	test ipv6 ...	<input type="checkbox"/>

Showing 1 to 4 of 14 entries

Save

Figure 39: Basic Profile Package Parameters

2. Definition of balance interval and carry-over behaviour

Create Profile Package

Balance Interval

1

month(s)

Balance Interval Start

1st day of month

Carry Over

carry over

"Timely" Duration

minute(s)

Discard balance after  
intervals

3

Underrun lock  
threshold

100

Underrun lock level

outgoing

Underrun profile  
threshold

300

Save

Figure 40: Balance Interval and Carry-over

3. Definition of balance underrun parameters

Create Profile Package

Underrun lock threshold

100

Underrun lock level

outgoing

Underrun profile threshold

300

Underrun Billing Profile/Network

Profile

Search: demo

#	Reseller	Profile	
113	Demo Reseller	Demo Pre-p...	<input type="checkbox"/>
115	Demo Reseller	Demo Pre-p...	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
117	Demo Reseller	Demo Pre-p...	<input type="checkbox"/>

Network

Search:

#	Reseller	Network	
1	default	test billi...	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	default	test billi...	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	default	test ipv6 ...	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	default	test ipv6 ...	<input type="checkbox"/>

Save

Figure 41: Balance Underrun Parameters

4. Definition of top-up settings

Create Profile Package

Top-up lock level

no lock (unlock)

Service Charge

50

Top-up Billing Profile/Network

Profile

Search: demo

#	Reseller	Profile	
106	Demo Reseller	Demo Billi...	<input type="checkbox"/>
107	Demo Reseller	Demo Pre-p...	<input type="checkbox"/>
109	Demo Reseller	Demo Pre-p...	<input type="checkbox"/>
111	Demo Reseller	Demo Pre-p...	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Showing 1 to 4 of 7 entries (filtered from 55 total)

Network

Search:

#	Reseller	Network	
1	default	test billi...	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	default	test billi...	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	default	test ipv6 ...	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	default	test ipv6 ...	<input type="checkbox"/>

Showing 1 to 4 of 14 entries

1

2

3

4

Remove

Save

Figure 42: Balance Top-up Settings

5. Assigning a profile package to a customer

Edit Customer #197

Set billing profiles

package (initial profiles of a profile package)

Package

Search: demo

#	Reseller	Package	
67	Demo Reseller	DemoProfPack1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
69	Demo Reseller	DemoProfpac2	<input type="checkbox"/>

Showing 1 to 2 of 2 entries (filtered from 32 total entries)

Create Profile Package

Product

Search:

#	Name	
4	Basic SIP Account	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
5	Cloud PBX Account	<input type="checkbox"/>

Save

cust\_contact0@custcontact.invalid

Basic SIP

SILVER NETWORK Y 1473815306

active

Figure 43: Assigning Profile Package to Customer

**Interval start mode: top-up interval; carry-over: timely**

Profile package setup:

- initial\_balance: 1.0 euro
- balance\_interval: 30 "day(s)"
- interval\_start\_mode: "topup\_interval"
- carry\_over\_mode: "timely"
- timely\_duration: 12 "day(s)"
- underrun\_lock\_threshold: 0.7 euro
- underrun\_profile\_threshold: 5.0 euro
- underrun\_lock\_level: ...

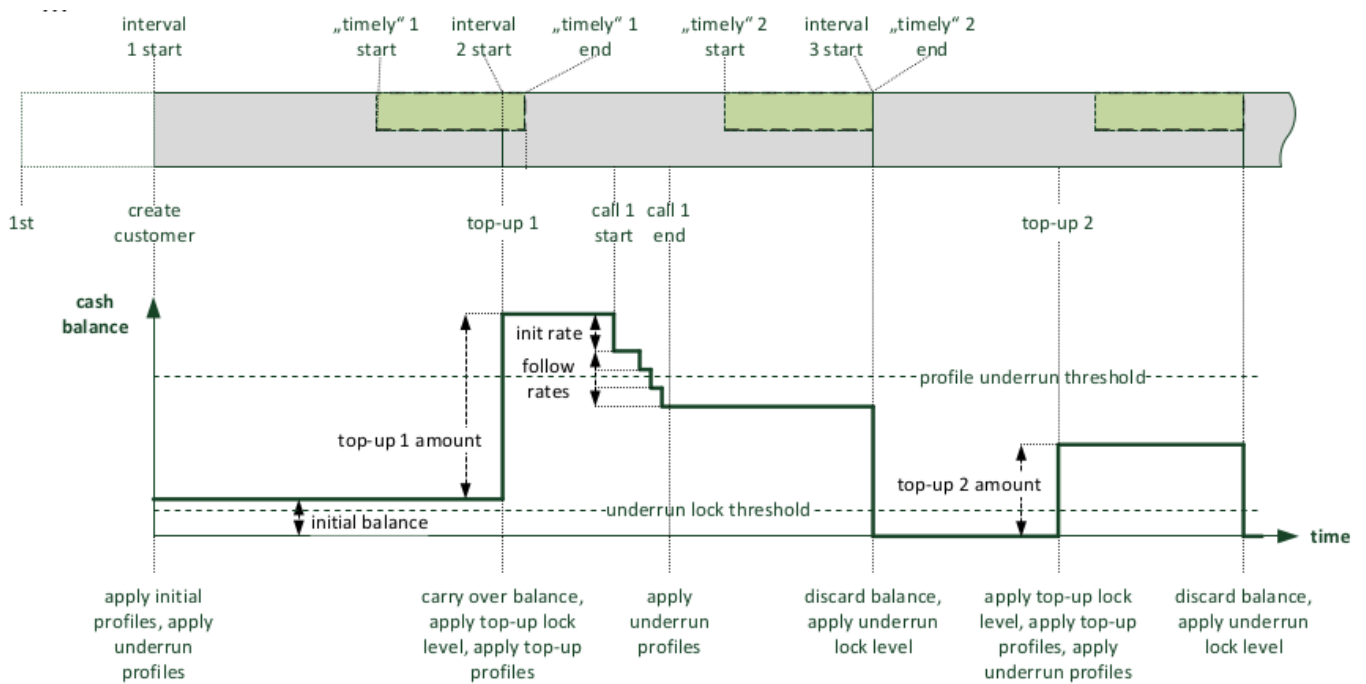


Figure 44: Example: Top-up Interval and Timely Carry-over

**Interval start mode: top-up to top-up; carry-over: always**

- initial\_balance: 1.0 euro
- balance\_interval: 30 "day(s)"
- interval\_start\_mode: "topup"
- carry\_over\_mode: "carry-over"
- notopup\_discard\_intervals: 1
- underrun\_lock\_threshold: 0.7 euro
- underrun\_profile\_threshold: 5.0 euro
- underrun\_lock\_level:...

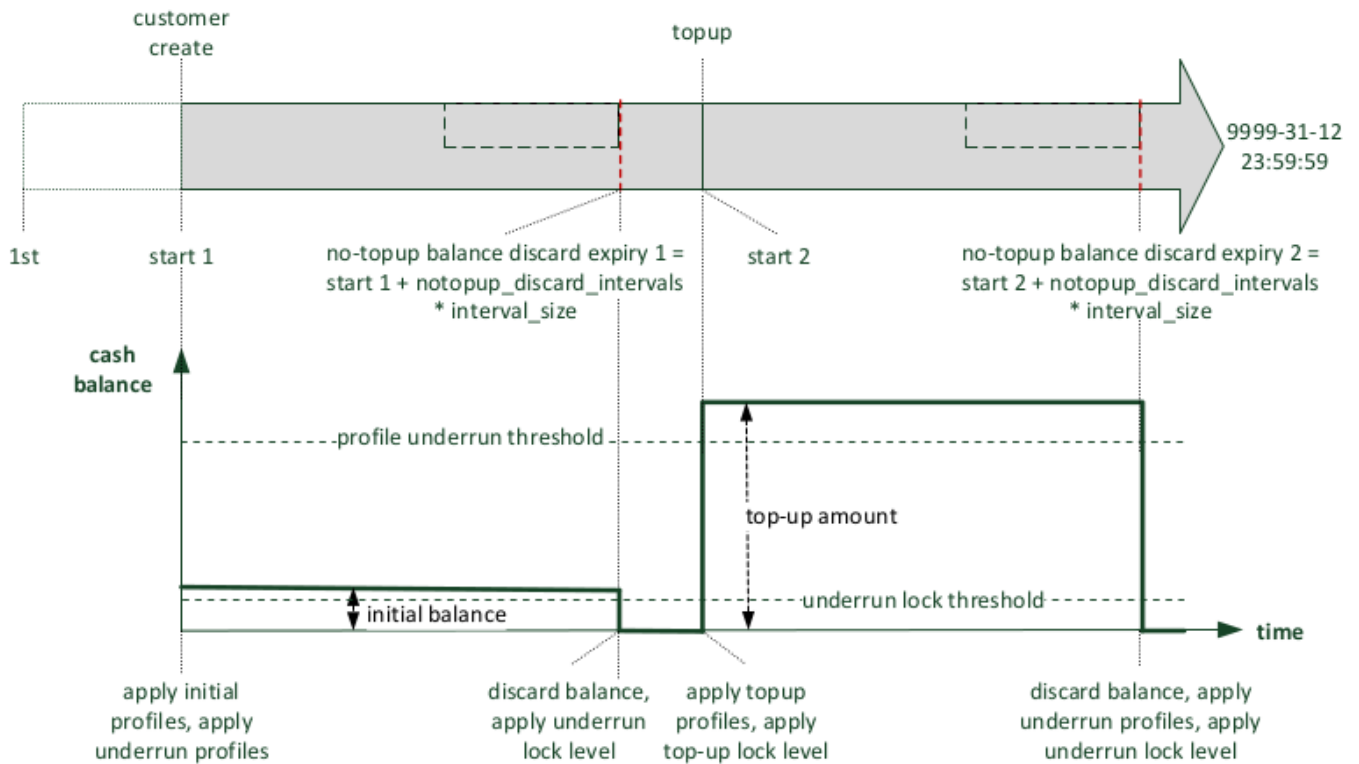


Figure 45: Example: Top-up and Always Carry-over

### 6.4.3.3 REST API

The new `/api/profilepackages/` REST API resource allows to manage billing profile package container entities, that aggregate settings of profile packages.

A sample JSON structure follows:

```
{
  "reseller_id" : 1,
  "status" : "active",
  "name" : "demo profile package",
  "description" : "package for 10€ ...",
  "balance_interval_start_mode" : "1st",
  "balance_interval_value" : 1,
  "balance_interval_unit" : "month",
  "carry_over_mode" : "carry_over",
  "timely_duration_unit" : null,
  "timely_duration_value" : null,
  "initial_balance" : 0,
  "initial_profiles" : [...], // required default, e.g. same as „topup_profiles“
  "notopup_discard_intervals" : null,
  "underrun_lock_threshold" : 0,
  "underrun_lock_level" : 4,
```



```

"underrun_profile_threshold" : 5,
"underrun_profiles" : [...],
"service_charge" : 10,
"topup_lock_level" : null,
"topup_profiles" : [ {
    "network_id" : null, // any network
    "profile_id" : 29
  },
  {
    "network_id" : 2, // a specific billing network
    "profile_id" : 30
  },
],
...
}

```

#### 6.4.4 Vouchers

Vouchers are a typical mean of topping-up an account balance in pre-paid billing scenarios.

The definition of a voucher in the database may succeed via:

- manual entry of voucher data on the administrative web panel or through the REST API
- bulk-uploading of vouchers using a CSV (comma separated value) formatted file

In order to manage vouchers the administrator has to navigate to: *Settings* → *Vouchers* → *Create Billing Voucher* or select an existing one and press *Edit* button.

### Billing Vouchers

← Back
★ Create Billing Voucher
★ Upload Vouchers as CSV

Billing voucher successfully created

Show  entries
Search:

#~	Code	Amount	Reseller	Profile Package	For Contract #	Valid Until	Used At	Used By Subscriber #
25	DEMO_Voucher_Profpack1_001	1000	Demo Reseller	DemoProfPack1		2017-12-31 23:59:59		
27	DEMO_Voucher_Profpack2_001	2000	Demo Reseller	DemoProfpack2		2018-06-30 23:59:59		

Showing 1 to 2 of 2 entries (filtered from 14 total entries)

Figure 46: List of Vouchers

#### 6.4.4.1 Properties of Vouchers

- Code: the unique code of the voucher which assures that a voucher can be used only once; this property is encrypted and displayed on the web panel to authorized users only
- Amount: the amount of money the voucher represents
- Valid until: end of validity period

**Create Billing Vouchers**

Reseller Search: demo

#	Name	Contract #	Status
16	Demo Reseller	200	active

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries (filtered from 9 total entries)

Create Reseller

Code DEMO\_Voucher\_Profpack1\_001

Amount 1000

Valid until 17-12-31

Customer Search:

#	Reseller	Contact Email	External #	Status
---	----------	---------------	------------	--------

Save

Figure 47: Voucher's Main Properties

Setting following properties of a voucher is optional:

- Customer: the *Customer* whom the voucher will be assigned to; subscribers of other customers can not redeem the voucher
- Package: vouchers may be associated with profile packages; if done so, some changes will be applied to the *Customer* for whom the voucher is redeemed with the top-up event:
  - applying top-up profile mappings starting with the time of the top-up
  - subtracting the new package's service charge from the voucher amount

- resizing the current balance interval for a gapless transition, if the new package has a different interval start mode (e.g. from "create" to "1st")
- if a new balance interval starts with the top-up, the carry-over mode of the customer's previous package applies

**Create Billing Vouchers**

Customer Search:

#	Reseller	Contact Email	External #	Status	
7	default	customer.test@spce.test		active	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	default	cust_contact0@custcontact.invalid		active	<input type="checkbox"/>
15	default	cust_contact0@custcontact.invalid		active	<input type="checkbox"/>
17	default	cust_contact0@custcontact.invalid		active	<input type="checkbox"/>

Showing 1 to 4 of 71 entries

Package Search: demo

#	Reseller	Package	
69	Demo Reseller	DemoProfpack2	<input type="checkbox"/>
67	Demo Reseller	DemoProfPack1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Create Contract

Save

Figure 48: Voucher: Customer and Profile Package

#### 6.4.4.2 REST API

Vouchers can be created and managed using the `/api/vouchers/` REST API resource. This resource restricts invasive operations (POST, PUT, PATCH, DELETE) to authorized users.

```
{
  "amount" : 1000,
  "customer_id" : null, //do not restrict to a specific customer
  "valid_until" : "2017-06-05 23:59:59",
  "package_id" : "571", //switch to profile package
  "reseller_id" : 1,
  "code" : "SILVER_1_1437974823"
}
```

### 6.4.5 Top-up

A customer's administrator or subscriber can perform a top-up to increase the contract's cash balance. The NGCP platform supports two means of topping-up the balance:

1. Top-up Cash: Directly specify the cash amount to add
2. Top-up Voucher: Specify the code of a voucher, which was set up in advance

The NGCP platform provides 2 interfaces to perform top-ups:

1. through the REST API: use a CRM or third-party REST-API Broker (which i.e. coordinates with an App-Store purchase process) to finally instruct NGCP to perform a top-up. This is the **recommended** method.
2. through the administrative web interface:

One has to select the *Customer*, then *Details* → *Contract Balance* and finally press *Top-up Cash* or *Top-up Voucher*.

#### 6.4.5.1 Top-up Cash

When doing top-up with cash one needs to supply the amount of top-up in the currency of the customer contract. Optionally one can assign a *Profile Package* to the top-up event which will activate that profile package for the customer.

**Edit Settings**

Amount:

Package:

#	Reseller	Package	
67	Demo Reseller	DemoProfPack1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
69	Demo Reseller	DemoProfpack2	<input type="checkbox"/>

Showing 1 to 2 of 2 entries

Figure 49: Balance Top-up with Cash

It is also possible to perform top-up through the **REST API**: `POST /api/topupcash`

```
{
  "subscriber_id" : "73",
  "amount" : 100,
  "package_id" : null,
}
```

#### 6.4.5.2 Top-up Voucher

Selecting *Top-up Voucher* option will provide a simple list of available vouchers from which the administrator can choose the voucher. If a *Profile Package* is assigned to the voucher, that package will be activated for the customer on the top-up event.

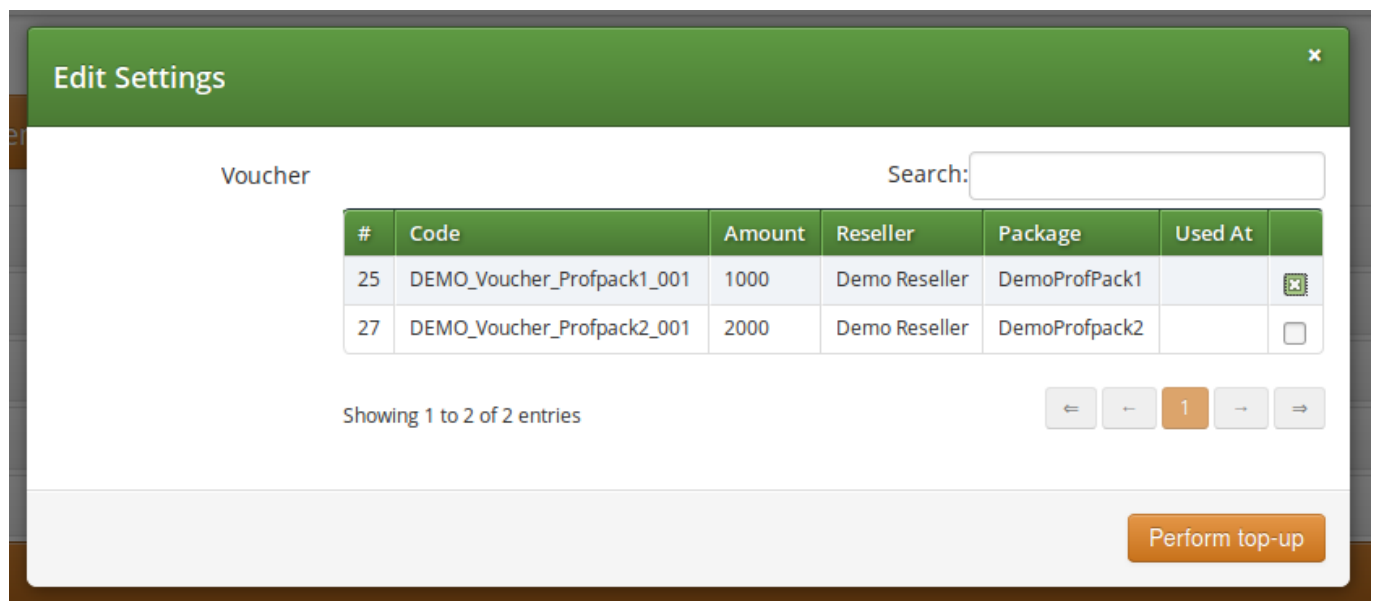


Figure 50: Balance Top-up with Voucher

It is also possible to perform top-up through the **REST API**: `POST /api/topupvouchers`

```
{
  "subscriber_id" : "73",
  "code" : "SILVER_1_1437974390"
  "request_token" : "uuid_from_3rdparty_relay" // optional request identifier
                                              // for lookups in the top-up log
}
```

#### 6.4.6 Balance Overviews

The actual contract balance and logs of top-up or balance interval change events are a kind of financially important information and that's why those are provided on the administrative web interface for each customer. One should navigate to: *Settings* → *Customers* → *select the customer* → *Details*.

The various information details available on the web interface are discussed in subsequent sections of the handbook.

#### 6.4.6.1 Contract Balance

This part of the overviews shows the actual financial state of the customer's balance and the current profile package and balance interval.

Sound Sets

Contract Balance

Top-up Voucher

Top-up Cash

Set Cash Balance

Cash balance	11.50	Debit	0.00
Free time balance	0	Free time spent	0

Interval from	2016-10-01T00:00:00	Interval to	2016-10-31T23:59:59
"Timely" top-ups from		"Timely" top-ups to	
Balance will be discarded, if no top-up happens until		2017-02-01T00:00:00	

Actual profile package	DemoProfPack1	Actual billing profile	Demo Pre-paid Topup 1
Balance threshold when underrun profiles get applied	1.00	Balance threshold when subscribers will be locked	1.00

Balance Intervals

Top-up Log

Figure 51: Contract Balance Status

Another functionality assigned to *Contract Balance* section is the manual top-up. Both top-up with cash and top-up with voucher can be performed from here.

#### 6.4.6.2 Balance Intervals

This table shows the balance intervals that have been in use, including the current interval.

Sound Sets

Contract Balance

Balance Intervals

Show 

5

 entries

Search

From	To	Cash	Debit	#Top-ups	#Timely Top-ups	Underrun detected (Profiles)	Underrun detected (Lock)	
2016-09-01 00:00:00	2016-09-30 23:59:59	0.00	0.00	0	0			
2016-10-01 00:00:00	2016-10-31 23:59:59	11.50	0.00	1	0	2016-10-07 15:05:26	2016-10-07 15:05:26	

Showing 1 to 2 of 2 entries

◀

⏪

1

⏩

▶

Top-up Log

Fraud Limits

Figure 52: List of Balance Intervals

**Content** of the balance intervals table is:

- From, To: starting and end points of the time interval
- Cash: the contract's cash balance value at the end of the interval (former int.), or currently (actual int.)
- Debit: the total spent amount of money in the actual interval

---

#### Note

While "Cash" shows the remaining amount, "Debit" shows the spent amount. With a post-paid billing scenario only "Debit" field would be populated, with pre-paid both fields will display an amount.

---

- No. of Top-ups: how many top-up events happened within the interval
- No. of Timely Top-ups: how many timely top-up events happened within the interval
- Underrun detected (Profiles or Lock): the time of last underrun event when either an underrun billing profile, or a subscriber lock was activated

#### 6.4.6.3 Top-up Log

Each successful or failing top-up request has to be logged. The log records represent an audit trail and reflect any data changes in the course of the top-up request.

In case of an error during the top-up operation the error message and any parseable fields of failed top-up attempts is recorded.

Contract Balance

Balance Intervals

Top-up Log

Show  entries

From Date:

To Date:

Search:

Timestamp	Subscriber	Type	Outcome	Message	Voucher ID	Amount	Balance before	Balance after	Package before	Package after
2016-10-07 15:11:29		cash	ok			11.50	0.00	11.50	DemoProfPack1	DemoProfPack1

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries

←

1

→

Fraud Limits

Invoices

Figure 53: Balance Top-up Log

**Content** of the top-up log table is:

- **Timestamp:** when the top-up happened
- **Subscriber:** the ID of the subscriber who performed the top-up
- **Type:** cash or voucher
- **Outcome:** ok or failed
- **Message:** error message, if Outcome="failed"
- **Voucher ID:** ID of voucher, if Type="voucher"
- **Amount:** the amount by which the balance was modified (after the *Service Charge* was subtracted from the voucher's value)
- **Balance before:** balance's value before top-up
- **Balance after:** balance's value after top-up
- **Package before:** the name of the *Profile Package* that was active before top-up
- **Package after:** the name of the *Profile Package* that became active after top-up

The top-up log table can also be queried using the readonly `/api/topuplogs` **REST API** resource.

An example of the response:

```
{
  "_embedded" : {
    "ngcp:topuplogs" : [{
      "_links" : {...},
      "amount" : null,
      "cash_balance_after" : null,
      "cash_balance_before" : null,
```



```

    "contract_balance_after_id" : null,
    "contract_balance_before_id" : null,
    "contract_id" : 2565,
    "id" : 373,
    "lock_level_after" : null,
    "lock_level_before" : null,
    "message" : ..., //error reason
    "outcome" : "failed",
    "package_after_id" : null,
    "package_before_id" : null,
    "profile_after_id" : null,
    "profile_before_id" : null,
    "request_token" : "1444956281_6", // = "panel" for panel UI requests
    "subscriber_id" : 1804,
    "timestamp" : "2015-10-16 02:45:19",
    "type" : "voucher", // "cash" or "voucher"
    "username" : "administrator",
    "voucher_id" : null }]
  },
  "_links" : { ... },
  "total_count" : 1
}

```

### 6.4.7 Usage Examples

After getting to know the concepts of customized billing solution on sip:carrier platform, it's worth seeing some practical examples for the usage of those advanced features.

The starting point is the setup of *Profile Packages* for our fictive customers: A, B and C. There are 4 different packages defined, with corresponding vouchers:

- **Initial:**

- Balance interval: 1 month
- Timely duration: 1 month
- Interval start mode: topup\_interval
- Carry-over mode: carry\_over\_timely

- **Silver:**

- Balance interval: 1 month
- Timely duration: 1 month
- Interval start mode: "topup\_interval"
- Carry-over mode: "carry\_over\_timely"
- Service charge: 2 EUR

- Underrun lock level: "no lock"
- Voucher value: 10 EUR
- **Gold:**
  - Balance interval: 1 month
  - Interval start mode: "topup\_interval"
  - Carry-over mode: "carry\_over"
  - Service charge: 5 EUR
  - Underrun lock level: "no lock"
  - Voucher value: 20 EUR
- **Extension:**
  - Balance interval: 1 month
  - Timely duration: 1 month
  - Interval start mode: "topup\_interval"
  - Carry-over mode: "carry\_over\_timely"
  - Service charge: 2 EUR
  - Underrun lock level: "no lock"
  - Voucher value: 2 EUR

#### 6.4.7.1 Customer A — Silver Package

1. Customer A tops up 10 EUR with a "silver" voucher. 2 EUR are deducted as service charge. Remaining balance is 8 EUR starting on the date of the top-up.
2. Customer A doesn't top-up balance within the next month, so remaining balance is set to 0 after one month, and billing profiles and lock levels are set to the balance-underrun definition of the "silver" package.

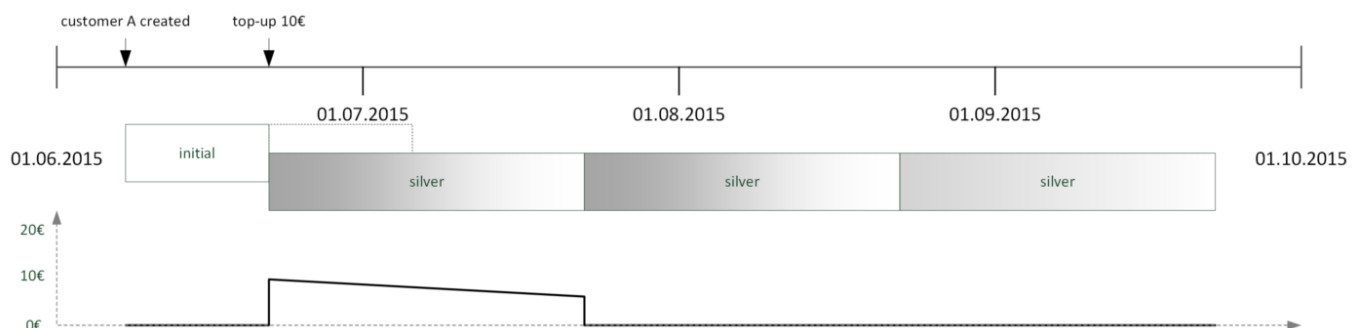


Figure 54: Usage Example: Silver Package

### 6.4.7.2 Customer B — Silver and Extension Package

1. Customer B tops up 10 EUR with the “silver” voucher. 2 EUR are deducted as service charge. Remaining balance is 8 EUR starting on the date of the top-up.
2. Customer B tops up 2 EUR using an “extension” voucher on the last day. 2 EUR are deducted as service charge and the interval is extended for one month, carrying over his old balance.
3. Customer B doesn’t top-up balance within the next month, so remaining balance is set to 0 after the month, and billing profiles and lock levels are set to the balance-underrun definition of the “extension” package.

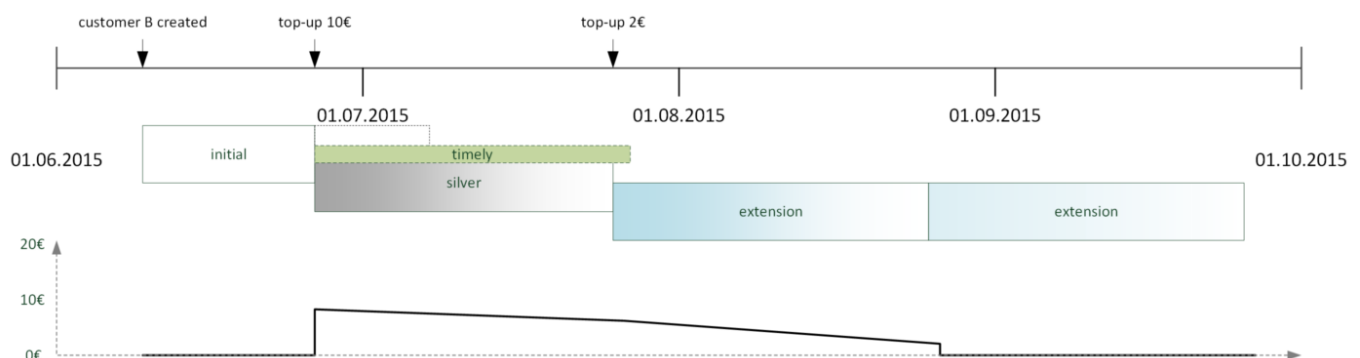


Figure 55: Usage Example: Silver + Extension Package

### 6.4.7.3 Customer C — Gold Package

Customer C tops up 20 EUR with the “gold” voucher. 5 EUR are deducted as service charge. Remaining balance is 15 EUR starting on the date of the top-up. Balance is carried over after each month until used up.

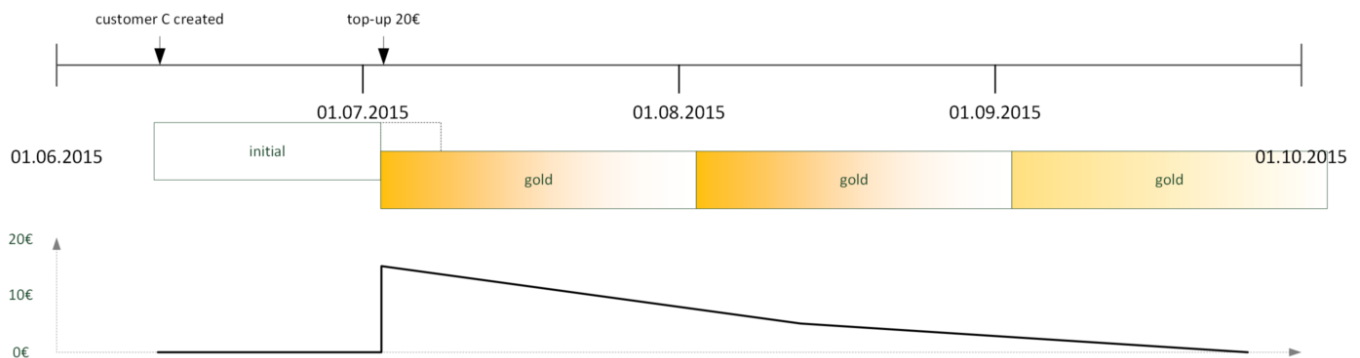


Figure 56: Usage Example: Gold Package

## 6.5 Billing Data Export

Regular billing data export is done using CSV (*comma separated values*) files which may be downloaded from the platform using the `cdrexport` user which has been created during the installation.

There are two types of exports. One is *CDR* (Call Detail Records) used to charge for calls made by subscribers, and the other is *EDR* (Event Detail Records) used to charge for provisioning events like enabling certain features.

### 6.5.1 File Name Format

In order to be able to easily identify billing files, the file names are constructed by the following fixed-length fields:

```
<prefix><separator><version><separator><timestamp><separator><sequence number>< ↵
  suffix>
```

The definition of the specific fields is as follows:

Table 12: CDR/EDR export file name format

File name element	Length	Description
<prefix>	7	A fixed string. Always sipwise.
<separator>	1	A fixed character. Always _.
<version>	3	The format version, a three digit number. Currently 007.
<timestamp>	14	The file creation timestamp in the format YYYYMMDDhhmmss.
<sequence number>	10	A unique 10-digit zero-padded sequence number for quick identification.
<suffix>	4	A fixed string. Always .cdr or .edr.

A valid example filename for a CDR billing file created at 2012-03-10 14:30:00 and being the 42nd file exported by the system, is:

```
sipwise_007_20130310143000_0000000042.cdr
```

### 6.5.2 File Format

Each billing file consists of three parts: one header line, zero to 5000 body lines and one trailer line.

#### 6.5.2.1 File Header Format

The billing file header is one single line, which is constructed by the following fields:

```
<version>,<number of records>
```

The definition of the specific fields is as follows:

Table 13: CDR/EDR export file header line format

Body Element	Length	Type	Description
<version>	3	zero-padded uint	The format version. Currently 007.
<number of records>	4	zero-padded uint	The number of body lines contained in the file.

A valid example for a Header is:

```
007,0738
```

### 6.5.2.2 File Body Format for Call Detail Records (CDR)

The body of a CDR consists of a minimum of zero and a maximum of 5000 lines. Each line holds one call detail record in CSV format and is constructed by the following fields, all of them enclosed in single quotes:

Table 14: CDR export file body line format

Body Element	Length	Type	Description
<id>	1-10	uint	Internal CDR id.
<update_time>	19	timestamp	Timestamp of last modification.
<source_user_id>	36	string	Internal UUID of calling party subscriber.
<source_provider_id>	1-255	string	Internal ID of calling party provider.
<source_ext_subscriber_id>	0-255	string	External ID of calling party subscriber.
<source_subscriber_id>	1-10	uint	Internal ID of calling party subscriber.
<source_ext_account_id>	0-255	string	External ID of calling party customer.
<source_account_id>	1-10	uint	Internal ID of calling party customer.
<source_user>	1-255	string	SIP username of calling party.
<source_domain>	1-255	string	SIP domain of calling party.
<source_cli>	1-64	string	CLI of calling party in E.164 format.
<source_clir>	1	uint	1 for calls with CLIR, 0 otherwise.
<source_ip>	0-64	string	IP Address of the calling party.
<destination_user_id>	1 / 36	string	Internal UUID of called party subscriber or 0 if callee is not local.
<destination_provider_id>	1-255	string	Internal ID of called party provider.
<dest_ext_subscriber_id>	0-255	string	External ID of called party subscriber.

Table 14: (continued)

Body Element	Length	Type	Description
<dest_subscriber_id>	1-10	uint	Internal ID of called party subscriber.
<dest_ext_account_id>	0-255	string	External ID of called party customer.
<destination_account_id>	1-10	uint	Internal ID of called party customer.
<destination_user>	1-255	string	Final SIP username of called party.
<destination_domain>	1-255	string	Final SIP domain of called party.
<destination_user_in>	1-255	string	Incoming SIP username of called party.
<destination_domain_in>	1-255	string	Incoming SIP domain of called party.
<dialed_digits>	1-255	string	The user-part of the SIP Request URI as received by the soft-switch.
<peer_auth_user>	0-255	string	User to authenticate towards peer.
<peer_auth_realm>	0-255	string	Realm to authenticate towards peer.
<call_type>	3-4	string	The type of the call - one of: call: normal call cfu: call forward unconditional cft: call forward timeout cfb: call forward busy cfna: call forward no answer
<call_status>	2-7	string	The final call status - one of: ok: successful call busy: callee busy noanswer: no answer from callee cancel: cancel from caller offline callee offline timeout: no reply from callee other: unspecified, see <call_code> for details
<call_code>	3	uint	The final SIP status code.
<init_time>	23	timestamp	Timestamp of call initiation (invite received from caller). Seconds include fractional part (3 decimals).
<start_time>	23	timestamp	Timestamp of call establishment (final response received from callee). Seconds include fractional part (3 decimals).
<duration>	4-11	fixed precision	Length of call (beginning at start_time) in seconds with 3 decimals.
<call_id>	1-255	string	The SIP call-id.
<rating_status>	2-7	string	The internal rating status - one of: unrated: not rated ok: successfully rated failed: error while rating Currently always ok or unrated, depending on whether rating is enabled or not.
<rated_at>	0 / 19	timestamp	Timestamp of rating or empty if not rated.

Table 14: (continued)

Body Element	Length	Type	Description
<source_carrier_cost>	4-11	fixed precision	The originating carrier cost or empty if not rated. In cent with two decimals. Only available in system exports, not for resellers.
<source_customer_cost>	4-11	fixed precision	The originating customer cost or empty if not rated. In cent with two decimals.
<source_carrier_zone>	0-127	string	The originating carrier billing zone or empty if not rated. Only available in system exports, not for resellers.
<source_customer_zone>	0-127	string	The originating customer billing zone or empty if not rated.
<source_carrier_destination>	0-127	string	The originating carrier billing destination or empty if not rated. Only available in system exports, not for resellers.
<source_customer_destination>	0-127	string	The originating customer billing destination or empty if not rated.
<source_carrier_free_time>	1-10	uint	The number of originating free time seconds used on carrier side or empty if not rated. Only available in system exports, not for resellers.
<source_customer_free_time>	1-10	uint	The number of originating free time seconds used from the customer's account balance or empty if not rated.
<destination_carrier_cost>	4-11	fixed precision	The termination carrier cost or empty if not rated. In cent with two decimals. Only available in system exports, not for resellers.
<destination_customer_cost>	4-11	fixed precision	The termination customer cost or empty if not rated. In cent with two decimals.
<destination_carrier_zone>	0-127	string	The termination carrier billing zone or empty if not rated. Only available in system exports, not for resellers.
<destination_customer_zone>	0-127	string	The termination customer billing zone or empty if not rated.
<destination_carrier_destination>	0-127	string	The termination carrier billing destination or empty if not rated. Only available in system exports, not for resellers.
<destination_customer_destination>	0-127	string	The termination customer billing destination or empty if not rated.
<destination_carrier_free_time>	1-10	uint	The number of termination free time seconds used on carrier side or empty if not rated. Only available in system exports, not for resellers.
<destination_customer_free_time>	1-10	uint	The number of termination free time seconds used from the customer's account balance or empty if not rated.

Table 14: (continued)

Body Element	Length	Type	Description
<source_reseller_cost>	4-11	fixed precision	The originating reseller cost or empty if not rated. In cent with two decimals. Only available in system exports, not for resellers.
<source_reseller_zone>	0-127	string	The originating reseller billing zone or empty if not rated. Only available in system exports, not for resellers.
<source_reseller_destination>	0-127	string	The originating reseller billing destination or empty if not rated. Only available in system exports, not for resellers.
<source_reseller_free_time>	1-10	uint	The number of originating free time seconds used from the reseller's account balance or empty if not rated. Only available in system exports, not for resellers.
<destination_reseller_cost>	4-11	fixed precision	The termination reseller cost or empty if not rated. In cent with two decimals. Only available in system exports, not for resellers.
<destination_reseller_zone>	0-127	string	The termination reseller billing zone or empty if not rated. Only available in system exports, not for resellers.
<destination_reseller_destination>	0-127	string	The termination reseller billing destination or empty if not rated. Only available in system exports, not for resellers.
<destination_reseller_free_time>	1-10	uint	The number of termination free time seconds used from the reseller's account balance or empty if not rated. Only available in system exports, not for resellers.
<line_terminator>	1	string	A fixed character. Always \n (special char LF - ASCII 0x0A).

A valid example of one body line of a rated CDR is (line breaks added for clarity):

```
'15','2013-03-26 22:09:11','a84508a8-d256-4c80-a84e-820099a827b0','1','','1','','
'2','testuser1','192.168.51.133','4311001','0','192.168.51.1',
'94d85b63-8f4b-43f0-b3b0-221c9e3373f2','1','','3','','4','testuser3',
'192.168.51.133','testuser3','192.168.51.133','testuser3','','','call','ok','200',
'2013-03-25 20:24:50.890','2013-03-25 20:24:51.460','10.880','44449842',
'ok','2013-03-25 20:25:27','0.00','24.00','onnet','testzone','platform internal',
'testzone','0','0','0.00','200.00','','foo','','foo','0','0',
'0.00','','','0','0.00','','','0'
```



The format of the CDR export files generated for resellers (as opposed to the complete system-wide export) is identical except for a few missing fields. Reseller CDR CSV files don't contain the fields for *carrier* or *reseller* ratings, neither in *source* nor *destination* direction. Thus, the reseller CSV files have 16 fewer fields.

### 6.5.2.3 Extra fields that can be exported to CDRs

These fields may be required to integrate sip:carrier with legacy billing systems.

Table 15: Extra fields that can be exported to CDRs

Body Element	Description
<source_customer_cash_balance_before/after>	The originating customer's balance immediately before/after the call
<destination_customer_cash_balance_before/after>	The terminating customer's balance immediately before/after the call
<source_carrier_cash_balance_before/after>	The originating carrier's balance immediately before/after the call
<destination_carrier_cash_balance_before/after>	The terminating carrier's balance immediately before/after the call
<source_reseller_cash_balance_before/after>	The originating reseller's balance immediately before/after the call
<destination_reseller_cash_balance_before/after>	The terminating reseller's balance immediately before/after the call
<source_customer_free_time_before/after>	The originating customer's free time immediately before/after the call
<destination_customer_free_time_before/after>	The terminating customer's free time immediately before/after the call
<source_carrier_free_time_before/after>	The originating carrier's free time immediately before/after the call
<destination_carrier_free_time_before/after>	The terminating carrier's free time immediately before/after the call
<source_reseller_free_time_before/after>	The originating reseller's free time immediately before/after the call
<destination_reseller_free_time_before/after>	The terminating reseller's free time immediately before/after the call
<source_customer_profile_package_id>	The originating customer's billing profile package ID used for the call
<destination_customer_profile_package_id >	The terminating customer's billing profile package ID used for the call
<source_reseller_profile_package_id>	The originating reseller's billing profile package ID used for the call
<destination_reseller_profile_package_id>	The terminating reseller's billing profile package ID used for the call

Table 15: (continued)

Body Element	Description
<source_carrier_profile_package_id>	The originating carrier's billing profile package ID used for the call
<destination_carrier_profile_package_id>	The terminating carrier's billing profile package ID used for the call
<source_customer_contract_balance_id>	The originating customer's balance ID used for the call
<destination_customer_contract_balance_id>	The terminating customer's balance ID used for the call
<source_reseller_contract_balance_id>	The originating reseller's balance ID used for the call
<destination_reseller_contract_balance_id>	The terminating reseller's balance ID used for the call
<source_carrier_contract_balance_id>	The originating carrier's balance ID used for the call
<destination_carrier_contract_balance_id>	The terminating carrier's balance ID used for the call

Note: for calls spanning multiple balance intervals, the latter one will be selected, that is the balance interval where the call ended.

#### 6.5.2.4 File Body Format for Event Detail Records (EDR)

The body of a EDR consists of a minimum of zero and a maximum of 5000 lines. Each line holds one call detail record in CSV format and is constructed by the following fields, all of them enclosed in single quotes:

Table 16: EDR export file body line format

Body Element	Length	Type	Description
<event_id>	1-10	uint	Internal EDR id.

Table 16: (continued)

Body Element	Length	Type	Description
<event_type>	1-255	string	The type of the event - one of: start_profile: A subscriber profile has been newly assigned to a subscriber. end_profile: A subscriber profile has been removed from a subscriber. update_profile: A subscriber profile has been changed for a subscriber. start_huntgroup: A subscriber has been provisioned as group. end_huntgroup: A subscriber has been deprovisioned as group. start_ivr: A subscriber has a new call-forward to auto-attendant set. end_ivr: A subscriber has removed a call-forward to auto-attendant.
<customer_external_id>	0-255	string	The external customer ID as provisioned for the subscriber.
<contact_company>	0-255	string	The company name of the customer's contact.
<subscriber_external_id>	0-255	string	The external subscriber ID as provisioned for the subscriber.
<subscriber_number>	0-255	string	The voip number of the subscriber with the highest ID (DID or primary number).
<old_status>	0-255	string	The old status of the event. Depending on the event_type: start_profile: Empty. end_profile: The profile id of the profile which got removed from the subscriber. update_profile: The old profile id which got updated. start_huntgroup: Empty. end_huntgroup: The profile id of the group which got deprovisioned. start_ivr: Empty. end_ivr: Empty.

Table 16: (continued)

Body Element	Length	Type	Description
<new_status>	0-255	string	The new status of the event. Depending on the event_type: start_profile: The profile id which got assigned to the subscriber. end_profile: Empty. update_profile: The new profile id which got updated. start_huntgroup: The current profile id assigned to the group subscriber. end_huntgroup: The current profile id assigned to the group subscriber. start_ivr: Empty. end_ivr: Empty.
<timestamp>	0-255	string	The time when the event occurred.
<line_terminator>	1	string	A fixed character. Always \n (special char LF - ASCII 0x0A).

A valid example of one body line of an EDR is (line breaks added for clarity):

```
"1", "start_profile", "sipwise_ext_customer_id_4", "Sipwise GmbH",
"sipwise_ext_subscriber_id_44", "436667778", "", "1", "2014-06-19 11:34:31"
```

### 6.5.2.5 File Trailer Format

The billing file trailer is one single line, which is constructed by the following fields:

```
<md5 sum>
```

The <md5 sum> is a 32 character hexadecimal MD5 hash of the *Header* and *Body*.

To validate the billing file, one must remove the Trailer before computing the MD5 sum of the file. An example bash script to validate the integrity of the file is given below:

```
#!/bin/sh

error() { echo $@; exit 1; }
test -n "$1" || error "Usage: $0 <cdr-file>"
test -f "$1" || error "File '$1' not found"

TMPFILE="/tmp/${basename "$1"}.${$}"
```

```
MD5="$(sed -rn '$ s/^\([a-z0-9]{32}\).*$/\1/i p' "$1")  $TMPFILE"
sed '$d' "$1" > "$TMPFILE"
echo "$MD5" | md5sum -c -
rm -f "$TMPFILE"
```

Given the script is located in `cdr-md5.sh` and the CDR-file is `sipwise_001_20071110123000_0000000004.cdr`, the output of the integrity check for an intact CDR file would be:

```
$ ./cdr-md5.sh sipwise_001_20071110123000_0000000004.cdr
/tmp/sipwise_001_20071110123000_0000000004.cdr: OK
```

If the file has been altered during transmission, the output of the integrity check would be:

```
$ ./cdr-md5.sh sipwise_001_20071110123000_0000000004.cdr
/tmp/sipwise_001_20071110123000_0000000004.cdr: FAILED
md5sum: WARNING: 1 of 1 computed checksum did NOT match
```

### 6.5.3 File Transfer

Billing files are created twice per hour at minutes 25 and 55 and are stored in the home directory of the `cdrexport` user. If the amount of records within the transmission interval exceeds the threshold of 5000 records per file, multiple billing files are created. If no billing records are found for an interval, a billing file without body data is constructed for easy detection of lost billing files on the 3rd party side.

CDR and EDR files are fetched by a 3rd party billing system using SFTP or SCP with either public key or password authentication using the username `cdrexport`.

If public key authentication is chosen, the public key file has to be stored in the file `~/.ssh/authorized_keys2` below the home directory of the `cdrexport` user. Otherwise, a password has to be set for the user.

The 3rd party billing system is responsible for deleting CDR files after fetching them.

---

#### Note

The `cdrexport` user is kept in a jailed environment on the system, so it has only access to a very limited set of commandline utilities.

---

## 7 Provisioning REST API Interface

The sip:carrier provides the REST API interface for interconnection with 3rd party tools.

The sip:carrier provides a REST API to provision various functionality of the platform. The entry point - and at the same time the official documentation - is at <https://<your-ip>:1443/api>. It allows both administrators and resellers (in a limited scope) to manage the system.

You can either authenticate via username and password of your administrative account you're using to access the admin panel, or via SSL client certificates. Find out more about client certificate authentication in the online API documentation.

### 7.1 API Workflows for Customer and Subscriber Management

The typical tasks done on the API involve managing customers and subscribers. The following chapter focuses on creating, changing and deleting these resources.

The standard life cycle of a customer and subscriber is:

1. Create customer contact
2. Create customer
3. Create subscribers within customer
4. Modify subscribers
5. Modify subscriber preferences (features)
6. Terminate subscriber
7. Terminate customer

The boiler-plate to access the REST API is described in the online API documentation at [/api/#auth](#). A simple example in Perl using password authentication looks as follows:

```
#!/usr/bin/perl -w
use strict;
use v5.10;

use LWP::UserAgent;
use JSON qw();

my $uri = 'https://ngcp.example.com:1443';
my $ua = LWP::UserAgent->new;
my $user = 'myusername';
my $pass = 'mypassword';
$ua->credentials('ngcp.example.com:1443', 'api_admin_http', $user, $pass);
my ($req, $res);
```

For each customer you create, you need to assign a billing profile id. You either have the ID stored somewhere else, or you need to fetch it by searching for the billing profile handle.

```
my $billing_profile_handle = 'my_test_profile';
$req = HTTP::Request->new('GET', "$uri/api/billingprofiles/?handle=$billing_profile_handle" <-
);
$res = $ua->request($req);
if($res->code != 200) {
    die "Failed to fetch billing profile: ".$res->decoded_content."\n";
}
my $billing_profile = JSON::from_json($res->decoded_content);
my $billing_profile_id = $billing_profile->{_embedded}->{'ngcp:billingprofiles'}->{id};
say "Fetched billing profile, id is $billing_profile_id";
```

A customer is mainly a billing container for subscribers without a real identification other than the *external\_id* property you might have stored somewhere else (e.g. the ID of the customer in your CRM). To still easily identify a customer, a customer contact is required. It is created using the */api/customercontacts/* resource.

```
$req = HTTP::Request->new('POST', "$uri/api/customercontacts/");
$req->header('Content-Type' => 'application/json');
$req->content(JSON::to_json({
    firstname => 'John',
    lastname => 'Doe',
    email => 'john.doe@example.com'
}));
$res = $ua->request($req);
if($res->code != 201) {
    die "Failed to create customer contact: ".$res->decoded_content."\n";
}
my $contact_id = $res->header('Location');
$contact_id =~ s/^.+\/(\d+)$/$1/; # extract the ID from the Location header
say "Created customer contact, id is $contact_id";
```



### Important

To get the ID of the recently created resource, you need to parse the *Location* header. In future, this approach will be changed for POST requests. The response will also optionally return the ID of the resource. It will be controlled via the *Prefer: return=representation* header as it is already the case for PUT and PATCH.



### Warning

The example above implies the fact that you access the API via a reseller user. If you are accessing the API as the admin user, you also have to provide a *reseller\_id* parameter defining the reseller this contact belongs to.

Once you have created the customer contact, you can create the actual customer.

```
$req = HTTP::Request->new('POST', "$uri/api/customers/");
```

```

$req->header('Content-Type' => 'application/json');
$req->content(JSON::to_json({
    status => 'active',
    contact_id => $contact_id,
    billing_profile_id => $billing_profile_id,
    type => 'sipaccount',
    external_id => undef, # can be set to your crm's customer id
}));
$res = $ua->request($req);
if($res->code != 201) {
    die "Failed to create customer: ".$res->decoded_content."\n";
}
my $customer_id = $res->header('Location');
$customer_id =~ s/^.+\/(\d+)$/$1/; # extract the ID from the Location header
say "Created customer, id is $customer_id";

```

Once you have created the customer, you can add subscribers to it. One customer can hold multiple subscribers, up to the *max\_subscribers* property which can be set via */api/customers/*. If this property is not defined, a virtually unlimited number of subscribers can be added.

```

$req = HTTP::Request->new('POST', "$uri/api/subscribers/");
$req->header('Content-Type' => 'application/json');
$req->content(JSON::to_json({
    status => 'active',
    customer_id => $customer_id,
    primary_number => { cc => 43, ac => 9876, sn => 10001 }, # the main number
    alias_numbers => [ # as many alias numbers the subscriber can be reached at (or skip ←
        param if none)
        { cc => 43, ac => 9877, sn => 10001 },
        { cc => 43, ac => 9878, sn => 10001 }
    ],
    username => 'test_10001',
    domain => 'ngcp.example.com',
    password => 'secret subscriber pass',
    webusername => 'test_10001',
    webpassword => undef, # set undef if subscriber shouldn't be able to log into sipwise ←
        csc
    external_id => undef, # can be set to the operator crm's subscriber id
}));
$res = $ua->request($req);
if($res->code != 201) {
    die "Failed to create subscriber: ".$res->decoded_content."\n";
}
my $subscriber_id = $res->header('Location');
$subscriber_id =~ s/^.+\/(\d+)$/$1/; # extract the ID from the Location header
say "Created subscriber, id is $subscriber_id";

```



**Important**

A domain must exist before creating a subscriber. You can create the domain via `/api/domains/`.

At that stage, the subscriber can connect both via SIP and XMPP, and can be reached via the primary number, all alias numbers, as well as via the SIP URI.

If you want to set call forwards for the subscribers, then perform an API call as follows.

```
$req = HTTP::Request->new('PUT', "$uri/api/callforwards/$subscriber_id");
$req->header('Content-Type' => 'application/json');
$req->header('Prefer' => "return=minimal"); # use return=representation to get full json ←
response
$req->content(JSON::to_json({
  cfna => { # set a call-forward if subscriber is not registered
    destinations => [
      { destination => "4366610001", timeout => 10 }, # ring this for 10s
      { destination => "4366710001", timeout => 300}, # if no answer, ring that for ←
        300s
    ],
    times => undef # no time-based call-forward, trigger cfna always
  }
}));
$res = $ua->request($req);
if($res->code != 204) { # if return=representation, it's 200
  die "Failed to set cfna for subscriber: ".$res->decoded_content."\n";
}
```

You can set cfu, cfna, cft and cft via this API call, also all at once. Destinations can be hunting lists as described above or just a single number. Also, a time set can be provided to trigger call forwards only during specific time periods.

To provision certain features of a subscriber, you can manipulate the subscriber preferences. You can find a full list of preferences available for a subscriber at `/api/subscriberpreferencedefs/`.

```
$req = HTTP::Request->new('GET', "$uri/api/subscriberpreferences/$subscriber_id");
$res = $ua->request($req);
if($res->code != 200) {
  die "Failed to fetch subscriber preferences: ".$res->decoded_content."\n";
}
my $prefs = JSON::from_json($res->decoded_content);
delete $prefs->{_links}; # not needed in update

$prefs->{prepaid_library} = 'libinewrate'; # switch to inew billing
$prefs->{block_in_clir} = JSON::true; # reject incoming anonymous calls
$prefs->{block_in_list} = [ # reject calls from the following numbers:
  '4366412345', # this particular number
  '431*', # all vienna/austria numbers
];
```

```

};
$req = HTTP::Request->new('PUT', "$uri/api/subscriberpreferences/$subscriber_id");
$req->header('Content-Type' => 'application/json');
$req->header('Prefer' => "return=minimal"); # use return=representation to get full json ↔
      response
$res = $ua->request($req);
if($res->code != 204) {
    die "Failed to update subscriber preferences: ".$res->decoded_content."\n";
}
say "Updated subscriber preferences";

```

Modifying numbers assigned to a subscriber, changing the password, locking a subscriber, etc. can be done directly on the subscriber resource.

```

$req = HTTP::Request->new('GET', "$uri/api/subscribers/$subscriber_id");
$res = $ua->request($req);
if($res->code != 200) {
    die "Failed to fetch subscriber: ".$res->decoded_content."\n";
}
my $sub = JSON::from_json($res->decoded_content);
delete $sub->{_links}; # not needed in update
push @{$sub->{alias_numbers}}, { cc => 1, ac => 5432, sn => $t }; # add this number
push @{$sub->{alias_numbers}}, { cc => 1, ac => 5433, sn => $t }; # add another number

$req = HTTP::Request->new('PUT', "$uri/api/subscribers/$subscriber_id");
$req->header('Content-Type' => 'application/json');
$req->header('Prefer' => "return=minimal"); # use return=representation to get full json ↔
      response
$req->content(JSON::to_json($sub));
$res = $ua->request($req);
if($res->code != 204) {
    die "Failed to update subscriber: ".$res->decoded_content."\n";
}
say "Updated subscriber";

```

At the end of a subscriber life cycle, it can be terminated. Once terminated, you can NOT recover the subscriber anymore.

```

$req = HTTP::Request->new('DELETE', "$uri/api/subscribers/$subscriber_id");
$res = $ua->request($req);
if($res->code != 204) {
    die "Failed to terminate subscriber: ".$res->decoded_content."\n";
}
say "Terminated subscriber";

```

Note that certain information is still available in the internal database to perform billing/rating of calls done by this subscriber. Nevertheless, the data is removed from the operational tables of the database, so the subscriber is not able to connect to the system, login or make calls/chats.

Resources modification can be done via the GET/PUT combination. Alternatively, you can add, modify or delete single properties of a resource without actually fetching the whole resource. See an example below where we terminate the status of a customer using the PATCH method.

```
$req = HTTP::Request->new('PATCH', "$uri/api/customers/$customer_id");
$req->header('Content-Type' => 'application/json-patch+json');
$req->header('Prefer' => "return=minimal"); # use return=representation to get full json ↔ response
$req->content(JSON::to_json([
  { op => 'replace', path => '/status', value => 'terminated' }
]));
$res = $ua->request($req); # this will also terminate all still active subscribers
if($res->code != 204) {
  die "Failed to terminate customer: ".$res->decoded_content."\n";
}
say "Terminated customer";
```

## 8 Configuration Framework

The sip:carrier provides a configuration framework for consistent and easy to use low level settings management. A basic usage of the configuration framework only needs two actions already used in previous chapters:

- Edit `/etc/ngcp-config/config.yml` file.
- Execute `ngcpcfg apply 'my commit message'` command.

Low level management of the configuration framework might be required by advanced users though. This chapter explains the architecture and usage of the NGCP configuration framework. If the basic usage explained above fits your needs, feel free to skip this chapter and return to it when your requirements change.

A more detailed workflow of the configuration framework for creating a configuration file consists of 7 steps:

- Generation or editing of configuration templates and/or configuration values.
- Generation of the configuration files based on configuration templates and configuration values defined in `config.yml`, `constants.yml` and `network.yml` files.
- Execution of *prebuild* commands if defined for a particular configuration file or configuration directory.
- Placement of the generated configuration file in the target directory. This step is called *build* in the configuration framework.
- Execution of *postbuild* commands if defined for that configuration file or configuration directory.
- Execution of *services* commands if defined for that configuration file or configuration directory. This step is called *services* in the configuration framework.
- Saving of the generated changes. This step is called *commit* in the configuration framework.

### 8.1 Configuration templates

The sip:carrier provides configuration file templates for most of the services it runs. These templates are stored in the directory `/etc/ngcp-config/templates`.

Example: Template files for `/etc/ngcp-sems/sems.conf` are stored in `/etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/ngcp-sems/`.

There are different types of files in this template framework, which are described below.

#### 8.1.1 .tt2 and .customtt.tt2 files

These files are the main template files that will be used to generate the final configuration file for the running service. They contain all the configuration options needed for a running sip:carrier system. The configuration framework will combine these files with the values provided by `config.yml`, `constants.yml` and `network.yml` to generate the appropriate configuration file.

Example: Let's say we are changing the IP used by kamailio load balancer on interface `eth0` to IP 1.2.3.4. This will change kamailio's listen IP address, when the configuration file is generated. A quick look to the template file under `/etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/kamailio/` will show a line like this:

```
listen=udp:[% ip %]:[% kamailio.lb.port %]
```

After applying the changes with the `ngcpcfg apply 'my commit message'` command, a new configuration file will be created under `/etc/kamailio/lb/kamailio.cfg` with the proper values taken from the main configuration files (in this case `network.yml`):

```
listen=udp:1.2.3.4:5060
```

All the low-level configuration is provided by these `.tt2` template files and the corresponding `config.yml` file. Anyway, advanced users might require a more particular configuration.

Instead of editing `.tt2` files, the configuration framework recognises `.customtt.tt2` files. These files are the same as `.tt2`, but they have higher priority when the configuration framework creates the final configuration files. An advanced user should create a `.customtt.tt2` file from a copy of the corresponding `.tt2` template and leave the `.tt2` template untouched. This way, the user will have his personalized configuration and the system will continue providing a working, updated configuration template in `.tt2` format.

Example: We'll create `/etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/lb/kamailio.cfg.customtt.tt2` and use it for our personalized configuration. In this example, we'll just append a comment at the end of the template.

```
cd /etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/kamailio/lb
cp kamailio.cfg.tt2 kamailio.cfg.customtt.tt2
echo '# This is my last line comment' >> kamailio.cfg.customtt.tt2
ngcpcfg apply 'my commit message'
```

The `ngcpcfg` command will generate `/etc/kamailio/kamailio.cfg` from our custom template instead of the general one.

```
tail -1 /etc/kamailio/kamailio.cfg
# This is my last line comment
```

---

### Tip

The `tt2` files use the [Template Toolkit](#) language. Therefore you can use all the feature this excellent toolkit provides within `ngcpcfg`'s template files (all the ones with the `.tt2` suffix).

---

## 8.1.2 .prebuild and .postbuild files

After creating the configuration files, the configuration framework can execute some commands before and after placing that file in its target directory. These commands usually are used for changing the file's owner, groups, or any other attributes. There are some rules these commands need to match:

- They have to be placed in a `.prebuild` or `.postbuild` file in the same path as the original `.tt2` file.
- The file name must be the same as the configuration file, but having the mentioned suffixes.
- The commands must be `bash` compatible.
- The commands must return 0 if successful.

- The target configuration file is matched by the environment variable *output\_file*.

Example: We need *www-data* as owner of the configuration file */etc/ngcp-ossbss/provisioning.conf*. The configuration framework will by default create the configuration files with *root:root* as owner:group and with the same permissions (*rw*x) as the original template. For this particular example, we will change the owner of the generated file using the *.postbuild* mechanism.

```
echo 'chgrp www-data ${output_file}' \
> /etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/ngcp-ossbss/provisioning.conf.postbuild
```

### 8.1.3 .services files

*.services* files are pretty similar and might contain commands that will be executed after the *build* process. There are two types of *.services* files:

- The particular one, with the same name as the configuration file it is associated to.  
Example: */etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/asterisk/sip.conf.services* is associated to */etc/asterisk/sip.conf*
- The general one, named *ngcpcfg.services* wich is associated to every file in its target directory.  
Example: */etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/asterisk/ngcpcfg.services* is associated to every file under */etc/asterisk/*

When the *services* step is triggered all *.services* files associated to a changed configuration file will be executed. In case of the general file, any change to any of the configuration files in the directory will trigger the execution of the commands.

---

#### Tip

If the service script has the execute flags set (*chmod +x \$file*) it will be invoked directly. If it doesn't have execute flags set it will be invoked under *bash*. Make sure the script is *bash* compatible if you do not set execute permissions on the service file.

---

These commands are usually service reload/restarts to ensure the new configuration has been loaded by running services.

---

#### Note

The configuration files mentioned in the following example usually already exist on the platform. Please make sure you don't overwrite any existing files if following this example.

---

Example:

```
echo '/etc/init.d/mysql restart' \
> /etc/ngcpcfg-config/templates/etc/mysql/my.cnf.services
echo '/etc/init.d/asterisk restart' \
> /etc/ngcpcfg-config/templates/etc/asterisk/ngcpcfg.services
```

In this example we created two *.services* files. Now, each time we trigger a change to */etc/mysql.my.cnf* or to */etc/asterisk/\** we'll see that MySQL or Asterisk services will be restarted by the *ngcpcfg* system.

## 8.2 config.yml, constants.yml and network.yml files

The `/etc/ngcp-config/config.yml` file contains all the user-configurable options, using the **YAML** (YAML Ain't Markup Language) syntax.

The `/etc/ngcp-config/constants.yml` file provides configuration options for the platform that aren't supposed to be edited by the user. Do not manually edit this file unless you really know what you're doing.

The `/etc/ngcp-config/network.yml` file provides configuration options for all interfaces and IP addresses on those interfaces. You can use the `ngcp-network` tool for conveniently change settings without having to manually edit this file.

The `/etc/ngcp-config/ngcpcfg.cfg` file is the main configuration file for `ngcpcfg` itself. Do not manually edit this file unless you really know what you're doing.

## 8.3 ngcpcfg and its command line options

The shared storage used by all nodes is the shared storage of the mgmt pair.

The `ngcpcfg` utility supports the following command line options:

### 8.3.1 apply

The `apply` option is a short-cut for the options "check && build && services && commit" and also executes `etckeeper` to record any modified files inside `/etc`. It is the recommended option to use the `ngcpcfg` framework unless you want to execute any specific commands as documented below.

### 8.3.2 build

The `build` option generates (and therefore also updates) configuration files based on their configuration (`config.yml`) and template files (`.tt2`). Before the configuration file is generated a present `.prebuild` will be executed, after generation of the configuration file the according `.postbuild` script (if present) will be executed. If a *file* or *directory* is specified as argument the build will generate only the specified configuration file/directory instead of running through all present templates.

Example: to generate only the file `/etc/nginx/sites-available/ngcp-panel` you can execute:

```
ngcpcfg build /etc/nginx/sites-available/ngcp-panel
```

Example: to generate all the files located inside the directory `/etc/nginx/` you can execute:

```
ngcpcfg build /etc/nginx/
```

### 8.3.3 commit

The `commit` option records any changes done to the configuration tree inside `/etc/ngcp-config`. The `commit` option should be executed when you've modified anything inside the configuration tree.

### 8.3.4 decrypt

Decrypt `/etc/ngcp-config-encrypted.tgz.gpg` and restore configuration files, doing the reverse operation of the *encrypt* option. Note: This feature is only available if the `ngcp-ngcpcfg-locker` package is installed.

### 8.3.5 diff

Show uncommitted changes between `ngcpcfg`'s Git repository and the working tree inside `/etc/ngcp-config`. If the tool doesn't report anything it means that there are no uncommitted changes. If the `--addremove` option is specified then new and removed files (iff present) that are not yet (un)registered to the repository will be reported, no further diff actions will be executed then. Note: This option is available since `ngcp-ngcpcfg` version 0.11.0.

### 8.3.6 encrypt

Encrypt `/etc/ngcp-config` and all resulting configuration files with a user defined password and save the result as `/etc/ngcp-config-encrypted.tgz.gpg`. Note: This feature is only available if the `ngcp-ngcpcfg-locker` package is installed.

### 8.3.7 help

The *help* options displays `ngcpcfg`'s help screen and then exits without any further actions.

### 8.3.8 initialise

The *initialise* option sets up the `ngcpcfg` framework. This option is automatically executed by the installer for you, so you shouldn't have to use this option in normal operations mode.

### 8.3.9 pull

Retrieve modifications from shared storage. Note: This option is available in the High Availability setup only.

### 8.3.10 push

Push modifications to shared storage and remote systems. After changes have been pushed to the nodes the *build* option will be executed on each remote system to rebuild the configuration files (unless the `--nobuild` has been specified, then the build step will be skipped). If `hostname(s)` or `IP address(es)` is given as argument then the changes will be pushed to the shared storage and to the given hosts only. You can use *all* as a shortcut to push to the other nodes. If no host has been specified then the hosts specified in `/etc/ngcp-config/systems.cfg` are used. Note: This option is available in the High Availability setup only.

### 8.3.11 services

The *services* option executes the service handlers for any modified configuration file(s)/directory.



### 8.3.12 status

The *status* option provides a human readable interface to check the state of the configuration tree. If you are unsure what should be done as next step or if want to check the current state of the configuration tree just invoke *ngcpcfg status*.

If everything is OK and nothing needs to be done the output should look like:

```
# ngcpcfg status
Checking state of ngcpcfg:
OK:  has been initialised already (without shared storage)
Checking state of configuration files:
OK:  nothing to commit.
Checking state of /etc files
OK:  nothing to commit.
```

If the output doesn't say "OK" just follow the instructions provided by the output of *ngcpcfg status*.

Further details regarding the *ngcpcfg* tool are available through *man ngcpcfg* on the Sipwise Next Generation Platform.

## 9 Network Configuration

Starting with version 2.7, the sip:carrier uses a dedicated *network.yml* file to configure the IP addresses of the system. The reason for this is to be able to access all IPs of all nodes for all services from any particular node in case of a distributed system on one hand, and in order to be able to generate */etc/network/interfaces* automatically for all nodes based on this central configuration file.

### 9.1 General Structure

The basic structure of the file looks like this:

```
hosts:
  self:
    role:
      - proxy
      - lb
      - mgmt
    interfaces:
      - eth0
      - lo
    eth0:
      ip: 192.168.51.213
      netmask: 255.255.255.0
      type:
        - sip_ext
        - rtp_ext
        - web_ext
        - web_int
    lo:
      ip: 127.0.0.1
      netmask: 255.255.255.0
      type:
        - sip_int
        - ha_int
```

Some more complete, sample configuration is shown in [network.yml Overview](#) Section B.3 section of the handbook.

The file contains all configuration parameters under the main key: `hosts`

In sip:carrier systems all hosts of the system are defined, and the names are the actual host names instead of *self*, like this:

```
hosts:

  web01a:
    peer: web01b
    role: ...
    interfaces: ...
```

```
web01b:
  peer: web01a
  role: ...
  interfaces: ...
```

### 9.1.1 Available Host Options

There are three different main sections for a host in the config file, which are *role*, *interfaces* and the actual interface definitions.

- *role*: The role setting is an array defining which logical roles a node will act as. Possible entries for this setting are:
  - *mgmt*: This entry means the host is acting as management node for the platform. In a sip:carrier system this option must always be set. The management node exposes the admin and CSC panels to the users and the APIs to external applications and is used to export CDRs. Please note: this is only set on the nodes of the management pairs. This node is also the source of the installations of other nodes via iPXE and has the *approx* service (apt proxy).
  - *lb*: This entry means the host is acting as SIP load-balancer for the platform. In a sip:carrier system this option must always be set. Please note: this is only set on the nodes of the *lb* pairs. The SIP load-balancer acts as an ingress and egress point for all SIP traffic to and from the platform.
  - *proxy*: This entry means the host is acting as SIP proxy for the platform. In a sip:carrier system this option must always be set. Please note: this is only set on the nodes of the *proxy* pairs. The SIP proxy acts as registrar, proxy and application server and media relay, and is responsible for providing the features for all subscribers provisioned on it.
  - *db*: This entry means the host is acting as the database node for the platform. In a sip:carrier system this option must always be set. Please note: this is only set on the nodes of the *db* pairs. The database node exposes the MySQL and Redis databases.
  - *rtp*: This entry means the host is acting as the RTP relay node for the platform. In a sip:carrier system this option must always be set. Please note: this is only set on the nodes of the *RTP relay* pairs. The RTP relay node runs the *rtpengine* NGCP component.
  - *li*: This entry means the host is acting as the interface towards a lawful interception service provider.
- *interfaces*: The interfaces setting is an array defining all interface names in the system. The actual interface details are set in the actual interface settings below. It typically includes `lo`, `eth0`, `eth1` physical and a number of virtual interfaces, like: `bond0`, `vlanXXX`
- *<interface name>*: After the interfaces are defined in the *interfaces* setting, each of those interfaces needs to be specified as a separate set of parameters.

Additional main parameters of a node:

- *dbnode*: the sequence number (unique ID) of the node in the database cluster; the value is used only if main DB is set up as an extended cluster on other than *db0x* nodes too
- *peer*: the hostname of the peer node within the pair of nodes (e.g. "web01b" for *web01a* host). The purpose of that: each node knows its companion for providing high availability, data replication etc.

### 9.1.2 Interface Parameters

- `hwaddr`: MAC address of the interface



#### Caution

This *must* be filled in properly for the interface that is used as type `ha_int`, because the value of it will be used during the boot process of the installation of nodes via iPXE, if PXE-boot is enabled.

- `ip`: IPv4 address of the node
- `v6ip`: IPv6 address of the node; optional
- `netmask`: IPv4 netmask
- `shared_ip`: shared IPv4 address of the pair of nodes; this is a list of addresses
- `shared_v6ip`: shared IPv6 address of the pair of nodes; optional; this is a list of addresses
- `advertised_ip`: the IP address that is used in SIP messages when the NGCP system is behind NAT/SBC. An example of such a deployment is *Amazon AMI*, where the server doesn't have a public IP, so *load-balancer* component of NGCP needs to know what his public domain is (→ `advertised_ip`).
- `type`: type of services that the node provides; these are usually the VLANs defined for a particular NGCP system.

#### Note

You can assign a type only once per node.

Available types are:

- `api_int`: internal, API-based communication interface
- `aux_ext`: interface for potentially insecure external components like remote system log collection service.

#### Note

For example the *CloudPBX* module can use it to provide time services and remote logging facilities to end customer devices. The type `aux_ext` is assigned to `lo` interface by default. If it is needed to expose this type to the public, it is recommended to assign the type `aux_ext` to a separate VLAN interface to be able to limit or even block the incoming traffic easily via firewalling in case of emergency, like a (D)DoS attack on external services.

- `mon_ext`: remote monitoring interface (e.g. SNMP)
- `rtp_ext`: main (external) interface for media traffic
- `sip_ext`: main (external) interface for SIP signalling traffic between NGCP and other SIP endpoints
- `sip_ext_incoming`: additional, optional interface for incoming SIP signalling traffic
- `sip_int`: internal SIP interface used by NGCP components (*lb*, *proxy*, *etc.*)
- `ssh_ext`: command line (SSH) remote access interface
- `web_ext`: interface for web-based or API-based provisioning and administration

- `web_int`: interface for the administrator's web panel, his API and generic internal API communication
- `li_int`: used for LI (Lawful Interception) traffic routing
- `ha_int`: main communication interface between the nodes
- `boot_int`: the default VLAN used to install nodes via PXE-boot method
- `rtp_int`: internal interface for handling RTP traffic among NGCP nodes that may reside in greater distance from each other, like in case of a specialised NGCP configuration with centralized web / DB / proxy nodes and distributed LB nodes (Please refer to [Cluster Sets](#) Section 9.2.3 section for further details)

---

### Note

Please note that, apart from the standard ones described so far, there might be other *types* defined for a particular NGCP system.

---

- `vlan_raw_device`: tells which physical interface is used by the particular VLAN
- `post_up`: routes can be defined here (interface-based routing)
- `bond_XY`: specific to "bond0" interface only; these contain Ethernet bonding properties

## 9.2 Advanced Network Configuration

You have a typical deployment now and you are good to go, however you may need to do extra configuration depending on the devices you are using and functionality you want to achieve.

### 9.2.1 Extra SIP Sockets

By default, the load-balancer listens on the UDP and TCP ports 5060 (*kamailio*→*lb*→*port*) and TLS port 5061 (*kamailio*→*lb*→*tls*→*port*). If you need to setup one or more extra SIP listening ports or IP addresses in addition to those standard ports, please edit the *kamailio*→*lb*→*extra\_sockets* option in your `/etc/ngcp-config/config.yml` file.

The correct format consists of a label and value like this:

```
extra_sockets:
  port_5064: udp:10.15.20.108:5064
  test:    udp:10.15.20.108:6060
```

The label is shown in the `outbound_socket` peer preference (if you want to route calls to the specific peer out via specific socket); the value must contain a transport specification as in example above (udp, tcp or tls). After adding execute `ngcpcfg apply`:

```
ngcpcfg apply 'added extra socket' && ngcpcfg push all
```

The direction of communication through this SIP extra socket is incoming+outgoing. The sip:carrier will answer the incoming client registrations and other methods sent to the extra socket. For such incoming communication no configuration is needed. For the outgoing communication the new socket must be selected in the `outbound_socket` peer preference. For more details read the next section Section 9.2.2 that covers peer configuration for SIP and RTP in greater detail.

**Important**

In this section you have just added an extra SIP socket. RTP traffic will still use your *rtp\_ext* IP address.

### 9.2.2 Extra SIP and RTP Sockets

If you want to use an additional interface (with a different IP address) for SIP signalling and RTP traffic you need to add your new interface in the */etc/network/interfaces* file. Also the interface must be declared in */etc/ngcp-config/network.yml*.

Suppose we need to add a new SIP socket and a new RTP socket on VLAN 100. You can use the *ngcp-network* tool for adding interfaces without having to manually edit this file:

```
ngcp-network --set-interface=eth0.100 --host=slb01a --ip=auto --netmask=auto --type= ↔
    sip_ext_incoming
ngcp-network --set-interface=eth0.100 --host=slb01b --ip=auto --netmask=auto --type= ↔
    sip_ext_incoming
ngcp-network --set-interface=eth0.100 --host=prx01a --ip=auto --netmask=auto --type= ↔
    rtp_int_100
ngcp-network --set-interface=eth0.100 --host=prx01b --ip=auto --netmask=auto --type= ↔
    rtp_int_100
```

The generated file should look like the following:

```
slb01a:
..
..
  eth0.100:
    hwaddr: ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    ip: 192.168.1.2
    netmask: 255.255.255.0
    shared_ip:
      - 192.168.1.3
    shared_v6ip: ~
    type:
      - sip_ext_incoming
..
..
  interfaces:
    - lo
    - eth0
    - eth0.100
    - eth1
..
..
prx01a:
..
..
```

```
eth0.100:
  hwaddr: ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
  ip: 192.168.1.20
  netmask: 255.255.255.0
  shared_ip:
    - 192.168.1.30
  shared_v6ip: ~
  type:
    - rtp_int_100
..
..
interfaces:
  - lo
  - eth0
  - eth0.100
  - eth1
..
..
slb01b:
..
..
eth0.100:
  hwaddr: ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
  ip: 192.168.1.4
  netmask: 255.255.255.0
  shared_ip:
    - 192.168.1.3
  shared_v6ip: ~
  type:
    - sip_ext_incoming
..
..
interfaces:
  - lo
  - eth0
  - eth0.100
  - eth1
..
..
prx01b:
..
..
eth0.100:
  hwaddr: ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
  ip: 192.168.1.40
  netmask: 255.255.255.0
  shared_ip:
    - 192.168.1.30
```

```

    shared_v6ip: ~
    type:
      - rtp_int_100
  ..
  ..
  interfaces:
    - lo
    - eth0
    - eth0.100
    - eth1

```

As you can see from the above example, extra SIP interfaces must have type *sip\_ext\_incoming*. While *sip\_ext* should be listed only once per host, there can be multiple *sip\_ext\_incoming* interfaces. The direction of communication through this SIP interface is incoming only. The sip:carrier will answer the incoming client registrations and other methods sent to this address and remember the interfaces used for clients' registrations to be able to send incoming calls to him from the same interface.

In order to use the interface for the outbound SIP communication it is necessary to add it to *extra\_sockets* section in */etc/ngcp-config/config.yml* and select in the *outbound\_socket* peer preference. So if using the above example we want to use the *vlan100* IP as source interface towards a peer, the corresponding section may look like the following:

```

extra_sockets:
  port_5064: udp:10.15.20.108:5064
  test: udp:10.15.20.108:6060
  int_100: udp:192.168.1.3:5060

```

The changes have to be applied:

```
ngcpcfg apply 'added extra SIP and RTP socket' && ngcpcfg push all
```

After applying the changes, a new SIP socket will listen on IP *192.168.1.3* on *slb01* node and this socket can now be used as source socket to send SIP messages to your peer for example. In above example we used label *int\_100*. So the new label "int\_100" is now shown in the *outbound\_socket* peer preference.

Also, RTP socket is now listening on *192.168.1.30* on *prx01* node and you can choose the new RTP socket to use by setting parameter *rtp\_interface* to the Label "int\_100" in your Domain/Subscriber/Peer preferences.

### 9.2.3 Cluster Sets

In a sip:carrier system it is possible to have geographically distributed nodes in the same logical NGCP unit. Such a configuration typically involves the following elements:

- **centralised** management (*web*), database (*db*) and proxy (*prx*) nodes: these provide all higher level functionality, like system administration, subscriber registration, call routing, etc.
- **distributed** load balancer (*lb*) nodes: these serve as SBCs for the the whole NGCP and handle SIP and RTP traffic to / from SIP endpoints (e.g. subscribers); and they also communicate with the central elements of NGCP (e.g. proxy nodes)



In case of such an NGCP node configuration it is possible to define *cluster sets* which are collections of NGCP nodes providing the load balancer functionality.

Cluster sets can be assigned to subscriber *domains* or *SIP peers* and will determine the route of SIP and RTP traffic for those sets of SIP endpoints:

- For *SIP peers* the selected nodes will be used to send outbound SIP traffic through
- For both *SIP peers* and subscriber *domains* the selected nodes will provide RTP relay functionality (the *rtengine* NGCP component will run on those nodes)

### 9.2.3.1 Configuration of Nodes of Cluster Sets

There are 2 places in NGCP's main configuration files where an entry for cluster sets must be inserted:

#### 1. Declaration of cluster sets

This happens in `/etc/ngcp-config/config.yml` file, see an example below:

```
cluster_sets:
  default:
    dispatcher_id: 50
  default_set: default
  poland:
    dispatcher_id: 51
  type: distributed
```

Configuration entries are:

- `<label>`: an arbitrary label of the cluster set; in the above example we have 2 of them: `default` and `poland`; the cluster set `default` is always defined, even if cluster sets are not used
- `<label>.dispatcher_id`: a unique, numeric value that identifies a particular cluster set
- `default_set`: selects the default cluster set
- `type`: the type of cluster set; can be `central` or `distributed`

#### 2. Assignment of cluster sets

This happens in `/etc/ngcp-config/network.yml` file, see an example below:

```
.
.
1b03a:
  .
  .
  vlan792:
    cluster_sets:
      - poland
    hwaddr: 00:00:00:00:00:00
    ip: 172.30.61.37
```

```

netmask: 255.255.255.240
shared_ip: 172.30.61.36
type:
  - sip_int
vlan_raw_device: bond0

```

In the network configuration file typically the load balancer (*lb*) nodes are assigned to cluster sets. More precisely: network interfaces of load balancer nodes that have `sip_int` type—that are used for SIP signalling and NGCP's internal *rtpengine* command protocol—are assigned to cluster sets.

In order to do such an assignment a cluster set's label has to be added to the `cluster_sets` parameter, which is a list.

After modifying network configuration with cluster sets, the new configuration must be applied in the usual way:

```

> ngcpcfg apply 'Added cluster sets'
> ngcpcfg push all

```

### 9.2.3.2 Configuration of Cluster Sets for SIP and RTP Traffic

For both SIP peers and subscriber domains you can select the cluster set labels predefined in `config.yml` file.

- **SIP peers:** In order to select a particular cluster set for a SIP peer you have to navigate to *Peerings* → *select the peering group* → *select the peering server* → *Preferences* → *NAT and Media Flow Control* and then *Edit* `lbrtp_set` parameter.

#### Peer Host "Vlada01" - Preferences

← Back
★ Flash Dialogic
Expand Groups

Access Restrictions

Number Manipulations

NAT and Media Flow Control

	Attribute	Name	Value	
ⓘ	use_rtpproxy	RTP-Proxy Mode	Always with plain SDP	
ⓘ	ipv46_for_rtpproxy	IPv4/IPv6 bridging mode	Auto-detect	
ⓘ	lbrtp_set	The cluster set used for SIP lb and RTP	None	Edit
ⓘ	rtp_interface	RTP interface	default	

Figure 57: Select Cluster Set for a Peer

- **Domains:** In order to select a particular cluster set for a domain you have to navigate to *Domains* → *select the domain* → *Preferences* → *NAT and Media Flow Control* and then *Edit* `lbrtp_set` parameter.

Domain "195.185.37.60" - Preferences

← Back

Expand Groups

Call Blockings

Access Restrictions

Number Manipulations

NAT and Media Flow Control

	Attribute	Name	Value	
?	sound_set	System Sound Set	<div></div>	
?	no_nat_sipping	Disable NAT SIP pings	<input type="checkbox"/>	
?	use_rtpproxy	RTP-Proxy Mode	<div>Always with plain SDP</div>	
?	ipv46_for_rtpproxy	IPv4/IPv6 bridging mode	<div>Auto-detect</div>	
?	bypass_rtpproxy	Disable RTP-Proxy in the selected case	<div>Never</div>	
?	lbrtp_set	The cluster set used for SIP lb and RTP	<div>None</div>	<div>Edit</div>
?	rtp_interface	RTP interface	<div>default</div>	

Figure 58: Select Cluster Set for a Domain

## 10 Software Upgrade

### 10.1 Release Notes

The sip:carrier version mr5.0.2 has several important changes comparing to the previous release:

- Migration from MySQL 5.5 to MariaDB 10.0 [MT#22031]
- New inbound peering rules [TT#2766]
- [PRO/Carrier] ngcpconf: POSIX permissions aren't reproduced on foreign nodes/further git repos copies [MT#22361]
- [PRO/Carrier] /mnt/glusterfs/shared\_config/ is discontinued and no longer in use, *ssh/sshd* data moved to /etc/ngcp-config/shared-files/ [MT#19043]
- [PRO/Carrier] haproxy admin webinterface password has been reset [MT#21227]
- [PRO/Carrier] Glusterfs has been upgraded from 3.7.5-1<sub>bpo8+1</sub> to 3.8.4-1<sub>bpo8+1</sub> [TT#3663]

Please find the complete changelog in our release notes [on our WEB site](#).

### 10.2 Overview

The sip:carrier system upgrade to mr5.0.2 will perform a couple of fundamental tasks:

- Upgrade NGCP software packages
- Upgrade NGCP configuration templates
- Upgrade NGCP DB schema
- Upgrade the base system within Debian (v8) to the latest package versions

sip:carrier is a PRO-style system which has "A" and "B" pairs of nodes which execute specific roles. The nodes amount here is different and must be clarified ahead of the upgrade on the planning stage.

The way to upgrade sip:carrier is clean and simple:

- upgrade planning
- pre-upgrade steps: customtt, backups
- ensure all nodes "B" are active
- ensure all nodes "A" are inactive
- upgrade all nodes "A" first to the new release
- schedule and perform a switchover to all nodes "A"

- ensure nodes "A" work well (otherwise switchover back to nodes "B")
- upgrade all nodes "B" to the new release
- perform system post-upgrade testing/cleanup

**Warning**

the only allowed way to upgrade sip:carrier is described above. All the other theoretically possible upgrade scenarios can lead to unpredictable results.

---

**Warning**

Nodes "A" and "B" MUST be used as described in this document. It is NOT allowed to swipe them unless proxy replication (of MySQL on port 3308) is configured on the db01b node.

---

## 10.3 Planning a Software Upgrade

Have a written answer on the following questions:

- which system should be upgraded (ensure about LAB/LIVE, country, etc.)
- clarify upgrade date and time (ensure timezone) for each stage above
- clarify allowed timeframe for the upgrade (allowed switchover timeframe)
- what should happen if upgrade does not fit allowed timeframe
- request the customer availability on all switchover stages
- gather urgent contact credentials to contact the customer in case of emergency
- force the customer to prepare basic and fast tests to be executed after switchovers to ensure new release works well
- share with the customer the steps you are going to perform and request written confirmation
- ensure that you and the customer have an access to the remote console of the servers: KVM, DRAC

## 10.4 Preparing to a Software Upgrade

### 10.4.1 Log into the inactive management server (web01a/db01a).

---

**Tip**

Use their real IP so you can switch the cluster forth and back later on.

---

Switch to the terminal multiplexer under the user *sipwise* (to reuse Sipwise .screenrc settings which are user-friendly for handling upgrade in multiple windows):

```
screen -S ngcp-upgrade
```

Become a root inside your screen session:

```
sudo -s
```

Check the system overall status:

```
ngcp-status --all
```

Ensure that all proxy nodes replicate read-only DB (MySQL on 127.0.0.1:3308) from the node db01a. Otherwise, inform your manager about the special state here.

Try to find local changes to the template files by issuing:

```
find /etc/ngcp-config -name \*customtt.tt2
```

You will also need to find the dpkg-dist files under the templates files because people sometimes forget about creating customtt files and edit tt2 files directly. That makes upgrades not to replace the tt2 files. If so, you need to treat the tt2 files as if they were customtt files and make sure you merge the new templates with the changes of the old ones.

```
find /etc/ngcp-config -name \*.tt2.dpkg-dist
```

Also, please check/clean old dpkg backup files (just in case if another engineer did the previous step not carefully enough).

Normally the list should be empty:

```
find /etc/ngcp-config -name \*.tt2.dpkg\*
```

You will have to understand why the changes are there and if they are still needed after the upgrade.

You must create a ticket in the bug tracker to include customtt changes in the following releases (to remove customtt one day).



#### Warning

Installation may use locally specified apt Debian mirrors. Discuss with a customer possibility to switch on Sipwise APT repositories (at least for the time of upgrades), the public Debian mirrors may not provide packages for old Releases anymore or be at least outdated!

---

### 10.4.2 Log into all servers.

Open separate windows for all the servers inside your screen session. (Press `Ctrl+a + c` to open new window, `Ctrl+a+a` or `Ctrl+a + [0-9]` to change the window. `Ctrl+a + "` can open list of all windows for you. `C+a + A` can be used to change the screen name, so you can mark hosts here).

Check the system for locally modified files (move them to appropriate customtt.tt2 files if necessary) on **all** servers:

```
ngcp-status --integrity
```

Make sure the cluster status is ok - on **all** nodes issue manually:

- **ngcpcfg status** - should print OK all the times

Can be checked on all nodes in parallel, using clish and parallel-ssh:

- **ngcp-clish "ngcp version summary"** - ensure all nodes have proper/expected from version across all cluster
- **ngcp-clish "ngcp version package installed ngcp-ngcp-carrier"** - ensure the metapackages version is equal to the ngcp version above
- **ngcp-clish "ngcp version package check"** - ensure all nodes have identical list of debian package installed.

---

#### Note

All nodes must be identical before and after the upgrade!

---

- **ngcp-clish "ngcp cluster ssh connectivity"** - check SSH connectivity from the current node to all other nodes
- **ngcp-clish "ngcp cluster ssh crossconnectivity"** - check SSH connectivity from the all nodes to all other nodes
- **ngcp-clish "ngcp monit summary"** - ensure no errors are there
- **ngcp-clish "ngcp cluster status"** - active nodes (with all services running) should print "all", the other "none"
- **ngcp-clish "ngcp status collective-check"** - should not report any problems.
- **ngcp-clish "ngcp show date"** - date and time must be in sync on all the servers
- **ngcp-clish "ngcp show dns-servers"** - ensure DNS records are correct

---

#### Note

to exit from *ngcp-clish* press Ctrl+Z (or type *exit*):

---

```
root@web01b:~# ngcp-clish
Entering 'clish-enable' view (press Ctrl+Z to exit)...
# exit
root@web01b:~#
```

Run "apt-get update", ensure you have no warnings/errors here.

A cluster failover could be a good idea to see if everything works on the second node too. On the standby node issue:

```
/usr/share/heartbeat/hb_takeover
```

Afterwards, again check *ngcp-status --all*.

Create two test subscribers or retrieve the credentials for two of them. Register a client to the platform and perform a test call between the two to ensure call routing works.

## 10.5 Upgrading the sip:carrier

For upgrading the sip:carrier to mr5.0.2 release, execute the following commands on **inactive management "A" node**:

### 10.5.1 Upgrading the first inactive management node "A" ONLY (web01a/db01a)

---

#### Note

sometimes DB and MGMT roles are assigned to the same host. It is OK.

---



#### Warning

do NOT execute the current step on web01a and db01a in parallel!

---

The main goal here is to fill the approx cache with new version of packages. So all the other nodes will get identical version of packages as the first one.

```
NGCP_CURRENT_VERSION=$(cat /etc/ngcp_version)
sed -i "s/$NGCP_CURRENT_VERSION/mr5.0.2/" /etc/apt/sources.list.d/sipwise.list
ngcp-approx-cache-helper --auto --node localhost
apt-get update
apt-get install ngcp-upgrade-pro
```

---

#### Note

do NOT worry, ngcp-upgrade-carrier does not exist, use ngcp-upgrade-pro above.

---

Execute ngcp-upgrade in inactive node as *root*:

```
ngcp-upgrade
```

---

#### Note

sip:carrier can be upgraded to mr5.0.2 from previous release or previous build only. The script ngcp-upgrade will find all the possible destination releases for the upgrade and allow to choose the proper one.

---

---

#### Note

If there is an error during upgrade, the ngcp-upgrade script will request you to solve it. Once you've fixed the problem just re-execute ngcp-upgrade again and it will continue from the previous step.

---

Merge/add the customtt configuration templates if needed. Apply the changes to configuration templates if any:



```
ngcpcfg apply 'applying customtt for new release mrX.X on node xxx01a'
```

Send new templates to the shared storage and the other nodes

```
ngcpcfg push --nobuild --noapply all
```

---

#### Note

do NOT execute `ngcpcfg push --shared-only` on this stage, it will affect further upgrades due to noticed outdated local `ngcpcfg` storage. If you did so, run `ngcpcfg push --nobuild --noapply all` once again to pull `ngcpcfg` changes on all the nodes from `glustefs`.

---

### 10.5.2 Upgrading inactive database node "A" (db\*a)

---

#### Note

If DB and MGMT roles are assigned to the same host, skip this step as you have upgraded inactive MGMT node "A" above already.

---

Run the following commands to upgrade inactive DB node "A" (choose the same release version as above and follow on-screen recommendations):

```
NGCP_CURRENT_VERSION=$(cat /etc/ngcp_version)
sed -i "s/$NGCP_CURRENT_VERSION/mr5.0.2/" /etc/apt/sources.list.d/sipwise.list
apt-get update
apt-get install ngcp-upgrade-pro
ngcp-upgrade
```

---

#### Note

it is important to upgrade db01a node *before* upgrading any proxy nodes. Otherwise "local" MySQL (127.0.0.1:3308) on proxy nodes may be out of sync if new release has `_not_replicated.up` DB statements.

---

### 10.5.3 Upgrading other inactive nodes "A" (lb\*a/prx\*a)

Run the following commands here (choose the same release version and follow on-screen recommendations):

```
NGCP_CURRENT_VERSION=$(cat /etc/ngcp_version)
sed -i "s/$NGCP_CURRENT_VERSION/mr5.0.2/" /etc/apt/sources.list.d/sipwise.list
apt-get update
apt-get install ngcp-upgrade-pro
ngcp-upgrade
```

#### 10.5.4 Promote ALL inactive nodes "A" to active.

**Warning**

ensure all inactive nodes "A" are:

---

- upgraded to new release (check `/etc/ngcp_version` or use `ngcp-clish`)
- have been reboot (run `ngcp-status` on each node)

Run on all "A" nodes:

```
/usr/share/heartbeat/hb_takeover
```

Ensure "A" node became active, feel free to reuse `'ngcp-status'` and `'ngcp-clish'` commands described above.

Ensure ALL "B" nodes are inactive now!

#### 10.5.5 Upgrading ALL inactive nodes "B" (`web*b/db*b/lb*b/prx*b`)

Run the following commands here (choose the same release version and follow on-screen recommendations):

```
NGCP_CURRENT_VERSION=$(cat /etc/ngcp_version)
sed -i "s/$NGCP_CURRENT_VERSION/mr5.0.2/" /etc/apt/sources.list.d/sipwise.list
apt-get update
apt-get install ngcp-upgrade-pro
ngcp-upgrade
```

---

**Note**

you can upgrade all inactive "B" nodes together (including mgmt and db roles).

---

### 10.6 Post-upgrade Checks

When all finishes successfully check that replication is running. Check `ngcp-status --all`. Finally, do a basic functionality test. Check web interface, register two test subscribers and perform a test call between them to ensure call routing works.

---

**Note**

You can find a backup of some important configuration files of your existing installation under `/var/backup/ngcp-mr5.0.2-*` (where `*` is a place holder for a timestamp) in case you need to roll back something at any time. A log file of the upgrade procedure is available at `/var/backup/ngcp-mr5.0.2-*/upgrade.log`.

---

## 11 Backup, Recovery and Database Maintenance

### 11.1 sip:carrier Backup

For any service provider it is important to maintain a reliable backup policy as it enables prompt services restoration after any force majeure event. Although the design of sip:carrier implies data duplication and high availability of services, we still strongly suggest you to configure a backup procedure. The sip:carrier has a built-in solution that can help you back up the most crucial data. Alternatively, it can be integrated with any Debian compatible backup software.

#### 11.1.1 What data to back up

- The database

This is the most important data in the system. All subscriber and billing information, CDRs, user preferences, etc. are stored in the MySQL server. It is strongly recommended to have up-to-date dumps of all the databases on corresponding NGCP nodes.

- System configuration

The system configuration files such as */etc/mysql/sipwise.cnf* and the */etc/ngcp-config/* directory should be included in the backup as well. We suggest backing up the whole */etc* folder.

- Exported CDRs (optional)

The */home/jail/home/cdreexport* directory contains the exported CDRs. It depends on your call data retention policy whether or not to remove these files after exporting them to an external system.

#### 11.1.2 The built-in backup solution

The sip:carrier comes with an easy-to-use solution that creates everyday backups of the most important data:

- The system configuration files. The whole */etc* directory is backed up.
- Exported CDRs. The */home/jail/home/cdreexport* directory with csv files.
- All required databases on corresponding servers.

This functionality is disabled by default and can be enabled and configured in the *backuptools* subsection in the *config.yml* file. Please, refer to the “C.1.3 backup tools” section of the “NGCP configs overview” chapter for the backup configuration options.

Once you set the required configuration options, apply the changes:

```
ngcpcfg apply 'enabled the backup feature'
ngcpcfg push all
```

Once you activate the feature, the sip:carrier will create backups in the off-peak time on the standby nodes and put them to the `/var/backup/ngcp_backup` directory. You can copy these files to your backup server using scp or ftp.

---

**Note**

make sure that you have enough free disk space to store the backups for the specified number of days.

---

## 11.2 Recovery

In the worst case scenario, when the system needs to be recovered from a total loss, you only need 4 steps to get the services back online:

- Install the sip:carrier as explained in chapter 2.
- Restore the `/etc/ngcp-config/` directory and the `/etc/mysql/sipwise.cnf` file from the backup, overwriting your local files.
- Restore the database from the latest MySQL dump.
- Apply the changes to bring the original configuration into effect:

```
ngcpcfg apply 'restored the system from the backup'
ngcpcfg push all
```

## 11.3 Reset Database

**Important**

All existing data will be wiped out! Use this script only if you want to clear all previously configured services and start configuration from scratch.

---

To reset database to its original state you can use a script provided by CE: \* Execute `ngcp-reset-db`. It will assign new unique passwords for the NGCP services and reset all services. The script will also create dumps for all NGCP databases.

## 11.4 Accounting Data (CDR) Cleanup

Sipwise sip:carrier offers an easy way to cleanup, backup or archive old accounting data—i.e. CDRs—that is not necessary for further processing any more, or must be deleted according to the law. There are some NGCP components designed for this purpose and they are commonly called *cleantools*. These are basically configurable scripts that interact with NGCP's `accounting` and `kamailio` databases, or remove exported CDR files in order to clean or archive the unnecessary data.

### 11.4.1 Cleanuptools Configuration

The configuration parameters of *cleanuptools* are located in the main NGCP configuration file: `/etc/ngcp-config/config.yml`. Please refer to the `config.yml` file description: [Cleanuptools Configuration Data](#) Section [B.1.8](#) for configuration parameter details.

In case the system administrator needs to modify some configuration value, the new configuration must be activated in the usual way, by running the following commands:

```
> ngcpcfg apply 'Modified cleanuptools config'
> ngcpcfg push all
```

As a result new configuration files will be generated for the accounting database and the exported CDR cleanup tools. Please read detailed description of those tools in subsequent sections of the handbook.

The NGCP system administrator can also select the time when cleanup scripts are run, by modifying the schedule here: `/etc/cron.d/cleanup-tools`

### 11.4.2 Accounting Database Cleanup

The script responsible for cleaning up the database is: `/usr/sbin/acc-cleanup.pl`

The configuration file used by the script is: `/etc/ngcp-cleanup-tools/acc-cleanup.conf`

An extract from a sample configuration file is provided here:

```
#####

batch = 10000
archive-target = /var/backup/cdr
compress = gzip

username = dbcleaner
password = rcKamRdHhx7saYRbkJfP
host = localhost

connect accounting
time-column = from_unixtime(start_time)
backup-months = 2
backup-retro = 2
backup cdr

connect accounting
archive-months = 2
archive cdr

connect kamailio
```

```
time-column = time
cleanup-days = 90
cleanup acc

# Clean up after mediator by deleting old leftover acc entries and deleting
# old entries out of acc_trash and acc_backup
connect kamailio
time-column = time
cleanup-days = 30
cleanup acc_trash
cleanup acc_backup
```

The configuration file itself contains a detailed description of how database cleanup script works. It consists of a series of statements, one per line, which are going to be executed in sequence. A statement can either just set a variable to some value, or perform an action.

There are 3 types of actions the database cleanup script can take:

- backup CDRs
- archive CDRs
- cleanup CDRs

These actions are discussed in following sections.

A generic action is connecting to the proper database: `connect <database name>`

#### 11.4.2.1 Backup CDRs

The database cleanup tool can create *monthly backups* of CDRs in the `accounting` database and store those data records in separate tables named: `cdr_YYYYMM`. The instruction in the configuration file looks like: `backup <table name>`, by default and typically it is: `backup cdr`

Configuration values that govern the backup procedure are:

- `time-column`: Which column in `cdr` table shows the month which a CDR belongs to.
- `batch`: How many records to process within a single SQL statement. If unset, less than or equals 0, all of them are processed at once.
- `backup-months`: How many months worth of records to keep in the `cdr` table—where current CDRs are stored—and not move into the monthly backup tables.



#### Important

Months are always processed as a whole, thus the value specifies how many months to keep AT MOST. In other words, if the script is started on December 15th and this value is set to "2", then all of December and November is kept, and all of October will be backed up.

- `backup-retro`: How many months to process for backups, going backwards in time. Using the example above, with this value set to "3", the months October, September and August would be backed up, while any older records would be left untouched.

#### 11.4.2.2 Archive CDRs

The database cleanup tool can archive (dump) old monthly backup tables. The statement used for this purpose is: `archive <table name>`, by default and typically it is: `archive cdr`

This creates an SQL dump out of too old tables created by the `backup` statement and drop them afterwards from database. Archiving uses the following configuration values:

- `archive-months`: Uses the same logic as the `backup-months` variable above. If set to "12" and the script was started on December 15th, it will start archiving with the December table of the previous year.



#### Important

Note that the sum of `backup-retro` + `backup-months` values cannot be larger than `archive-months` value for the same table. Otherwise you end up creating empty monthly backup tables, only to dump and delete them right afterwards.

---

- `archive-target`: Target directory for writing the SQL dump files into. If explicitly specified as `"/dev/null"`, then no actual archiving will be performed, but instead the tables will only be dropped from database.
- `compress`: If set to "gzip", then gzip the dump files after creation. If unset, do not compress.
- `host`, `username` and `password`: As dumping is performed by an external command, those variables are reused from the `connect` statement.

#### 11.4.2.3 Cleanup CDRs

The database cleanup tool may do database table cleanup without performing backup. In order to do that, the statement: `clean up <table name>` is used. Typically this has to be done in `kamailio` database, examples:

- `cleanup acc`
- `cleanup acc_trash`
- `cleanup acc_backup`

Basically the `cleanup` statement works just like the `backup` statement, but doesn't actually backup anything, but rather just deletes old records. Configuration values used by the procedure:

- `time-column`: Gives the database column name that shows the time of CDR creation.
- `batch`: The same as with `backup` statement.
- `cleanup-days`: Any record older than this many days will be deleted.

### 11.4.3 Exported CDR Cleanup

The script responsible for cleaning up exported CDR files is: `/usr/sbin/cleanup-old-cdr-files.pl`

The configuration file used by exported CDR cleanup script is: `/etc/ngcp-cleanup-tools/cdr-files-cleanup.yml`

A sample configuration file is provided here:

```
enabled: no
max_age_days: 30
paths:
  -
    path: /home/jail/home/*/20[0-9][0-9][0-9][0-9]/[0-9][0-9]
    wildcard: yes
    remove_empty_directories: yes
    max_age_days: ~
  -
    path: /home/jail/home/cdreexport/resellers/*/20[0-9][0-9][0-9][0-9]/[0-9][0-9]
    wildcard: yes
    remove_empty_directories: yes
    max_age_days: ~
  -
    path: /home/jail/home/cdreexport/system/20[0-9][0-9][0-9][0-9]/[0-9][0-9]
    wildcard: yes
    remove_empty_directories: yes
    max_age_days: ~
```

The exported CDR cleanup tool simply deletes CDR files in the directories provided in the configuration file, if those have already expired.

Configuration values that define the files to be deleted:

- **enabled:** Enable (yes) or disable (no) exported CDR cleanup.
- **max\_age\_days:** Gives the expiration time of the exported CDR files in days. There is a general value which may be overridden by a local value provided at a specific path. The local value is valid for the particular path only.
- **paths:** an array of path definitions
  - **path:** a path where CDR files are to be found and deleted; this may contain wildcard characters
  - **wildcard:** Enable (yes) or disable (no) using wildcards in the path
  - **remove\_empty\_directories:** Enable (yes) or disable (no) removing empty directories if those are found in the given path
  - **max\_age\_days:** the local expiration time value for files in the particular path



## 12 Platform Security, Performance and Troubleshooting

Once the sip:carrier is in production, security and maintenance becomes really important. In this chapter, we'll go through a set of best practices for any production system.

### 12.1 Sipwise SSH access to sip:carrier

The sip:carrier provides SSH access to the system for Sipwise operational team for debugging and final tuning. Operational team uses user *sipwise* which can be logged in through SSH key only (password access is disabled) from dedicated access server *jump.sipwise.com* only.

To completely remove Sipwise access to your system, please execute as user root:

```
root@myserver:~# ngcp-support-access --disable && apt-get install ngcp-support-noaccess
```

---

#### Note

you have to execute the command above on each node of your sip:carrier system!

---



#### Warning

please ensure that the script complete successfully:

---

```
* Support access successfully disabled.
```

If you need to restore Sipwise access to the system, please execute as user root:

```
root@myserver:~# apt-get install ngcp-support-access && ngcp-support-access --enable
```



#### Warning

please ensure that the script complete successfully:

---

```
* Support access successfully enabled.
```

### 12.2 Firewalling

The sip:carrier runs a wide range of services. Some of them need to interact with the user, while some others need to interact with the administrator or with nobody at all. Assuming that we trust the sip:carrier server for outgoing connections, we'll focus only on incoming traffic to define the services that need to be open for interaction.

Table 17: Subscribers

Service	Default port	Config option
Customer self care interface	443 TCP	<code>www_admin→http_csc→port</code>
SIP	5060 UDP, TCP	<code>kamailio→lb→port</code>
SIP over TLS	5061 TCP	<code>kamailio→lb→tls→port + kamailio→lb→tls→enable</code>
RTP	30000-40000 UDP	<code>rtpproxy→minport + rtpproxy→maxport</code>
XCAP	1080 TCP	<code>kamailio→proxy→presence→enable + nginx→xcap_port</code>
XMPP	5222 and 5269 TCP	None, standard XMPP ports for clients (5222) and federation (5269)

Table 18: Administrators

Service	Default port	Config option
SSH/SFTP	22 TCP	NA
Administrator interface	1443 TCP	<code>www_admin→http_admin→port</code>
Provisioning interfaces	2443 TCP	<code>ossbss→apache→port</code>

**Caution**

To function correctly, the *rtengine* requires an additional *iptables* rule installed. This rule (with a target of `RTPENGINE`) is automatically installed and removed when the *rtengine* starts and stops, so normally you don't need to worry about it. However, any 3rd party firewall solution can potentially flush out all existing *iptables* rules before installing its own, which would leave the system without the required `RTPENGINE` rule and this would lead to decreased performance. It is imperative that any 3rd party firewall solution either leaves this rule untouched, or installs it back into place after flushing all rules out. The complete parameters to install this rule (which needs to go into the `INPUT` chain of the `filter` table) are: `-p udp -j RTPENGINE --id 0`

## 12.3 Password management

The *sip:carrier* comes with some default passwords the user should change during the deployment of the system. They have been explained in the previous chapters of this handbook.

- The login for the system account *cdrexport* is disabled by default. Although this is a jailed account, it has access to sensitive information, namely the Call Detail Records of all calls. SSH keys should be used to login this user, or alternatively a really strong password should be used when setting the password via `passwd cdrexport`.

- The *root* user in MySQL has no default password. A password should be set using the *mysqladmin password* command.
- The administrative web interface has a default user *administrator* with password *administrator*. It should be changed within this interface.
- Generate new password for user *ngcpsoap* to access the provisioning interfaces, see the details in Section 7.



#### Important

Many NGCP services use MySQL backend. Users and passwords for these services are created during the installation. These passwords are unique for each installation, and the connections are restricted to localhost. You should not change these users and passwords.

## 12.4 SSL certificates.

The sip:carrier provides default, self-signed SSL certificates for SSL connections. These certificates are common for every installation. Before going to production state, the system administrator should provide SSL certificates for the web services. These certificates can either be shared by all web interfaces (*provisioning*, *administrator interface* and *customer self care interface*), or separate ones for each them can be used.

- Generate the certificates. The *customer self care interface* certificate should be signed by a certification authority to avoid browser warnings.
- Upload the certificates to the system
- Set the path to the new certificates in */etc/ngcp-config/config.yml*:
  - *ossbss→apache→autoprov→sslcertfile* and *ossbss→apache→autoprov→sslcertkeyfile* for the *provisioning interface*.
  - *ossbss→apache→restapi→sslcertfile* and *ossbss→apache→restapi→sslcertkeyfile* for the *REST interface*.
  - *www\_admin→http\_admin→sslcertfile* and *www\_admin→http\_admin→sslcertkeyfile* for the *admin interface*.
  - *www\_admin→http\_csc→sslcertfile* and *www\_admin→http\_csc→sslcertkeyfile* for the *customer self care interface*.
- Apply the configuration changes with *ngcpcfg apply 'added web ssl certs'*.

The sip:carrier also provides the self-signed SSL certificates for SIP over TLS services. The system administrator should replace them with certificates signed by a trusted certificate authority if he is going to enable it for the production usage (*kamailio→lb→tls→enable* (disabled by default)).

- Generate the certificates.
- Upload the certificates to the system
- Set the path to the new certificates in */etc/ngcp-config/config.yml*:
  - *kamailio→lb→tls→sslcertfile* and *kamailio→lb→tls→sslcertkeyfile* .
- Apply the configuration changes with *ngcpcfg apply 'added kamailio certs'*.

## 12.5 Securing your sip:carrier against SIP attacks

The sip:carrier allows you to protect your VoIP system against SIP attacks, in particular **Denial of Service** and **brute-force attacks**. Let's go through each of those attacks and let's see how to configure your system in order to face such situations and react against them.

### 12.5.1 Denial of Service

As soon as you have packets arriving on your sip:carrier server, it will require a bit of time of your CPU. Denial of Service attacks are aimed to break down your system by sending floods of SIP messages in a very short period of time and keep your system busy to handle such huge amount of requests. sip:carrier allows you to block such kind of attacks quite easily, by configuring the following section in your `/etc/ngcp-config/config.yml`:

```
security:
  dos_ban_enable: 'yes'
  dos_ban_time: 3600
  dos_reqs_density_per_unit: 50
  dos_sampling_time_unit: 2
  dos_whitelisted_ips: []
  dos_whitelisted_subnets: []
```

Basically, as soon as sip:carrier receives more than 50 messages from the same IP in a time window of 2 seconds, that IP will be blocked for 3600 sec, and you will see in the `kamailio-lb.log` a line saying:

```
Nov 9 00:11:53 sp1 lb[41958]: WARNING: <script>: IP '1.2.3.4' is blocked and banned - R=< ↵
null> ID=304153-3624477113-19168@tedadg.testlab.local
```

The banned IP will be stored in kamailio memory, you can check the list via web interface or via the following command:

```
# ngcp-kamctl lb fifo sht_dump ipban
```



#### Important

You have to run this command on ACTIVE load balancer node.

---

### Excluding SIP endpoints from banning

There may be some SIP endpoints that send a huge traffic towards NGCP from a specific IP address. A typical example is a *SIP Peering Server*.



#### Caution

sip:carrier supports handling such situations by excluding all defined *SIP Peering Servers* from DoS protection mechanism.

---

The NGCP platform administrator may also add whitelisted IP addresses manually in `/etc/ngcp-config/config.yml` at `kamailio.lb.security.dos_whitelisted_ips` and `kamailio.lb.security.dos_whitelisted_subnets` parameters.

### 12.5.2 Bruteforcing SIP credentials

This is a very common attack you can easily detect checking your `/var/log/ngcp/kamailio-proxy.log`. You will see INVITE/REGISTER messages coming in with strange usernames. Attackers is trying to spoof/guess subscriber's credentials, which allow them to call out. The very first protection against these attacks is: **ALWAYS USE STRONG PASSWORD**. Nevertheless sip:carrier allow you to detect and block such attacks quite easily, by configuring the following `/etc/ngcp-config/config.yml` section:

```
failed_auth_attempts: 3
failed_auth_ban_enable: 'yes'
failed_auth_ban_time: 3600
```

You may increase the number of failed attempt if you want (in same cases it's better to be safed, some users can be banned accidentally because they are not writing the right password) and adjust the ban time. If a user try to authenticate an INVITE (or REGISTER) for example and it fails more then 3 times, the "user@domain" (not the IP as for Denial of Service attack) will be block for 3600 seconds. In this case you will see in your `/var/log/ngcp/kamailio-lb.log` the following lines:

```
Nov 9 13:31:56 sp1 lb[41952]: WARNING: <script>: Consecutive Authentication Failure for ' ←
sipvicous@mydomain.com' UA='sipvicous-client' IP='1.2.3.4' - R=<null> ID ←
=313793-3624525116-589163@testlab.local
```

Both the banned IPs and banned users are shown in the Admin web interface, you can check them by accessing the **Security Bans** section in the main menu. You can check the banned user as well by retrieving the same info directly from kamailio memory, using the following commands:

```
# ngcp-kamctl lb fifo sht_dump auth
```



#### Important

You have to run this command on ACTIVE load balancer node.

## 12.6 System Requirements and Performance

The sip:carrier is a very flexible system, capable of serving from hundreds to several tens of thousands of subscribers in a single node. The system comes with a default configuration, capable of serving up to 50.000 subscribers in a *normal* environment. But there is no such thing as a *normal* environment. And the sip:carrier has sometimes to be tunned for special environments, special hardware requirements or just growing traffic.

#### Note

If you have performance issues with regards to disk I/O please consider enabling the *noatime* mount option for the root filesystem. Sipwise recommends the usage of *noatime*, though remove it if you use software which conflicts with its presence.

In this section some parameters will be explained to allow the sip:carrier administrator tune the system requirements for optimum performance.

Table 19: Requirement\_options

Option	Default value	Requirement impact
cleantools→binlog_days	15	Heavy impact on the harddisk storage needed for mysql logs. It can help to restore the database from backups or restore broken replication.
database→bufferpoolsize	64MB	For test systems or low RAM systems, lowering this setting is one of the most effective ways of releasing RAM. The administrator can check the innodb buffer hit rate on production systems; a hit rate over 99% is desired to avoid bottlenecks.
kamailio→lb→pkg_mem	16	This setting affects the amount of RAM the system will use. Each kamailio-lb worker will have this amount of RAM reserved. Lowering this setting up to 8 will help to release some memory depending on the number of kamailio-lb workers running. This can be a dangerous setting as the lb process could run out of memory. Use with caution.
kamailio→lb→shm_mem	1/16 * Total System RAM	The installer will set this value to 1/16 of the total system RAM. This setting does not change even if the system RAM does so it's up to the administrator to tune it. It has been calculated that 1024 (1GB) is a good value for 50K subscriber environment. For a test environment, setting the value to 64 should be enough. "Out of memory" messages in the kamailio log can indicate that this value needs to be raised.
kamailio→lb→tcp_children	8	Number of TCP workers kamailio-lb will spawn per listening socket. The value should be fine for a mixed UDP-TCP 50K subscriber system. Lowering this setting can free some RAM as the number of kamailio processes would decrease. For a test system or a pure UDP subscriber system 2 is a good value. 1 or 2 TCP workers are always needed.
kamailio→lb→tls→enable	yes	Enable or not TLS signaling on the system. Setting this value to "no" will prevent kamailio to spawn TLS listening workers and free some RAM.
kamailio→lb→udp_children	8	See <i>kamailio→lb→tcp_children</i> explanation
kamailio→proxy→children	8	See <i>kamailio→lb→tcp_children</i> explanation. In this case the proxy only listens udp so these children should be enough to handle all the traffic. It could be set to 2 for test systems to lower the requirements.
kamailio→proxy→*_expires		Set the default and the max and min registration interval. The lower it is more REGISTER requests will be handled by the lb and the proxy. It can impact in the network traffic, RAM and CPU usage.
kamailio→proxy→natping_interval	30	Interval for the proxy to send a NAT keepalive OPTIONS message to the nated subscriber. If decreased, this setting will increase the number of OPTIONS requests the proxy needs to send and can impact in the network traffic and the number of natping processes the system needs to run. See <i>kamailio→proxy→natping_processes</i> explanation.

Table 19: (continued)

Option	Default value	Requirement impact
kamailio→proxy→natping_processes	7	Kamailio-proxy will spawn this number of processes to send keepalive OPTIONS to the nated subscribers. Each worker can handle about 250 messages/second (depends on the hardware). Depending the number of nated subscribers and the <i>kamailio→proxy→natping_interval</i> parameter the number of workers may need to be adjusted. The number can be calculated like $\text{nated\_subscribers} / \text{natping\_interval} / \text{pings\_per\_second\_per\_process}$ . For the default options, assuming 50K nated subscribers in the system the parameter value would be $50.000 / 30 / 250 = (6,66)$ 7 workers. 7 is the maximum number of processes kamailio will accept. Raising this value will cause kamailio not to start.
kamailio→proxy→shm_mem	1/16 * Total System RAM	See <i>kamailio→lb→shm_mem</i> explanation.
rateomat→enable	yes	Set this to no if the system shouldn't perform rating on the CDRs. This will save CPU usage.
rsyslog→external_log	0	If enabled, the system will send the log messages to an external server. Depending on the <i>rsyslog→external_loglevel</i> parameter this can increase dramatically the network traffic.
rsyslog→ngcp_logs_preserve_days	93	This setting will set the number of days ngcp logs under <i>/var/log/ngcp</i> will be kept in disk. Lowering this setting will free a high amount of disk space.

**Tip**

In case of using virtualized environment with limited amount of hardware resources, you can use the script *ngcp-toggle-performance-config* to adjust sip:carrier configuration for high/low performance:

```

root@spce:~# /usr/sbin/ngcp-toggle-performance-config
/usr/sbin/ngcp-toggle-performance-config - tool to adjust sip:provider configuration for ↔
low/high performance

--help          Display this usage information
--high-performance Adjust configuration for system with normal/high performance
--low-performance Adjust configuration for system with low performance (e.g. VMs)

root@spce:~#

```

## 12.7 Troubleshooting

The sip:carrier platform provides detailed logging and log files for each component included in the system via rsyslog. The main folder for log files is `/var/log/ngcp/`, it contains a list of self explanatory log files named by component name.

The sip:carrier is a high performance system which requires compromise between traceability (maximum amount of debug information being written to hard drive) and productivity (minimum load on IO subsystem). This is the reason why different log levels are configured for the provided components by default.

Most log files are designed for debugging sip:carrier by Sipwise operational team while main log files for daily routine usage are:

Log file	Content	Estimated size
<code>/var/log/ngcp/api.log</code>	API logs providing type and content of API requests and responses as well as potential errors	medium
<code>/var/log/ngcp/panel.log</code> <code>/var/log/ngcp/panel- debug.log</code>	Admin Web UI logs when performing operational tasks on the ngcp-panel	medium
<code>/var/log/ngcp/cdr.log</code>	mediation and rating logs, e.g. how many CDRs have been generated and potential errors in case of CDR generation or rating fails for particular accounting data	medium



Log file	Content	Estimated size
/var/log/ngcp/ha.log	fail-over related logs in case a node in a pair loses connection to the other side, when a standby node takes over or an active node goes standby due to intra-node communication issues or external ping node connection issues	small
/var/log/ngcp/kamailio-proxy.log	Overview of SIP requests and replies between lb, proxy and sems processes. It's the main log file for SIP overview	huge
/var/log/ngcp/kamailio-lb.log	Overview of SIP requests and replies along with network source and destination information flowing through the platform	huge

Log file	Content	Estimated size
/var/log/ngcp/sems.log	Overview of SIP requests and replies between lb, proxy and sems processes	small
/var/log/ngcp/rtp.log	rtpengine related log, showing information about RTP communication	small

**Warning**

it is highly NOT recommended to change default log levels as it can cause system IO overloading which will affect call processing.

**Note**

the exact size of log files depend on system type, system load, system health status and system configuration, so cannot be estimated with high precision. Additionally operational network parameters like ASR and ALOC may impact the log files' size significantly.

### 12.7.1 Collecting call information from logs

The easiest way to fetch information about a single call among the log files is the search for the SIP CallID (a unique identifier for a SIP dialog). The call ID is used as call marker in almost all the voip related log file, such as `/var/log/ngcp/kamailio-lb.log` , `/var/log/ngcp/kamailio-proxy.log` , `/var/log/ngcp/sems.log` or `/var/log/ngcp/rtp.log`. Example of kamailio-proxy.log line:

```
Nov 19 00:35:56 spl proxy[7475]: NOTICE: <script>: New request on proxy - M=REGISTER R=sip: ←
sipwise.local
F=sip:jdoe@sipwise.local T=sip:jdoe@sipwise.local IP=10.10.1.10:5060 (127.0.0.1:5060) ID ←
=364e4676776621034977934e055d19ea@127.0.0.1 UA='SIP-UA 1.2.3.4'
```

The above line shows the SIP information you can find in a general line contained in `/var/log/ngcp/kamailio-*`:

- M=REGISTER : The SIP Method
- R=sip:sipwise.local : The SIP Request URI
- F=sip:jdoe@sipwise.local : The SIP From header

- T=sip:jdoe@sipwise.local : The SIP To header
- IP=10.10.1.10:5060 (127.0.0.1:5060) : The source IP where the message is coming from. Between brackets it is shown the local internal IP where the message come from (in this case Load Balancer)
- ID=364e4676776621034977934e055d19ea@127.0.0.1 : The SIP CallID.
- UAIP=10.10.1.10 : The User Agent source IP
- UA=SIP-UA 1.2.3.4 : The SIP User Agent header

In order to collect the full log related to a single call, it's necessary to "grep" the `/var/log/ngcp/kamailio-proxy.log` using the **ID=** string, for example:

```
# grep "364e4676776621034977934e055d19ea@127.0.0.1" /var/log/ngcp/kamailio-proxy.log
```

## 12.7.2 Collecting SIP traces

The sip:carrier platform provides several tools to collect SIP traces. It can be used the sip:carrier *ngrep-sip* tool to collect SIP traces, for example to fetch traffic in text format from outbound and among load balancer, proxy and sems :

```
# ngrep-sip b
```

see the manual to know all the options:

```
# man ngrep-sip
```

The *ngrep* debian tool can be used in order to make a SIP trace and save it into a *.pcap* file :

```
# ngrep -s0 -Wbyline -d any -O /tmp/SIP_trace_file_name.pcap port 5062 or port 5060
```

The *sngrep* debian graphic tool as well can be used to visualize SIP trace and save them in a *.pcap* file :

```
# sngrep
```

## 13 Monitoring and Alerting

### 13.1 Internal Monitoring

The platform uses the internal *monit* service to monitor all essential services. Since the sip:carrier runs in an active/standby mode, not all services are always running on both nodes, some of them will only run on the active node and be stopped on the standby node. The following commands show the most critical services on the platform: `*monit summary` - to get the list of services and their current status, `*monit status` - to get the list of services with detailed status.

**Important**

When you perform a stop/start/monitor/unmonitor operation on a service, *monit* affects other services that depend on the initial one. Hence, if you stop or unmonitor a service all services that depend on it will be stopped or unmonitored as well.

---

For example, `monit stop mysql` operation will stop kamailio, sbc, asterisk, prosody and some other services.

If any service ever fails for whatever reason the *monit* daemon quickly restarts it. When that happens, the daemon will send a notification email to the address specified in the `config.yml` file under the `general.adminmail` key. It will also send warning emails to this address under certain abnormal conditions, such as high memory consumption (> 75% is used) or high CPU load.

**Important**

In order for *monit* to be able to send emails to the specified address, the local MTA (*exim4*) must be configured correctly. If you haven't done so already, run `dpkg-reconfigure exim4-config` to do this. The CE edition's handbook contains more information about this in the *Installation* chapter.

---

### 13.2 Statistics Dashboard

The platform's administration interface (described in Section 3) provides a simple graphical overview of the most important system health indicators, such as memory usage, load averages and disk usage. VoIP statistics, such as the number of concurrent active calls, the number of provisioned and registered subscribers, etc. is also present.

### 13.3 External Monitoring Using SNMP

#### 13.3.1 Overview and Initial Setup

The sip:carrier exports a variety of cluster health data and statistics over the standard SNMP interface. By default, the SNMP interface can only be accessed locally. To make it possible to provide the SNMP data to an external system, the `config.yml` file needs to be edited and the list of allowed community names and allowed hosts/IP ranges must be populated. This list can be found under the `checktools.snmpd.communities` key and it consists of one or more `community/source` value pairs.

The `community` is the allowed community name, while `source` is an IP address or an IP block where to allow the requests from.

The `public` entry with the `localhost` source is used for local testing of SNMP functionality. It is recommended that you leave this entry in place. Other legal `sources` can be formed as single IP addresses or IP blocks in IP/prefix notation, for example `192.168.115.0/24`.

---

#### Tip

To locally check if SNMP is working correctly, execute the command `snmpwalk -v2c -cpublic localhost .` (note the trailing dot). This will generate a long list of raw SNMP OIDs and their values, provided that the `default` SNMP community key has been left in place.

---



---

#### Tip

SNMP version 1 and version 2c are supported.

---

### 13.3.2 Details

There are two types of information that can be retrieved from SNMP. The first one is the native NGCP cluster overview from the Sipwise MIBs (Management Information Bases). The second is the legacy ad-hoc information using the Net-SNMP extension OIDs, and detailed information for the node running the SNMP daemon using standard OIDs (Object Identifiers).

#### 13.3.2.1 Sipwise NGCP OIDs

The entire NGCP cluster can be monitored by using the `SIPWISE-NGCP-MIB`, `SIPWISE-NGCP-MONITOR-MIB` and `SIPWISE-NGCP-STATS-MIB`. These OIDs are rooted at the Sipwise NGCP slot `.1.3.6.1.4.1.34274.1.*`.

The MIBs are self-documented, and can be found as part of the `ngcp-snmp-mibs` package (running `dpkg -S SIPWISE*MIB` will list their pathnames). The NGCP SNMP Agent is a part of the `ngcp-snmp-agent` package, which is installed by default and works out-of-the-box as long as the `snmpd` has been properly configured.

The `SIPWISE-NGCP-MIB` acts as the root MIB and provides information about the cluster licensing and layout (which is mostly static data about each node, such as node name, its IP address, its roles, etc.) and information required to access the OIDs from the other MIBs.

The `SIPWISE-NGCP-MONITOR-MIB` provides current monitoring information, global health conditions, the number of provisioned and registered subscribers and devices. It also provides per node information (independently of the number of nodes or their names) on their filesystem, processes, databases, system load, memory, heartbeat status, MTA queues, etc.

The `SIPWISE-NGCP-STATS-MIB` provides accumulated statistics on billing, performance and processed SIP messages.

NOTICE: OIDs under the following trees are not yet implemented: `ngcpMonitorFraud`, `ngcpMonitorPerformance.perfCAPSCurTable` and `ngcpStats`.

---

**Tip**

The NGCP SNMP Agent uses *Redis* and the *collectd* RRD files as data sources. This data is essential for accurate and complete monitoring data in the SNMP OID tree. In addition, the *Redis* database must be available on a shared IP address, so that *collectd* can always write to it. Otherwise, *collectd* may not work correctly or even crash.

---

**13.3.2.2 Legacy OIDs**

---

**Note**

The following OIDs have been superseded by the Sipwise NGCP OIDs, but they are still provided for backwards compatibility.

---

All basic system health variables (such as memory, disk, swap, CPU usage, network statistics, process lists, etc.) for the *mgmt* node can be found in standard OID slots from standard MIBs. For example, memory statistics can be found through the *UCD-SNMP-MIB* in OIDs such as `memTotalSwap.0`, `memAvailSwap.0`, `memTotalReal.0`, `memAvailReal.0`, etc., which translate to numeric OIDs `.1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.4.*`. In fact, *UCD-SNMP-MIB* is the most useful MIB for overall system health checks.

Additionally, there's a list of specially monitored processes, also found through the *UCD-SNMP-MIB*. `UCD-SNMP-MIB::prNames(.1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.2.1.2)` gives the list of monitored processes, `prCount(.1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.2.1.5)` is how many of each process are running and `prErrorFlag(.1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.2.1.100)` gives a 0/1 error indication (with `prErrMsg(.1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.2.1.101)` providing an explanation of any error).

---

**Tip**

Some of these processes are not supposed to be running on the standby node, so you'll see the error flag raised there. A possible solution is to run these SNMP checks against the shared service IP of the cluster.

---

Furthermore, *UCD-SNMP-MIB* provides a list of custom external checks. The names of these can be found under the `UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames(.2)` tree, with `extOutput(.101)` providing the output (one line) from each check and `extResult(.100)` the exit code from each check.

The first of these external checks called `collective_check` provides a combined and overall system health status indicator. It gathers information from both nodes and returns 0 in `extResult.1(.100.1)` if everything is OK and running as it should. If it finds a problem somewhere, but with the system still operational (e.g. a service is stopped on the inactive node), `extResult.1` will return 1 and `extOutput.1` will be set to a string that can be used to diagnose the problem. In case the system is found in a critical and non-operational state, `extResult.1` will return 2, again with an error message set. If you want to keep it really simple, you can just monitor this one OID and raise an alarm if it ever goes to non-zero.

---

**Tip**

The 0/1/2 status codes allow for easy integration with *Nagios*.

---

The remaining external checks simply return statistics on the system, they all return a number in `extOutput` and have `extResult` always set to zero.

---

The full list of such checks is below. All of these checks have three modes: the first returns the statistics from `sp1` (the first node in the `sip:carrier` pair), the second - from `sp2`, and the third - from whichever node is being queried (which is useful when querying the shared service IP). For example, the local SIP response time from `sp1` is in `sip_check_sp1`, from `sp2` - is in `sip_check_sp2`, and from the host itself - is in `sip_check_self`.

The base OID of the Result and Output OIDs is always `.1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.8.1`, so if you read `.100.1`, the full OID is `.1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.8.1.100.1`.

Name in MIB	Result OID	Output OID	Name	Description
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.1	.100.1	.101.1	collective_check	Summarized platform check
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.2	.100.2	.101.2	sip_check_sp1	SIP response time in seconds on sp1
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.3	.100.3	.101.3	sip_check_sp2	SIP response time in seconds on sp2
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.4	.100.4	.101.4	mysql_check_sp1	Average number of MySQL queries per second on sp1
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.5	.100.5	.101.5	mysql_check_sp2	Average number of MySQL queries per second on sp2
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.6	.100.6	.101.6	mysql_replication_check_sp1	MySQL replication delay in seconds on sp1
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.7	.100.7	.101.7	mysql_replication_check_sp2	MySQL replication delay in seconds on sp2
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.8	.100.8	.101.8	mpt_check_sp1	RAID status on sp1
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.9	.100.9	.101.9	mpt_check_sp2	RAID status on sp2
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.10	.100.10	.101.10	exim_queue_check_sp1	Number of mails undelivered in MTA queue on sp1
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.11	.100.11	.101.11	exim_queue_check_sp2	Number of mails undelivered in MTA queue on sp2
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.12	.100.12	.101.12	provisioned_subscribers_number_sp1	Number of subscribers provisioned on sp1
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.13	.100.13	.101.13	provisioned_subscribers_number_sp2	Number of subscribers provisioned on sp2
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.14	.100.14	.101.14	kam_dialog_active_checks_sp1	Number of active calls on sp1

Name in MIB	Result OID	Output OID	Name	Description
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.15	.100.15	.101.15	kam_dialog_active_checks_sp2	Number of active calls on sp2
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.16	.100.16	.101.16	kam_dialog_early_checks_sp1	Number of calls in Early Media state on sp1
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.17	.100.17	.101.17	kam_dialog_early_checks_sp2	Number of calls in Early Media state on sp2
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.18	.100.18	.101.18	kam_dialog_type_local_checks_sp1	Number of active calls local on sp1
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.19	.100.19	.101.19	kam_dialog_type_local_checks_sp2	Number of active calls local on sp2
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.20	.100.20	.101.20	kam_dialog_type_relay_checks_sp1	Number of active calls routed via peers on sp1
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.21	.100.21	.101.21	kam_dialog_type_relay_checks_sp2	Number of active calls routed via peers on sp2
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.22	.100.22	.101.22	kam_dialog_type_incoming_checks_sp1	Number of incoming calls on sp1
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.23	.100.23	.101.23	kam_dialog_type_incoming_checks_sp2	Number of incoming calls on sp2
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.24	.100.24	.101.24	kam_dialog_type_outgoing_checks_sp1	Number of outgoing calls on sp1
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.25	.100.25	.101.25	kam_dialog_type_outgoing_checks_sp2	Number of outgoing calls on sp2
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.26	.100.26	.101.26	kam_usrloc_regusers_checks_sp1	Number of subscribers with at least one active registration on sp1
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.27	.100.27	.101.27	kam_usrloc_regusers_checks_sp2	Number of subscribers with at least one active registration on sp2
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.28	.100.28	.101.28	kam_usrloc_regdevices_checks_sp1	Total number of registered end devices on sp1
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.29	.100.29	.101.29	kam_usrloc_regdevices_checks_sp2	Total number of registered end devices on sp2
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.30	.100.30	.101.30	mysql_replication_discrepancies	Number of MySQL tables not in sync between sp1 and sp2



Name in MIB	Result OID	Output OID	Name	Description
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.31	.100.31	.101.31	mysql_replication_discrepancy	Number of MySQL tables not in sync between sp1 and sp2
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.32	.100.32	.101.32	sip_check_self	Summarized platform check on active node
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.33	.100.33	.101.33	mysql_check_self	Average number of MySQL queries per second on active node
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.34	.100.34	.101.34	mysql_replication_check	MySQL replication delay in seconds on active node
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.35	.100.35	.101.35	mpt_check_self	RAID status on active node
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.36	.100.36	.101.36	exim_queue_check_self	Number of mails undelivered in MTA queue on active node
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.37	.100.37	.101.37	provisioned_subscribers	Number of subscribers provisioned on active node
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.44	.100.44	.101.44	kam_usrloc_regusers_check_self	Number of subscribers with at least one active registration on active node
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.45	.100.45	.101.45	kam_usrloc_regdevices	Total number of registered end devices on active node
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.46	.100.46	.101.46	mysql_replication_discrepancy	Number of MySQL tables not in sync between sp1 and sp2
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.47	.100.47	.101.47	kam_dialog_type_local	Number of active local calls on active proxy X
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.48	.100.48	.101.48	kam_dialog_type_relay	Number of active calls routed via peers on active proxy X
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.49	.100.49	.101.49	kam_dialog_type_incoming	Number of incoming calls on active proxy X

Name in MIB	Result OID	Output OID	Name	Description
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.50	.100.50	.101.50	kam_dialog_type_outgoing	Number of outgoing calls on active proxy X
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.51	.100.51	.101.51	kam_dialog_active_checks	Number of active calls on active proxy X
UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames.52	.100.52	.101.52	kam_dialog_early_checks	Number of calls in Early Media state on active proxy X

**Tip**

Some of the checks can be disabled (most are enabled by default) through the `config.yml` file, and those checks will then return an error message or an empty string in their `extOutput`. Enable those checks in the config file to get their output in the SNMP OID tree. The enable/disable flags can be found in the `checktools` section.

## 14 Extensions and Additional Modules

### 14.1 Cloud PBX

The sip:carrier comes with a commercial Cloud PBX module to provide B2B features for small and medium sized enterprises. The following chapters describe the configuration of the PBX features.

#### 14.1.1 Configuring the Device Management

The *Device Management* is used by admins and resellers to define the list of device models, firmwares and configurations available for end customer usage. These settings are pre-configured for the default reseller up-front by Sipwise and have to be set up for every reseller separately, so a reseller can choose the devices he'd like to serve and potentially tweak the configuration for them. [List of available pre-configured devices](#) Section 14.1.12.

End customers choose from a list of *Device Profiles*, which are defined by a specific *Device Model*, a list of *Device Firmwares* and a *Device Configuration*. The following sections describe the setup of these components.

To do so, go to *Settings*→*Device Management*.

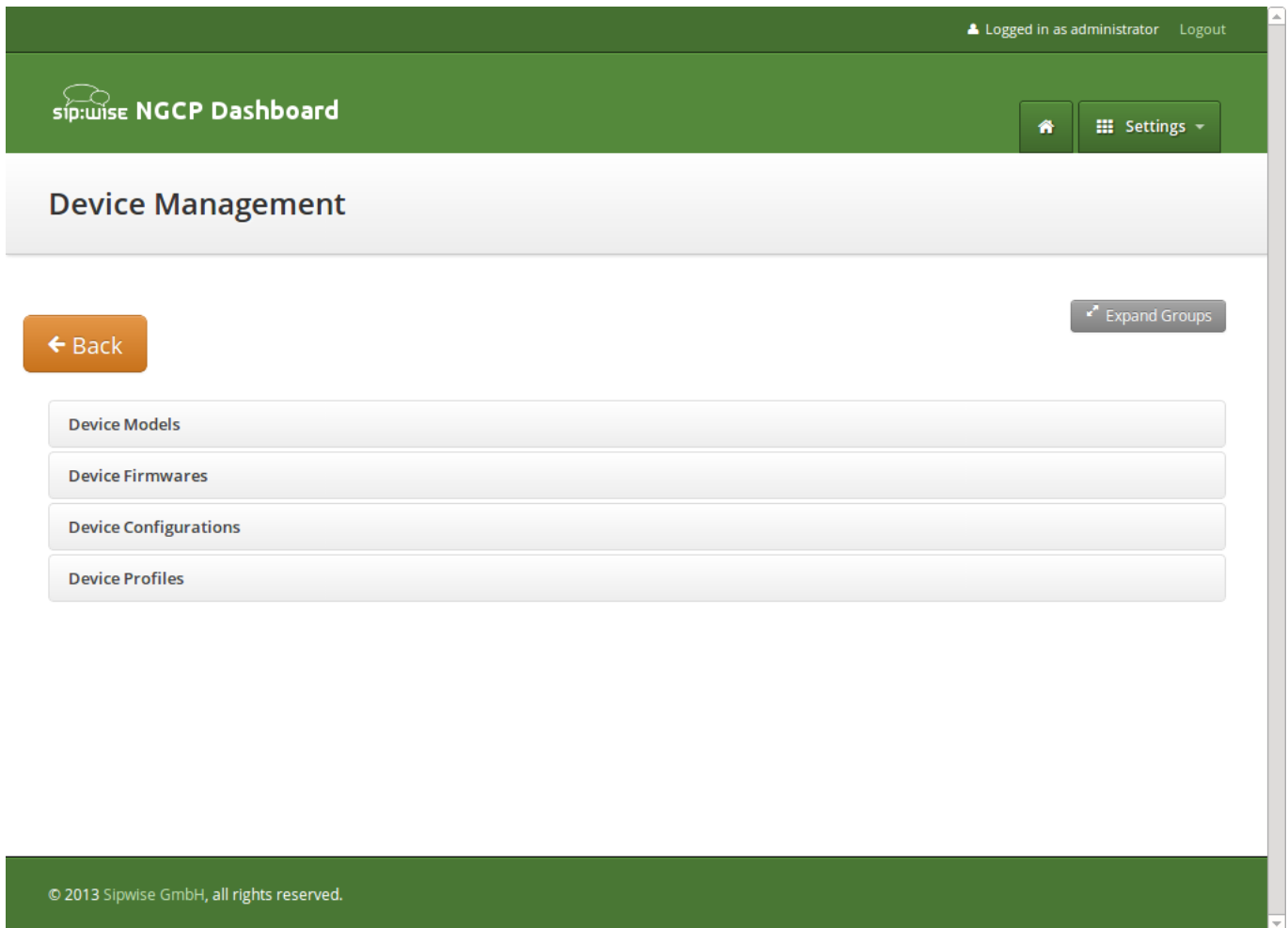


Figure 59: Device Management

#### 14.1.1.1 Setting up Device Models

A *Device Model* defines a specific hardware device, like the vendor, model name, the number of keys and their capabilities. For example a Cisco SPA504G has 4 keys, which can be used for private lines, shared lines (SLA) and busy lamp field (BLF). If you have an additional attendant console, you get 32 more buttons, which can only do BLF.

In this example, we will create a Cisco SPA504G with an additional Attendant Console.

Expand the *Device Models* row and click *Create Device Model*.

First, you have to select the reseller this device model belongs to, and define the vendor and model name.

Reseller

#	Name	Contract #	Status
1	default	1	active
3	Demo Reseller	3	active

Showing 1 to 2 of 2 entries

2 Vendor Cisco

3 Model SPA504G + 1 Attendant Console

Line/Key Range Name Phone Keys

Number of Lines/Keys 4

Save

Figure 60: Create Device Model Part 1

In the *Line/Key Range* section, you can define the first set of keys, which we will label `Phone Keys`. The name is important, because it is referenced in the configuration file template, which is described in the following sections. The SPA504G internal phone keys support private lines (where the customer can assign a normal subscriber, which is used to place and receive standard phone calls), shared lines (where the customer can assign a subscriber which is shared across multiple people) and busy lamp field (where the customer can assign other subscribers to be monitored when they get a call, and which also acts as speed dial button to the subscriber assigned for BLF), so we enable all 3 of them.

The screenshot shows the 'Create Device Model' modal in the NGCP Dashboard. The form is for a Cisco SPA504G + 1 Attendant Console. The 'Line/Key Range' is set to 4, and the 'Name' is 'Phone Keys'. The 'Number of Lines/Keys' is set to 4. The 'Supports Private Line' and 'Supports Shared Line' options are unchecked, while 'Supports Busy Lamp Field' is checked. The form has 'Remove' and 'Save' buttons.

Field	Value
Vendor	Cisco
Model	SPA504G + 1 Attendant Console
Line/Key Range	4
Name	Phone Keys
Number of Lines/Keys	4
Supports Private Line	<input type="checkbox"/>
Supports Shared Line	<input type="checkbox"/>
Supports Busy Lamp Field	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Figure 61: Create Device Model Part 2

In order to also configure the attendant console, press the *Add another Line/Key Range* button to specify the attendant console keys.

Again provide a name for this range, which will be `Attendant Console 1` to match our configuration defined later. There are 32 buttons on the attendant console, so set the number accordingly. Those 32 buttons only support BLF, so make sure to **uncheck** the private and shared line options, and only check the `busy lamp field` option.

9 Name Attendant Console 1

10 Number of Lines/Keys 32

11 Supports Private Line ☐

Supports Shared Line ☐

12 Supports Busy Lamp Field ☒

Remove

Add another Line/Key Range

Save

Figure 62: Create Device Model Part 3

The last two settings to configure are the *Front Image* and *MAC Address Image* fields. Upload a picture of the phone here in the first field, which is shown to the customer for him to recognize easily how the phone looks like. The MAC image is used to tell the customer where he can read the MAC address from. This could be a picture of the back of the phone with the label where the MAC is printed, or an instruction image how to get the MAC from the phone menu.

The rest of the fields are left at their default values, which are set to work with Cisco SPAs. Their meaning is as follows:

- *Bootstrap Sync URI*: If a stock phone is plugged in for the first time, it needs to be provisioned somehow to let it know where to fetch its configuration file from. Since the stock phone doesn't know about your server, you have to define an HTTP URI here, where the customer is connected with his web browser to set the according field.
- *Bootstrap Sync HTTP Method*: This setting defines whether an HTTP GET or POST is sent to the Sync URI.
- *Bootstrap Sync Params*: This setting defines the parameters appended to the Sync URI in case of a GET, or posted in the request body in case of POST, when the customer presses the *Sync* button later on.

Finally press *Save* to create the new device model.

The screenshot shows the 'Create Device Model' modal in the NGCP Dashboard. The modal has a green header with a close button. Below the header, there's a 'Remove' button and an 'Add another Line/Key Range' button. The main form area contains several fields:

- Front Image:** A text input with 'SPA504-front.jpg' and a 'Choose File' button. This field is highlighted with a red box and labeled 13.
- MAC Address Image:** A text input with 'SPA504-back.jpg' and a 'Choose File' button. This field is highlighted with a red box and labeled 14.
- Bootstrap Sync URI:** A text input with 'http://[% client.ip %]/admin/resync'.
- Bootstrap Sync HTTP Method:** A dropdown menu with 'GET' selected.
- Bootstrap Sync Parameters:** A text input with '[% server.uri %]/\$MA'.

At the bottom right of the modal, there is a 'Save' button highlighted with a red box and labeled 15.

Figure 63: Create Device Model Part 4

#### 14.1.1.2 Uploading Device Firmwares

A device model can optionally have one or more device firmware(s). Some devices like the Cisco SPA series don't support direct firmware updates from an arbitrary to the latest one, but need to go over specific firmware steps. In the device configuration discussed next, you can return the *next* supported firmware version, if the phone passes the current version in the firmware URL.

Since a stock phone purchased from any shop can have an arbitrary firmware version, we need to upload all firmwares needed to get from any old one to the latest one. In case of the Cisco SPA3x/SPA5x series, that would be the following versions, if the phone starts off with version 7.4.x:

- spa50x-30x-7-5-1a.bin
- spa50x-30x-7-5-2b.bin
- spa50x-30x-7-5-5.bin

So to get an SPA504G with a firmware version 7.4.x to the latest version 7.5.5, we need to upload each firmware file as follows.



Open the *Device Firmware* row in the *Device Management* section and press *Upload Device Firmware*.

Select the device model we're going to upload the firmware for, then specify the firmware version and choose the firmware file, then press *Save*.

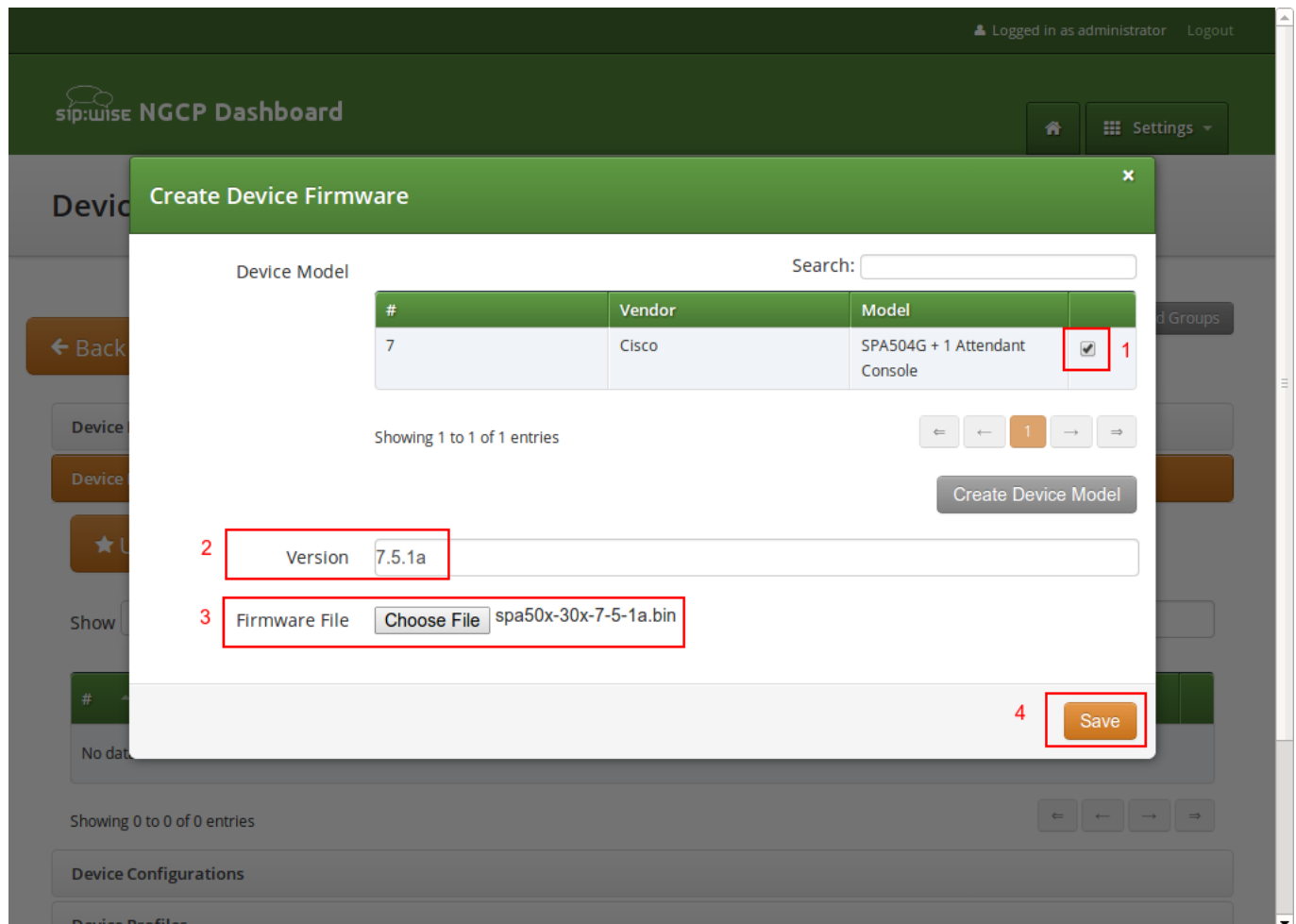


Figure 64: Upload Device Firmware

Repeat this step for every firmware in the list above (and any new firmware you want to support when it's available).

#### 14.1.1.3 Creating Device Configurations

Each customer device needs a configuration file, which defines the URL to perform firmware updates, and most importantly, which defines the subscribers and features configured on each of the lines and keys. Since these settings are different for each physical phone at all the customers, the Cloud PBX module provides a template system to specify the configurations. That way, template variables can be used in the generic configuration, which are filled in by the system individually when a physical device fetches its configuration file.

To upload a configuration template, open the *Device Configuration* row and press *Create Device Configuration*.

Select the device model and specify a version number for this configuration (it is only for your reference to keep track of different

versions). For Cisco SPA phones, keep the *Content Type* field to `text/xml`, since the configuration content will be served to the phone as XML file.

For devices other than the Cisco SPA, you might set `text/plain` if the configuration file is plain text, or `application/octet-stream` if the configuration is compiled into some binary form.

Finally paste the configuration template into the *Content* area and press *Save*.

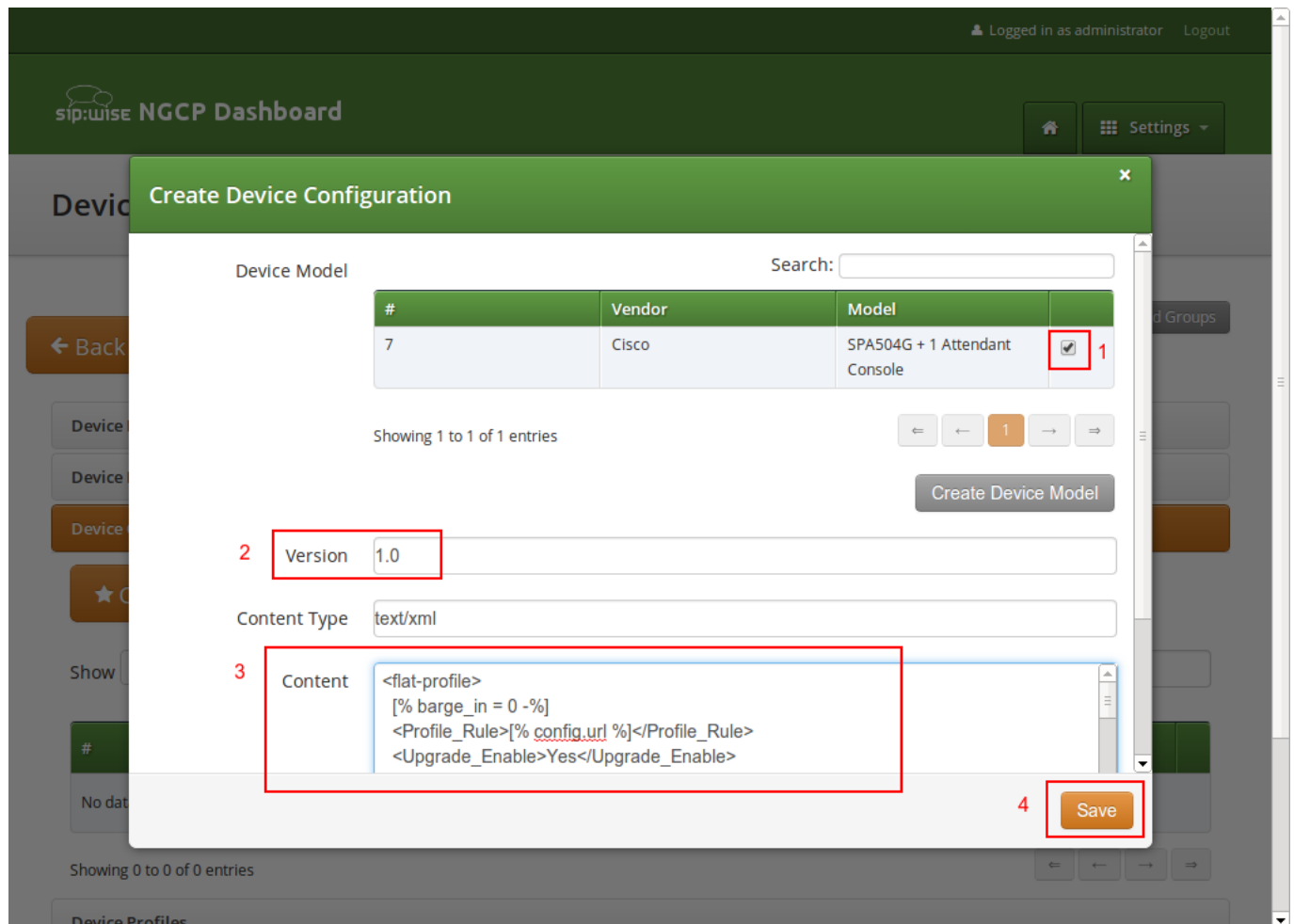


Figure 65: Upload Device Configuration

The templates for certified device models are provided by Sipwise, but you can also write your own. The following variables can be used in the template:

- `config.url`: The URL to the config file, including the device identifier (e.g. `http://sip.example.org:1444/device/autoprov/config/001122334455`).
- `firmware.maxversion`: The latest firmware version available on the system for the specific device.
- `firmware.baseurl`: The base URL to download firmwares (e.g. `http://sip.example.org:1444/device/autoprov/firmware`). To fetch the next newer firmware for a Cisco SPA, you can use the template line `[% firmware.baseurl %]/$MA/from/$SWVER/next`.

- `phone.stationname`: The name of the station (physical device) the customer specifies for this phone. Can be used to show on the display of the phone.
- `phone.lineranges`: An array of lines/keys as specified for the device model. Each entry in the array has the following keys:
  - `name`: The name of the line/key range as specified in the *Device Model* section (e.g. `Phone Keys`).
  - `num_lines`: The number of lines/keys in the line range (e.g. 4 in our `Phone Keys` example, or 32 in our `Attendant Console 1` example).
  - `lines`: An array of lines (e.g. subscriber definitions) for this line range. Each entry in the array has the following keys:
    - \* `keynum`: The index of the key in the line range, starting from 0 (e.g. `keynum` will be 3 for the 4th key of our `Phone Keys` range).
    - \* `rangenum`: The index of the line range, starting from 0. The order of line ranges is as you have specified them (e.g. `Phone Keys` was specified first, so it gets `rangenum 0`, `Auto Attendant 1` gets `rangenum 1`).
    - \* `type`: The type of the line/key, on of `private`, `shared` or `blf`.
    - \* `username`: The SIP username of the line.
    - \* `domain`: The SIP domain of the line.
    - \* `password`: The SIP password of the line.
    - \* `displayname`: The SIP Display Name of the line.

Within the configuration template itself, you can use any Template Toolkit directive and any own variables you like (just make sure to not override any of the ones specified above). For documentation on the syntax, please refer to the [Template Toolkit Manual](#).

---

#### Tip

In order to change the provisioning base IP and port (default 1444), you have to access `/etc/ngcp-config/config.yml` and change the value `host` and `port` under the `autoprov.server` section.

---

#### 14.1.1.4 Creating Device Profiles

When the customer configures his own device, he doesn't select a *Device Model* directly, but a *Device Profile*. A device profile specifies which model is going to be used with which configuration version. This allows the operator to create new configuration files and assign them to a profile, while still keeping older configuration files for reference or roll-back scenarios. It also makes it possible to test new firmwares by creating a test device model with the new firmware and a specific configuration, without impacting any existing customer devices.

To create a *Device Profile* for our phone, open the *Device Profile* row in the *Device Management* section and press *Create Device Profile*.

Select the device configuration (which implicitly identifies a device model) and specify a *Profile Name*. This name is what the customer sees when he is selecting a device he wants to provision, so pick a descriptive name which clearly identifies a device. Press *Save* to create the profile.

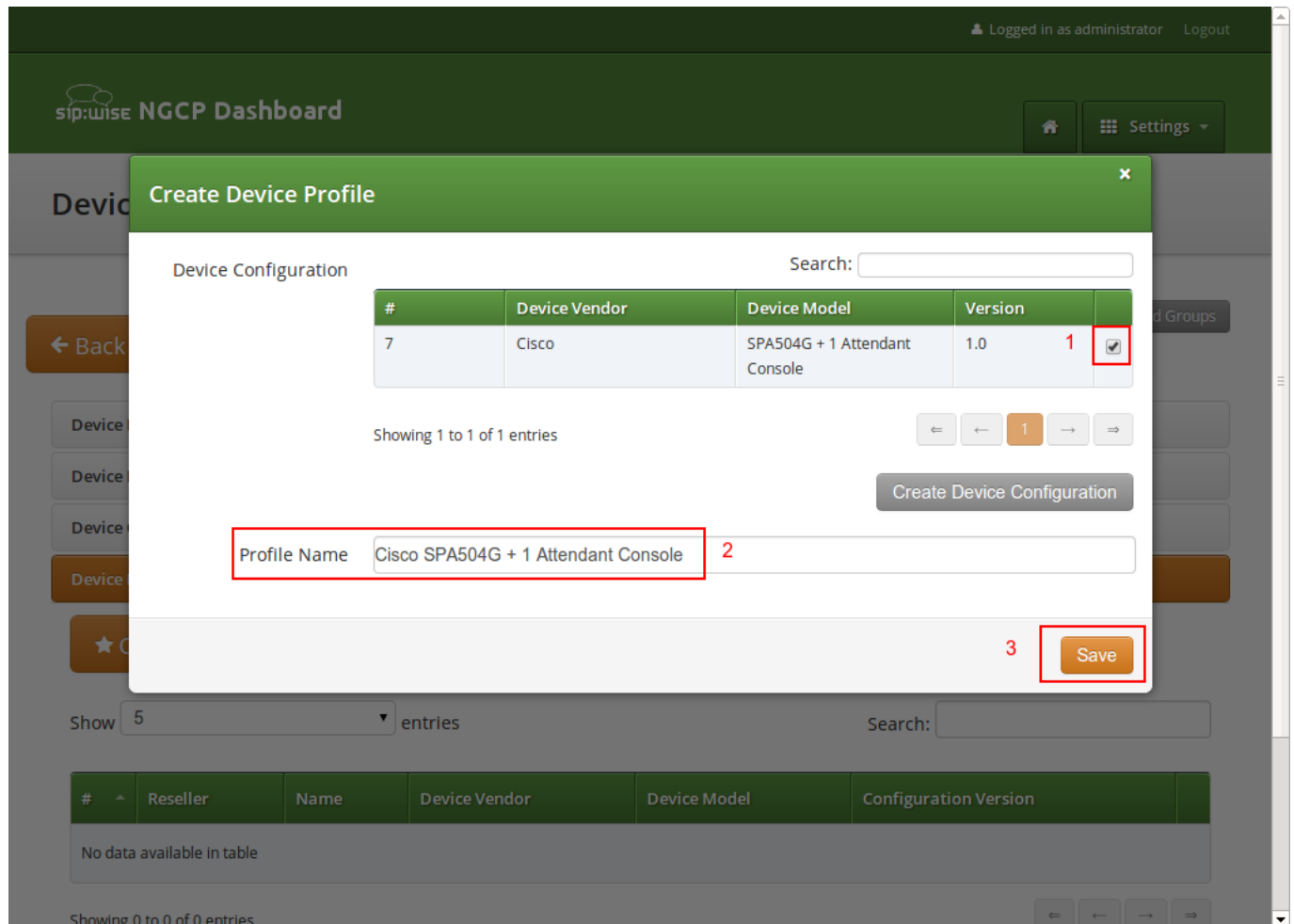


Figure 66: Create Device Profile

Repeat the steps as needed for every device you want to make available to customers.

#### 14.1.2 Preparing PBX Rewrite Rules

In a PBX environment, the dial-plans usually looks different than for normal SIP subscribers. PBX subscribers should be able to directly dial internal extensions (e.g. 100) instead of the full number to reach another PBX subscriber in the same PBX segment. Therefore, we need to define specific *Rewrite Rules* to make this work.

The PBX dial plans are different from country to country. In the Central European area, you can directly dial an extension (e.g. 100), and if you want to dial an international number like 0049 1 23456, you have to dial a break-out digit first (e.g. 0), so the number to be dialed is 0 0049 1 23456. Other countries are used to other break-out codes (e.g. 9), which then results in 9 0049 1 23456. If you dial a national number like 01 23456, then the number to actually be dialled is 9 01 23456.

Since all numbers must be normalized to E.164 format via inbound rewrite rules, the rules need to be set up accordingly.

Let's assume that the break-out code for the example customers created below is 0, so we have to create a *Rewrite Rule Set* with the following rules.

### 14.1.2.1 Inbound Rewrite Rules for Caller

- **Match Pattern:** `^([1-9][0-9]+)$`
- **Replacement Pattern:** `${caller_cloud_pbx_base_cli}\1`
- **Description:** extension to e164
- **Direction:** Inbound
- **Field:** Caller

Logged in as administrator Logout

**NGCP Dashboard**

Home Settings

## Rewrite Rules for pbx-at

← Back ★ Create Rewrite Rule Expand Groups

Rewrite rule successfully created

	Match Pattern	Replacement Pattern	Description
↑ ↓	<code>^([1-9][0-9]+)\$</code>	<code>\${caller_cloud_pbx_base_cli}\1</code>	extension to e164

Inbound Rewrite Rules for Callee

Outbound Rewrite Rules for Caller

Outbound Rewrite Rules for Callee

Figure 67: Inbound Rewrite Rule for Caller

### 14.1.2.2 Inbound Rewrite Rules for Callee

These rules are the most important ones, as they define which number formats the PBX subscribers can dial. For the break-out code of 0, the following rules are necessary e.g. for German dialplans to allow pbx internal extension dialing, local area calls without area codes, national calls with area code, and international calls with country codes.

PBX INTERNAL EXTENSION DIALIN

- **Match Pattern:** `^([1-9][0-9]+)$`
- **Replacement Pattern:** `${caller_cloud_pbx_base_cli}\1`
- **Description:** extension to e164
- **Direction:** Inbound
- **Field:** Callee

#### LOCAL DIALING WITHOUT AREA CODE (USE BREAK-OUT CODE 0)

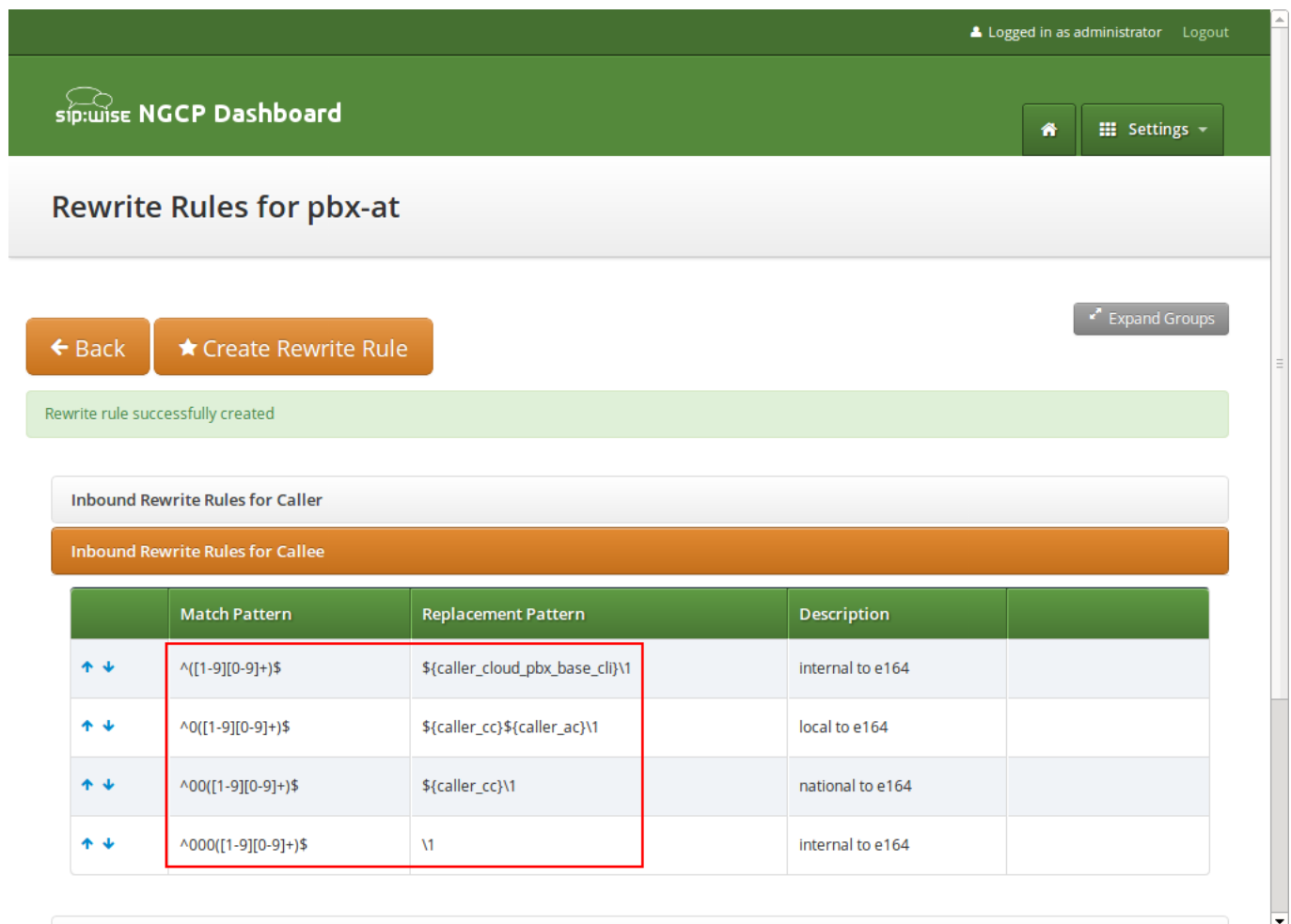
- **Match Pattern:** `^0([1-9][0-9]+)$`
- **Replacement Pattern:** `${caller_cc}${caller_ac}\1`
- **Description:** local to e164
- **Direction:** Inbound
- **Field:** Callee

#### NATIONAL DIALING (USE BREAK-OUT CODE 0 AND PREFIX AREA CODE BY 0)

- **Match Pattern:** `^00([1-9][0-9]+)$`
- **Replacement Pattern:** `${caller_cc}\1`
- **Description:** national to e164
- **Direction:** Inbound
- **Field:** Callee

#### INTERNATIONAL DIALING (USE BREAK-OUT CODE 0 AND PREFIX COUNTRY CODE BY 00)

- **Match Pattern:** `^000([1-9][0-9]+)$`
- **Replacement Pattern:** `\1`
- **Description:** international to e164
- **Direction:** Inbound
- **Field:** Callee



Logged in as administrator Logout

NGCP Dashboard

Settings

## Rewrite Rules for pbx-at

Expand Groups

Back Create Rewrite Rule

Rewrite rule successfully created

Inbound Rewrite Rules for Caller

Inbound Rewrite Rules for Callee

	Match Pattern	Replacement Pattern	Description	
↑ ↓	^([1-9][0-9]+)\$	\${caller_cloud_pbx_base_cli}\1	internal to e164	
↑ ↓	^0([1-9][0-9]+)\$	\${caller_cc}\${caller_ac}\1	local to e164	
↑ ↓	^00([1-9][0-9]+)\$	\${caller_cc}\1	national to e164	
↑ ↓	^000([1-9][0-9]+)\$	\1	internal to e164	

Figure 68: Inbound Rewrite Rule for Callee

### 14.1.2.3 Outbound Rewrite Rules for Caller

When a call goes to a PBX subscriber, it needs to be normalized in a way that it's call-back-able, which means that it needs to have the break-out code prefixed. We create a rule to show the calling number in international format including the break-out code. For PBX-internal calls, the caller name will be shown (this is handled by implicitly setting domain preferences accordingly, so you don't have to worry about that in rewrite rules).

ADDING A BREAK-OUT CODE (USE BREAK-OUT CODE 0 AND PREFIX COUNTRY CODE BY 00)

- **Match Pattern:** `^([1-9][0-9]+)$`
- **Replacement Pattern:** `000\1`
- **Description:** e164 to full international
- **Direction:** Outbound
- **Field:** Caller

## DISPLAYING THE EXTENSION IN THE CALLER NUMBER FOR PBX-INTERNAL CALLS

- **Match Pattern:** `^@{callee_cloud_pbx_account_cli_list}$`
- **Replacement Pattern:** `${caller_cloud_pbx_ext}`
- **Description:** e164 to full international
- **Direction:** Outbound
- **Field:** Caller

The screenshot shows the 'sip:wise NGCP Dashboard' with a navigation bar containing 'Documentation', 'Monitoring & Statistics', 'Tools', and 'Settings'. The main heading is 'Rewrite Rules for pbx-at'. Below this, there are buttons for 'Back' and 'Create Rewrite Rule', and an 'Expand Groups' button. The dashboard is divided into three sections: 'Inbound Rewrite Rules for Caller', 'Inbound Rewrite Rules for Callee', and 'Outbound Rewrite Rules for Caller'. The 'Outbound Rewrite Rules for Caller' section is highlighted in orange and contains a table with two rules.

	Match Pattern	Replacement Pattern	Description	Enabled	
↑ ↓	<code>^@{callee_cloud_pbx_account_cli_list}\$</code>	<code>\${caller_cloud_pbx_ext}</code>	Intra-PBX to extension	yes	
↑ ↓	<code>^[[1-9]][0-9]+\$</code>	<code>000\1</code>	e164 to full international	yes	

Figure 69: Outbound Rewrite Rule for Caller

Create a new *Rewrite Rule Set* for each dial plan you'd like to support. You can later assign it to customer domains and even to subscribers, if a specific subscriber of a PBX customer would like to have his own dial plan.

### 14.1.3 Creating Customers and Pilot Subscribers

As with a normal SIP Account, you have to create a *Customer* contract per customer, and one *Subscriber*, which the customer can use to log into the web interface and manage his PBX environment.

#### 14.1.3.1 Creating a PBX Customer

Go to *Settings*→*Customers* and click *Create Customer*. We need a *Contact* for the customer, so press *Create Contact*.



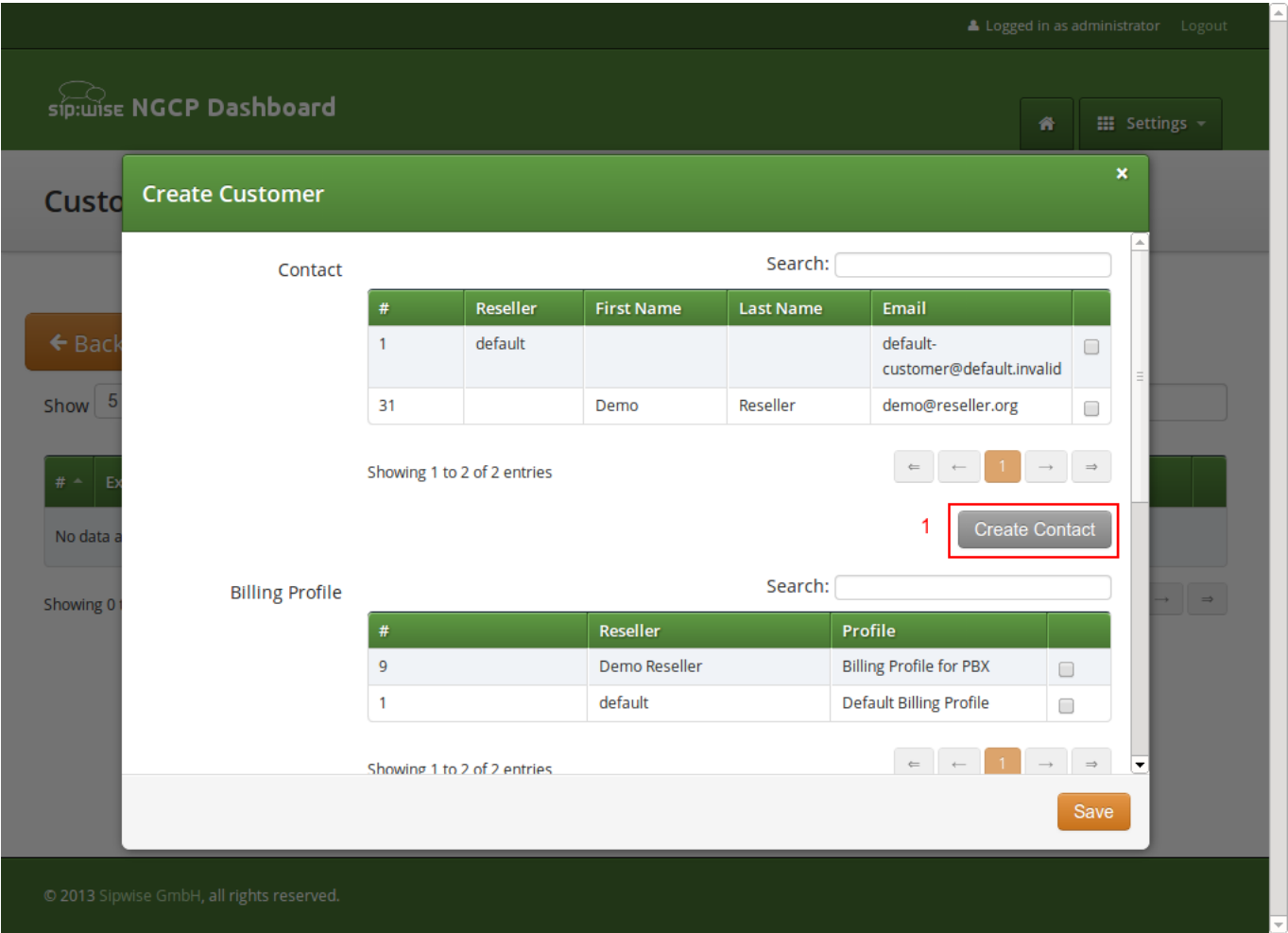


Figure 70: Create PBX Customer Part 1

Fill in the desired fields (you need to provide at least the *Email Address*) and press *Save*.

Logged in as administrator Logout

sip:wise NGCP Dashboard

Settings

### Create Contact

Reseller Search:

#	Name	Contract #	Status	
1	default	1	active	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	Demo Reseller	37	active	1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Showing 1 to 2 of 2 entries

Create Reseller

2 First Name John

3 Last Name Doe

4 Email john.doe@example.org

Company

5 Save

© 2013 Sipwise GmbH, all rights reserved.

Figure 71: Create PBX Customer Contact

The new *Contact* will be automatically selected now. Also select a *Billing Profile* you want to use for this customer. If you don't have one defined yet, press *Create Billing Profile*, otherwise select the one you want to use.

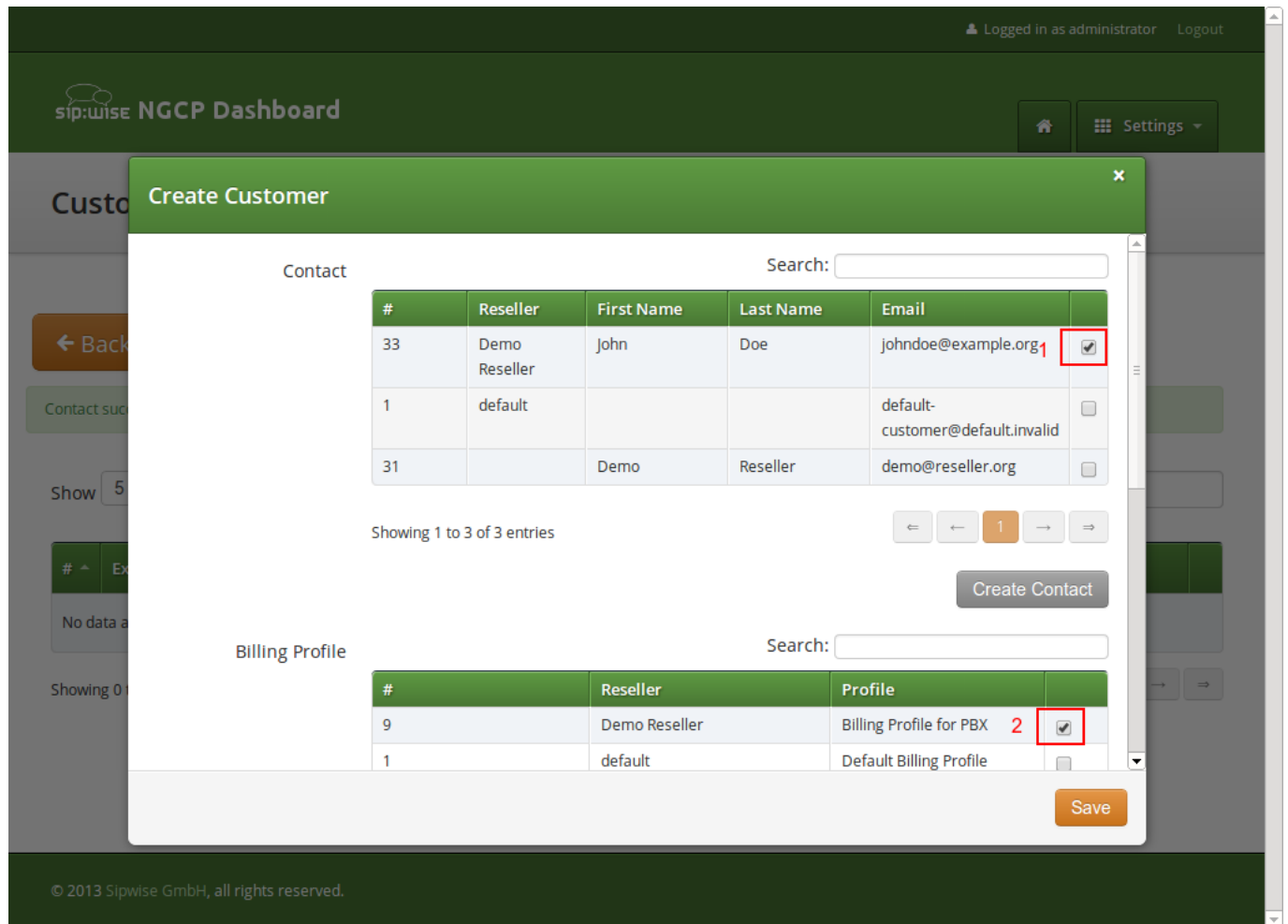


Figure 72: Create PBX Customer Part 2

Next, you need to select the *Product* for the PBX customer. Since it's going to be a PBX customer, select the product *Cloud PBX Account*.

Since PBX customers are supposed to manage their subscribers by themselves, they are able to create them via the web interface. To set an upper limit of subscribers a customer can create, define the value in the *Max Subscribers* field.



#### Important

As you will see later, both PBX subscribers and PBX groups are normal subscribers, so the value defined here limits the overall amount of subscribers **and** groups. A customer can create an unlimited amount of subscribers if you leave this field empty.

Press **Save** to create the customer.

NGCP Dashboard

Create Customer

Showing 1 to 2 of 2 entries

Create Billing Profile

Product

Search:

#	Name	
4	Basic SIP Account	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	Cloud PBX Account	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Showing 1 to 2 of 2 entries

Max Subscribers 20

Status active

External #

Save

© 2013 Sipwise GmbH, all rights reserved.

Figure 73: Create PBX Customer Part 3

#### 14.1.3.2 Creating a PBX Pilot Subscriber

Once the customer is created, you need to create at least one *Subscriber* for the customer, so he can log into the web interface and manage the rest by himself.

Click the *Details* button on the newly created customer to enter the detailed view.

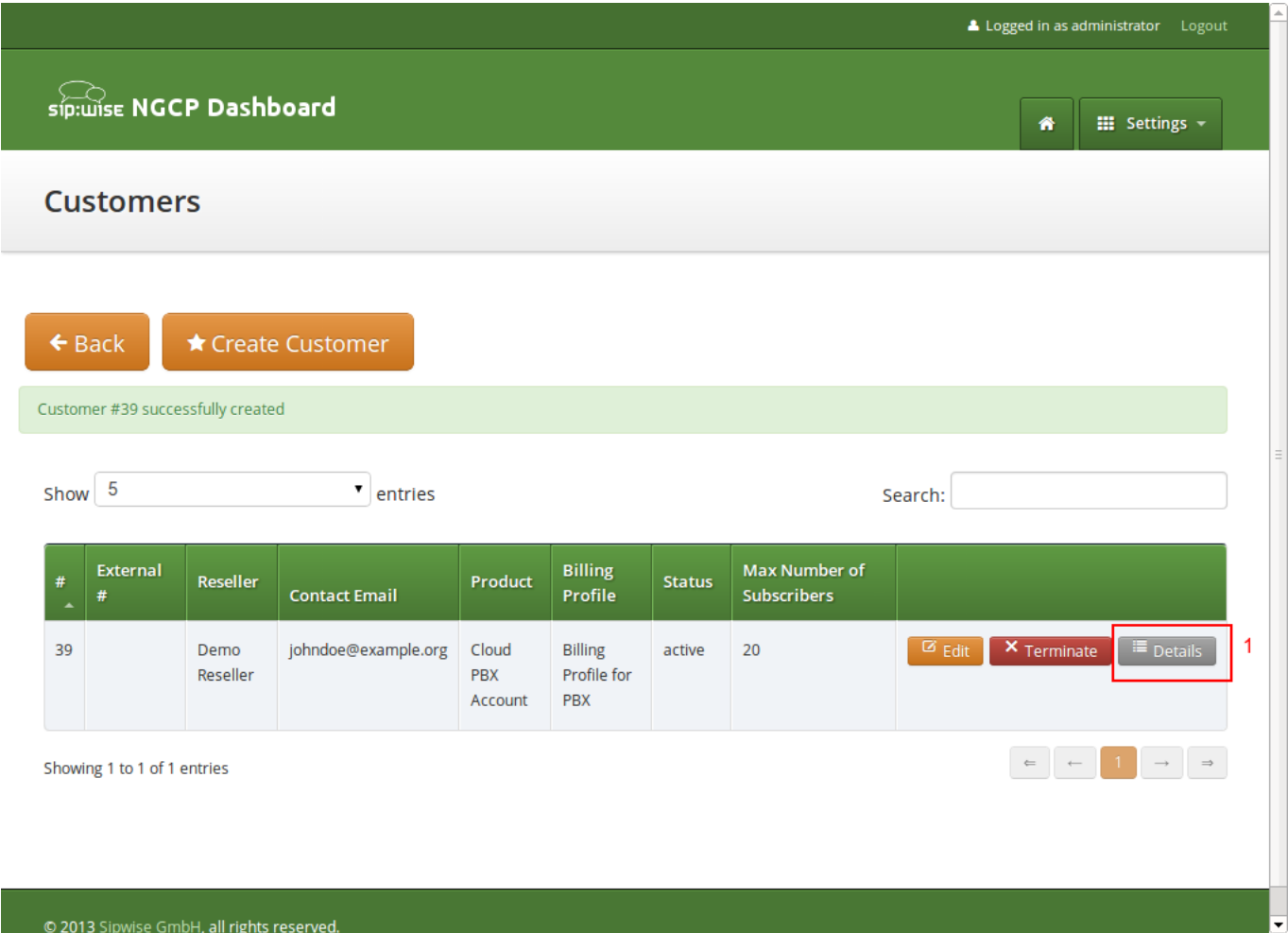


Figure 74: Go to Customer Details

To create the subscriber, open the *Subscribers* row and click *Create Subscriber*.

Logged in as administrator Logout

sip:wise NGCP Dashboard

Customer Details for #39 (Cloud PBX Account)

Back Edit Expand Groups

Reseller

Contact Details

Billing Profiles

1 Subscribers

0 of maximum 20 subscribers (including PBX groups) created

2 ★ Create Subscriber

SIP URI	Primary Number	PBX Group	Registered Devices
---------	----------------	-----------	--------------------

Sound Sets

Contract Balance

Figure 75: Go to Create Subscriber

For your pilot subscriber, you need a SIP domain, a pilot number (the main number of the customer PBX), the web credentials for the customer to log into the web interfaces, and the SIP credentials to authenticate via a SIP device.

### Important



In a PBX environment, customers can create their own subscribers. As a consequence, each PBX customer should have its own SIP domain, in order to not collide with subscribers created by other customers. This is important because two customers are highly likely to create a subscriber (or group, which is also just a subscriber) called *office*. If they are in the same SIP domain, they'd both have the SIP URI `office@pbx.example.org`, which is not allowed, and the an end customer will probably not understand why `office@pbx.example.org` is already taken, because he (for obvious reasons, as it belongs to a different customer) will not see this subscriber in his subscribers list.

**Tip**

To handle one domain per customer, you should create a wild-card entry into your DNS server like `*.pbx.example.org`, which points to the IP address of `pbx.example.org`, so you can define SIP domains like `customer1.pbx.example.org` or `customer2.pbx.example.org` without having to create a new DNS entry for each of them. For proper secure access to the web interface and to the SIP and XMPP services, you should also obtain a SSL wild-card certificate for `*.pbx.example.org` to avoid certification warnings on customers' web browsers and SIP/XMPP clients.

So to create a new domain for the customer, click *Create Domain*.

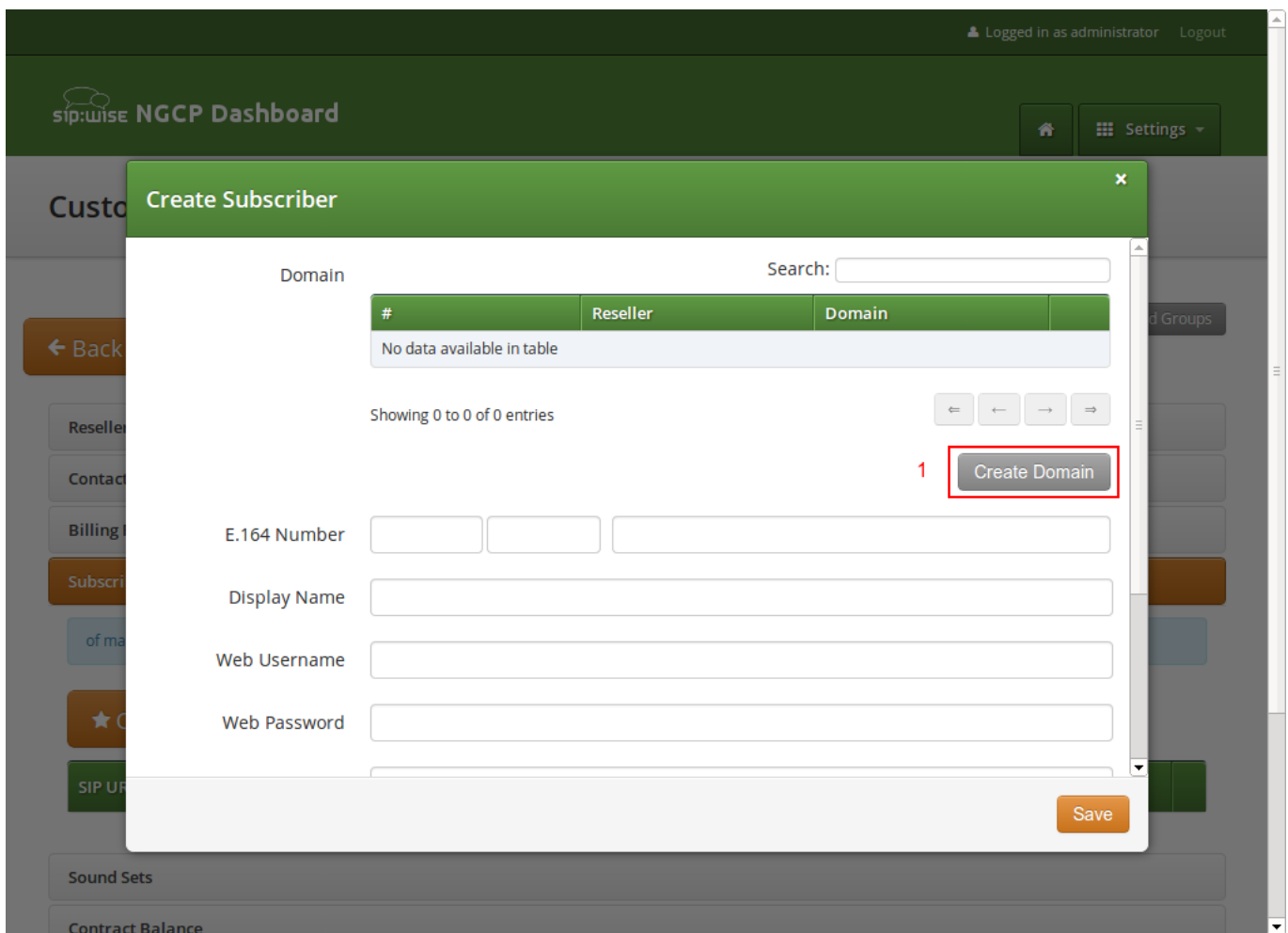


Figure 76: Go to Create Customer Domain

Specify the domain you want to create, and select the PBX *Rewrite Rule Set* which you created in Section 14.1.2, then click *Save*.

The screenshot shows the NGCP Dashboard interface. At the top, it says 'sip:wise NGCP Dashboard' and 'Logged in as administrator'. A 'Create Domain' modal is open, containing two input fields. The first field, labeled 'SIP Domain', contains the text 'customer1.pbx.example.org'. The second field, labeled 'Rewrite Rule Set', contains a dropdown menu with 'pbx-dialplan' selected. A 'Save' button is located at the bottom right of the modal. Red boxes and numbers 1, 2, and 3 are used to highlight the first field, the second field, and the Save button respectively.

Figure 77: Create Customer Domain

Finish the subscriber creation by providing an E.164 number, which is going to be the base number for all other subscribers within this customer, the web username and password for the pilot subscriber to log into the web interface, and the sip username and password for a SIP device to connect to the PBX.

The parameters are as follows:

- **Domain:** The domain in which to create the pilot subscriber. *Each customer should get his own domain as described above to not collide with SIP usernames between customers.*
- **E.164 Number:** The primary number of the PBX. Calls to this number are routed to the pilot subscriber, and each subsequent subscriber created for this customer will use this number as its base number, suffixed by an individual extension. You can later assign alias numbers also for DID support.
- **Display Name:** This field is used on phones to identify subscribers by their real names instead of their number or extension. On outbound calls, the display name is signalled in the Display-Field of the From header, and it's used as a name in the XMPP contact lists.
- **Web Username:** The username for the subscriber to log into the customer self-care web interface. This is optional, if you don't



want a subscriber to have access to the web interface.

- **Web Password:** The password for the subscriber to log into the customer self-care web interface.
- **SIP Username:** The username for the subscriber to authenticate on the SIP and XMPP service. It is automatically used for devices, which are auto-provisioned via the *Device Management*, or can be used manually by subscribers to sign into the SIP and XMPP service with any arbitrary clients.
- **SIP Password:** The password for the subscriber to authenticate on the SIP and XMPP service.

Logged in as administrator Logout

sip:wise NGCP Dashboard

Settings

### Create Subscriber

Domain Search:

#	Reseller	Domain	
21	Demo Reseller	customer1.pbx.example.org	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries

Create Domain

2 E.164 Number 43 1 9999

3 Display Name Administrator

4 Web Username administrator

5 Web Password adminpassword

Save

Figure 78: Create Pilot Subscriber Part 1

**Create Subscriber**

E.164 Number

Display Name

Web Username

Web Password

1 SIP Username

2 SIP Password

Status

External ID

3

Figure 79: Create Pilot Subscriber Part 2

Once the subscriber is created, he can log into the customer self-care interface at <https://<your-ip>/login/subscriber> and manage his PBX, like creating other users and groups, assigning Devices to subscribers and configure the Auto Attendant and more.

As an administrator, you can also do this for the customer, and we will walk through the typical steps as an administrator to configure the different features.

Go to the *Customer Details* of the PBX customer you want to configure, e.g. by navigating to *Settings*→*Customers* and clicking the *Details* button of the customer you want to configure.

#### 14.1.4 Creating Regular PBX Subscribers

Since we already created a pilot subscriber, more settings now appear on the *Customer Details* view. The sections we are interested in for now are the *Subscribers* and *PBX Groups* sections.

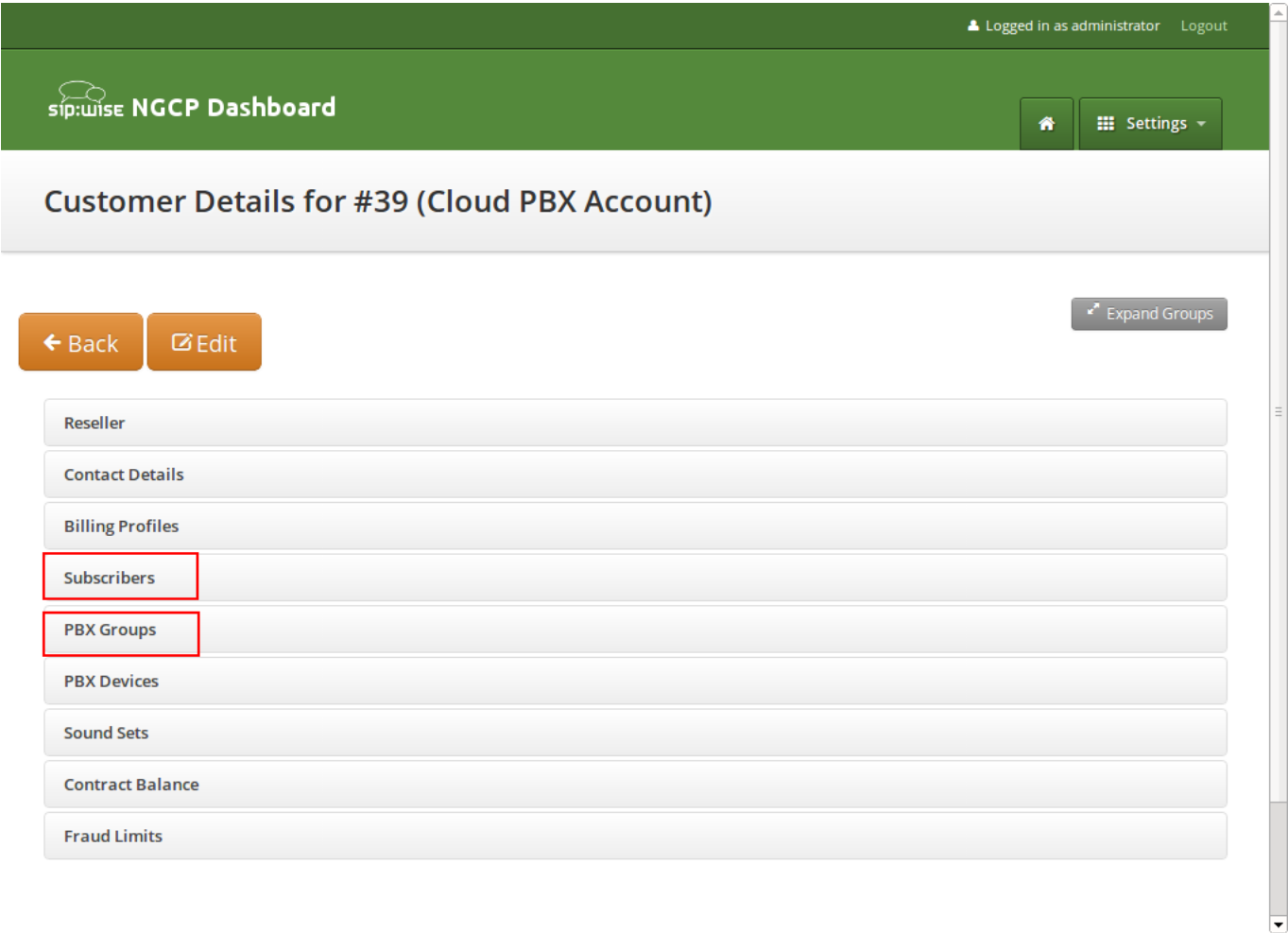


Figure 80: Subscribers and PBX Groups

To create another subscriber for the customer PBX, open the *Subscribers* row and click *Create Subscriber*.

Customer Details for #39 (Cloud PBX Account)

← Back Edit Expand Groups

Reseller

Contact Details

Billing Profiles

1 Subscribers

1 of maximum 20 subscribers (including PBX groups) created

2 ★ Create Subscriber

SIP URI	Primary Number	PBX Group	Registered Devices
administrator@customer1.pbx.example.org	43 1 9999		

Figure 81: Create a Subscriber Extension

When creating another subscriber in the PBX after having the pilot subscriber, some fields are different now, because the *Domain* and *E.164 Number* are already pre-defined at the pilot subscriber level.

What you need to define for a new subscriber is the *Group* the subscriber is supposed to be in. We don't have a group yet, so create one by clicking *Create Group*.

A *PBX Group* has four settings:

- **Name:** The name of the group. This is used to identify a group when assigning it to subscribers on one hand, and also subscribers are pushed as server side contact lists to XMPP clients, where they are logically placed into their corresponding groups.
- **Extension:** The extension of the group, which is appended to the primary number of the pilot subscriber, so you can actually call the group from the outside. If our pilot subscriber number is 43 1 9999 and the extension is 100, you can reach the group from the outside by dialing 43 1 9999 100. Since PBX Groups are actually just normal subscribers in the system, you can assign *Alias Numbers* to it for DID later, e.g. 43 1 9998.
- **Hunting Policy:** If you call a group, then all members in this group are ringing based on the policy you choose. *Serial*

Ringling causes each of the subscribers to be tried one after another, until one of them picks up or all subscribers are tried. Parallel Ringing causes all subscribers in the group to be tried in parallel. Note that a subscriber can have a call-forward configured to some external number (e.g. his mobile phone), which will work as well.

- **Serial Hunting Timeout:** This value defines for how long to ring each member of a group in case of serial hunting until the next subscriber is being tried.

We will only fill in the *Name* and *Extension* for now, as the hunting policy can be changed later if needed. Click *Save* to create the group.

The screenshot shows the 'Create PBX Group' modal in the NGCP Dashboard. The form has the following fields:

- Name:** marketing (highlighted with a red box and number 1)
- Extension:** 100 (highlighted with a red box and number 2)
- Hunting Policy:** Serial Ringing (dropdown menu)
- Serial Hunting Timeout:** 10
- Save:** (highlighted with a red box and number 3)

Below the modal, there is a table with the following data:

SIP URI	Primary Number	PBX Group	Registered Devices
administrator@customer1.pb.example.org	43 1 9999		

Figure 82: Create a PBX Group

Once the group is created and selected, fill out the rest of the form as needed. Instead of the *E.164 Number*, you can now only choose the *Extension*, which is appended to the primary number of the pilot subscriber and is then used as primary number for this particular subscribers. Again, if your pilot number is 43 1 9999 and you choose extension 101 here, the number of this subscriber is going to be 43 1 9999 101. Also, you can again later assign more alias numbers (e.g. 43 1 9997) to this subscriber for DID.

The rest of the fields is as usual, with *Display Name* defining the real name of the user, *Web Username* and *Web Password* allowing the subscriber to log into the customer self-care interface, and the *SIP Username* and *SIP Password* to allow signing into

the SIP and XMPP services.

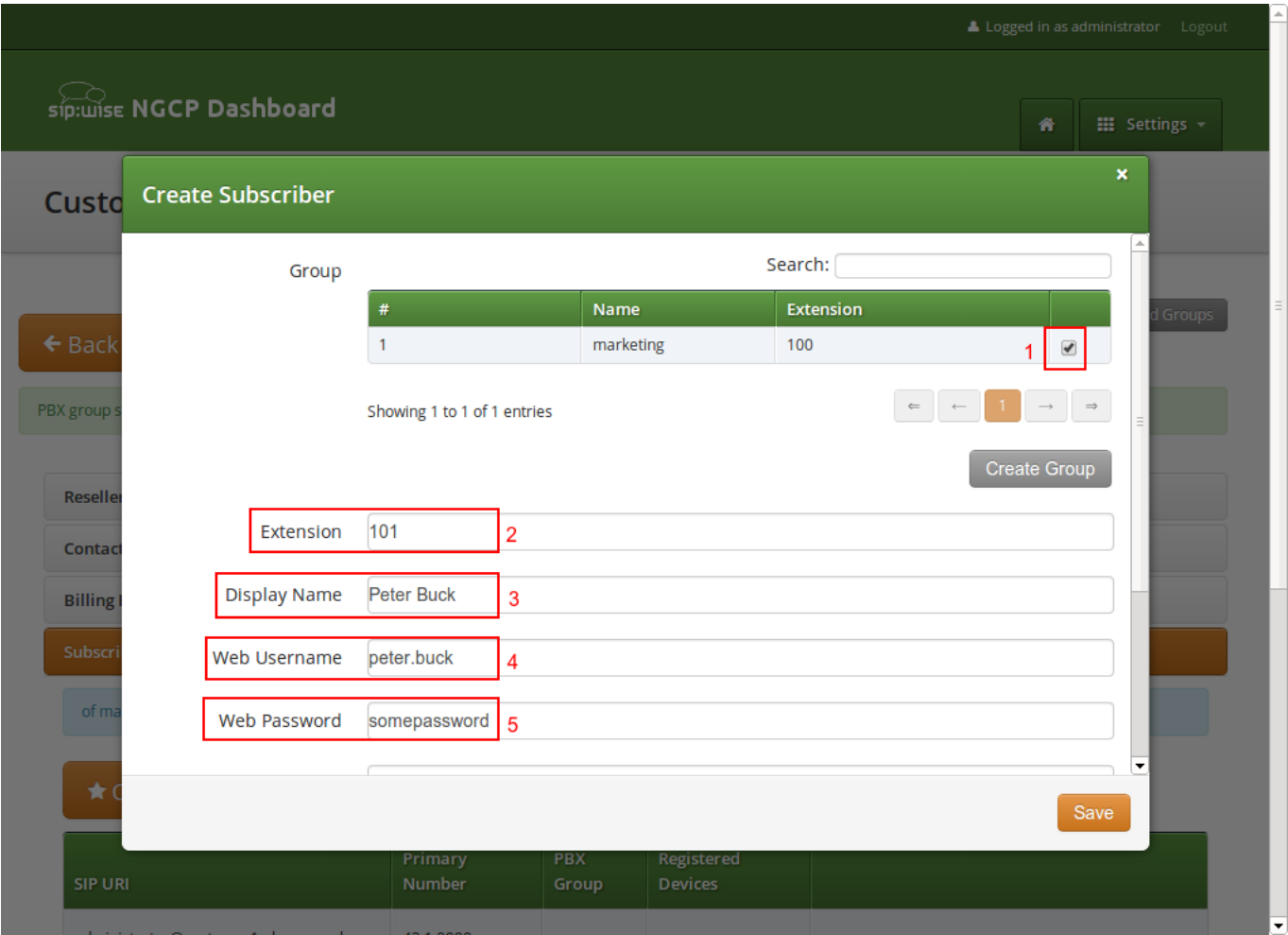


Figure 83: Finish PBX Subscriber Creation Part 1

Click Save to create the subscriber.

Customer Details for #39 (Cloud PBX Account)

← Back

PBX group s

Reseller

Contact

Billing

Subscriber

of ma

★ C

SIP UP

admin

PBX Groups

**Create Subscriber**

Extension 101

Display Name Peter Buck

Web Username peter.buck

Web Password somepassword

SIP Username peter.buck 1

SIP Password somepassword 2

Status active

External ID

3 Save

Figure 84: Finish PBX Subscriber Creation Part 2

Repeat the steps to create all the subscribers and groups as needed. An example of a small company configuration in terms of subscribers and groups might look like this:

Reseller

Contact Details

Billing Profiles

**Subscribers**

7 of maximum 20 subscribers (including PBX groups) created

★ Create Subscriber

SIP URI	Primary Number	PBX Group	Registered Devices
administrator@customer1.pbx.example.org	43 1 9999		
peter.buck@customer1.pbx.example.org	43 1 9999101	marketing	
michelle.miller@customer1.pbx.example.org	43 1 9999102	marketing	
frank.fowler@customer1.pbx.example.org	43 1 9999201	development	
deborah.dane@customer1.pbx.example.org	43 1 9999202	development	

PBX Groups

PBX Devices

Sound Sets

Figure 85: Example of Subscribers List

**Tip**

The subscribers can be reached via 3 different ways. First, you can call them by their SIP URIs (e.g. by dialing `frank.fowler@customer1.pbx.example.org`) from both inside and outside the PBX. Second, you can dial by the full number (e.g. `43 1 9999 201`; depending on your rewrite rules, you might need to add a leading `\+` or `00` or leave out the country code when dialing from the outside, and adding a `0` as break-out digit when dialing from the inside) from both inside and outside the PBX. Third, you can dial just the extension (e.g. `201`) from inside the PBX. If the subscriber also has an alias number assigned, you can dial that number also, according to your dial-plan in the rewrite rules.

**14.1.5 Assigning Subscribers to Devices**

Basically you can register any SIP phone to the system using the SIP credentials of your subscribers. However, the platform supports *Device Provisioning* of certain vendors and models, as described in Section 14.1.1.

To configure a physical device, open the *PBX Devices* row in the *Customer Details* view and click *Create Device*.

You have to set three general parameters for your new device, which are:



- **Device Profile:** The actual device profile you want to use. This has been pre-configured in the *Device Management* by the administrator or reseller, and the customer can choose from the list of profiles (which is a combination of an actual device plus its corresponding configuration).
- **MAC Address/Identifier:** The MAC address of the phone to be added. The information can usually either be found on the back of the phone, or in the phone menu itself.
- **Station Name:** Since you can (depending on the actual device) configure more lines on a phone, you can give it a station name, like *Reception* or the name of the owner of the device.

In addition to that information, you can configure the lines (subscribers) you want to use on which key, and the mode of operation (e.g. if it's a normal private phone line, or if you want to monitor another subscriber using BLF, or if you want it to act as shared line using SLA).

For example, a *Cisco SPA504G* has 4 keys you can use for private and shared lines as well as BLF on the phone itself, and in our example we have an *Attendant Console* attached to it as well, so you have 32 more keys for BLF.

The settings per key are as follows:

- **Subscriber:** The subscriber to use (for private/shared lines) or to monitor (for BLF).
- **Line/Key:** The key where to configure this subscriber to.
- **Line/Key Type:** The mode of operation for this key, with the following options (depending on which options are enabled in the *Device Model* configuration for this device:
  - **Private Line:** Use the subscriber as a regular SIP phone line. This means that the phone will register the subscriber, and you can place and receive phone calls with/for this subscriber.
  - **Shared Line:** The subscriber is also registered on the system and you can place and receive calls. If another phone has the same subscriber also configured as shared line, both phones will ring on incoming calls, and you can pick the call up on either of them. You cannot place a call with this subscriber though if the line is already in use by another subscriber. However, you can "steal" a running call by pressing the key where the shared line is configured to barge into a running call. The other party (the other phone where the shared line is configured too) will then be removed from the call (but can steal the call back the same way).
  - **BLF Key:** The *Busy Lamp Field* monitors the call state of another subscriber and provides three different functionalities, depending on the actual state:
    - \* **Speed Dial:** If the monitored subscriber is on-hook, the user can press the button and directly call the monitored subscriber.
    - \* **Call Pickup:** If the monitored subscriber is ringing, the user can press the button to pick up the call on his own phone.
    - \* **State Indication:** If the monitored subscriber is on the phone, the key is indicating that the monitored subscriber is currently busy.

In our example, we will first configure a private line on the first key, and BLF for another subscriber on the second key.

1 Device Profile Cisco SPA504G + 1 Attendant Console

2 MAC Address / Identifier 3CCE73D258FD

3 Station Name Peter Buck

Lines/Keys

4 Subscriber peter.buck@customer1.pbx.example.org

5 Line/Key Phone Keys - Key/Line 0

6 Line/Key Type Private Line

Remove

Save

Figure 86: Configuring a PBX Device Part 1

This configures the general options plus the first key. To configure the second key, click *Add another Line/Key* and fill out the second line config accordingly. Click *Save* to save your PBX device configuration.

Customer Details for #39 (Cloud PBX Account)

← Back

Create PBX Device

Lines/Keys

Subscriber: peter.buck@customer1.pbx.example.org

Line/Key: Phone Keys - Key/Line 0

Line/Key Type: Private Line

Remove

1 Subscriber: michelle.miller@customer1.pbx.example.org

2 Line/Key: Phone Keys - Key/Line 1

3 Line/Key Type: BLF Key

Remove

4 Save

© 2013 Sipwise GmbH, all rights reserved.

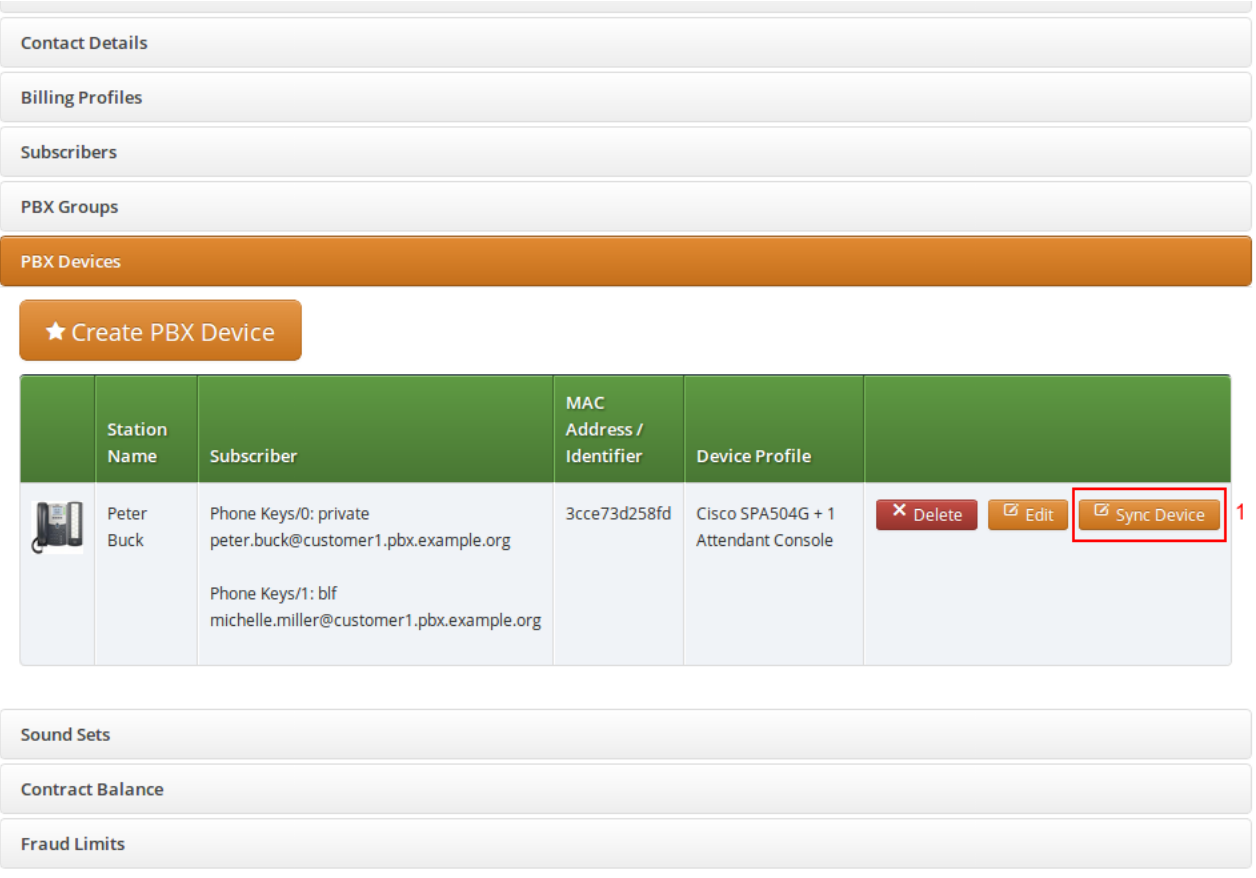
Figure 87: Configuring a PBX Device Part 2

Once the PBX device is saved, you will see it in the list of *PBX Devices*.


#### 14.1.5.1 Synchronizing a PBX Device for Initial Usage

Since a stock device obtained from an arbitrary distributor doesn't know anything about your system, it can't fetch its configuration from there. For that to work, you need to push the URL of where the phone can get the configuration to the phone once.

In order to do so, click the *Sync Device* button on the device you want to configure for the very first time.



The screenshot shows a web interface with a sidebar on the left containing tabs: Contact Details, Billing Profiles, Subscribers, PBX Groups, and PBX Devices (which is highlighted in orange). Below the sidebar is a button labeled "★ Create PBX Device". The main area displays a table of PBX devices. The table has columns: Station Name, Subscriber, MAC Address / Identifier, Device Profile, and a set of action buttons. The first row shows a device named "Peter Buck" with two subscriber entries. The "Sync Device" button in the action column is highlighted with a red box, and a red "1" is placed next to it.

	Station Name	Subscriber	MAC Address / Identifier	Device Profile	
	Peter Buck	Phone Keys/0: private peter.buck@customer1.pbx.example.org	3cce73d258fd	Cisco SPA504G + 1 Attendant Console	<span>✕ Delete</span> <span>✎ Edit</span> <span>🔄 Sync Device</span>
		Phone Keys/1: blf michelle.miller@customer1.pbx.example.org			

Below the table are three more tabs: Sound Sets, Contract Balance, and Fraud Limits.

Figure 88: Go to Sync Device

**Important**

As you will see in the next step, you need the actual IP address of the phone to push the provisioning URL onto it. That implies that you need access to the phone to get the IP, and that your browser is in the same network as the phone in order to be able to connect to it, in case the phone is behind NAT.

Enter the IP Address of the phone (on Cisco SPAs, press *Settings* 9, where *Settings* is the paper sheet symbol, and note down the *Current IP* setting), then click *Push Provisioning URL*.

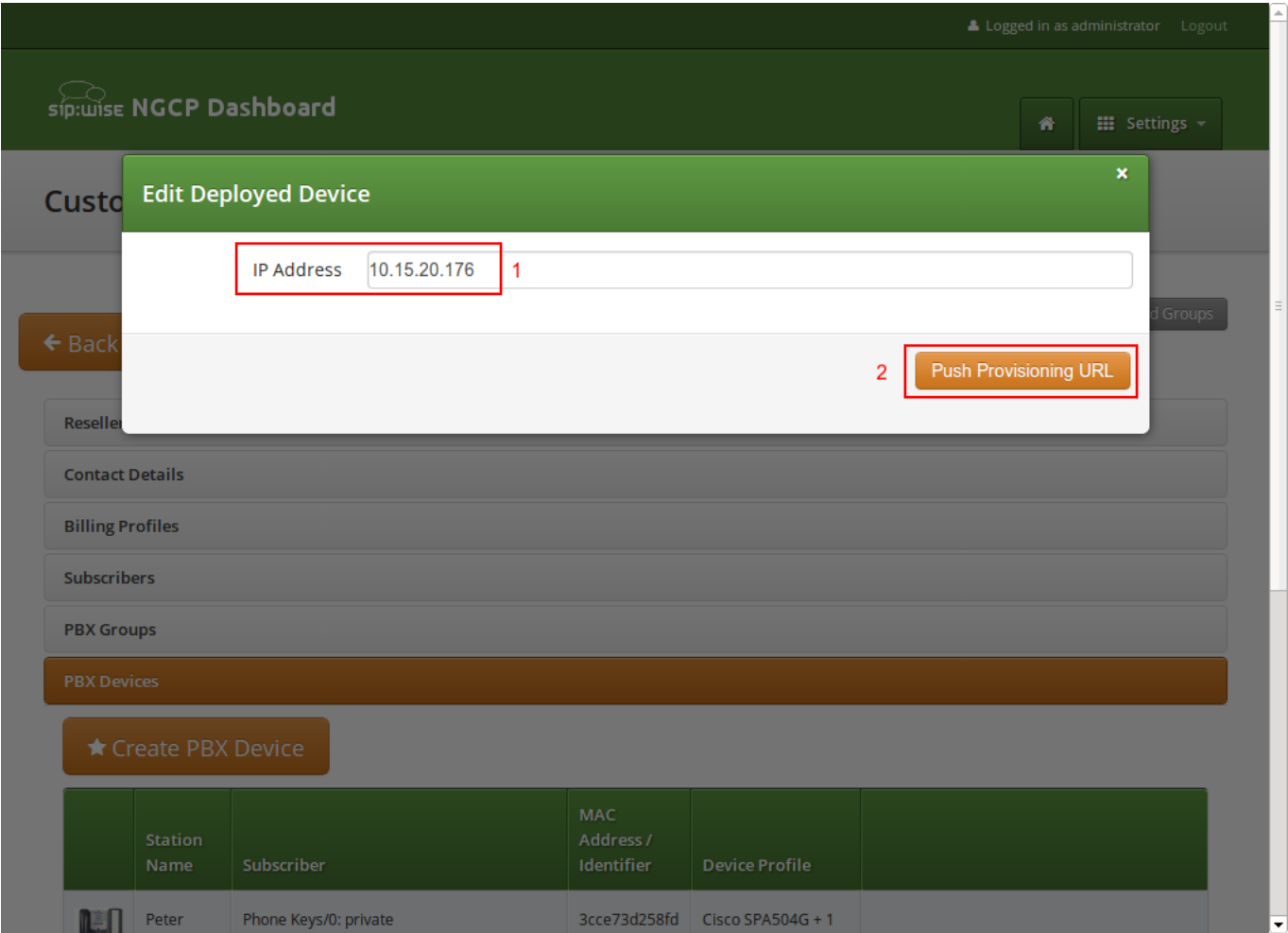
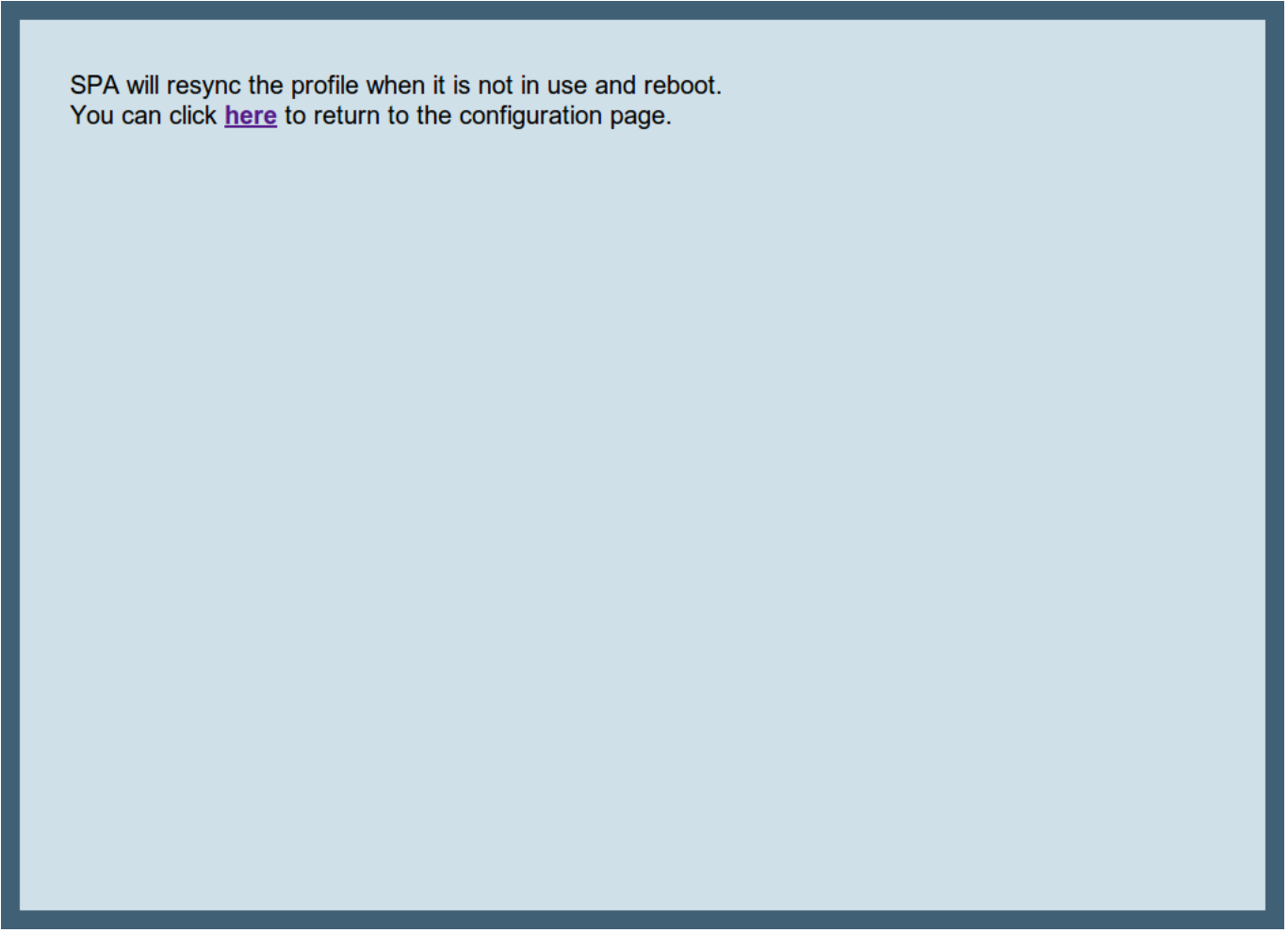


Figure 89: Sync Device

You will be redirected directly to the phone, and the Provisioning URL is automatically set. If everything goes right, you will see a confirmation page from the phone that it's going to reboot.



SPA will resync the profile when it is not in use and reboot.  
You can click [here](#) to return to the configuration page.

Figure 90: Device Sync Confirmation from Phone

You can close the browser window/tab and proceed to sync the next subscriber.

---

**Tip**

You only have to do this step once per phone to tell it the actual provisioning URL, where it can fetch the configuration from. From there, it will regularly sync with the server automatically to check for configuration changes, and applies them automatically.

---

#### 14.1.6 Configuring Sound Sets for the Customer PBX

In the *Customer Details* view, there is a row *Sound Sets*, where the customer can define his own sound sets for *Auto Attendant*, *Music on Hold* and the *Office Hours Announcement*.

To create a new sound set, open the *Sound Sets* row and click *Create Sound Set*.

If you do this as administrator or reseller, the Reseller and/or Customer is pre-selected, so keep it as is. If you do this as customer, you don't see any *Reseller* or *Customer* fields.

So the important settings are:

- **Name:** The name of the sound set as it will appear in the *Subscriber Preferences*, where you can assign the sound set to a subscriber.
- **Description:** A more detailed description of the sound set.
- **Default for Subscribers:** If this setting is enabled, then the sound set is automatically assigned to all already existing subscribers which do NOT have a sound set assigned yet, and also for all newly created subscribers.

Fill in the settings and click *Save*.

Logged in as administrator Logout

sip:wise NGCP Dashboard

Settings

### Create Sound Sets

Customer Search:

#	Reseller	Contact Email	External #	Status
39	Demo Reseller	johndoe@example.org		active

Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries

Create Reseller

Create Contract

Name mypbxset 1

Description My Default Sound Set 2

Default for Subscribers ☒ 3

4 Save

© 2013 Sipwise GmbH, all rights reserved.

Figure 91: Create Customer Sound Set

To upload files to your Sound Set, click the *Files* button for the Sound Set.

#### 14.1.6.1 Uploading a Music-on-Hold File

Open the *music\_on\_hold* row and click *Upload* on the *music\_on\_hold* entry. Choose a WAV file from your file system, and click the *Loopplay* setting if you want to play the file in a loop instead of just once. Click *Save* to upload the file.

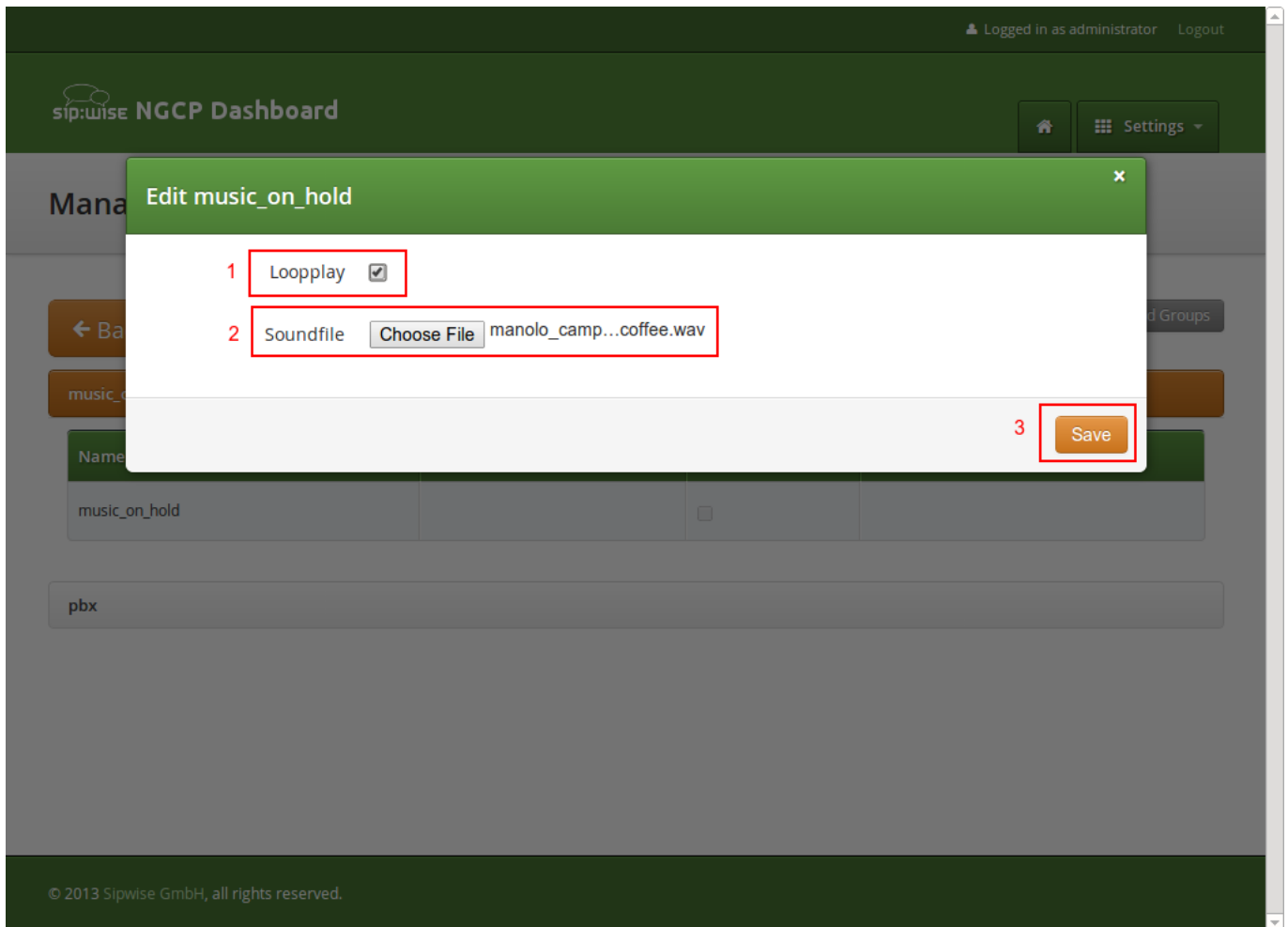


Figure 92: Upload MoH Sound File

#### 14.1.7 Configuring Auto Attendant

The *Auto Attendant* is a built-in IVR feature that is available to Cloud PBX subscribers. It provides an automatic voice menu that enables the caller to select from a number of destinations—which are other PBX subscribers or groups—when the called subscriber is not available.

The Auto Attendant feature can be activated for any subscriber in the Customer PBX individually. There are three steps involved:

1. You have to prepare a *Sound Set* to have Auto Attendant sound files.
2. You have to configure the destinations for the various options you provide (e.g. pressing 1 should go to the marketing subscriber, 2 to development and 3 to some external number).
3. You have to set a Call Forward to the Auto Attendant.

To do so, go to *Customer Details* and in the *Subscribers* section, click the *Preferences* button of the subscriber, where the Auto Attendant should be set.



### 14.1.7.1 Preparing the Sound Set

Create a Sound Set and upload the Sound Files for it as described below. Afterwards in the *Subscriber Preferences* view, set the *Customer Sound Set* preference to the Sound Set to be used. To do so, click *Edit* on the *Customer Sound Set* preference and assign the set to be used.

#### **Uploading Auto-Attendant Sound Files**

When configuring a Call Forward to the *Auto Attendant*, it will play the following files:

- `aa_welcome`: This is the welcome message (the greeting) which is played when someone calls the Auto Attendant.
- each available pair of `aa_X_for/aa_X_option`: Each menu item in the Auto Attendant consists of two parts. The `for` part, which plays something like *Press One for*, and the `option` part, which play something like *Marketing*. The Auto Attendant only plays those menu options where both the `for` part and the `option` part is present, so if you only have 3 destinations you'd like to offer, and you want them to be on keys 1, 2 and 3, you have to upload files for `aa_1_for`, `aa_1_option`, `aa_2_for`, `aa_2_option` and `aa_3_for` and `aa_3_option`.

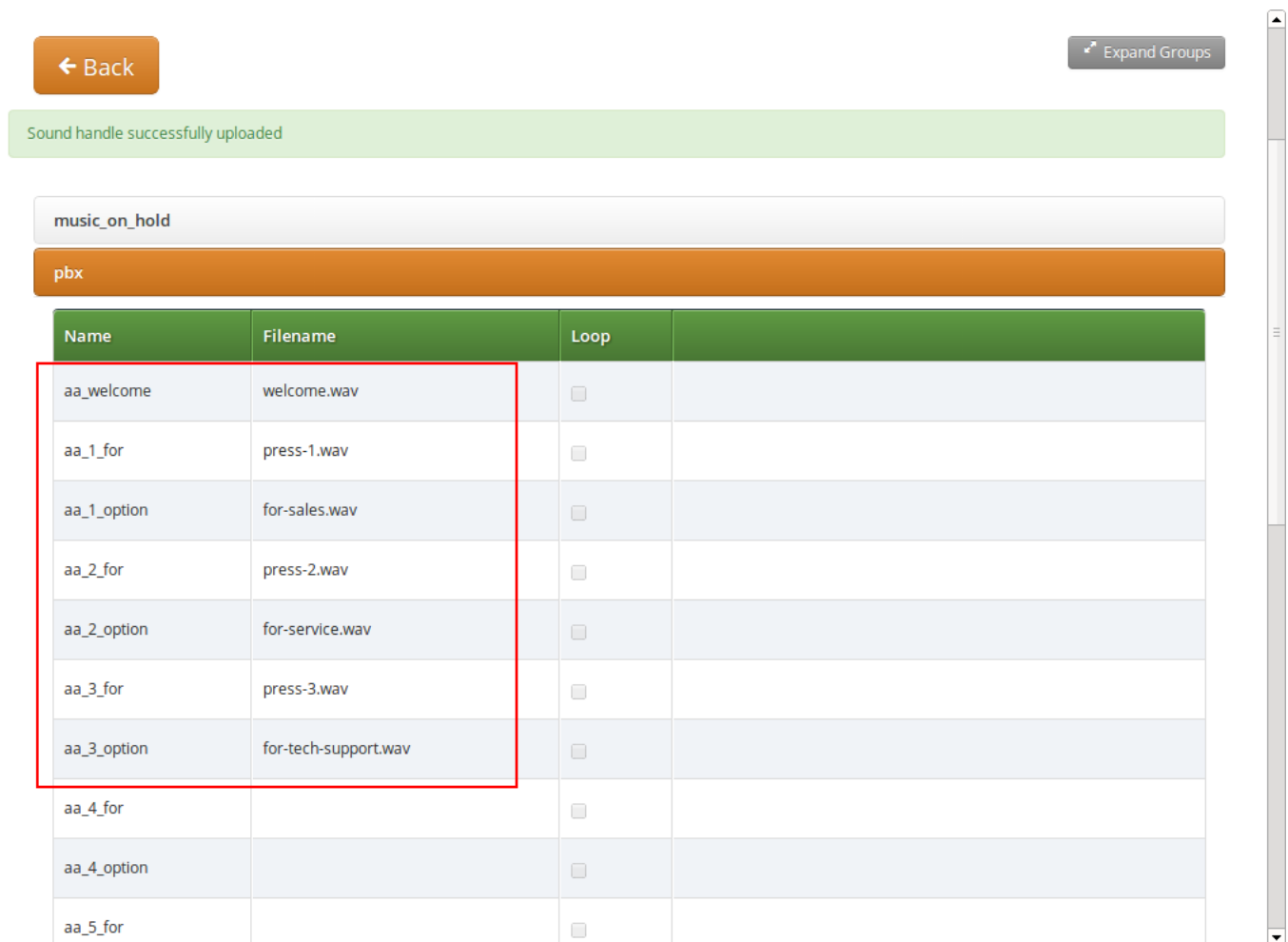


#### **Important**

The sound files only define the general structure of what is being played to the caller. The actual destinations behind your options are configured separately in [Configuring the Auto Attendant Slots](#) Section 14.1.7.3.

---

An example configuration could look like this:



← Back

Expand Groups

Sound handle successfully uploaded

music\_on\_hold

pbx

Name	Filename	Loop	
aa_welcome	welcome.wav	<input type="checkbox"/>	
aa_1_for	press-1.wav	<input type="checkbox"/>	
aa_1_option	for-sales.wav	<input type="checkbox"/>	
aa_2_for	press-2.wav	<input type="checkbox"/>	
aa_2_option	for-service.wav	<input type="checkbox"/>	
aa_3_for	press-3.wav	<input type="checkbox"/>	
aa_3_option	for-tech-support.wav	<input type="checkbox"/>	
aa_4_for		<input type="checkbox"/>	
aa_4_option		<input type="checkbox"/>	
aa_5_for		<input type="checkbox"/>	

Figure 93: Upload Auto Attendant Sound File

#### 14.1.7.2 Auto Attendant Flowchart with Voice Prompts

The illustration below shows the sequence of voice prompts played when Auto Attendant feature is activated and a caller listens the IVR menu.

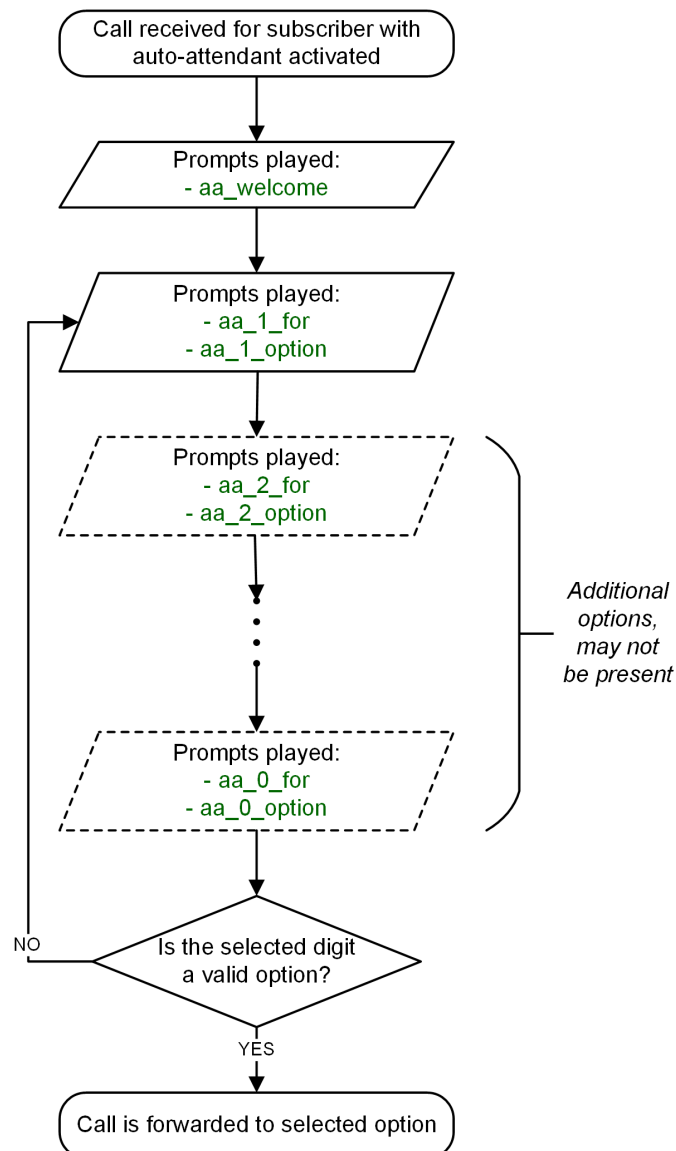


Figure 94: Flowchart of Auto Attendant

### 14.1.7.3 Configuring the Auto Attendant Slots

In the *Auto Attendant Slots* section, click the *Edit Slots* button to configure the destination options.

Click *Add another Slot* to add a destination option, select the Key the destination should be assigned to, and enter a Destination. The destination can be a subscriber username (e.g. `marketing`), a full SIP URI (e.g. `sip:michelle.miller@customer1.pbx.example.org` or any external SIP URI) or a number or extension (e.g. `491234567` or `101`).

Repeat the step for every option you want to add, then press *Save*.

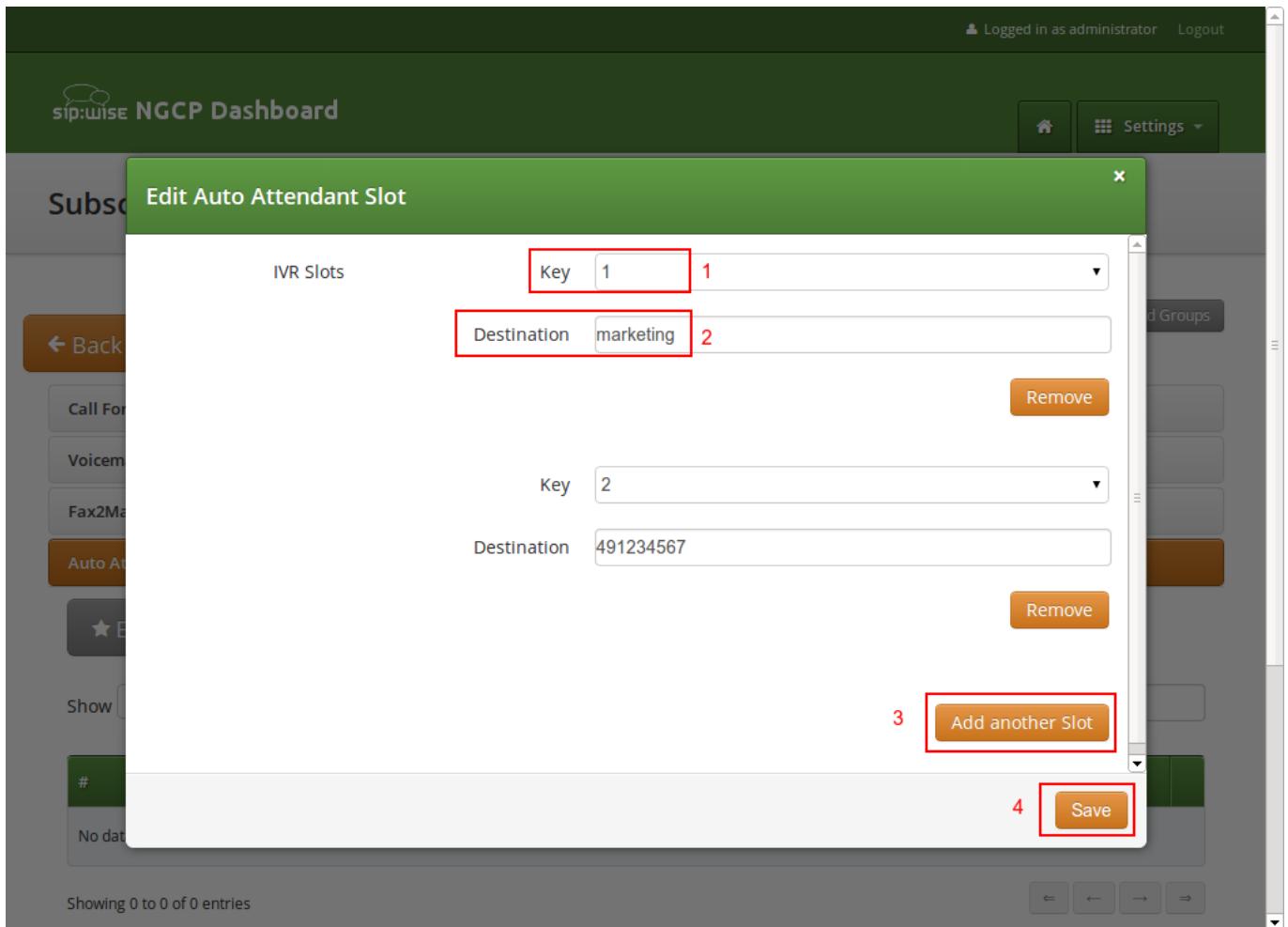


Figure 95: Define the Auto Attendant Slots

#### 14.1.7.4 Activating the Auto Attendant

Once the Sound Set and the Slots are configured, activate the Auto Attendant by setting a Call Forward to Auto Attendant.

To do so, open the *Call Forwards* section in the *Subscriber Preferences* view and press *Edit* on the Call Forward type (e.g. *Call Forward Unconditional* if you want to redirect callers unconditionally to the Auto Attendant).

Select *Auto Attendant* and click *Save* to activate the Auto Attendant.

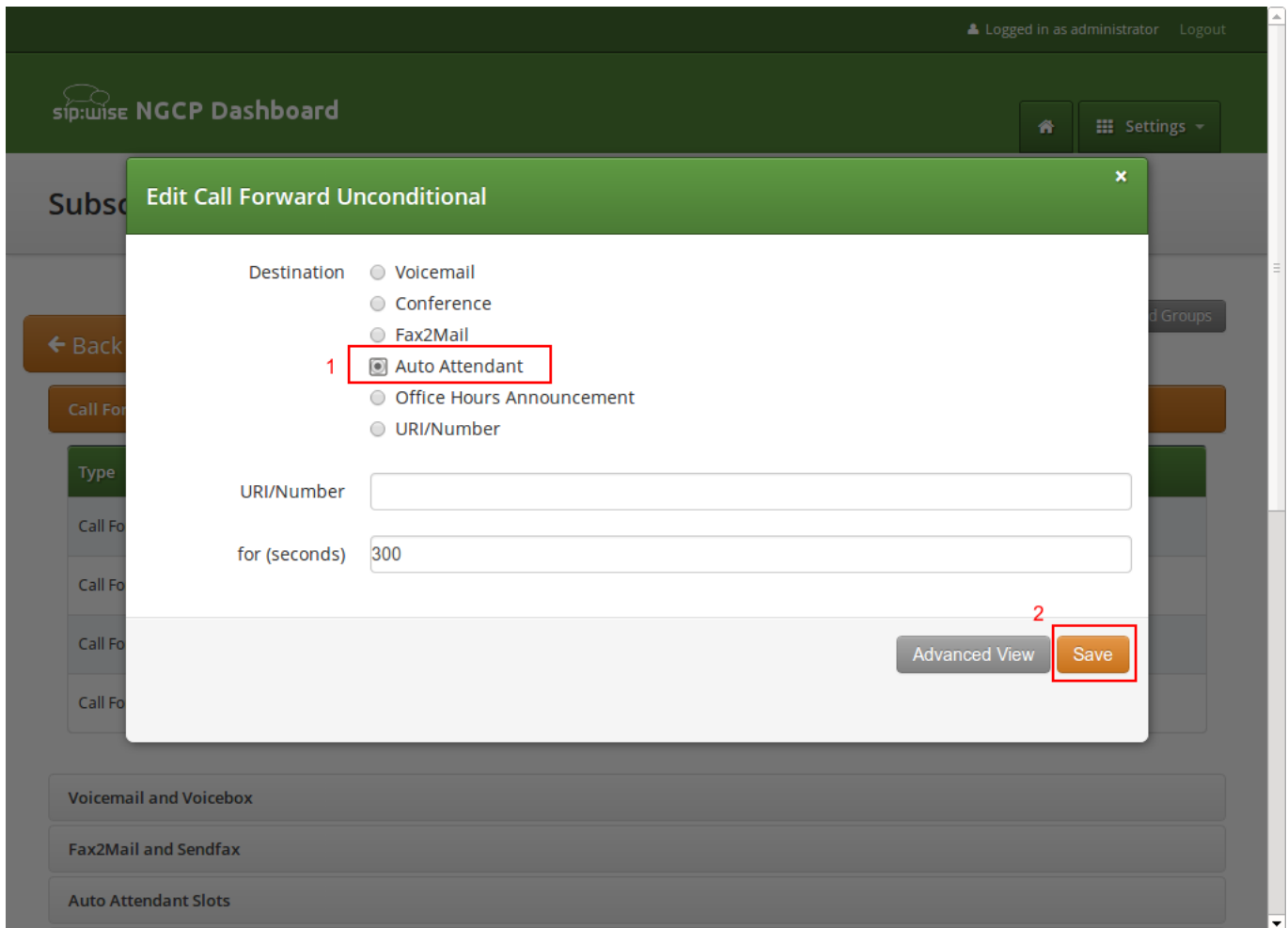


Figure 96: Set a Call Forward to Auto Attendant

**Tip**

As with any other Call Forward, you can define more complex forwarding rules in the *Advanced View* to only forward the call to the Auto Attendant during specific time periods, or as a fallback if no one picks up the office number.

**14.1.8 Configuring Call Queues**

The sip:carrier platform offers call queueing feature for Cloud PBX subscribers. For any subscriber within the PBX the NGCP system administrator or the subscriber himself may activate the *Call Queue*. This is done individually for each subscriber on demand.

If call queue activation has been done and the subscriber receives more than 1 call at a time, then the second and all further callers will be queued until the subscriber finishes his call with the first caller and gets free.

### 14.1.8.1 Activating the Call Queue

The call queue configuration is available at the path: *Subscribers* → *select one* → *Details* → *Preferences* → *Cloud PBX*.

Following configuration parameters may be set for call queueing:

- `cloud_pbx_callqueue` : shows the status of call queueing (enabled / disabled); by default it is disabled
- `max_queue_length` : the length of call queue, i.e. the maximum number of callers in a queue; the default is 5
- `queue_wrap_up_time` : the delay in seconds between the ending of the previous call and the connection of the next queued caller with the subscriber; the default is 10

In order to change the actual setting, press the *Edit* button in the relevant row.

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring a Cloud PBX. It features a table with four rows of settings. The first row is 'enable\_t38' with a checkbox. The second row is 'cloud\_pbx\_callqueue' with a checkbox and an 'Edit' button circled in red. The third row is 'max\_queue\_length' and the fourth is 'queue\_wrap\_up\_time'. Below the table is a section for 'XMPP Settings'.

Attribute	Name	Value	
enable_t38	Enable T38 Fax-over-IP	<input type="checkbox"/>	
cloud_pbx_callqueue	PBX Call Queue	<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Edit</a>
max_queue_length	Call Queue length		
queue_wrap_up_time	Call Queue wrap-up time, sec		

Figure 97: Call Queue Configuration

### 14.1.8.2 Call Queue Voice Prompts

Queued callers first hear a greeting message then information about their position in the queue and finally a waiting music / signal.

Table 20: Call Queue Voice Prompts

Prompt handle	Prompt content
queue_greeting	All lines are busy at the moment, you are being queued.
queue_prefix	You are currently number. . .
queue_suffix	. . . in the queue, please hold the line.
queue_full	All lines are busy at the moment, please try again later.
queue_waiting_music	<waiting music>

### 14.1.8.3 Call Queue Flowchart with Voice Prompts

The following illustration shows which voice prompts are played to the caller when the call gets into a queue.

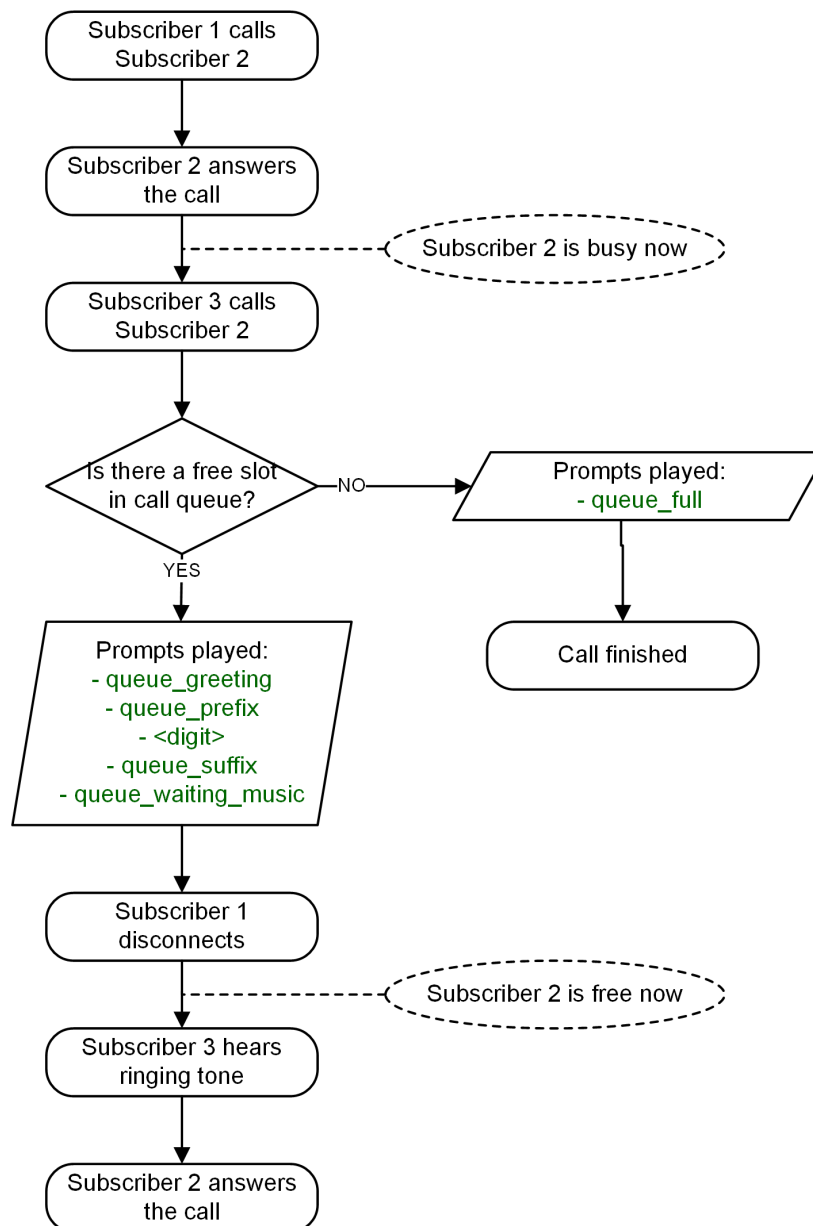


Figure 98: Flowchart of Call Queue

## 14.1.9 Device Auto-Provisioning Security

### 14.1.9.1 Server Certificate Authentication

The Cisco SPA phones can connect to the provisioning interface of the PBX via HTTP and HTTPS. When perform secure provisioning over HTTPS, the phones validate the server certificate to check if its a legitimate Cisco provisioning server. To pass this check, the provisioning interface must provide a certificate signed by Cisco for that exact purpose.

The following steps describe how to obtain such a certificate.

First, a new SSL key needs to be generated:

```
$ openssl genrsa -out provisioning.key 2048
Generating RSA private key, 2048 bit long modulus
...+++
.....+++
e is 65537 (0x10001)
```

Next, a certificate signing request needs to be generated as follows. Provide your company details.



#### Important

The **Common Name (e.g. server FQDN or YOUR name)** field is crucial here. Provide an FQDN which the phones will later use via DNS to connect to the provisioning interface, for example *pbx.example.org*. Cisco does **NOT** support wild-card certificates.



#### Important

Leave the password empty when asked for it (press Enter without entering anything).

```
$ openssl req -new -key provisioning.key -out provisioning.csr
You are about to be asked to enter information that will be incorporated
into your certificate request.
What you are about to enter is what is called a Distinguished Name or a DN.
There are quite a few fields but you can leave some blank
For some fields there will be a default value,
If you enter '.', the field will be left blank.
```

```
Country Name (2 letter code) [AU]:AT
State or Province Name (full name) [Some-State]:Vienna
Locality Name (eg, city) []:Vienna
Organization Name (eg, company) [Internet Widgits Pty Ltd]:Sipwise GmbH
Organizational Unit Name (eg, section) []:Operations
Common Name (e.g. server FQDN or YOUR name) []:pbx.example.org
Email Address []:office@sipwise.com
```

```
Please enter the following 'extra' attributes
to be sent with your certificate request
A challenge password []:
An optional company name []:
```

Finally, compress the `provisioning.csr` file via ZIP and send it to our Cisco sales representative. If in doubt, you can try to send it directly to `ciscosb-certadmin@cisco.com` asking them to sign it.



**Important**

Only send the CSR file. **Do NOT send the key file, as this is your private key!**

---

**Important**

Ask for both the signed certificate AND a so-called *combinedca.crt* which is needed to perform client authentication via SSL. Otherwise you can not restrict access to Cisco SPAs only.

---

You will receive a signed CRT file, which Sipwise can use to configure the PBX provisioning interface.

#### 14.1.9.2 Client Certificate Authentication

If a client connects via HTTPS, the server also checks for the client certificate in order to validate that the device requesting the configuration is indeed a legitimate Cisco phone, and not a fraudulent user with a browser trying to fetch user credentials.

#### 14.1.10 Device Bootstrap and Resync Workflows

The IP phones supported by the PBX need to initially be configured to fetch their configuration from the system. Since the phones have no initial information about the system and its provisioning URL, they need to be boot-strapped. Furthermore, changes for a specific device might have to be pushed to the device immediately instead of waiting for it to re-fetch the configuration automatically.

The following sections describe the work-flows how this is accomplished without having the customer directly accessing the phone.

##### 14.1.10.1 Cisco SPA Device Bootstrap

###### *Initial Bootstrapping*

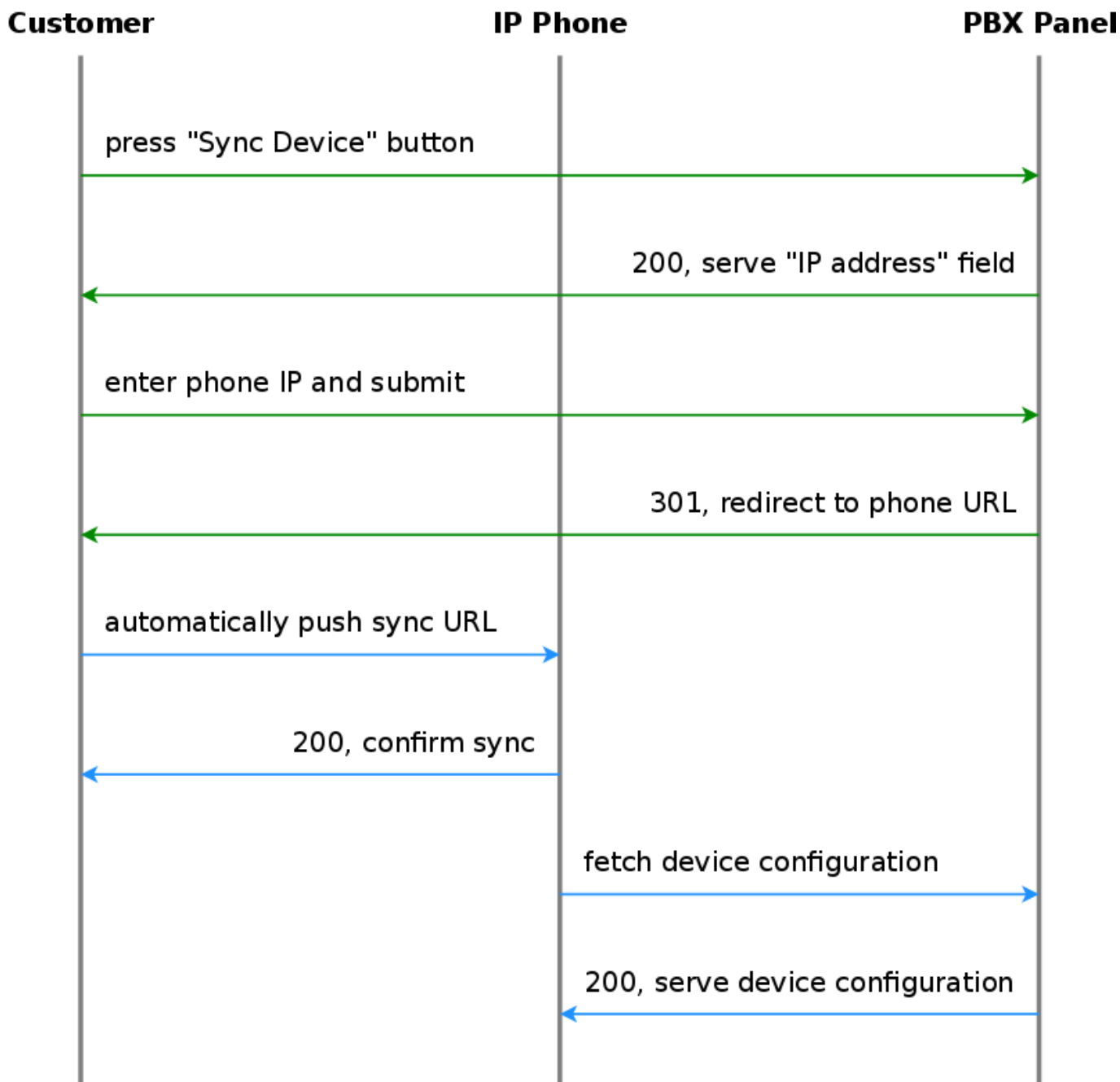


Figure 99: Initially bootstrap a PBX device

### ***Subsequent Device Resyncs***

If one of the subscribers configured on a PBX device is registered via SIP, the system can trigger a re-sync of the phone directly via SIP without having the customer enter the IP of the phone again. This is accomplished by sending a special `NOTIFY` message to the subscriber:

```
NOTIFY sip:subscriber@domain SIP/2.0
To: <sip:subscriber@domain>
From: <sip:subscriber@domain>;tag=some-random-tag
```

```

Call-ID: some-random-call-id
CSeq: 1 NOTIFY
Subscription-State: active
Event: check-sync
Content-Length: 0

```

In order to prevent unauthorized re-syncs, the IP phone challenges the request with its own SIP credentials, so the NOTIFY is sent twice, once without authentication, and the second time with the subscriber's own SIP credentials.

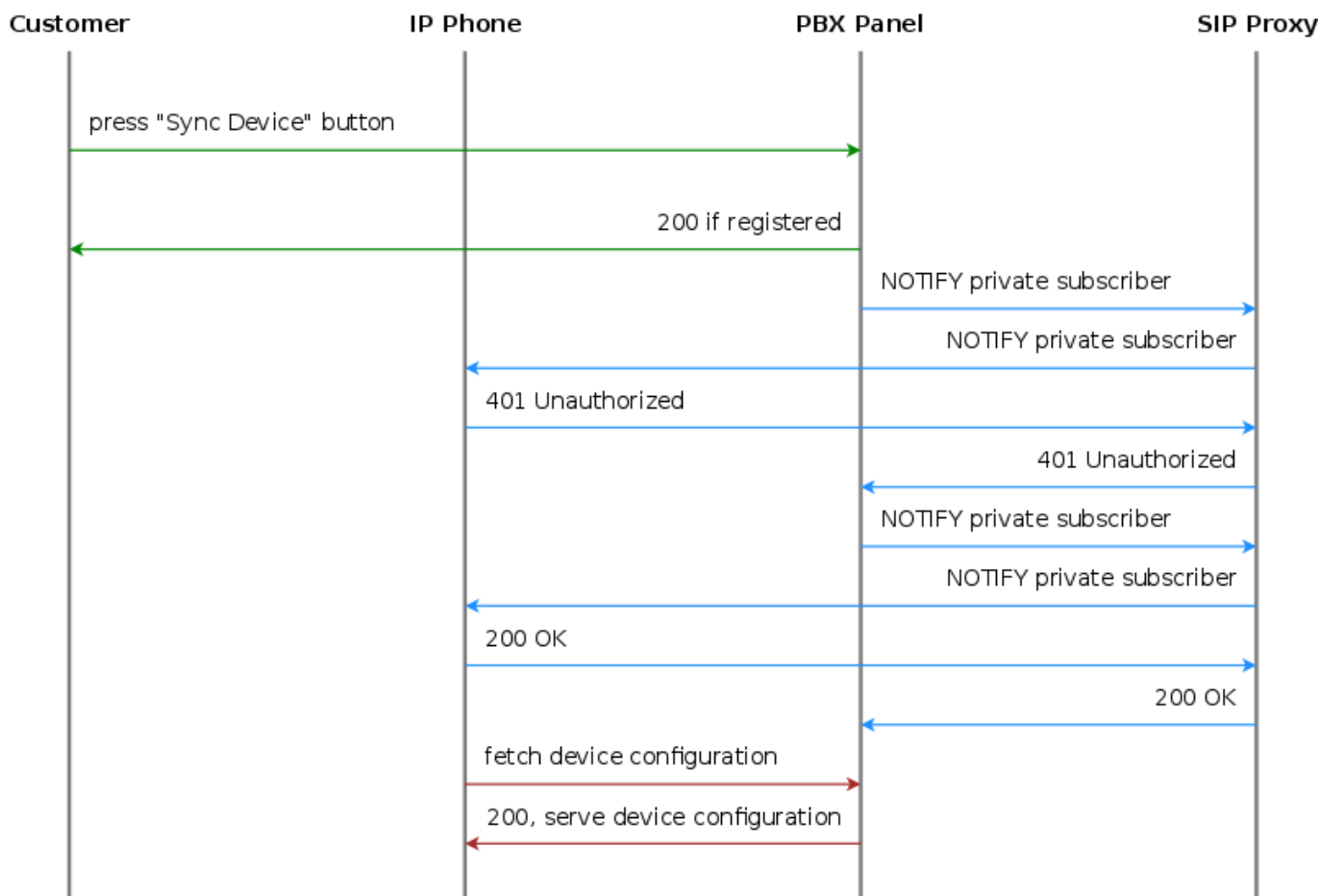


Figure 100: Resync a registered PBX device

#### 14.1.10.2 Panasonic Device Bootstrap

##### *Initial Bootstrapping*

Panasonic provides a zero-touch provisioning mechanism in their firmwares, which causes the factory-reset phones to connect to a Panasonic web service at <https://provisioning.e-connecting.net> to check if a custom provisioning URL is configured for the MAC address of the phone. If an association between the MAC and a provisioning URL is found, the web service redirects the phone to the provisioning URL, where the phone connects to in order to obtain the configuration file.

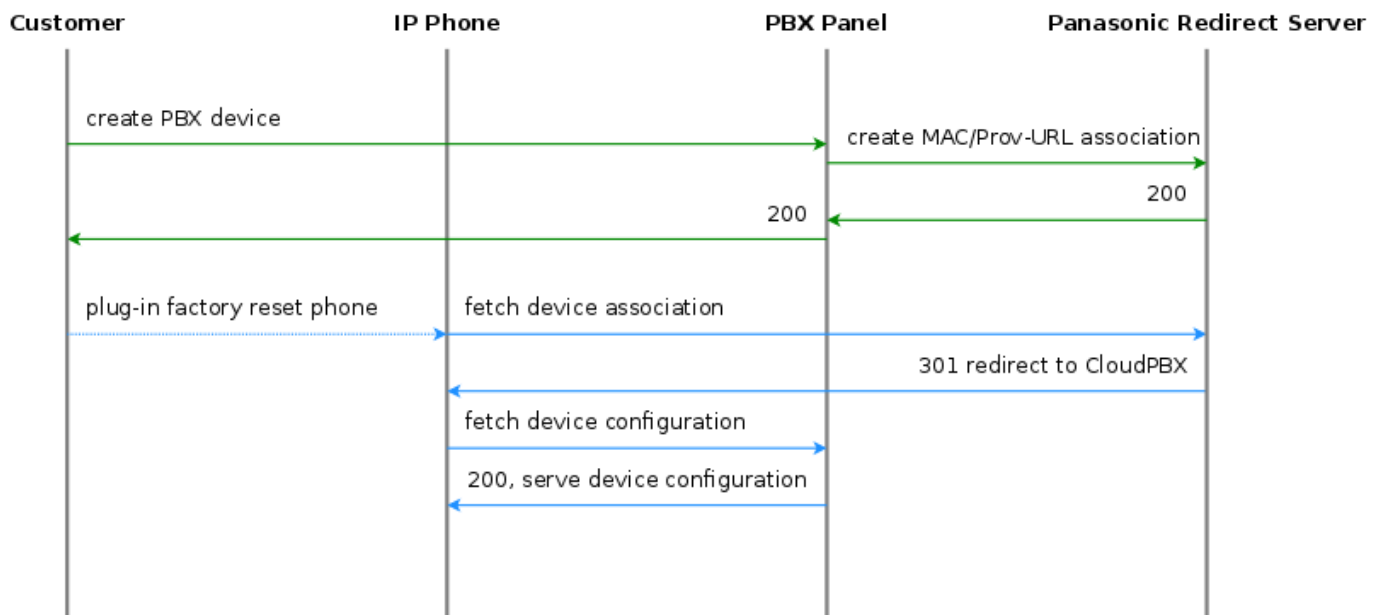


Figure 101: Initially bootstrap a Panasonic phone

The CloudPBX module ensures that when an end customer creates a Panasonic device, the MAC address is automatically provisioned on the Panasonic web service via an API call, so the customer's phone can use the correct provisioning URL to connect to the auto-provisioning server of the CloudPBX.

As a result, no customer interaction is required to bootstrap Panasonic phones, other than just creating the phone with the proper MAC on the CloudPBX web interface.

### Factory Reset

For already provisioned phones, the end customer might need to perform a factory reset:

- Press *Settings* or *Setup*
- Enter *#136*
- Select *Factory Setting* and press *Enter*
- Select *Yes* and press *Enter*
- Select *Yes* and press *Enter*

The default username for factory-reset phones is *admin* with password *adminpass*.

### Subsequent Device Resyncs

The same procedure as with Cisco SPA phones applies, once a subscriber configured on the phone is registered.

## 14.1.10.3 Yealink Device Bootstrap

### Initial Bootstrapping

Yealink provides a zero-touch provisioning mechanism in their firmwares, which causes the factory-reset phones to connect to a Yealink web service at <https://rps.yealink.com> to check if a custom provisioning URL is configured for the MAC address of the phone. If an association between the MAC and a provisioning URL is found, the web service redirects the phone to the provisioning URL, where the phone connects to in order to obtain the configuration file.

If both Cisco SPA and Yealink phones are used, an issue with the Cisco-signed server certificate configured on the provisioning port (1444 by default) of the CloudPBX provisioning server arises. Yealink phones by default only connect to trusted server certificates, and the Cisco CA certificate used to sign the server certificate is not trusted by Yealink. Therefore, a two-step approach is used to disable the trusted check via a plain insecure http port (1445 by default) first, where only device-generic config options are served. No user credentials are provided in this case, because no SSL client authentication can be performed. The generic configuration disables the trusted check, and at the same time changes the provisioning URL to the secure port, where the Yealink phone is now able to connect to.

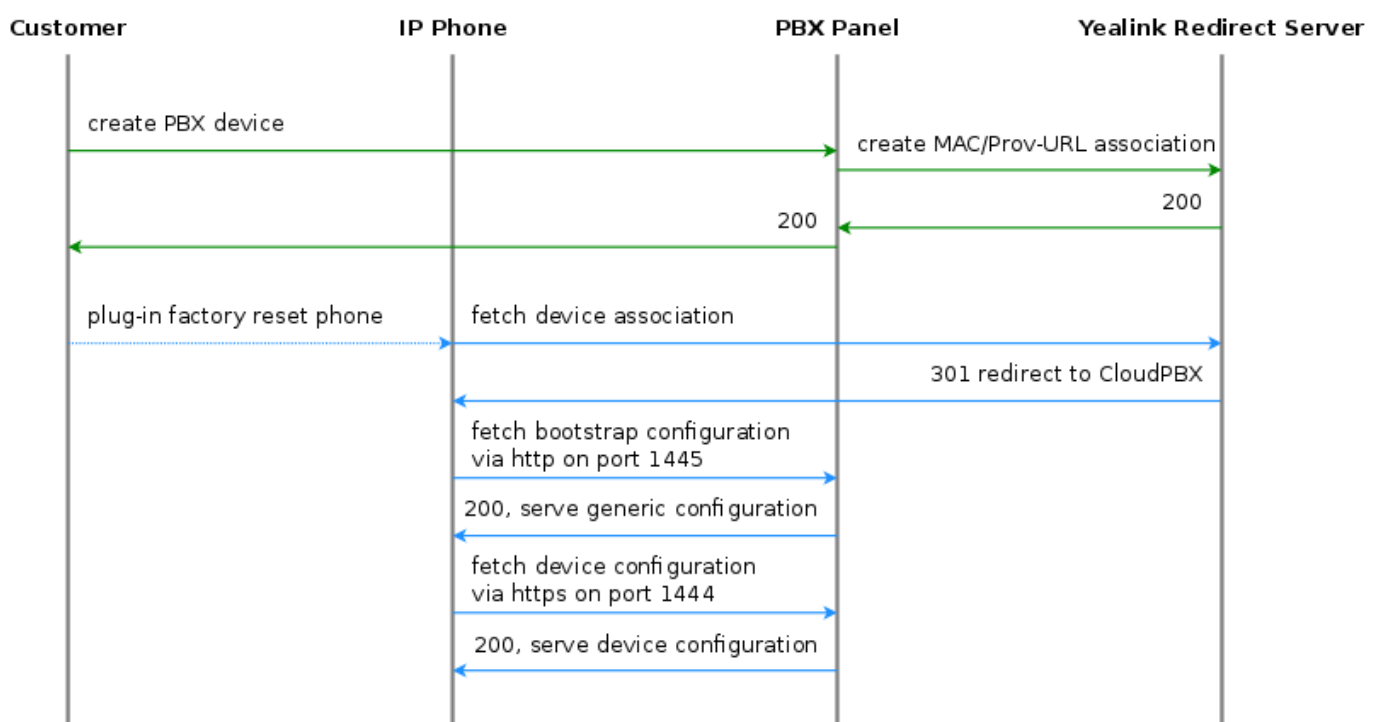


Figure 102: Initially bootstrap a Yealink phone

The CloudPBX module ensures that when an end customer creates a Yealink device, the MAC address is automatically provisioned on the Yealink web service via an API call, so the customer's phone can use the correct insecure bootstrap provisioning URL to connect to the auto-provisioning server of the CloudPBX for the generic configuration, which in turn provides the information on where to connect to for the secure, full configuration.

As a result, no customer interaction is required to bootstrap Yealink phones, other than just creating the phone with the proper MAC on the CloudPBX web interface.

### **Factory Enable Yealink Auto-Provisioning**

Older Yealink firmwares don't automatically connect to the Yealink auto-provisioning server on initial boot, so it needs to be enabled manually by the end customer.

- Log in to `http://phone-ip/servlet?p=hidden&q=load` using `admin` and `admin` as user/password when prompted
- Change *Redirect Active* to *Enabled*
- Press *Confirm* and power-cycle phone

### ***Subsequent Device Resyncs***

The same procedure as with Cisco SPA phones applies, once a subscriber configured on the phone is registered.

## **14.1.10.4 Audiocodes Mediant Device Bootstrap and Configuration**

### ***Initial Bootstrapping***

An Audiocodes device provides a zero-touch provisioning mechanism in its firmware which causes a factory-reset device to connect to the URL built into the firmware. This URL is pointing to the NGCP provisioning server (in case of NGCP Carrier: `web01` node) listening on TCP port 1444 for HTTPS sessions.

The prerequisites for the device provisioning are that the device has a routable IP address and can reach the IP address of the NGCP provisioning interface.

The Audiocodes device should request the firmware file or CLI configuration file from the NGCP platform. The firmware versions and CLI config versions are decoupled from each other; the NGCP can not enforce specific version of the firmware on the device. Instead, it should be requested by the device itself. In other words, provisioning is a *pull* and not a *push* process.

NGCP expects the provisioning request from the Audiocodes device after SSL handshake and serves the requested file to the device if the device provides valid MAC address as the part of the URL. The MAC address is used to identify the device to the NGCP platform. The firmware and CLI config files are provided at the following URLs:

- the base URL to download firmwares: `https://<NGCP_IP>:1444/device/autoprov/firmware/001122334455/455/from/0/latest`
- the base URL to download CLI config: `https://<NGCP_IP>:1444/device/autoprov/config/001122334455`

where 001122334455 should be replaced with the actual device's MAC address and `<NGCP_IP>` with IP address of the NGCP provisioning interface.

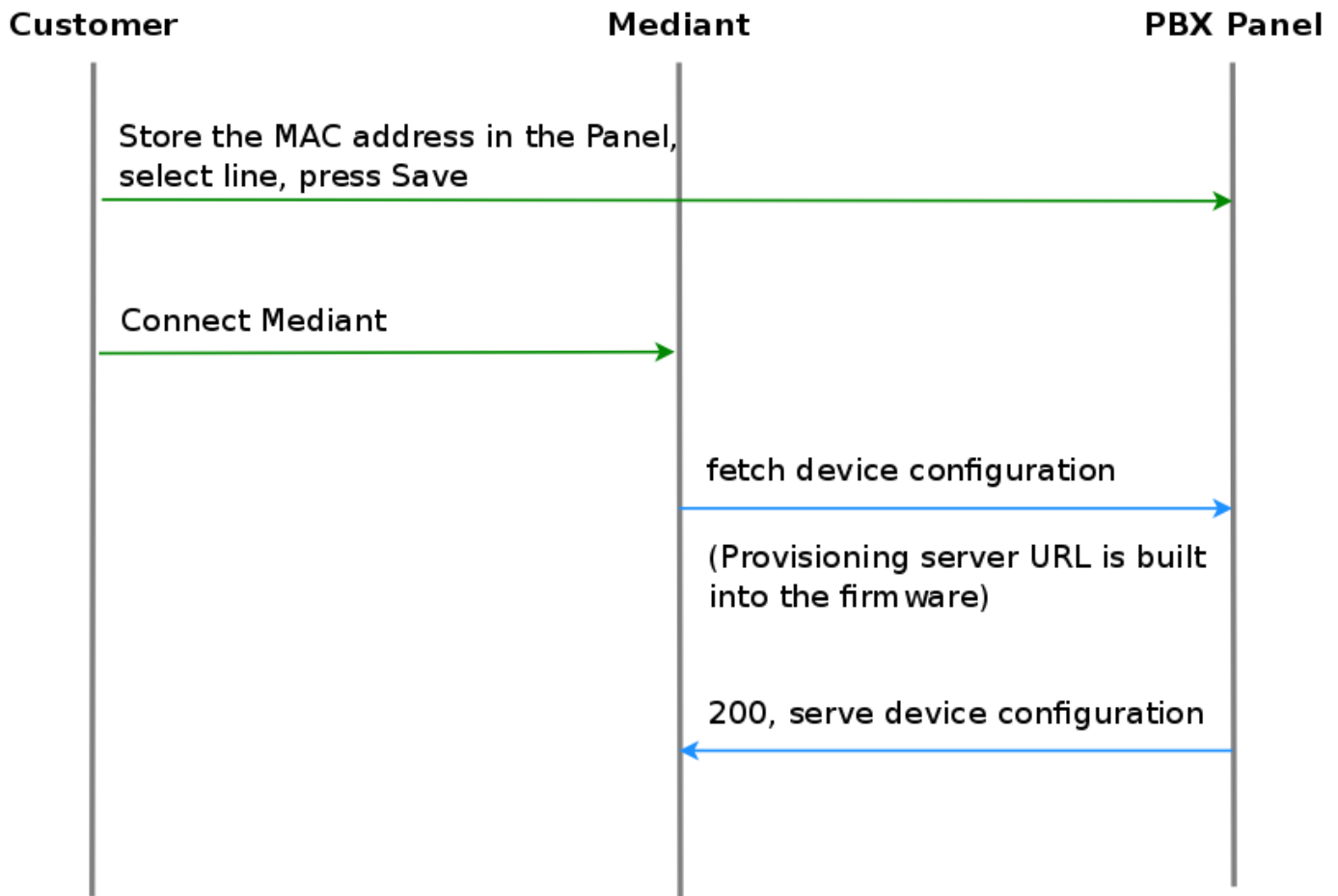


Figure 103: Initially bootstrap a Mediant gateway

**Device management basics**

The list of device models, firmwares and configurations are global to a reseller and are available for end customer. This data is initially provided by Sipwise as bulk upload of all supported phone models. The firmwares and settings are stored in the database on the DB node pair(s). The NGCP leverages the Cloud PBX module with its template system to generate the configurations and firmware files from database on the fly. Please refer to the following chapters in NGCP handbook for the current information on how to perform device management:

- [Uploading device firmwares](#) Section 14.1.1.2
- [Creating device configuration](#) Section 14.1.1.3
- [Creating device profiles](#) Section 14.1.1.4

**Parameterizing the Device Configuration Template**

The device-specific parameters are filled in by the system individually when a physical device fetches its configuration file. Parameters from the NGCP panel:

- `username`: Subscriber Details → Master Data → SIP Username

- `password`: Subscriber Details → Master Data → SIP Password
- `domain`: Subscriber Details → Master Data → Domain
- `extension`: Subscriber Details → Master Data → Extension
- `area code`: Subscriber Preferences → Number Manipulations → ac
- `country code`: Subscriber Preferences → Number Manipulations → cc

The produced **CLI config file** has the following structure:

1. SIP account credentials:

```
"sip-definition account 0"
```

- `user-name` [username]
- `password` [password]
- `host-name` [domain]
- `register` reg
- `contact-user` "[country code][area code][extension]"

2. IP Groups:

```
"voip-network ip-group 1" and "voip-network ip-group 2"
```

- `sip-group-name` [domain]

3. Proxy and registration settings:

```
"sip-definition proxy-and-registration"
```

- `set gw-name` [domain]

4. Manipulations:

- `manipulation-name` "from trunk domain":

```
"sbc manipulations message-manipulations 3"
```

```
– action-value "[% line.domain %]"
```

- `manipulation-name` "clip no screening":

```
"sbc manipulations message-manipulations 8"
```

```
– action-value "<sip:[country code][area code][extension]@' + param.ipg.dst.host + '
>' "
```

*Specific CLI parameters are:*



- [IPPBX\_Hostname]
- [IPPBX\_server\_IP]

which are used at the following configuration parameters:

- Proxy settings:

```
"voip-network proxy-ip 1"
```

```
– proxy-address [IPPBX_Hostname]
```

- Manipulations:

```
"sbc manipulations message-manipulations 1"
```

```
– action-value [IPPBX_Hostname]
```

#### 14.1.11 Device Provisioning and Deployment Workflows

This chapter provides information and hints for preparing and performing the deployment of certain VoIP devices at customer sites, that have a customer-facing interface which also needs customisation.

##### 14.1.11.1 Audiocodes Mediant Device Provisioning Workflow

Audiocodes ISDN gateways and eSBCs are devices used to connect legacy (ISDN) PBX and IP-PBX to the Sipwise NGCP platform and maintain their operations within the Operator's network. Sipwise NGCP offers a *SipConnect 1.1* compliant signaling and media interface to connect SIP trunks to the platform. In addition to this interface, the Sipwise NGCP provides an auto-provisioning mechanism to configure SIP endpoints like IP phones, media gateways and eSBCs.

##### **Provisioning URL**

An Audiocodes device needs to obtain the provisioning URL of the Sipwise NGCP in one way or the other to request its device configuration and subsequently download specific firmwares, obtain SIP credentials to connect to the network facing side, and configure the customer facing side for customer devices to connect either via ISDN or SIP. Typical ways of obtaining the provisioning URL for a SIP endpoint are:

- using DHCP option-66 (in a pre-staging environment or directly at the customer premise) where vendor-specific Redirect Servers are configured in the default configuration or firmware
- getting pre-configured per deployment from the SIP endpoint vendor
- getting pre-configured per deployment by a 3rd party distributor

The assumption is that Audiocodes devices are supplied with a firmware (and all required SSL certificates) being pre-configured and the provisioning URL pointing to an Operator URL the Sipwise NGCP is serving, before handing the devices over to field service engineers doing the truck rolls.

### **Field Configuration**

The Sipwise NGCP provides a SipConnect 1.1 compliant interface on the network side for the Audiocodes devices. This interface clearly defines the numbering formats of the calling and called party, the SIP header mechanisms to provide CLI restriction, the RTP codecs, etc.

On the customer facing side, however, those variables might be different from deployment to deployment:

- An IP-PBX might choose to only send its extension as calling party number, or might choose to send the full number in national format.
- It might choose to use the SIP From-header mechanisms to suppress displaying of the CLI, or use the SIP Privacy header.
- The same uncertainty exists to some extent for a legacy PBX connecting via ISDN to the Audiocodes device.

The assumption here is that a field service engineer is NOT supposed to change the Audiocodes configuration in order to make the customer interface work, as this will lead to big issues in maintaining those local changes, especially if a replacement of the device is necessary. Instead, the Audiocodes configuration must ensure that all different kinds of variants in terms of SIP headers, codecs and number formats are translated correctly to the network side and vice versa. If it turns out that there are scenarios in the field which are not handled correctly, temporary local changes might be performed to finish a truck roll, but those changes MUST be communicated to the platform operator, and the server-side configuration templates must be adapted to handle those scenarios gracefully as well.

For deployments with ISDN interfaces on the customer facing side of the Audiocodes, different *Device Profiles* with specific *Device Configurations* per *Device Model* must exist to handle certain scenarios, specifically whether the ISDN interface is operating in Point-to-Point or Point-to-Multipoint mode. Configuration options like which side is providing the clock-rate are to be defined up-front, and the PBX must be reconfigured to adhere to the configuration.

### **Network Configuration**

On the network facing side, both the ISDN and eSBC style deployments have to be designed to obtain an IP address via DHCP. The definition of the IP address ranges is up to the Operator. It may or may not be NAT-ed, but it is advised to use a private IP range directly routed in the back-bone to avoid NAT.

On the customer facing side, networking is only relevant for the eSBC deployment. In order to make the IP-PBX configuration as stream-lined as possible, a pre-defined network should be established on the customer interface of the Audiocodes device.

---

#### **Tip**

The proposal is to define a network 192.168.255.0/24 with the Audiocodes device using the IP 192.168.255.2 (leaving the 192.168.255.1 to a possible gateway). The IP-PBX could obtain its IP address via DHCP from a DHCP server running on the Audiocodes device (e.g. serving IP addresses in the range of 192.168.255.100-254), or could have it configured manually (e.g. in the range of 192.168.255.3-99). Since the Audiocodes device IP on the customer side is always fixed at 192.168.255.2, the IP-PBX for each customer can be configured the same way, pointing the SIP proxy/registrar or outbound proxy always to this IP.

---

The customer facing side is outside the Sipwise demarcation line, that's why the network configuration mentioned above only serves as proposal and any feedback is highly welcome. However, it must be clearly communicated how the customer facing

network is going to be configured, because the Sipwise NGCP needs to incorporate this configuration into the Audiocodes configuration templates.

#### 14.1.11.2 Audiocodes Mediant Device Deployment Workflow

##### *Pre-Configuration on Sipwise NGCP platform*

1. Before connecting a customer to a SIP trunk, it must be clear which Audiocodes *Device Model* is going to be used (depending on if, which and how many ISDN ports are necessary) and which *Device Profile* for the *Device Model* is required (eSBC mode, ISDN P-to-P or P-to-MP mode). Based on that, the correct physical device must be picked.
2. Next, the customer has to be created on the Sipwise NGCP. This step requires the creation of the customer, and the creation of a subscriber within this customer. For the subscriber, the proper E.164 numbers or number blocks must be assigned, and the correct subscriber preferences must be set for the network interface to adhere to the SipConnect 1.1 interface. This step is automated by a script provided by Sipwise until the provisioning work-flow is fully integrated with Operator's OSS/BSS systems. *Required parameters are:*
  - an external customer id to relate the customer entity on the Sipwise NGCP with a customer identifier in Operator's IT systems
  - a billing profile name
  - a subscriber username and password, the domain the subscriber is configured for
  - the numbers or number blocks assigned to the subscriber, and the network provided number of the subscriber
  - optional information is geographic location information and IP network information to properly map emergency calls
3. Finally, the association between the MAC address of the Audiocodes device and the SIP subscriber to be used on the SIP trunk must be established. This step is also automated by a script provided by Sipwise. *Required parameters are:*
  - the subscriber id
  - the Device Profile to be used
  - and the MAC address of the Audiocodes device

##### **Installation**

Once the above requirements are fulfilled and the customer is created on the Sipwise NGCP, the Audiocodes device can be installed at the customer premise.

When the Audiocodes device boots, it requests the configuration file from the Sipwise NGCP by issuing a GET request via HTTPS.

For **authentication and authorization** purposes, the Sipwise NGCP requests an SSL client certificate from the device and will check whether it's signed by a Certificate Authority known to the Sipwise NGCP. Therefore, Audiocodes must provide the CA certificate used to sign the devices' client certificates to Sipwise to allow for this process. Also, the Sipwise NGCP will provide an SSL server certificate to the device. The device must validate this certificate in order to prevent man-in-the-middle attacks. Options here are to have:

- Sipwise provide a self-signed certificate to Audiocodes for Audiocodes or a 3rd party distribution partner to configure it as trusted CA in the pre-staging process

- the Operator provide a certificate signed by a CA which is already in the trust store of the Audiocodes devices.

Once the secured HTTPS connection is established, the Sipwise NGCP will provide a CLI style configuration file, with its content depending on the pre-configured *Device Profile* and subscriber association to the device's MAC address.

The configuration includes the firmware version of the latest available firmware configured for the *Device Model*, and a URL defining from where to obtain it. The configuration details on how the Audiocodes devices manage the scheduling of firmware updates are to be provided by Audiocodes or its partners, since this is out of scope for Sipwise. Ideally, firmware updates should only be performed if the device is idle (no calls running), and within a specific time-frame (e.g. between 1 a.m. and 5 a.m. once a certain firmware version is reached, including some random variation to prevent all devices to download a new firmware version at the same time).

### **Device Replacement**

If a customer requires the replacement of a device, e.g. due to hardware issues or due to changing the number or type of ISDN interfaces, a new association of the new device MAC, its *Device Profile* and the subscriber must be established.

In order to make the change as seamless as possible for the customer, a new device is created for the customer with the new MAC, a proper *Device Profile*, but the same subscriber as used on the old device. Once the new device boots at the customer premise, it will obtain its configuration and will register with the same subscriber as the old device (in case it's still operational). For inbound calls to the customer, this will cause parallel ringing to take place, and it's up to the customer or the field engineer when to re-configure or re-cable the PBX to connect to one or the other device.

Once the old device is decommissioned, the old MAC association can be deleted on the Sipwise NGCP.

#### **14.1.12 List of available pre-configured devices**

Vendor	Model	Available from release
Audiocodes	Mediant800	mr4.1.1.1
Cisco	ATA112	mr3.4.1.1
Cisco	ATA122	mr3.4.1.1
Cisco	SPA232D	mr3.4.1.1
Cisco	SPA301	mr3.4.1.1
Cisco	SPA303	mr3.4.1.1
Cisco	SPA501G	mr3.4.1.1
Cisco	SPA502G	mr3.4.1.1
Cisco	SPA512G	mr3.4.1.1
Cisco	SPA504G	mr3.4.1.1
Cisco	SPA504G + SPA500S	mr3.7.1.4
Cisco	SPA504G + two SPA500S	mr3.7.1.4
Cisco	SPA514G	mr3.4.1.1
Cisco	SPA508G	mr3.4.1.1
Cisco	SPA509G	mr3.4.1.1
Cisco	SPA525G	mr3.4.1.1
Innovaphone	IP2X2X	mr3.8.3.3

Vendor	Model	Available from release
Innovaphone	IP230-X	mr3.8.3.3
Innovaphone	IP232	mr3.8.3.3
Innovaphone	IP222	mr3.8.3.3
Innovaphone	IP240	mr3.8.3.3
Innovaphone	IP22	mr3.8.3.3
Innovaphone	IP111	mr3.8.3.3
Panasonic	KX-UT113	mr3.7.1.1
Panasonic	KX-UT123	mr3.7.1.1
Panasonic	KX-UT133	mr3.7.1.1
Panasonic	KX-UT136	mr3.7.1.1
Panasonic	KX-UT248	mr3.7.1.1
Yealink	SIP-T19P	mr3.7.1.1
Yealink	SIP-T20P	mr3.7.1.1
Yealink	SIP-T21P	mr3.7.1.1
Yealink	SIP-T22P	mr3.7.1.1
Yealink	SIP-T23P	mr3.7.1.1
Yealink	SIP-T23G	mr3.7.1.1
Yealink	SIP-T26P	mr3.7.1.1
Yealink	SIP-T28P	mr3.7.1.1
Yealink	SIP-T32G	mr3.7.1.1
Yealink	SIP-T38G	mr3.7.1.1
Yealink	SIP-T41P	mr3.7.1.1
Yealink	SIP-T42G	mr3.7.1.1
Yealink	SIP-T46G	mr3.7.1.1
Yealink	SIP-T48G	mr3.7.1.1
Yealink	SIP-T28P + EXP39	mr3.8.1.1
Yealink	SIP-T28P + two EXP39	mr3.8.1.1
Yealink	W52P	mr3.7.1.6

#### 14.1.12.1 Cisco Devices

##### IP Phones

Model	IPv6	TLS	SRTP	Auto provisioning	Private Line	Shared Line	Busy Lamp	Extension Boards
SPA301	N	Y	Y	http	1	1	0	N
SPA303	N	Y	Y	http	1-3	1-3	1-2	N
SPA501G	N	Y	Y	http	1-8	1-8	1-7	N
SPA502G	N	Y	Y	http	1	1	0	N
SPA512G	N	N	Y	http	1	1	0	N
SPA504G	N	Y	Y	http	1-4	1-4	1-3	2
SPA514G	N	N	Y	http	1-4	1-4	1-3	N
SPA508G	N	Y	Y	http	1-8	1-8	1-7	N

Model	IPv6	TLS	SRTP	Auto provisioning	Private Line	Shared Line	Busy Lamp	Extension Boards
SPA509G	N	Y	Y	http	1-12	1-12	1-11	N
SPA525G	N	Y	N	http	1-5	1-5	1-4	N

### Analog Adapters

Model	IPv6	TLS	SRTP	Auto provisioning	Private Line	Shared Line	Busy Lamp
SPA232D	N	Y	Y	http	1-6	0	0
ATA112	Y	Y	Y	http	1-2	0	0
ATA122	Y	Y	Y	http	1-2	0	0

### Extension Boards

Model	Ports	Buttons	Busy Lamp	Supported phones
SPA500S	2	32	1-32	SPA500

## 14.1.12.2 Panasonic Devices

### IP Phones

Model	IPv6	TLS	SRTP	Auto provisioning	Private Line	Shared Line	Busy Lamp	Extension Boards
KX-UT113	N	N	N	redirect	1-2	1-2	0	N
KX-UT123	N	N	N	redirect	1-2	1-2	0	N
KX-UT133	N	N	N	redirect	1-4	1-4	1-23	N
KX-UT136	N	N	N	redirect	1-4	1-4	1-23	N
KX-UT248	N	N	Y	redirect	1-6	1-6	1-23	N

## 14.1.12.3 Yealink Devices

### IP Phones

Model	IPv6	TLS	SRTP	Auto provisioning	Private Line	Shared Line	Busy Lamp	Extension Boards
SIP-T19P	Y	Y	Y	redirect	1	1	0	N
SIP-T20P	Y	Y	Y	redirect	1	1	0	N
SIP-T21P	Y	Y	Y	redirect	1-2	1-2	1	N
SIP-T22P	Y	Y	Y	redirect	1-3	1-3	1-2	N
SIP-T23P	Y	Y	Y	redirect	1-3	1-3	1-2	N
SIP-T23G	Y	Y	Y	redirect	1-3	1-3	1-2	N
SIP-T26P	Y	Y	Y	redirect	1-3	1-3	1-12	N

Model	IPv6	TLS	S RTP	Auto provisioning	Private Line	Shared Line	Busy Lamp	Extension Boards
SIP-T28P	Y	Y	Y	redirect	1-6	1-6	1-15	2
SIP-T32G	Y	Y	Y	redirect	1-3	1-3	1-2	N
SIP-T38G	Y	Y	Y	redirect	1-6	1-6	1-15	N
SIP-T41P	Y	Y	Y	redirect	1-3	1-3	1-14	N
SIP-T42G	Y	Y	Y	redirect	1-3	1-3	1-14	N
SIP-T46G	Y	Y	Y	redirect	1-6	1-6	1-26	N
SIP-T48G	Y	Y	Y	redirect	1-6	1-6	1-28	N
W52P	N	Y	Y	redirect	1-5	1-5	0	N

#### 14.1.12.4 Innovaphone Devices

##### *IP Phones*

Model	IPv6	TLS	S RTP	Auto provisioning	Private Line	Shared Line	Busy Lamp	Extension Boards
IP232	N	Y	Y	dhcp	1	0	1-16	2
IP222	N	Y	Y	dhcp	1	0	1-16	2
IP240	N	N	N	dhcp	1	0	1-15	2
IP111	N	Y	Y	dhcp	1	0	1-16	0

##### *Analog Adapters*

Model	IPv6	TLS	S RTP	Auto provisioning	Private Line	Shared Line	Busy Lamp
IP22	N	Y	Y	dhcp	1	0	0

##### *Extension Boards*

Model	Ports	Buttons	Busy Lamp	Supported phones
IP2X2X	2	64	1-32	IP2x2
IP230-X	2	30	1-30	IP230

#### 14.1.12.5 Audiocodes Devices

Model	IPv6	TLS	S RTP	Auto provisioning	Private Line	Shared Line	Busy Lamp	Speed Dial
Mediant800	Y	Y	Y	dhcp	1	0	0	N

**14.1.13 Phone features****14.1.13.1 Cisco phones****SPA301****1) Soft keys**

Not available.

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- hold/unhold

**3) Line keys**

Not available.

**4) VSC**

- directed pickup
- park/unpark

**SPA303****1) Soft keys****Idle:**

redial	lcr	dir	dnd >
< cfwd	unpark		

**Idle with missed calls:**

lcr			miss
-----	--	--	------

**Call:**

hold	endCall	conf	xfer >
< bxfer	park		

**Call on hold:**

resume	endCall	newCall	redial >
< dir	cfwd	dnd	



**Ringing:**

answer	ignore		
--------	--------	--	--

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- hold/unhold

**3) Line keys**

- BLF monitoring
- directed pickup

**4) VSC**

- directed pickup

**SPA501G****1) Soft keys****Idle:**

redial	lcr	dir	dnd >
< cfwd	unpark		

**Idle with missed calls:**

lcr			miss
-----	--	--	------

**Call:**

hold/resume	endCall	conf	xfer >
< bxfer	park		

**Call on hold:**

resume	endCall	newCall	redial >
< dir	cfwd	dnd	

**Ringing:**

answer	reject		
--------	--------	--	--

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- hold/unhold

**3) Line keys**

- BLF monitoring
- directed pickup

**4) VSC**

- directed pickup

**SPA502G****1) Soft keys****Idle:**

redial	lcr	dir	dnd >
< cfwd	unpark		

**Idle with missed calls:**

lcr			miss
-----	--	--	------

**Call:**

hold/resume	endCall	conf	xfer >
< bxfer	park		

**Call on hold:**

resume	endCall	newCall	redial >
< dir	cfwd	dnd	

**Ringling:**

answer	reject		
--------	--------	--	--

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- hold/unhold

**3) Line keys**

Not available.

**4) VSC**

- directed pickup

**SPA504G****1) Soft keys****Idle:**

redial	lcr	dir	dnd >
< cfwd	unpark		

**Idle with missed calls:**

lcr			miss
-----	--	--	------

**Call:**

hold/resume	endCall	conf	xfer >
< bxfer	park		

**Call on hold:**

resume	endCall	newCall	redial >
< dir	cfwd	dnd	

**Ringling:**

answer	reject		
--------	--------	--	--

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- hold/unhold

**3) Line keys**

- BLF monitoring
- directed pickup

**4) VSC**

- directed pickup

**SPA512G****1) Soft keys****Idle:**

redial	lcr	dir	dnd >
< cfwd	unpark		

**Idle with missed calls:**

lcr			miss
-----	--	--	------

**Call:**

hold/resume	endCall	conf	xfer >
< bxfer	park		

**Call on hold:**

resume	endCall	newCall	redial >
< dir	cfwd	dnd	

**Ringling:**

answer	reject		
--------	--------	--	--

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- hold/unhold

**3) Line keys**

Not available.

**4) VSC**

- directed pickup

**SPA514G****1) Soft keys****Idle:**

redial	lcr	dir	dnd >
< cfwd	unpark		

**Idle with missed calls:**

lcr			miss
-----	--	--	------

**Call:**

hold/resume	endCall	conf	xfer >
< bxfer	park		

**Call on hold:**

resume	endCall	newCall	redial >
< dir	cfwd	dnd	

**Ringing:**

answer	reject		
--------	--------	--	--

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- hold/unhold

**3) Line keys**

- BLF monitoring
- directed pickup

**4) VSC**

- directed pickup

**SPA509G****1) Soft keys****Idle:**

redial	lcr	dir	dnd >
< cfwd	unpark		

**Idle with missed calls:**

lcr			miss
-----	--	--	------

**Call:**

hold/resume	endCall	conf	xfer >
< bxfer	park		

**Call on hold:**

resume	endCall	newCall	redial >
< dir	cfwd	dnd	

**Ringling:**

answer	reject		
--------	--------	--	--

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- hold/unhold

**3) Line keys**

- BLF monitoring
- directed pickup

**4) VSC**

- directed pickup

**SPA508G****1) Soft keys**

**Idle:**

redial	lcr	dir	dnd >
< cfwd	unpark		

**Idle with missed calls:**

lcr			miss
-----	--	--	------

**Call:**

hold/resume	endCall	conf	xfer >
< bxfer	park		

**Call on hold:**

resume	endCall	newCall	redial >
< dir	cfwd	dnd	

**Ringling:**

answer	reject		
--------	--------	--	--

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- hold/unhold

**3) Line keys**

- BLF monitoring
- directed pickup

**4) VSC**

- directed pickup

**SPA525G****1) Soft keys****Idle:**

Redial	call Rtn	Directory	DND >
< Forward	Unpark		

**Idle with missed calls:**

Call Rtn			Miss
----------	--	--	------

**Call:**

Hold	End Call	Conf	Transfer >
BlindXfer	Park		

**Call on hold:**

Resume	EndCall	EewCall	Redial >
< Directory	Forward	DND	

**Ringling:**

Answer	Ignore		
--------	--------	--	--

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- hold/unhold

**3) Line keys**

- BLF monitoring
- directed pickup

**4) VSC**

- directed pickup

**14.1.13.2 Yealink phones****T19P****1) Soft keys****Idle:**



History		DND	Menu
---------	--	-----	------

**Idle with missed calls:**

Exit			View
------	--	--	------

**Call:**

Tran	Hold	Conf	Cancel
------	------	------	--------

**Call on hold:**

Tran	Resume	NewCall	Cancel
------	--------	---------	--------

**Ringling:**

Answer	FWD	Silence	Reject
--------	-----	---------	--------

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- redial
- transfer

**3) Line keys**

Not available.

**4) VSC**

- transfer park
- directed pick up
- park/unpark

***T20P*****1) Soft keys****Idle:**

History		DND	Menu
---------	--	-----	------

**Idle with missed calls:**

Exit			View
------	--	--	------

**Call:**

Tran	Hold	Conf	Cancel
------	------	------	--------

**Call on hold:**

Tran	Resume	NewCall	Cancel
------	--------	---------	--------

**Ringling:**

Answer	FWD	Silence	Reject
--------	-----	---------	--------

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- redial
- transfer

**3) Line keys**

- BLF monitoring
- directed pickup

**4) VSC**

- transfer park
- park/unpark

***T21P*****1) Soft keys****Idle:**

History		DND	Menu
---------	--	-----	------

**Idle with missed calls:**

Exit			View
------	--	--	------

**Call:**

Tran	Hold	Conf	Cancel
------	------	------	--------

**Call on hold:**

Tran	Resume	NewCall	Cancel
------	--------	---------	--------

**Ringing:**

Answer	FWD	Silence	Reject
--------	-----	---------	--------

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- redial
- transfer

**3) Line keys**

- BLF monitoring
- directed pickup

**4) VSC**

- transfer park
- park/unpark

***T22P*****1) Soft keys****Idle:**

History		DND	Menu
---------	--	-----	------

**Idle with missed calls:**

Exit			View
------	--	--	------

**Call:**

Tran	Hold	Conf	Cancel
------	------	------	--------

**Call on hold:**

Tran	Resume	NewCall	Cancel
------	--------	---------	--------

**Ringing:**

Answer	FWD	Silence	Reject
--------	-----	---------	--------

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- redial
- transfer

**3) Line keys**

- BLF monitoring
- directed pickup

**4) VSC**

- park/unpark
- transfer park

***T23P*****1) Soft keys****Idle:**

History		DND	Menu
---------	--	-----	------

**Idle with missed calls:**

Exit			View
------	--	--	------

**Call:**

Tran	Hold	Conf	Cancel
------	------	------	--------

**Call on hold:**

Tran	Resume	NewCall	Cancel
------	--------	---------	--------

**Ringing:**

Answer	FWD	Silence	Reject
--------	-----	---------	--------

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- redial
- transfer

**3) Line keys**

- BLF monitoring
- directed pickup

**4) VSC**

- park/unpark
- transfer park

**T23G****1) Soft keys****Idle:**

History	Dir	DND	Menu
---------	-----	-----	------

**Idle with missed calls:**

Exit			View
------	--	--	------

**Call:**

Tran	Hold	Conf	EndCall
------	------	------	---------

**Call on hold:**

Tran	Resume	NewCall	EndCall
------	--------	---------	---------

**Ringing:**

Answer	FWD		Reject
--------	-----	--	--------

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- redial
- transfer

**3) Line keys**

- BLF monitoring
- directed pickup

**4) VSC**

- unpark
- transfer park

***T26P*****1) Soft keys****Idle:**

History		DND	Menu
---------	--	-----	------

**Idle with missed calls:**

Exit			View
------	--	--	------

**Call:**

Tran	Hold	Conf	Cancel
------	------	------	--------

**Call on hold:**

Tran	Resume	NewCall	Cancel
------	--------	---------	--------

**Ringing:**

Answer	FWD	Silence	Reject
--------	-----	---------	--------

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- redial
- transfer

**3) Line keys**

- BLF monitoring
- directed pickup

**4) VSC**

- unpark
- transfer park

***T28P*****1) Soft keys****Idle:**

History		DND	Menu
---------	--	-----	------

**Idle with missed calls:**

Exit			View
------	--	--	------

**Call:**

Tran	Hold	Conf	Cancel
------	------	------	--------

**Call on hold:**

Tran	Resume	NewCall	Cancel
------	--------	---------	--------

**Ringing:**

Answer	FWD	Silence	Reject
--------	-----	---------	--------

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- redial
- transfer

**3) Line keys**

- BLF monitoring
- directed pickup

**4) VSC**

- park/unpark
- transfer park

**T32G****1) Soft keys****Idle:**

History		DND	Menu
---------	--	-----	------

**Idle with missed calls:**

Exit			View
------	--	--	------

**Call:**

Tran	Hold	Conf	Cancel
------	------	------	--------

**Call on hold:**

Tran	Resume	NewCall	Cancel
------	--------	---------	--------

**Ringing:**



Answer	FWD	Silence	Reject
--------	-----	---------	--------

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- redial
- transfer

**3) Line keys**

- BLF monitoring
- directed pickup

**4) VSC**

- unpark
- transfer park

**T38G****1) Soft keys****Idle:**

History		DND	Menu
---------	--	-----	------

**Idle with missed calls:**

Exit			View
------	--	--	------

**Call:**

Tran	Hold	Conf	Cancel
------	------	------	--------

**Call on hold:**

Tran	Resume	NewCall	Cancel
------	--------	---------	--------

**Ringling:**

Answer	FWD	Silence	Reject
--------	-----	---------	--------

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- redial
- transfer

**3) Line keys**

- BLF monitoring
- directed pickup

**4) VSC**

- unpark
- transfer park

***T41P*****1) Soft keys****Idle:**

History		DND	Menu
---------	--	-----	------

**Idle with missed calls:**

Exit			View
------	--	--	------

**Call:**

Tran	Hold	Conf	Cancel
------	------	------	--------

**Call on hold:**

Tran	Resume	NewCall	Cancel
------	--------	---------	--------

**Ringling:**

Answer	FWD	Silence	Reject
--------	-----	---------	--------

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- redial
- transfer

### 3) Line keys

- BLF monitoring
- directed pickup

### 4) VSC

- park/unpark
- transfer park

## T42G

### 1) Soft keys

#### Idle:

History		DND	Menu
---------	--	-----	------

#### Idle with missed calls:

Exit			View
------	--	--	------

#### Call:

Tran	Hold	Conf	Cancel
------	------	------	--------

#### Call on hold:

Tran	Resume	NewCall	Cancel
------	--------	---------	--------

#### Ringing:

Answer	FWD	Silence	Reject
--------	-----	---------	--------

### 2) Hard keys

- vm
- redial

- transfer

### 3) Line keys

- BLF monitoring
- directed pickup

### 4) VSC

- park/unpark
- transfer park

## T46G

### 1) Soft keys

#### Idle:

History		DND	Menu
---------	--	-----	------

#### Idle with missed calls:

Exit			View
------	--	--	------

#### Call:

Tran	Hold	Conf	Cancel
------	------	------	--------

#### Call on hold:

Tran	Resume	NewCall	Cancel
------	--------	---------	--------

#### Ringling:

Answer	FWD	Silence	Reject
--------	-----	---------	--------

### 2) Hard keys

- vm
- redial
- transfer

**3) Line keys**

- BLF monitoring
- directed pickup

**4) VSC**

- park/unpark
- transfer park

**T48G****1) Soft keys****Idle:**

History		DND	Menu
---------	--	-----	------

**Idle with missed calls:**

Exit			View
------	--	--	------

**Call:**

Tran	Hold	Conf	Cancel
------	------	------	--------

**Call on hold:**

Tran	Resume	NewCall	Cancel
------	--------	---------	--------

**Ringling:**

Answer	FWD	Silence	Reject
--------	-----	---------	--------

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- redial
- transfer

**3) Line keys**

- BLF monitoring
- directed pickup

#### 4) VSC

- park/unpark
- transfer park

### W52P

#### 1) Soft keys

##### Idle:

History	Line
---------	------

##### Idle with missed calls:

Exit	View
------	------

##### Call:

Ext. Call	Options
-----------	---------

##### Call on hold:

Resume	Line
--------	------

##### Ringing:

Accept	
--------	--

#### 2) Hard keys

- vm
- redirect

#### 3) VSC

- park/unpark
- transfer park

### 14.1.13.3 Panasonic phones

#### *KX-UT113*

##### 1) Soft keys

###### Idle:

Settings	Call Log	Phone book	
----------	----------	------------	--

###### Call:

Blind		Phone book	
-------	--	------------	--

###### Call on hold:

	Call Log	Phone book	
--	----------	------------	--

###### Ringling:

Answer		Reject	
--------	--	--------	--

##### 2) Hard keys

- vm
- forward/dnd
- hold/unhold
- redial
- recall
- transfer
- conf

##### 3) Line keys

Not available.

##### 4) VSC

- park/unpark
- transfer park

**KX-UT123****1) Soft keys****Idle:**

Settings	Call Log	Phone book	
----------	----------	------------	--

**Call:**

Blind		Phone book	
-------	--	------------	--

**Call on hold:**

	Call Log	Phone book	
--	----------	------------	--

**Ringling:**

Answer		Reject	
--------	--	--------	--

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- forward/dnd
- hold/unhold
- redial
- recall
- transfer
- conf

**3) Line keys**

Not available.

**4) VSC**

- park/unpark
- transfer park

**KX-UT133****1) Soft keys****Idle:**



Settings	Call Log	Phone book	
----------	----------	------------	--

**Call:**

Blind		Phone book	
-------	--	------------	--

**Call on hold:**

	Call Log	Phone book	
--	----------	------------	--

**Ringing:**

Answer		Reject	
--------	--	--------	--

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- forward/dnd
- hold/unhold
- redial
- recall
- transfer
- conf

**3) Line keys**

- BLF monitoring
- directed pickup

**4) VSC**

- unpark
- transfer park

**KX-UT136****1) Soft keys****Idle:**

Settings	Call Log	Phone book	
----------	----------	------------	--

**Call:**

Blind		Phone book	
-------	--	------------	--

**Call on hold:**

	Call Log	Phone book	
--	----------	------------	--

**Ringing:**

Answer		Reject	
--------	--	--------	--

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- forward/dnd
- hold/unhold
- redial
- recall
- transfer
- conf

**3) Line keys**

- BLF monitoring
- directed pickup

**4) VSC**

- park/unpark
- transfer park

***KX-UT248*****1) Soft keys****Idle:**

Settings	Call Log	Phone book	
----------	----------	------------	--

**Call:**

Blind		Phone book	
-------	--	------------	--

**Call on hold:**

	Call Log	Phone book	
--	----------	------------	--

**Ringling:**

Answer		Reject	
--------	--	--------	--

**2) Hard keys**

- vm
- forward/dnd
- hold/unhold
- redial
- recall
- transfer
- conf

**3) Line keys**

- BLF monitoring
- directed pickup

**4) VSC**

- park/unpark
- transfer park

**14.1.13.4 Innovaphone*****IP222***

## 1) Soft keys

Idle:

Setup	All Calls	Home	Calls	My favorites	Phonebook
-------	-----------	------	-------	--------------	-----------

**Call:**

Hold	Transfer	Park	Cancel
------	----------	------	--------

**Call on hold:**

Resume	Transfer	Park	Cancel
--------	----------	------	--------

**Ringling:**

Answer	Transfer	Silence	Reject
--------	----------	---------	--------

**2) Hard keys**

- hold
- redial

**3) Line keys**

- BLF monitoring

**4) VSC**

- unpark
- transfer park

***IP232*****1) Soft keys****Idle:**

Setup	All Calls	Home	Calls	My favorites	Phonebook
-------	-----------	------	-------	--------------	-----------

**Call:**

Hold	Transfer	Park	Cancel
------	----------	------	--------

**Call on hold:**

Resume	Transfer	Park	Cancel
--------	----------	------	--------

**Ringing:**

Answer	Transfer	Silence	Reject
--------	----------	---------	--------

**2) Hard keys**

- hold
- redial

**3) Line keys**

- BLF monitoring

**4) VSC**

- unpark
- transfer park

**IP111****1) Soft keys****Idle:**

Setup	All Calls	Home	Calls	My favorites	Phonebook
-------	-----------	------	-------	--------------	-----------

**Call:**

Hold	Transfer	Park	Cancel
------	----------	------	--------

**Call on hold:**

Resume	Transfer	Park	Cancel
--------	----------	------	--------

**Ringing:**

Answer	Transfer	Silence	Reject
--------	----------	---------	--------

**2) Hard keys**

- hold
- redial

### 3) Line keys

- BLF monitoring

### 4) VSC

- unpark
- transfer park

## ***IP240***

### 1) Soft keys

Not available.

### 2) Hard keys

- hold
- redial
- conference
- dnd
- forward

### 3) Line keys

- BLF monitoring

### 4) VSC

- transfer park
- unpark

## **14.2 Sipwise sip:phone App (SIP client)**

You can order two commercial Unified Communication Clients for full end-to-end integration of voice, video, chat and presence features. There are two applications available:

- the sip:phone Desktop Client for Microsoft Windows, Apple OSX, and Linux;

- the sip:phone Mobile App for iOS and Android.

Both clients are fully brandable to the customer's corporate identity. The clients are not part of the standard delivery and need to be licensed separately. This handbook discusses the mobile client in details.

We continuously develop the mobile clients to provide new features, as they do not support the full range of features yet.

The sip:phone Mobile App is a mobile client for iOS and Android that supports voice calls via SIP, as well as presence and instant messaging via XMPP. The following sections describe the steps needed to integrate it into your sip:carrier.

#### **14.2.1 Zero Config Launcher**

Part of the mobile apps is a mechanism to sign up to the service via a 3rd party website, which is initiated on the login screen and rendered within the app. During the sign-up process, the 3rd party service is supposed to create a new account and subscriber in the sip:carrier (e.g. automatically via the API) and provide the end user with the access credentials.

The mobile apps come with a zero config mechanism to simplify the end-customer log in using these credentials (especially ruling out the need to manually enter them). It makes it possible to deliver the access credentials via a side channel (e.g. Email, SMS) packed into a URL. The user just clicks the URL, and it automatically launches the app with the correct credentials. The following picture shows the overall workflow.



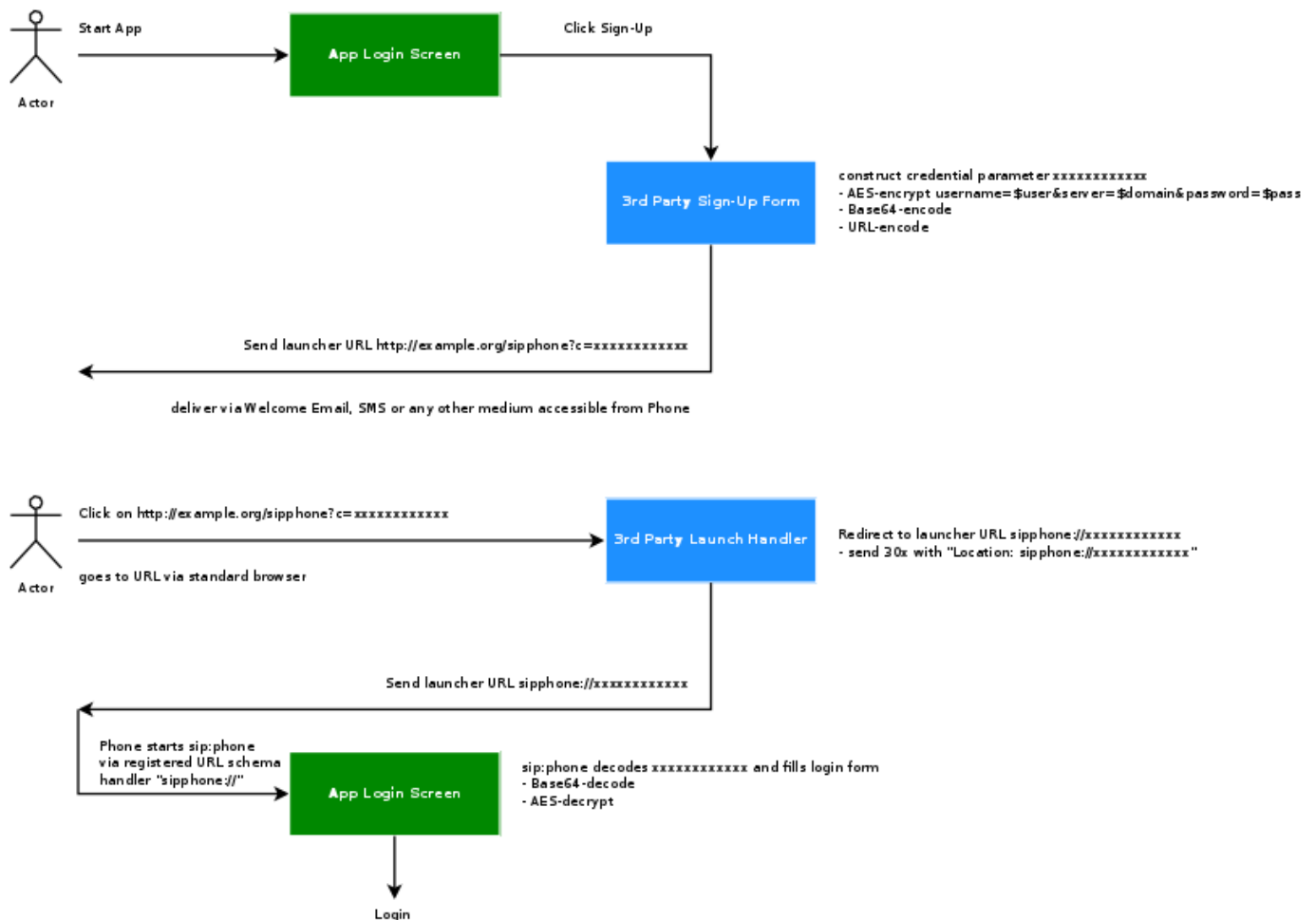


Figure 104: Provisioning Push Workflow

There are two components provided by a 3rd party system. One is the *3rd Party Sign-Up Form*, and the other is the *3rd Party Launch Handler*. The purpose of these components is to allow an end customer to open a link with the access credentials via the sip:phone app.

#### 14.2.1.1 3rd Party Sign-Up Form

The 3rd Party Sign-Up Form is a website the app shows to the end user when he taps the sign-up link on the app *Login Screen*. There, the end customer usually provides his contact details like name, address, phone number and email address, etc. After validation, the website creates an account and a subscriber in the sip:carrier via the API.

After successfully creating the account and the subscriber, this site needs to construct a specially crafted URL, which is sent back to the end customer via a side channel. Ideally, this channel would be an SMS if you want to verify the end customer's mobile number, or an email if you want to check the email address.

The sip:phone app registers a URL schema handler for URLs starting with `sipphone://`. If you start such a link, the app performs a Base64 decoding of the string right after the `sipphone://` prefix and then decrypts the resulting binary string via AES using the keys defined during the branding step. The resulting string is supposed to be

`username=$user&server=$domain&password=$password.`

Therefore, the *3rd Party Sign-Up Form* needs to construct this string using the credentials defined while creating the subscriber via the sip:carrier API, then encrypt it via AES, and finally perform a Base64 encoding of the result.

---

#### Note

Up until and including version mr5.0.2 of the sip:carrier, the SIP login credentials are used here. Future versions will connect to the REST interface of the sip:carrier using the web credentials first and fetch the SIP credentials along with other settings from there.

---

An example Perl code performs encoding of such a string. The AES key and initialization vector (\$key and \$iv) are the standard values of the sip:phone app and should work until you specified other values during the branding process.

```
#!/usr/bin/perl -w
use strict;
use Crypt::Rijndael;
use MIME::Base64;
use URI::Escape;

my $key = 'iBmTdavJ8joPW3HO';
my $iv = 'twW21lQe6cmYwrp3';

my $plain = do { local $/; <> };
# pkcs#5 padding to 16 bytes blocksize
my $pad = 16 - (length $plain) % 16;
$plain .= pack('C', $pad) x $pad;

my $cipher = Crypt::Rijndael->new(
    $key,
    Crypt::Rijndael::MODE_CBC()
);
$cipher->set_iv($iv);
my $encrypted = $cipher->encrypt($plain);
# store b64-encoded string and print to STDOUT
my $b64 = encode_base64($encrypted, '');
print $b64, "\n";
# print to STDOUT using URL escaping also
print uri_escape($b64), "\n";
```

This snippet takes a string from STDIN, encrypts it via AES, encodes it via Base64 and sends the result to STDOUT. It also writes the second line with the same string, but this time, the URL is escaped. To test it, you would run it as follows on a shell, granted it's stored at /path/to/encrypt.pl.

```
echo -n 'username=testuser&server=example.org&password=testpass' \
| /path/to/encrypt.pl
```

This command would result in the output strings `CI8VN8toaE40w8E4OH2rAuFj3Qev9QdLI/Wv/VaBCVK2yNkBZjxE9`

eafXkkrQfmYdeu01PquS5P40zhUq8Mfjg== and CI8VN8toaE40w8E4OH2rAuFj3Qev9QdLI%2FWv%2FVaBCVK2yNkBZjxE9eafXkkrQfmYdeu01PquS5P40zhUq8Mfjg%3D%3D. The sip:phone can use the former string to automatically fill in the login form of the Login Screen if started via a Link like sipphone://CI8VN8toaE40w8E4OH2rAuFj3Qev9QdLI/Wv/VaBCVK2yNkBZjxE9eafXkkrQfmYdeu01PquS5P40zhUq8Mfjg==.

Here is the same code in PHP.

```
#!/usr/bin/php
<?php
$key = "iBmTdavJ8joPW3H0";
$iv = "twW21lQe6cmYwrp3";

$clear = fgets(STDIN);
$cipher = fnEncrypt($clear, $key, $iv);

echo $cipher, "\n";
echo urlencode($cipher), "\n";

function fnEncrypt($clear, $key, $iv) {
    $pad = 16 - strlen($clear) % 16;
    $clear .= str_repeat(pack('C', $pad), $pad);
    return rtrim(base64_encode(mcrypt_encrypt(
        MCRYPT_RIJNDAEL_128, $key, $clear,
        MCRYPT_MODE_CBC, $iv)), "\0");
}
?>
```

Similar to the Perl code, you can call it like this:

```
echo -n 'username=testuser&server=example.org&password=testpass' \
| /path/to/encrypt.php
```

However, a URL with the sipphone:// schema is not displayed as a link in an SMS or an Email client and thus can not be clicked by the end customer, so you need to make a detour via a regular http:// URL. To do so, you need a *3rd Party Launch Handler* to trick the phone to open such a link.

Therefore, that the *3rd Party Sign-Up Form* needs to return a link containing a URL pointing to the *3rd Party Launch Handler* and pass the URL escaped string gathered above to the client via an SMS or an Email. Since it is the regular http:// link, it is clickable on the phone and can be launched from virtually any client (SMS, Email, etc.), which correctly renders an HTML link.

A possible SMS sent to the end customer (via the phone number entered in the sign-up form) could, therefore, look as follows (trying to stay below 140 chars).

```
http://example.org/p?c=CI8VN8toaE40w8E4OH2rAuFj3Qev9QdLI
%2FWv%2FVaBCVK2yNkBZjxE9eafXkkrQfmYdeu01PquS5P40zhUq8Mfjg%3D%3D to launch sipphone
```

An HTML Email could look like this:

```
Welcome to Example.org,
```

```
<a href="http://www.example.org/sipphone?c=CI8VN8toaE40w8E4OH2rAuFj3Qev9QdLI%2FWv%2FVaBCVK2yNkBZjxE9eafXkkrQfmYdeu01PquS5P40zhUq8Mfjg%3D%3D">
click here
</a> to log in.
```

That way, you can do both: verify the contact details of the end customer, and send the end customer the login credentials in a secure manner.

#### 14.2.1.2 3rd Party Launch Handler

The URL `http://www.example.org/sipphone` mentioned above can be any simple script, and its sole purpose is to send back a 301 Moved Permanently or 302 Moved Temporarily with a `Location:sipphone://xxxxxxxxxxxx` header to tell the phone to open this link via the sip:phone app. The `xxxxxxxxxxxx` is the plain (non-URL-escaped) string generated by the above script.

An example CGI script performing this task follows.

```
#!/usr/bin/perl -w
use strict;
use CGI;

my $q = CGI->new;
my $c = $q->param('c');
print CGI::redirect("sipphone://$c");
```

The script simply takes the URL parameter `c` from the URL `http://www.example.org/sipphone?c=CI8VN8toaE40w8E4OH2rAuFj3Qev9QdLI%2FWv%2FVaBCVK2yNkBZjxE9eafXkkrQfmYdeu01PquS5P40zhUq8Mfjg%3D%3D` crafted above and puts its content into a `Location` header using the `sipphone://` schema, and finally sends a 301 Moved Permanently back to the phone.

The phone follows the redirect by opening the URL using the sip:phone app, which in turn decrypts the content and fills in the login form.

---

#### Note

Future versions of the sip:carrier will be shipped with this launch handler integrated into the system. Up until and including the version mr5.0.2, this script needs to be installed on any webserver manually.

---

#### 14.2.2 Mobile Push Notification

The *mobile push* functionality provides the remote start of a mobile application on incoming calls via the Google GCM or the Apple APNS notification services. It enables you to offer your subscribers a modern and convenient service on mobile devices.

**Caution**

Although suspending an application on a phone and waking it up via the mobile push notification service extends battery life, the whole mobile push notification concept is the best effort framework provided by Apple and Google for iOS and Android respectively, and therefore does not guarantee 100% reliability.

**14.2.2.1 Architecture**

If the *mobile push* functionality is enabled and there are no devices registered for a subscriber, the call-flow looks as follows.

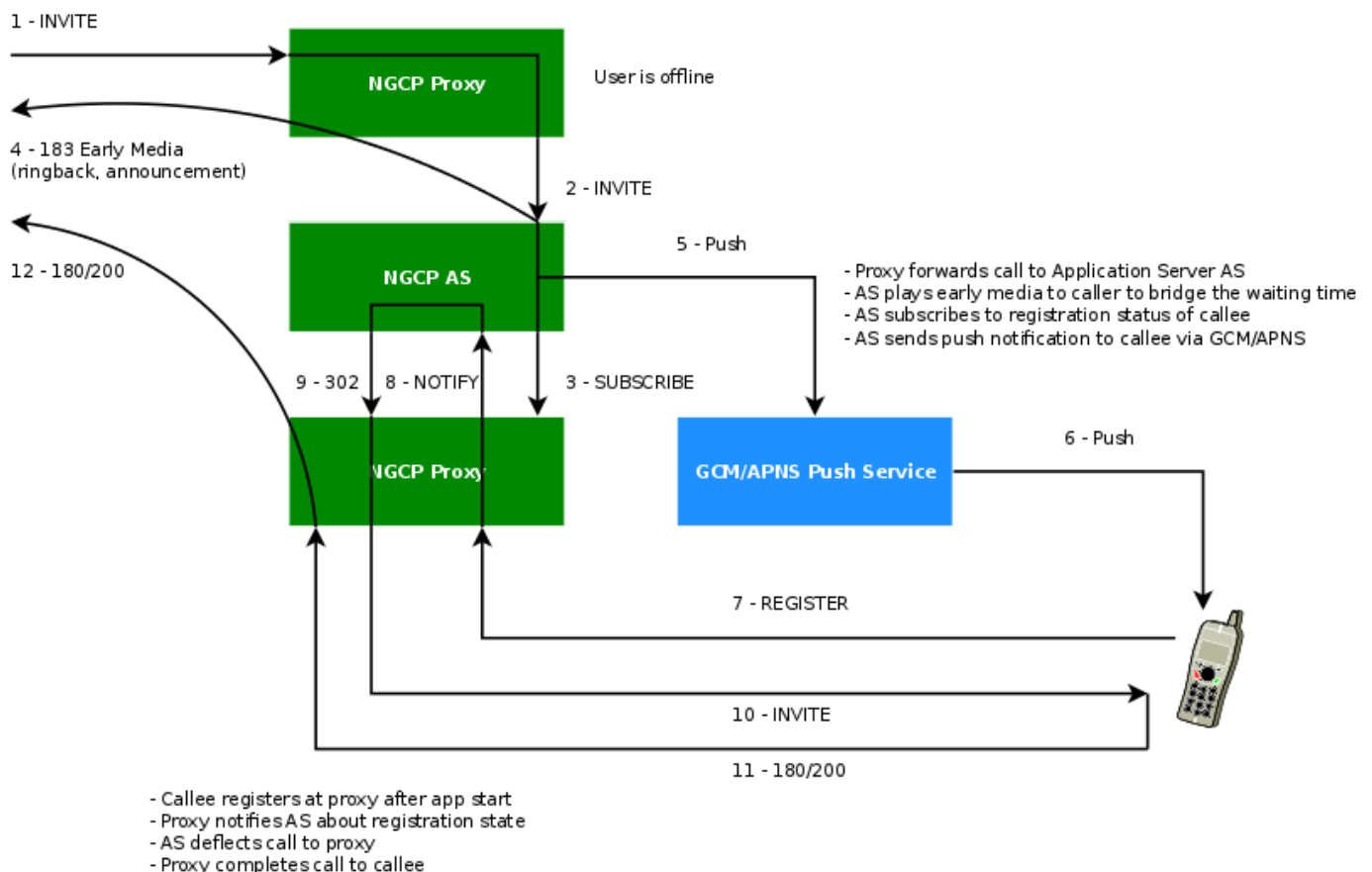


Figure 105: Mobile Push Workflow

1. The caller sends INVITE to proxy
2. The callee is offline, proxy forwards the call to AS (application server)
3. AS subscribes to the callee's registration events on proxy
4. AS sends early media to the caller as a feedback, as the call initiation process might take a while
5. AS sends the push request to GCM/APNS service
6. GCM/APNS service delivers the push request to the callee

7. The callee accepts the push request and confirms the mobile application start (unattended on Android), then the mobile application registers to proxy
8. Proxy sends registration notification to AS
9. AS deflects the call back to proxy
10. Proxy sends INVITE to the callee
11. The callee accepts the call
12. The response is sent back to the caller. Hence, the call setup is completed

In the case of a time-out (no registration notification within a particular time), the application server rejects the call request with an error.

#### 14.2.2.2 The Configuration Checklist

Follow this checklist to make sure you've completed all the steps. If you miss anything, the service may not work as expected.

Name	Description	Link
Obtain a trusted SSL certificate from a CA	Required for either application	Section <a href="#">14.2.2.3</a>
Create an Apple developer account and enable the push notification service	For iOS mobile application	Section <a href="#">14.2.2.4</a>
Obtain the Apple certificate for the app	For iOS mobile application	Section <a href="#">14.2.2.5</a>
Obtain the API key for the app from Google	For Android mobile application	Section <a href="#">14.2.2.6</a>
Provide the required information to developers	It is required to make beta builds and publish the apps	Section <a href="#">14.2.2.7</a>
Adjust the configuration	Adjust the config.yml file and apply the changes (usually performed by Sipwise)	Section <a href="#">14.2.2.8</a>
Recheck your DNS Zone configuration	Check that the DNS Zone is correctly configured	Section <a href="#">14.2.2.9</a>
Add DNS SRV records	Create specific DNS SRV records for SIP and XMPP services	Section <a href="#">14.2.2.10</a>
Check NTP configuration	Ensure that all your servers show exact time	Section <a href="#">14.2.2.11</a>
Enable Apple/Google Mobile Push in the Admin Panel	It can be enabled for a domain or separate subscribers	Section <a href="#">14.2.2.12</a>
Configure a mobile application	Check that subscribers can easily install and use your application	Section <a href="#">14.2.2.13</a>

### 14.2.2.3 Obtain the Trusted SSL Certificate

A *trusted* SSL certificate is required, and we suggest obtaining it before starting the configuration.

The mobile application uses respective iOS/Android libraries to establish a secure TLS connection with certain sip:carrier services, such as SIP/XMPP/pushd(https). A *signed* SSL certificate is required to guarantee the security of this connection.

Any Certificate Authority (CA) such as Verisign and others can provide you with the required trusted SSL certificate (a certificate and the key files) which you will use in the configuration below.

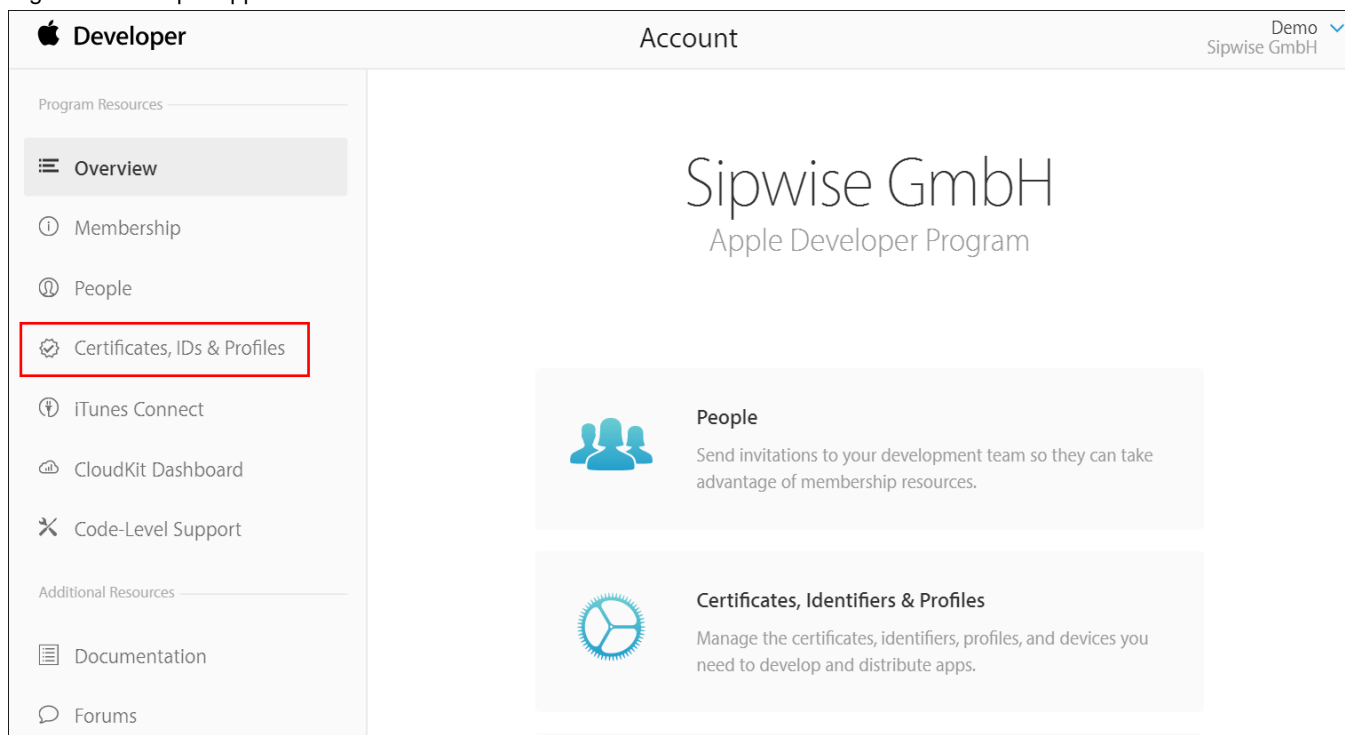
### 14.2.2.4 Create an Apple Account and Enable the Push Notification Service

Below is a brief instruction on how to create an Apple account and enable the Push Notification Service in it. You may need to perform additional steps depending on your project.

#### Note

You may only create an Apple account (step 1 below) and enroll into the Apple Developer Program (step 2 below) and Sipwise developers will do the rest. Still, you can perform all the steps by yourself.

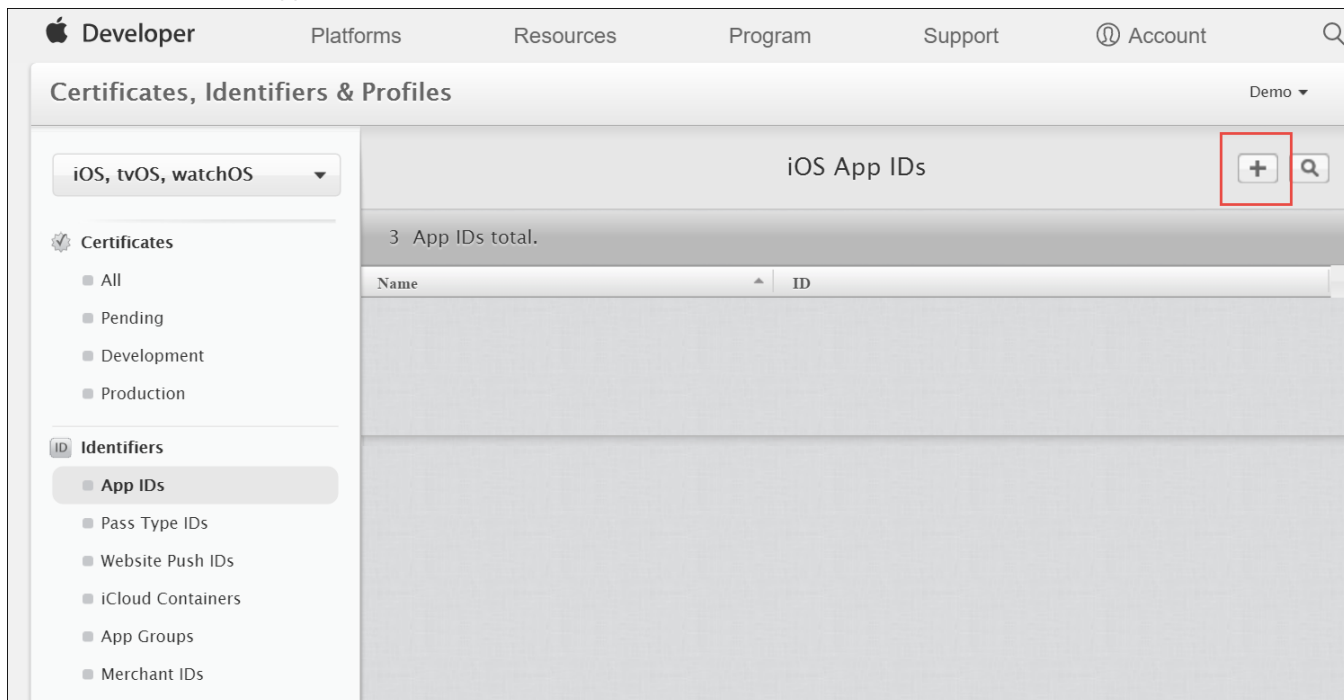
1. Create an Apple developer account to get the Apple ID for your company. For this, go to [developer.apple.com/account](https://developer.apple.com/account)
2. Enrol in the Apple Developer Program. It is required to configure push notifications as you will need a push notification certificate for your App ID, which requires the Apple Developer Program membership. Go to [developer.apple.com/programs](https://developer.apple.com/programs) for more details.
3. Register an App ID:
  - Sign into [developer.apple.com/account](https://developer.apple.com/account).



- Click *Certificates, IDs & Profiles*.



- Under *Identifiers*, select *App IDs*.



- Click the *Add* button (+) in the upper-right corner.





## Registering an App ID

The App ID string contains two parts separated by a period (.) — an App ID Prefix that is defined as your Team ID by default and an App ID Suffix that is defined as a Bundle ID search string. Each part of an App ID has different and important uses for your app. [Learn More](#)

### App ID Description

Name:

You cannot use special characters such as @, &, \*, ', "

- Enter a name for the App ID in the *App ID Description* block. This helps you identify the App ID later.

- Apple TV
- Apple Watch
- iPad
- iPhone
- iPod Touch

---

Provisioning Profiles

- All
- Development
- Distribution

### App ID Prefix

Value: XD7GAT4I26 (Team ID)

---

### App ID Suffix

☒ **Explicit App ID**

If you plan to incorporate app services such as Game Center, In-App Purchase, Data Protection, and iCloud, or want a provisioning profile unique to a single app, you must register an explicit App ID for your app.

To create an explicit App ID, enter a unique string in the Bundle ID field. This string should match the Bundle ID of your app.

Bundle ID:

We recommend using a reverse-domain name style string (i.e., com.domainname.appname). It cannot contain an asterisk (\*).

☐ **Wildcard App ID**

This allows you to use a single App ID to match multiple apps. To create a wildcard App ID, enter an asterisk (\*) as the last digit in the Bundle ID field.

- Select *Explicit App ID* and enter the app's bundle ID in the *Bundle ID* field. Note that an explicit App ID exactly matches the bundle ID of an app you are building — for example, com.example.push. An explicit App ID can *not* contain an asterisk (\*).

## App Services

Select the services you would like to enable in your app. You can edit your choices after this App ID has been registered.

Enable Services: ☐ App Groups

☐ Associated Domains

☒ In-App Purchase

☐ Inter-App Audio

☐ Wallet

☒ Push Notifications

☐ Personal VPN

- In the App Services section enable Push Notifications. Click *Continue* to submit the form



### Confirm your App ID.

To complete the registration of this App ID, make sure your App ID information is correct, and click the submit button.

App ID Description: **com example push**

Identifier: **XD7GAT4I26**

Data Protection: ☐ Disabled

Game Center: ☒ **Enabled**

iCloud: ☐ Disabled

In-App Purchase: ☒ **Enabled**

Inter-App Audio: ☐ Disabled

Passbook: ☐ Disabled

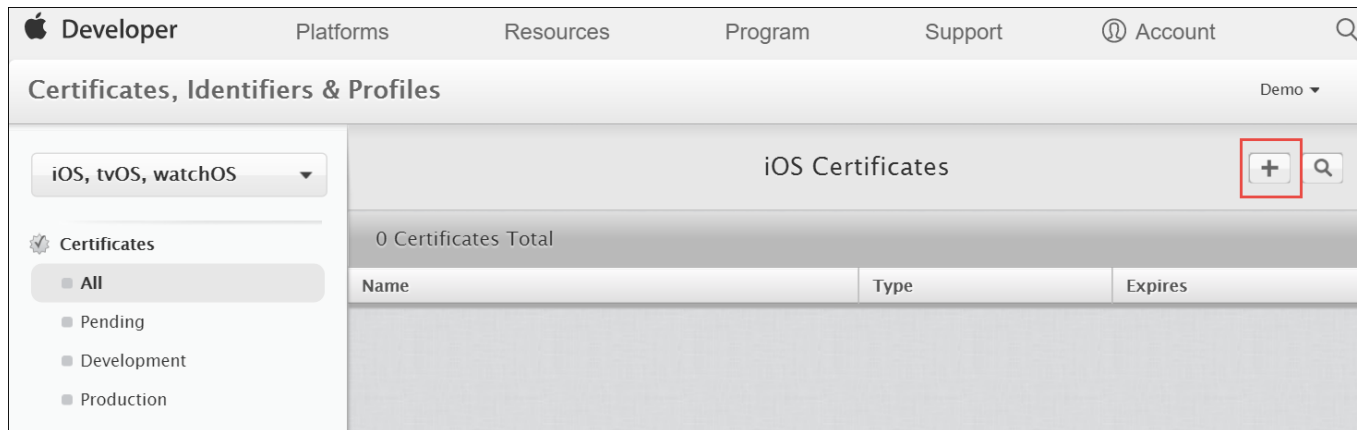
Push Notifications: ☒ **Enabled**

- Click *Submit* to create the App ID.

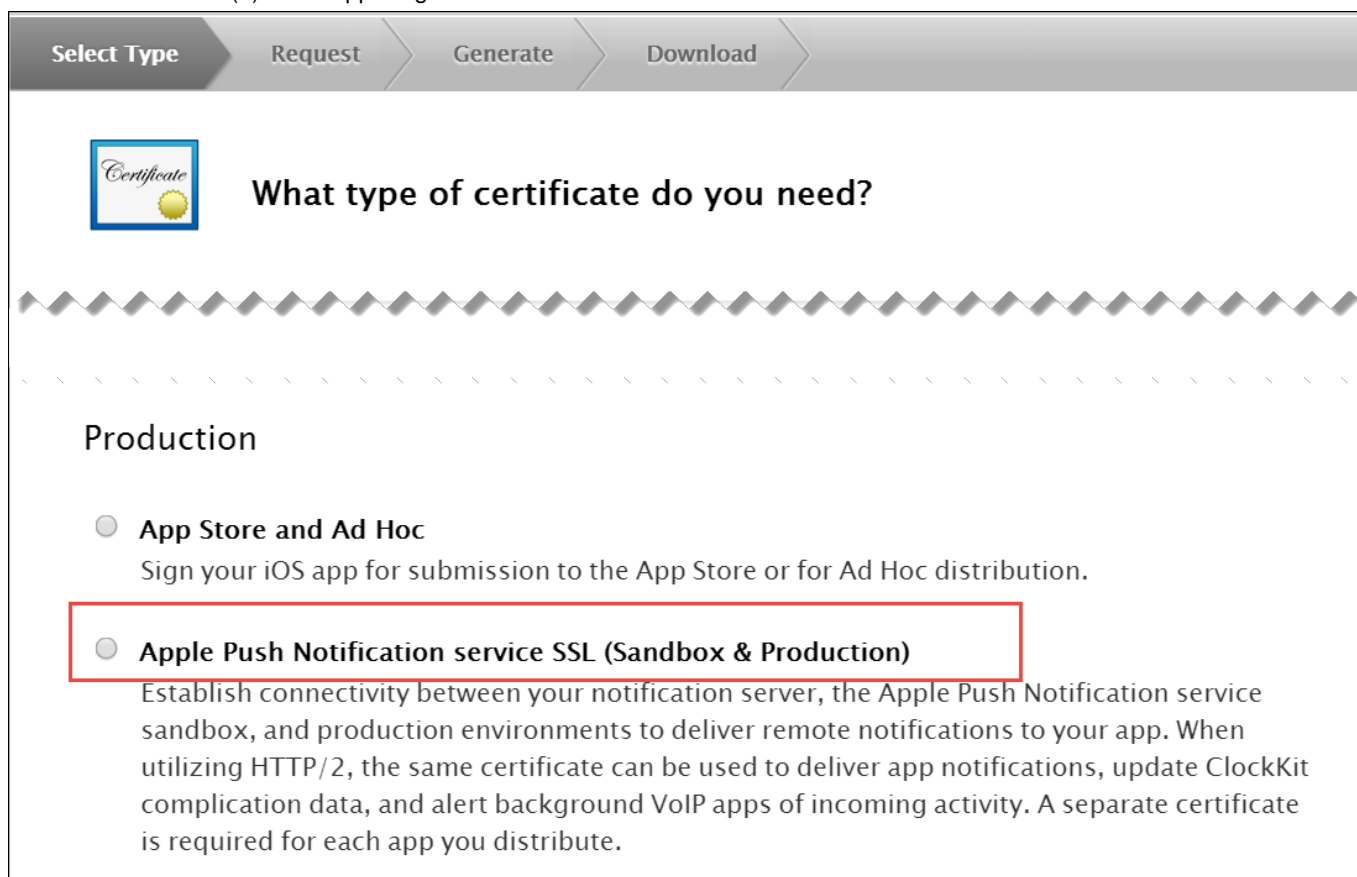
#### 14.2.2.5 Obtain an Apple SSL Certificate and a Private Key

1. Create a CSR (Certificate Signing Request):

- Sign into [developer.apple.com/account/ios/certificate](https://developer.apple.com/account/ios/certificate).



- Click the *Add* button (+) in the upper-right corner.




- Select *Apple Push Notification service SSL (Sandbox & Production)* as the certificate type and click *Continue*.

Select Type

Request

Generate

Download



## Which App ID would you like to use?

All App IDs that you want to enable for remote notifications require their own Apple Push Notification service SSL certificate. The App ID-specific SSL certificate allows your server to connect to the Apple Push Notification service. Note that only explicit App IDs with a specific Bundle Identifier can be used to create an Apple Push Notification service SSL certificate.


Select an App ID for your Apple Push Notification service SSL Certificate (Sandbox & Production)

App ID:

XD7GAT4I26.com.example.push

- Select your App ID and click *Continue*.

**Select Type** **Request** **Generate** **Download**



## About Creating a Certificate Signing Request (CSR)

To manually generate a Certificate, you need a Certificate Signing Request (CSR) file from your Mac. To create a CSR file, follow the instructions below to create one using Keychain Access.

**Create a CSR file.**

In the Applications folder on your Mac, open the Utilities folder and launch Keychain Access.

Within the Keychain Access drop down menu, select Keychain Access > Certificate Assistant > Request a Certificate from a Certificate Authority.

- In the Certificate Information window, enter the following information:
  - In the User Email Address field, enter your email address.
  - In the Common Name field, create a name for your private key (e.g., John Doe Dev Key).
  - The CA Email Address field should be left empty.
  - In the "Request is" group, select the "Saved to disk" option.
- Click Continue within Keychain Access to complete the CSR generating process.

- Read the information about creating a CSR.
- Follow the instructions to create a CSR using Keychain Access in MAC.

---

**Note**

If you do not have access to a Mac, you can still create a CSR in Linux or Windows using OpenSSL, for example.

---

## 2. Get the Certificate and Private Key


- When you have the CSR file return to the browser and click *Continue*.

Select Type

Request

Generate

Download



## Generate your certificate.

When your CSR file is created, a public and private key pair is automatically generated. Your private key is stored on your computer. On a Mac, it is stored in the login Keychain by default and can be viewed in the Keychain Access app under the "Keys" category. Your requested certificate is the public half of your key pair.

### Upload CSR file.

Select .certSigningRequest file saved on your Mac.

Choose File...


- Click *Choose File...* in your browser.

Select Type

Request

Generate

Download




## Generate your certificate.

When your CSR file is created, a public and private key pair is automatically generated. Your private key is stored on your computer. On a Mac, it is stored in the login Keychain by default and can be viewed in the Keychain Access app under the "Keys" category. Your requested certificate is the public half of your key pair.

### Upload CSR file.


Select .certSigningRequest file saved on your Mac.

Choose File...

 CertificateSigningRequest.certSigningRequest

- Select the CSR file you just created and saved and click *Continue*.


Select Type
Request
Generate
Download



## Your certificate is ready.

### Download, Install and Backup

Download your certificate to your Mac, then double click the .cer file to install in Keychain Access. Make sure to save a backup copy of your private and public keys somewhere secure.



<b>Name:</b>	Apple Push Services: com.example.push
<b>Type:</b>	Apple Push Services
<b>Expires:</b>	Jun 26, 2017

Download

- Click *Download* to download the certificate (give it the **aps.cer** name).
- Open the downloaded certificate file (it should automatically be opened in Keychain Access, otherwise open it manually in Keychain Access).
- Find the certificate you just opened/imported in Keychain Access.
- Expand the certificate to show the Private Key.
- Select only the Private Key portion of the certificate, right-click on it and select *Export "Common Name"...* from the menu.
- Choose a location (e.g. Desktop) and filename to export the .p12 file to and click *Save*.
- **Optionally** pick a password for the .p12 file to protect its private key contents and click *OK*. (You will then need to enter your log-in password to permit the export).

### 3. Generate a PEM file from the p12 file:

- Open up your terminal and run the following commands to create a PEM file from the p12 file (If you input a password for the p12 file, you will need to enter it here):

```
cd ~/Desktop
openssl x509 -in aps.cer -inform der -out PushChatCert.pem
openssl pkcs12 -in PushChatCert.p12 -out PushCertificate.pem -nodes -clcerts
openssl pkcs12 -nocerts -out PushChatKey.pem -in PushChatKey.p12
```

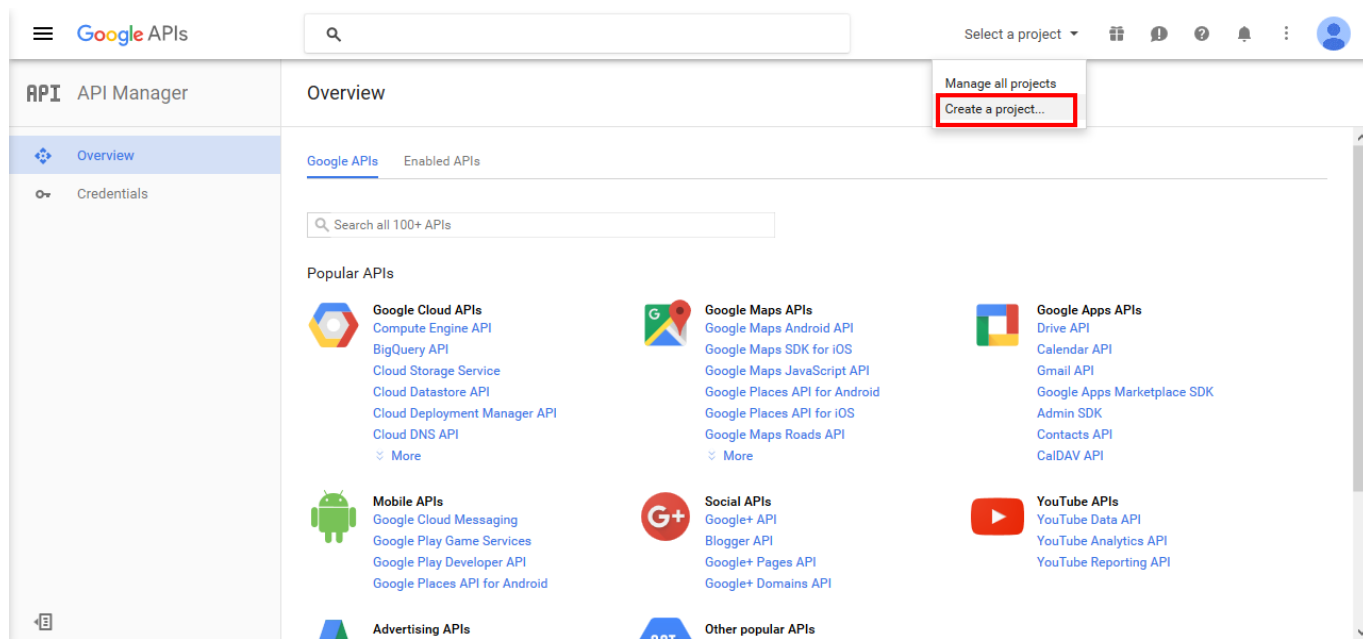


#### 14.2.2.6 Obtain the API Key for the App from Google

You can use Google Cloud Messaging (GCM) to send push notifications to your subscribers with Android-based mobile devices. Google Cloud Messaging is a free service that acts as an intermediary between the NGCP and devices of your subscribers. Google's Cloud Connection Server (CCS), a part of GCP, manages the persistent connections with mobile devices to deliver your push notifications.

While communicating with CCS, the NGCP identifies itself using an API key. To get it, follow the steps below.

1. Create a new project in the Google APIs Console page. For this go to [code.google.com/apis/console](https://code.google.com/apis/console).



2. Click *Create a Project*.

review

le APIs    Enable

Search all 100+ APIs

lar APIs

Google Cloud APIs

Compute Engine API

BigQuery API

Cloud Storage API

Cloud Datastore API

Cloud Deployment Manager API

Cloud DNS API

More

**New Project**

Project name ?

MyChat

Your project ID will be mychat-1320 ? [Edit](#)

[Show advanced options...](#)

Please email me updates regarding feature announcements, performance suggestions, feedback surveys and special offers.

☐ Yes ☒ No

I agree that my use of any services and related APIs is subject to my compliance with the applicable [Terms of Service](#).

☒ Yes ☐ No

[Create](#) [Cancel](#)

Mobile APIs

Google Cloud Messaging

Social APIs

Google+ API

3. Input the project name, agree with the *Terms of Service* and click *Create*.

API Manager

Overview

Overview

Credentials

Google APIs    Enabled APIs (0)

Search all 100+ APIs

Popular APIs

Google Cloud APIs

Compute Engine API

BigQuery API

Cloud Storage Service

Cloud Datastore API

Cloud Deployment Manager API

Cloud DNS API

More

Mobile APIs

Google Cloud Messaging

Google Play Game Services

Google Play Developer API

Google Places API for Android

Google Maps APIs

Google Maps Android API

Google Maps SDK for iOS

Google Maps JavaScript API

Google Places API for Android

Google Places API for iOS

Google Maps Roads API

More

Social APIs

Google+ API

Blogger API

Google+ Pages API

Google+ Domains API

Google Apps APIs

Drive API

Calendar API

Gmail API

Google Apps Marketplace SDK

Admin SDK

Contacts API

CalDAV API

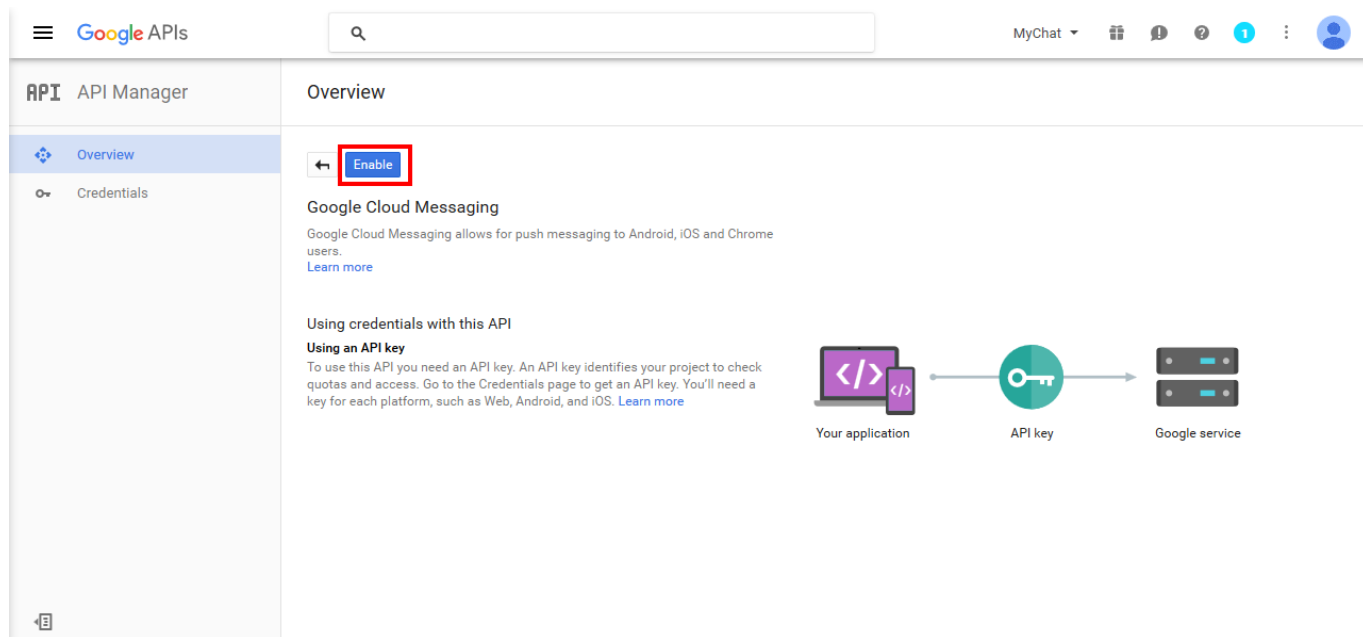
YouTube APIs

YouTube Data API

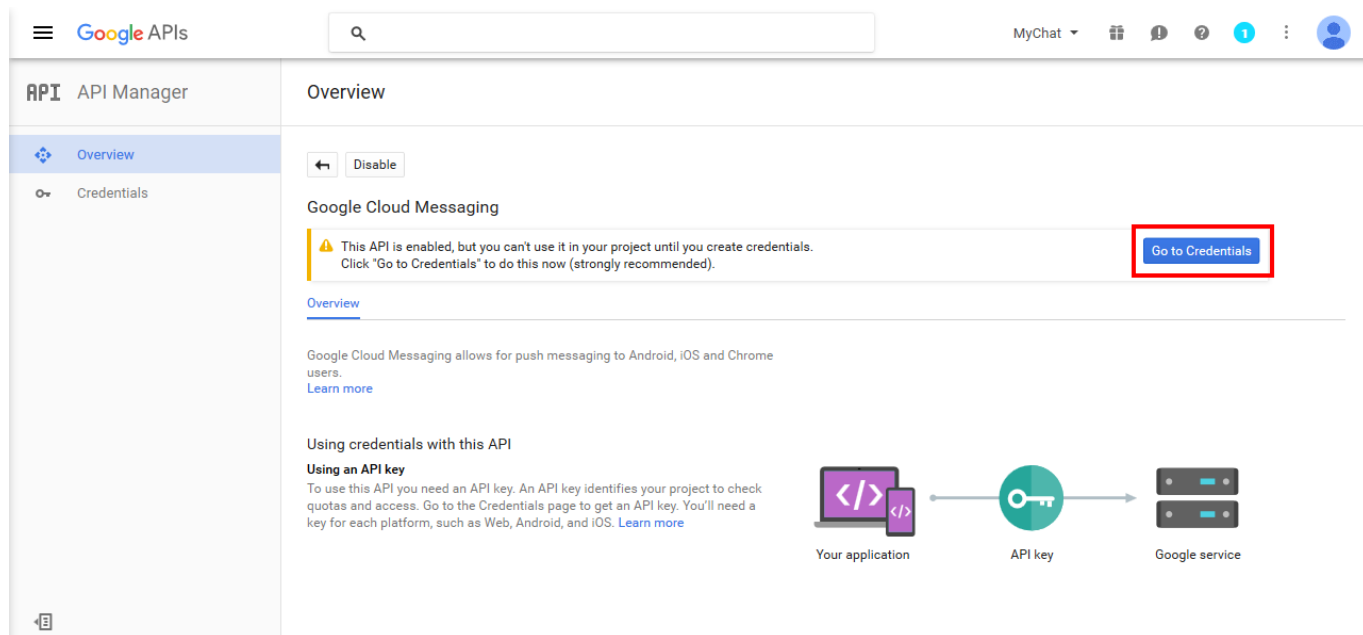
YouTube Analytics API

YouTube Reporting API

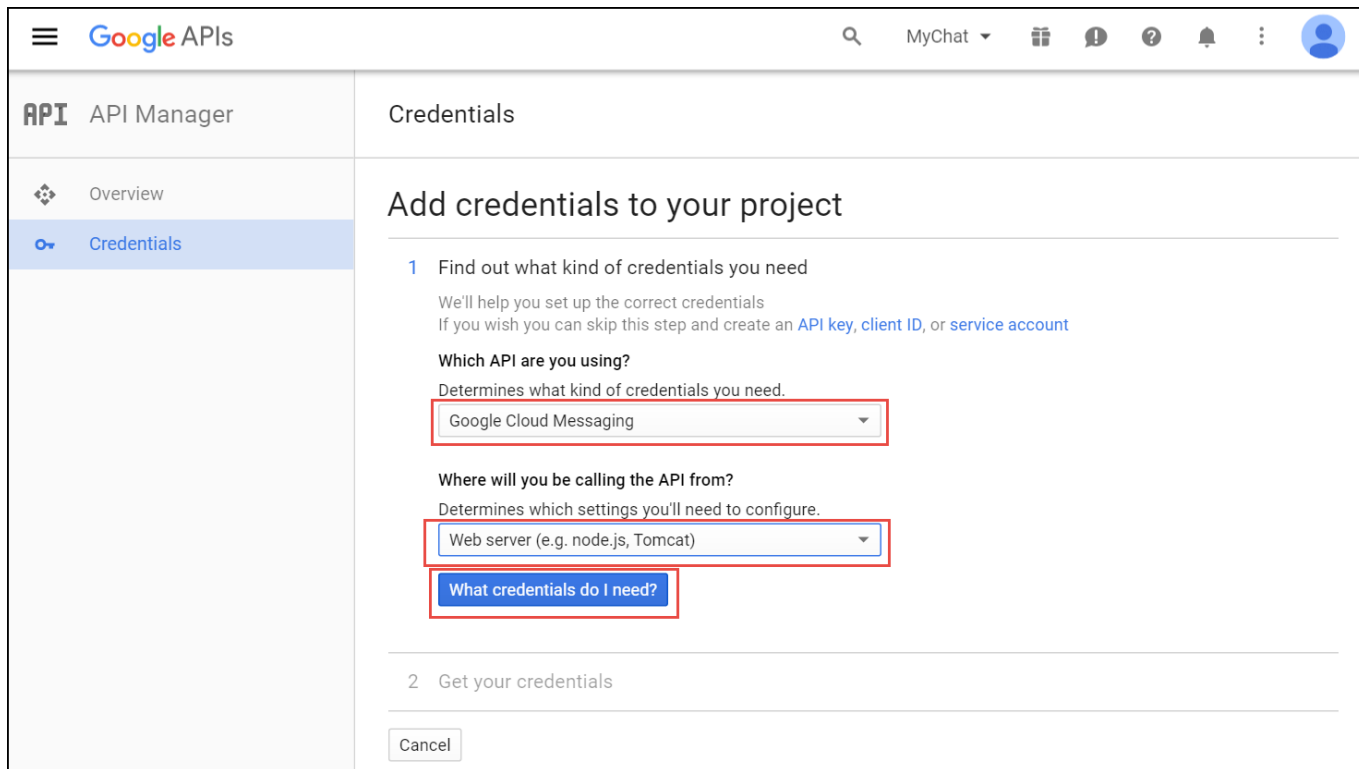
4. Click *Google Cloud Messaging* on the Overview page.



5. Click *Enable* for the Google Cloud Messaging.



6. Click *Go to Credentials*.



Google APIs

API Manager

Overview

Credentials

### Add credentials to your project

- Find out what kind of credentials you need

We'll help you set up the correct credentials  
If you wish you can skip this step and create an [API key](#), [client ID](#), or [service account](#)

Which API are you using?  
Determines what kind of credentials you need.

Google Cloud Messaging

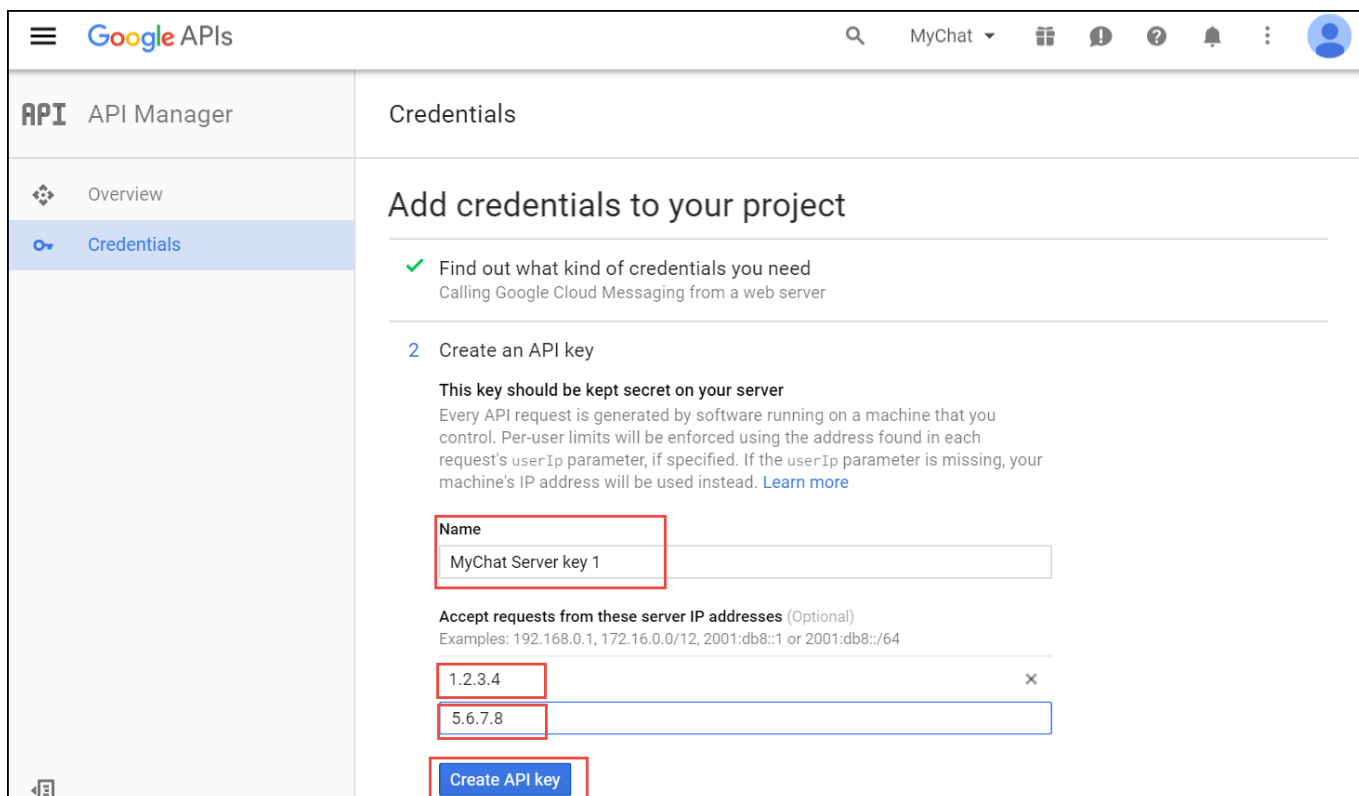
Where will you be calling the API from?  
Determines which settings you'll need to configure.

Web server (e.g. node.js, Tomcat)

What credentials do I need?
- Get your credentials

Cancel

7. Select Google Cloud Messaging and Web Server from the corresponding lists and click *What credentials do I need?*



Google APIs

API Manager

Overview

Credentials

### Add credentials to your project

- Find out what kind of credentials you need

Calling Google Cloud Messaging from a web server
- Create an API key

This key should be kept secret on your server  
Every API request is generated by software running on a machine that you control. Per-user limits will be enforced using the address found in each request's `userIp` parameter, if specified. If the `userIp` parameter is missing, your machine's IP address will be used instead. [Learn more](#)

Name

MyChat Server key 1

Accept requests from these server IP addresses (Optional)  
Examples: 192.168.0.1, 172.16.0.0/12, 2001:db8::1 or 2001:db8::/64

1.2.3.4

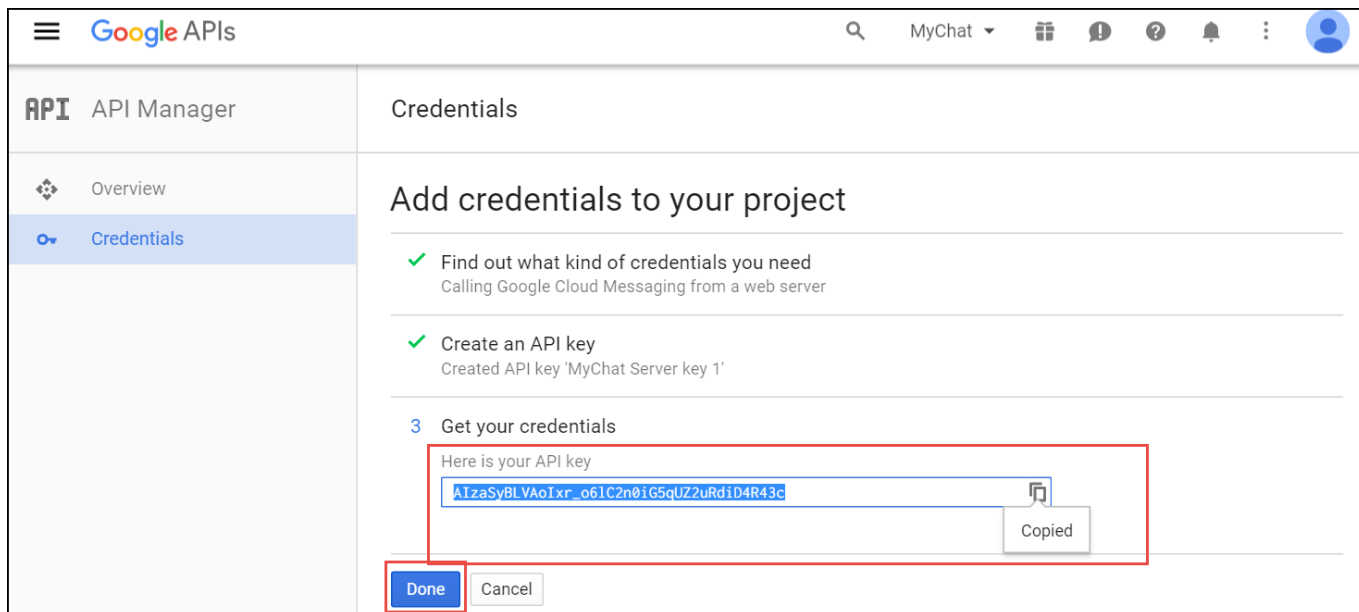
5.6.7.8

Create API key

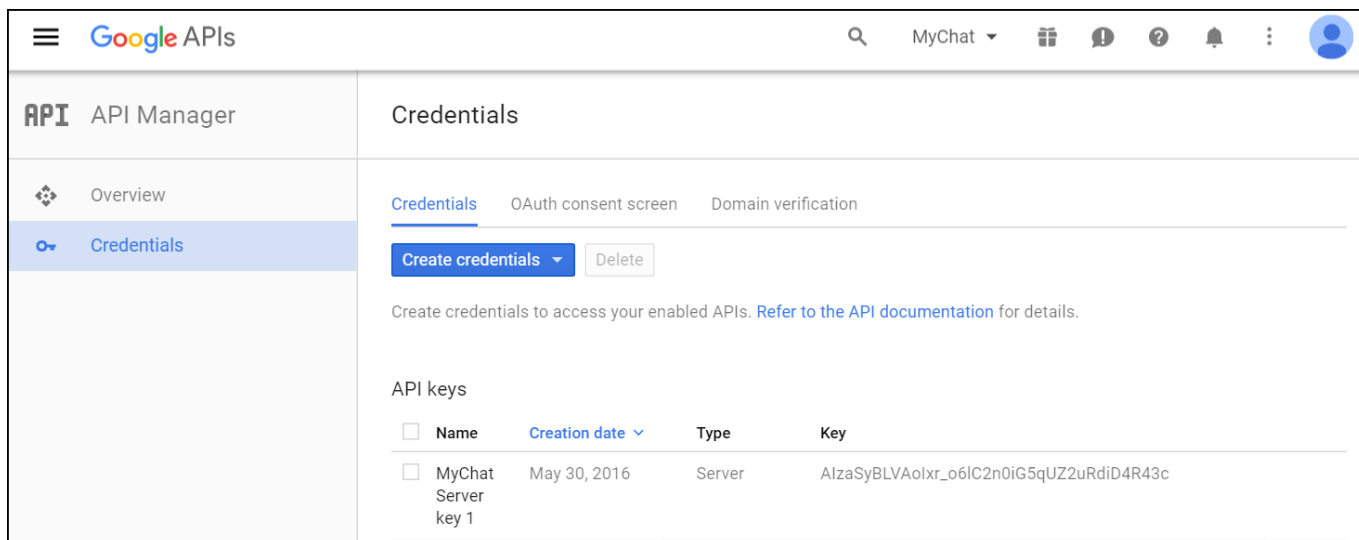
8. Adjust the API Key name and input the IP addresses of *all* your load balancers under *Accept requests from these server IP addresses*. Click *Create API key*.

**Note**

You may skip adding the IP addresses, otherwise list *ALL* your load balancers.



9. Copy your API key and click *Done*. Save the API key for future use.



#### 14.2.2.7 Provide the Required Information to Developers

Please, provide Sipwise developers with the following files and information so that they can make beta builds and submit the application to the App Store:

- Access to your Apple developer account
- The trusted SSL certificate and its private key
- The Apple SSL certificate and its private key

For the Android application, provide the following:

- Access to your Google developer account
- Google application API key

#### 14.2.2.8 Adjust the sip:carrier Configuration (Usually Performed by Sipwise)

1. Upload the Apple SSL certificate (**PushChatCert.pem**) and the private key (**PushChatKey.pem**) to `/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/`
2. Upload the trusted SSL certificate (**CAsigned.crt**) and the private key (**CAsigned.key**) to `/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/`
3. Specify the corresponding paths and names in the pushd section of the config.yml file:

- apns: section (For iOS mobile application)
  - certificate: `'/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/PushChatCert.pem'`
  - enable: yes
  - key: `'/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/PushChatKey.pem'`
- enable: yes
- gcm: section (for Android mobile application)
  - enable: yes
  - key: `'google_server_api_key_here'`
- ssl: yes
- sslcertfile: `/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/CAsigned.crt`
- sslcertkeyfile: `/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/CAsigned.key`

You can find an example of `/etc/ngcp-config/config.yml` configuration in the [config.yml overview section](#).

4. Apply your changes:

```
ngcpcfg apply 'enabled the backup feature.'
ngcpcfg push all
```

#### 14.2.2.9 Recheck Your DNS Zone Configuration

Check that your **NS** and **A** DNS records are correctly configured.

Let's consider the following example: \* the load-balancers have the lb01a.example.com and the lb01b.example.com names \* the shared name is lb01.example.com and the shared IP address is 1.1.1.1 \* the service name is voipservice.example.com

The following DNS records must be present:

Server Name	Record type	IP Address
lb01a.example.com	A	1.2.3.4
lb01b.example.com	A	5.6.7.8
lb01.example.com	A	1.1.1.1
voipservice.example.com	A	1.1.1.1

#### 14.2.2.10 Add SRV Records to DNS

Add at least one record for each service: **xmpp-server**, **xmpp-client**, **sips**.

A regular SRV record has the following form:

```
_service._proto.name. TTL class SRV priority weight port target
```

- **service**: the symbolic name of the service (xmpp-server, xmpp-client, sips).
- **proto**: the transport protocol of the desired service (TCP).
- **name**: the domain name (ending in a dot).
- **TTL**: standard DNS time to live field.
- **class**: the standard DNS class field (this is always IN).
- **priority**: the priority of the target host (lower value means more preferred).
- **weight**: a relative weight for records with the same priority (the higher the value, the more requests will be sent).
- **port**: the TCP or UDP port of the service.
- **target**: the canonical hostname of the machine providing the service (ending in a dot).

Here are examples of the SRV records:

```
_xmpp-server._tcp.voipservice.example.com. 18000 IN SRV 10 50 5269 voipservice.example.com.  
_xmpp-client._tcp.voipservice.example.com. 18000 IN SRV 10 50 5222 voipservice.example.com.  
_sips._tcp.voipservice.example.com. 18000 IN SRV 10 100 5061 voipservice.example.com.
```

You can always check whether the required SRV records are configured by executing the following commands:

```
dig SRV _xmpp-client._tcp.voipservice.example.net  
dig SRV _xmpp-server._tcp.voipservice.example.net  
dig SRV _sips._tcp.voipservice.example.net
```

#### 14.2.2.11 Check NTP Configuration

We strongly suggest that the clocks of all the nodes within the platform are synchronized. To ensure this, check that the NTP service is correctly configured on all your sip:carrier servers and works reliably. Execute the following command for quick test of time synchronization:

```
ntpq -p
```

If the current node synchronizes with an NTP server, this server will be marked by the star (\*) symbol.

#### 14.2.2.12 Enable Apple/Google Mobile Push

It can be enabled for a domain or separate subscribers in the Admin Panel.

To enable the service for a domain:

1. Go to *Settings*→*Domains* and click on the *Preferences* button of the domain you want to enable Apple/Google Mobile Push for.
2. Go to the *Internals* group and enable the **mobile\_push\_enable** parameter.

Internals				
	Attribute	Name	Value	
?	force_inbound_calls_to_peer	Force inbound calls to peer	<input type="checkbox"/>	✔ Edit
?	mobile_push_enable	Enable Apple/Google Mobile Push	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	✔ Edit
?	ip_header	IP Header Field		

#### 14.2.2.13 Perform Tests

Perform tests when the application is available:

1. Download and install the application.
2. Open the application and input your registration username in the username@domain.name format and password.
3. Review the quality of application branding.
4. Make test calls.
5. Test the presence functionality.
6. Test the chat and group chat.
7. Test messaging.
8. Test the sharing functionality (e.g. pictures, video and voice messages and maps).
9. Check the application phone book integration with the phone's one

Make sure that the subscribers can start using your services in the easiest possible way.



## 14.3 Lawful Interception

### 14.3.1 Introduction

The Sipwise sip:carrier, as a communications platform carrying voice, fax and messaging data has to provide means for lawful interception of the content of communication by third party entities. Those Law Enforcement Agencies (LEAs) have to be able to connect to the Sipwise NGCP platform in a standardized way — ETSI, 3GPP and other organisations define the interface (and data exchange) between telecommunication operators and LEAs.

**High level overview** of lawful interception is shown in the following figure:

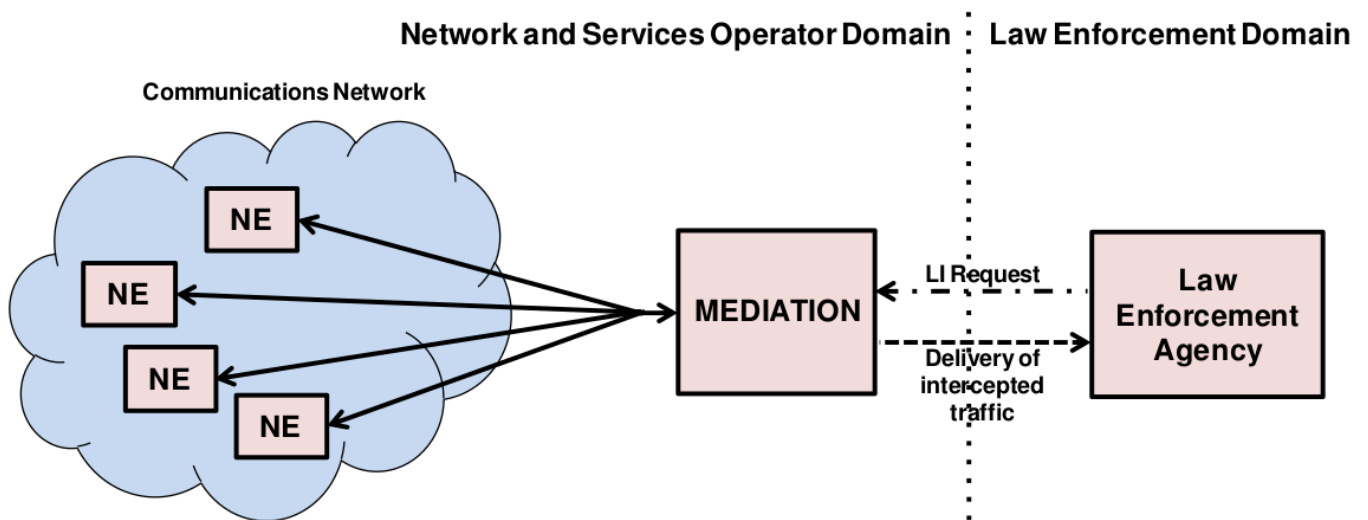


Figure 106: LI: High Level Overview

**Main interfaces** of lawful interception according to ETSI standard:

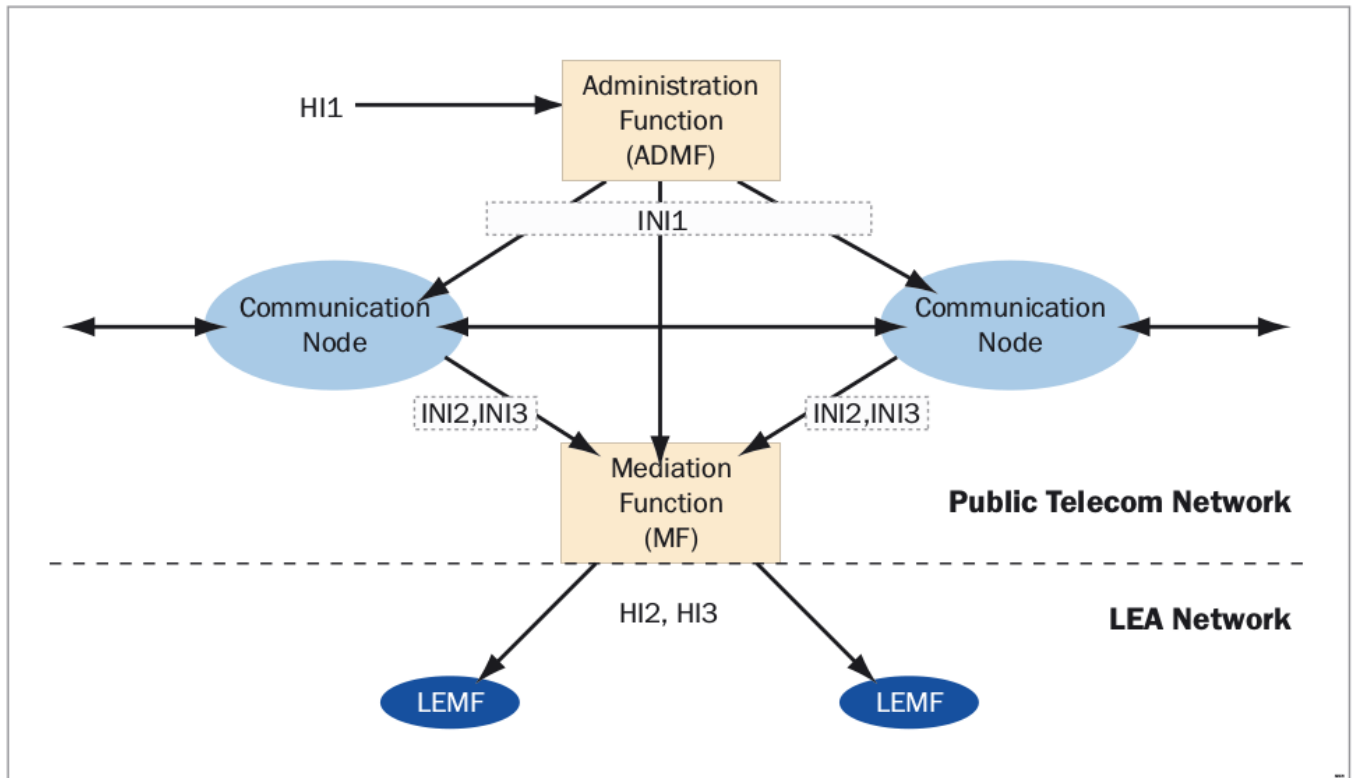


Figure 107: LI: ETSI Interfaces

#### 14.3.1.1 Terms and Abbreviations

##### Content of Communication (CC)

Information exchanged between two or more users of a telecommunications service, excluding Intercept Related Information.

##### Note

This includes information which may, as part of some telecommunications service, be stored by one user for subsequent retrieval by another.

##### CC Internal Interception Function (CC-IIF)

The CC-IIF shall cause the CC, specified by the CCTF, via the CCCI to be duplicated and passed to the MF.

##### Content of Communication Control Interface (CCCI)

Carries controls information from the CCTF to the CC-IIF.

##### CC Trigger Function (CCTF)

The purpose of the CCTF is to determine the location of the CC-IIF device associated to the target CC traffic, and to control the CC-IIF via the CCCI interface.

##### Content of Communication Trigger Interface (CCTI)

Carries trigger information from the IRI-IIF to the CCTF.

**Handover Interface (HI)**

Physical and logical interface across which the interception measures are requested from an operator, and the results of interception are delivered from an operator to an LEMF.

**Intercept Related Information (IRI)**

Collection of information or data associated with telecommunication services involving the target identity, specifically call or service associated information or data (e.g. call identifier, unsuccessful call attempts) and location information.

**Intercept Related Information Internal Interception Function (IRI-IIF)**

The purpose of the IRI-IIF is to generate IRI information associated with sessions, calls, connections and any other information involving interception targets identified by Law Enforcement Agency (LEA) sessions.

**Internal Network Interface (INI)**

Network's internal interface between the Internal Intercepting Function and a mediation function.

**Law Enforcement Agency (LEA)**

Organization authorized, by a lawful authorization based on a national law, to request interception measures and to receive the results of telecommunications interceptions.

**Law Enforcement Monitoring Facility (LEMF)**

Law enforcement facility designated as the transmission destination for the results of interception relating to a particular interception subject.

**Lawful Interception Administration Function (AF)**

The AF ensures that an intercept request from a LEA for IRI or CC or both is provisioned for collection from the network, and subsequent delivery to the LEMF.

**Lawful Interception Mediation Function (MF)**

Mechanism which passes information between an access provider or network operator or service provider and a handover interface.

1. Firstly it receives information related to active intercepts from the IRI-IIF(s) and CC-IIF(s) within the service provider network.
2. Secondly correlates and formats that IRI and CC information in real time for delivery to the LEMF over the HI2 and HI3 handover Interfaces.

**X1, X2 and X3 Interfaces**

The 3GPP standard for Lawful Interception defines the handover interfaces with different names compared to the ETSI standard. The X $n$  interface corresponds to the INI $n$  interface and is functionally identical to the INI $n$  interface.

**14.3.2 Architecture and Configuration of LI Service**

Sipwise sip:carrier platform implements the functions defined by LI requirements in a way that it relies on a third party provider for the Lawful Interception Mediation Function (MF).

Regarding other LI functions that are defined by ETSI / 3GPP standards there are 2 possible implementations:

1. Sipwise NGCP behaves as the Administration Function (AF) but the actual call data capturing is carried out by other SIP endpoints. In this case NGCP forwards the calls to be intercepted to its **SIP peers dedicated for LI service**. Within the scope of SIP peer based solution there are still 2 modes of operation:
  - *Call loopback to NGCP*: the LI peer receives the call, extracts IRI and CC data and then routes the call back to NGCP. NGCP handles the looped back call as if that was initiated from NGCP and sets up the second call leg to the destination.
  - *Call forwarded by peer directly to destination*: in this case NGCP will handle the call to LI peer as an ordinary second call leg to the destination.
2. Sipwise **NGCP itself provides** the required LI functions: AF and call data capturing; IRI and CC of intercepted calls are forwarded to the third party MF from NGCP.

This handbook will discuss the second setup in details in the following sections.

The below figure illustrates the logical connection of LI functions on Sipwise NGCP.

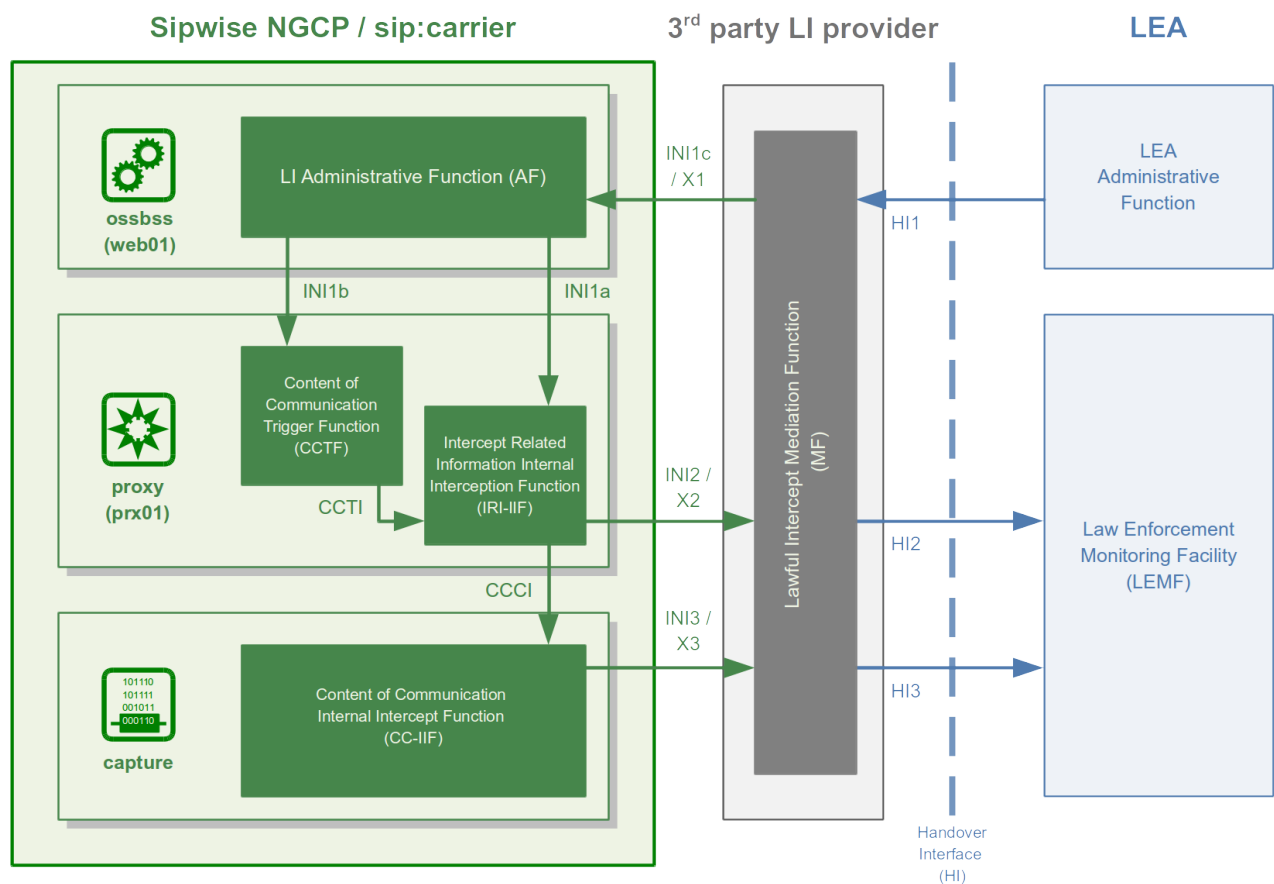


Figure 108: LI with 3rd Party Provider

### 14.3.2.1 Architecture Based on Captagent Module

---

#### Note

This kind of LI implementation will be phased out in future NGCP releases. A short description is kept here for reference, as NGCP still (as of version mr4.5.2) supports LI services with `captagent` module.

---

The `captagent` based implementation of LI functions on Sipwise NGCP includes the following components:

- **captagent:** a software module provided by a third party; its operation can be summarized as follows:
  1. the `captagent` process gets LI requests through an API
  2. the process listens for and analyses SIP (*INVITE*) messages; based on the message headers it decides whether the SIP session must be intercepted
  3. in case the session must be intercepted, `captagent` sends IRI through X2 interface to the MF element
  4. based on the SDP data, the process captures session media and forwards that through X3 interface to the MF element
- **third party MF:** Group2000's LIMA system plays the role of Mediation Function (MF) and interacts with `captagent` module, using X1, X2 and X3 interfaces.

### 14.3.2.2 Architecture Based on Voisniff-NG Module

Although the implementation of LI services with `captagent` is still available and configurable on sip:carrier, Sipwise suggests deploying a revised solution with its `voisniff-ng` software module. This newer implementation also relies on a 3rd party LI provider representing the LI Mediation Function (MF), where Sipwise currently (as of NGCP version mr4.5.2) cooperates with Group2000, Pine and Utimaco.

**Sipwise NGCP components** providing LI functions:

- **ngcp-panel:** this module is responsible for managing REST API for the whole NGCP in general
  - *runs on:* `web01` node on a sip:carrier platform
  - *LI functions:* AF; INI1 / X1 interface towards the MF
- **kamailio-proxy:** this module serves as a generic call control function on the NGCP
  - *runs on:* typically `prx01` node on a sip:carrier platform
  - *LI functions:* CCTF and IRI-IIF; INI2 / X2 interface towards the MF
- **voisniff-ng:** this module is a generic element for capturing SIP and RTP traffic on the NGCP
  - *runs on:* typically `lb01` node on a sip:carrier platform
  - *LI functions:* CC-IIF; INI3 / X3 interface towards the MF

**Note**

Please keep in mind that `voisniff-ng` module is not installed by default on Sipwise sip:carrier. Please contact Sipwise if you need to activate LI services on the platform.

**Authentication and Confidentiality**

It is required that the communication between the telecommunication operator's network element (that is: Sipwise NGCP) and the MF be authenticated and confidential, since the intercepted session related data and content of communication must not be disclosed to any 3rd party. For this purpose NGCP's LI service applies authentication and LI session data encryption based on public key cryptography mechanism (TLS).

Both Sipwise NGCP and the MF must authenticate themselves by certificates, for this reason the NGCP operator must ensure that valid certificates are deployed on the system. There is a need to contact the 3rd party LI provider, so that he can provide the necessary client certificates that NGCP will use to setup secured connection to the MF on X2 and X3 interfaces.

Similarly, the MF provider must contact the NGCP operator to offer him valid client certificates that the MF element will use to establish secured connection to the NGCP on X1 interface.

**14.3.2.3 Configuration of LI Service**

In order to enable LI services on sip:carrier the platform administrator has to explicitly enable lawful interception through the main configuration file (`config.yml`).

Here below is a sample configuration, which shows parameters of `intercept` and `voisniff` sections.

```
intercept:
  captagent:
    cin_max: '3000'
    cin_min: '0'
    country_code: '49'
    debug: '7'
    filter: 'port 5080'
    license: ''
    port: '18090'
    prefix_len: '3'
    schema: http
  enabled: yes
  peer:
    acc: no
    inbound_prefix: LI_
    outbound_prefix: intercept_
  type: voisniff

voisniff:
  admin_panel: no
  daemon:
    bpf: 'udp or ip6 proto 44 or ip[6:2] & 0x1fff != 0'
```

```

external_interfaces: 'vlan31 vlan35 vlan61 vlan51'
filter:
  exclude:
    -
      active: '0'
      case_insensitive: '1'
      pattern: '\ncseq: *\d+ +(register|notify|options)'
  include: []
internal_interfaces: lo
li_x1x2x3:
  call_id:
    suffix:
      - _pbx-1
      - _b2b-1
  client_certificate: /etc/ngcp-config/ssl/li/x23_client/x23_client_cert.pem
  enabled: yes
  local_name: sipwise
  private_key: /etc/ngcp-config/ssl/li/x23_client/x23_client_cert_priv_key.pem
  x1:
    port: '18090'
mysql_dump:
  enabled: no
  num_threads: '4'
mysql_dump_threads: '4'
start: yes
threads_per_interface: '10'
partitions:
  increment: '700000'
  keep: '10'

```

## Configuration Parameters

### **intercept.enable**

Set it to `yes` if you want to activate LI service. Default: `no`

### **intercept.peer.acc**

Calls to be intercepted may be forwarded to LI peers. The LI peer may forward the call to the original destination, without looping the call back to NGCP. Set this parameter to `yes` if you want to enable billing for such calls. Default: `no`

### **intercept.peer.inbound\_prefix**

Calls to be intercepted may be forwarded to LI peers. This parameter specifies the prefix that is prepended to SIP usernames when the call is looped back to NGCP, in order to avoid sending the call again to any LI peer. Used by NGCP internally. Default: `LI_`

### **intercept.peer.outbound\_prefix**

Calls to be intercepted may be forwarded to LI peers. This parameter specifies the prefix that is prepended to SIP usernames when the call is routed to an LI peer. It will be stripped off by rewrite rules of the peer, before sending the call effectively to the peer. Used by NGCP internally. Default: `intercept_`

**intercept.type**

The LI service provider module; allowed values are:

- `none`: LI service is not activated
- `peer`: LI service is activated and call data capturing is performed by SIP peers
- `captagent`: LI service is activated and call data capturing is performed by `captagent` module
- `voisniff`: LI service is activated and call data capturing is performed by `voisniff` module

Default: `none`

**voisniff.admin\_panel, voisniff.daemon.mysql\_dump.\*, voisniff.partitions.\***

These parameters are not used in LI configuration, but only for call statistics which can be retrieved through the Admin web interface.

**voisniff.daemon.bpf**

This sets the basic packet filter applied by `voisniff-ng` module when capturing packets on network interfaces. Default: `"port 5060 or 5062 or ip6 proto 44 or ip[6:2] & 0x1fff !=0"`

**Note**

The default value basically allows capturing SIP traffic only. It is usually necessary to modify the parameter in order to capture both SIP and RTP traffic. An example of such a value: `"udp or ip6 proto 44 or ip[6:2] & 0x1fff !=0"`.

**voisniff.daemon.external\_interfaces**

This is a list of network interfaces (typically VLAN IDs) where `voisniff-ng` should listen for and capture packets.

**voisniff.daemon.filter.exclude**

Additional filter to determine packets that need to be excluded from capturing.

**voisniff.daemon.filter.include**

Additional filter to determine packets that need to be included in capturing.

**voisniff.daemon.internal\_interfaces**

A list of network interfaces which are considered only for internal communication between `voisniff-ng` and other NGCP components. Packets on these interfaces are not captured.

**voisniff.daemon.li\_x1x2x3.call\_id**

Pattern that determines which SIP Call-IDs should `voisniff-ng` listen for and store as IRI (Intercept Related Information).

**voisniff.daemon.li\_x1x2x3.client\_certificate**

The client certificate that NGCP uses to connect over TLS to a 3rd party LI provider.

**voisniff.daemon.li\_x1x2x3.enabled**

Set it to `yes` to enable LI services via X1, X2 and X3 interfaces. Default: `no`

**voisniff.daemon.li\_x1x2x3.local\_name**

This parameter maps to the `header.source` field of the X2 protocol. It's an arbitrary string and can be used to identify the sending NGCP system. Default: `sipwise`



---

**Note**

As of NGCP version mr4.5.2, this is currently not used.

---

**voisniff.daemon.li\_x1x2x3.private\_key**

The private key used to encrypt data sent to a 3rd party LI provider.

**voisniff.daemon.li\_x1x2x3.x1.port**

The port number on which `voisniff-ng` listens for incoming X1 messages. Default: 18090

---

**Note**

You should leave the parameter set to the default value, unless there is a good reason to change it. The default value ensures backward compatibility with `captagent` LI module.

---

**voisniff.daemon.start**

Determines whether `voisniff` service must be started on the platform. Set it to `yes` if you'd like to activate `voisniff` that is needed for LI service too. Default: `no`

**voisniff.daemon.threads\_per\_interface**

This is a performance tuning option and controls how many threads per enabled sniffing interface should be launched. Example: if it's set to 10 and 3 interfaces are enabled for sniffing, a total of 30 threads will be launched. Default: 2

**Caution**

Do not set it to a high number, or simply leave it at its default value, unless there is a performance problem with `voisniff` service. Please keep in mind that a high number of threads might also decrease the overall system performance of NGCP!

---

### 14.3.3 X1, X2 and X3 Interface Specification

Short description of  $Xn$  interfaces:

- The **X1** interface is used by an LI provider to create, modify, delete and list interceptions on the Sipwise NGCP. It is designed as RESTful HTTP interface using JSON (with JSON-HAL in responses from the NGCP) as content type to provision interceptions.
- The **X2** interface is a TLV based interface with JSON payload with a simple request/response mechanism over a secure TLS connection, used to pass intercepted signaling data towards an LI provider.
- The **X3** interface is also a TLV based interface with a binary payload encapsulating the intercepted RTP data.

#### 14.3.3.1 X1 Interface

The resource used to work with interceptions is always `https://ngcp-ip:1443/api/interceptions/`

**Authentication**

Authentication and authorization on the NGCP API is performed via HTTP Basic Auth or SSL Client certificates.

- **HTTP Basic Auth:** With *cURL* use `--user username:password` option to specify your access credentials.

```
curl -i -X GET --user myuser:mypassword https://example.org:1443/api/interceptions/
```

Additionally use the `--insecure` option if you are testing against a self-signed server certificate.

- **SSL Client Authentication:** You can generate and download client certificates for administrators and resellers via the NGCP Panel in the Administrators view.

For the actual client authentication, you will need two files which you can download from the panel after creating the client certificates:

1. The client certificate generated via the NGCP Panel. This is usually labelled NGCP-API-client-certificate-xxxxx.pem.
2. The CA certificate used to sign the server certificate, in case it as been self-signed or the CA is not recognized by the client host environment.

With *cURL* use `--cert /path/to/NGCPAPIclientcertificatexxxxx.pem` to specify the client certificate, and `-cacert /path/to/cacert.pem` to specify the CA certificate in case of a self-signed server certificate.

```
curl -i -X GET --cert /path/to/NGCPAPIclientcertificatexxxxx.pem \
--cacert /path/to/cacert.pem https://example.org:1443/api/interceptions/
```

Additionally use the `--insecure` option if you are testing against a self-signed server certificate.

## API Description

### Collection Actions

Allowed methods for the collection as in METHOD `/api/interceptions/`

- OPTIONS
- POST
- GET
- HEAD

### Item Actions

Allowed methods for a collection item as in METHOD `/api/interceptions/id`

- PATCH
- OPTIONS
- DELETE
- PUT
- GET
- HEAD

### Properties

- `liid` (Number): The LI ID for this interception.
- `number` (String): The number to intercept.

- `x2_host` (String): The IP address of the X2 interface.
- `x2_password` (null, String): The password for authenticating on the X2 interface.
- `x2_port` (Number): The port of the X2 interface.
- `x2_user` (null, String): The username for authenticating on the X2 interface.
- `x3_host` (null, String): The IP address of the X3 interface.
- `x3_port` (null, Number): The port of the X3 interface.
- `x3_required` (null, Boolean): Whether to also intercept call content via X3 interface (`false` by default).

### Query Parameters

- `liid`: Filter for interceptions of a specific interception ID
- `number`: Filter for interceptions of a specific number (in E.164 format)
- `order_by`: Order collection by a specific attribute. Possible values are: `id`, `reseller_id`, `liid`, `number`, `c`, `c_required`, `delivery_host`, `delivery_port`, `delivery_user`, `delivery_pass`, `modify_t`, `timestamp`, `create_timestamp`, `deleted`, `uuid`, `sip_username`, `sip_domain`, `cc_delivery`, `_host`, `cc_delivery_port`
- `order_by_direction`: Direction which the collection should be ordered by. Possible values are: `asc` (default), `desc`

### API Examples

#### Get a specific interception

##### • Request:

```
curl -i --insecure --user administrator:administrator -X GET
https://localhost:1443/api/interceptions/528
```

##### • Response:

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Server: nginx
Date: Tue, 01 Dec 2015 09:43:41 GMT
ContentType: application/hal+json; profile="http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/";
  charset=utf8
ContentLength: 634
Connection: keepalive
Link: </api/interceptions/>; rel=collection
Link: <http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/>; rel=profile
Link: </api/interceptions/528>; rel="item self"
SetCookie: ngcp_panel_session=35b56d921c36clfc6edb8fcd0a86dd9af61ec62a; path=/;
  expires=Tue, 01 Dec 2015 10:43:41 GMT; HttpOnly
StrictTransportSecurity: maxage=15768000
{
  "_links" : {
    "collection" : {
```

```

    "href" : "/api/interceptions/"
  },
  "curies" : {
    "href" : "http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/#rel{rel}",
    "name" : "ngcp",
    "templated" : true
  },
  "profile" : {
    "href" : "http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/"
  },
  "self" : {
    "href" : "/api/interceptions/528"
  }
},
"id" : 528,
"liid" : 918273,
"number" : "0014155550132",
"x2_host" : "192.168.42.42",
"x2_password" : null,
"x2_port" : 3002,
"x2_user" : null,
"x3_host" : "192.168.42.42",
"x3_port" : 3003,
"x3_required" : true
}

```

### Get all interceptions for a number

- Request:

```

curl -i --insecure --user administrator:administrator -X GET \
https://localhost:1443/api/interceptions/?number=0014155550132

```

- Response:

```

HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Server: nginx
Date: Tue, 01 Dec 2015 09:47:36 GMT
ContentType: application/hal+json; profile="http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/";
  charset=utf8
ContentLength: 1283
Connection: keepalive
SetCookie: ngcp_panel_session=238550c5737058db619b183d925b5f9a61261cfe; path=/;
  expires=Tue, 01 Dec 2015 10:47:36 GMT; HttpOnly
StrictTransportSecurity: maxage=15768000
{
  "_embedded" : {
    "ngcp:interceptions" : {

```

```
    "_links" : {
      "collection" : {
        "href" : "/api/interceptions/"
      },
      "curies" : {
        "href" : "http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/#rel{rel}",
        "name" : "ngcp",
        "templated" : true
      },
      "profile" : {
        "href" : "http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/"
      },
      "self" : {
        "href" : "/api/interceptions/520"
      }
    },
    "id" : 520,
    "liid" : 1,
    "number" : "0014155550132",
    "x2_host" : "192.168.42.42",
    "x2_password" : null,
    "x2_port" : 3002,
    "x2_user" : null,
    "x3_host" : "192.168.42.42",
    "x3_port" : 3003,
    "x3_required" : true
  }
},
"_links" : {
  "curies" : {
    "href" : "http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/#rel{rel}",
    "name" : "ngcp",
    "templated" : true
  },
  "ngcp:interceptions" : {
    "href" : "/api/interceptions/520"
  },
  "profile" : {
    "href" : "http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/"
  },
  "self" : {
    "href" : "/api/interceptions/?page=1&rows=10"
  }
},
"total_count" : 1
}
```

## Get all interceptions for all numbers

- Request:

```
curl -i --insecure --user administrator:administrator -X GET \
https://localhost:1443/api/interceptions/
```

- Response:

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Server: nginx
Date: Tue, 01 Dec 2015 09:43:18 GMT
ContentType: application/hal+json; profile="http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/";
  charset=utf8
ContentLength: 2364
Connection: keepalive
SetCookie: ngcp_panel_session=68398eea5bdd3885ad0517elf6d367ccc80111fa; path=/;
  expires=Tue, 01 Dec 2015 10:43:18 GMT; HttpOnly
StrictTransportSecurity: maxage=15768000
{
  "_embedded" : {
    "ngcp:interceptions" : [
      {
        "_links" : {
          "collection" : {
            "href" : "/api/interceptions/"
          },
          "curies" : {
            "href" : "http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/#rel{rel}",
            "name" : "ngcp",
            "templated" : true
          },
          "profile" : {
            "href" : "http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/"
          },
          "self" : {
            "href" : "/api/interceptions/520"
          }
        },
        "id" : 520,
        "liid" : 1,
        "number" : "0014155550132",
        "x2_host" : "192.168.42.42",
        "x2_password" : null,
        "x2_port" : 3002,
        "x2_user" : null,
        "x3_host" : "192.168.42.42",
        "x3_port" : 3003,
        "x3_required" : true
      }
    ]
  }
}
```

```

    },
    {
      "_links" : {
        "collection" : {
          "href" : "/api/interceptions/"
        },
        "curies" : {
          "href" : "http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/#rel{rel}",
          "name" : "ngcp",
          "templated" : true
        },
        "profile" : {
          "href" : "http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/"
        },
        "self" : {
          "href" : "/api/interceptions/528"
        }
      },
      "id" : 528,
      "liid" : 918273,
      "number" : "0014155550132",
      "x2_host" : "192.168.42.42",
      "x2_password" : null,
      "x2_port" : 3002,
      "x2_user" : null,
      "x3_host" : "192.168.42.42",
      "x3_port" : 3003,
      "x3_required" : true
    }
  ]
},
"_links" : {
  "curies" : {
    "href" : "http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/#rel{rel}",
    "name" : "ngcp",
    "templated" : true
  },
  "ngcp:interceptions" : [
    {
      "href" : "/api/interceptions/520"
    },
    {
      "href" : "/api/interceptions/528"
    }
  ],
  "profile" : {
    "href" : "http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/"
  },
  "self" : {

```

```

        "href" : "/api/interceptions/?page=1&rows=10"
    },
    "total_count" : 2
}

```

### Get interception for specific LIID

- Request:

```

curl -i --insecure --user administrator:administrator -X GET \
https://localhost:1443/api/interceptions/?liid=9876

```

- Response:

```

HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Server: nginx
Date: Tue, 01 Dec 2015 09:50:41 GMT
ContentType: application/hal+json; profile="http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/";
  charset=utf8
ContentLength: 1283
Connection: keepalive
SetCookie: ngcp_panel_session=23960dde6bb90f0c5c84575890194c53ccea120ce; path=/;
  expires=Tue, 01 Dec 2015 10:50:40 GMT; HttpOnly
StrictTransportSecurity: maxage=15768000
{
  "_embedded" : {
    "ngcp:interceptions" : {
      "_links" : {
        "collection" : {
          "href" : "/api/interceptions/"
        },
        "curies" : {
          "href" : "http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/#rel{rel}",
          "name" : "ngcp",
          "templated" : true
        },
        "profile" : {
          "href" : "http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/"
        },
        "self" : {
          "href" : "/api/interceptions/520"
        }
      },
      "id" : 520,
      "liid" : 1,
      "number" : "0014155550132",
      "x2_host" : "192.168.42.42",

```



```

        "x2_password" : null,
        "x2_port" : 3002,
        "x2_user" : null,
        "x3_host" : "192.168.42.42",
        "x3_port" : 3003,
        "x3_required" : true
    }
},
"_links" : {
    "curies" : {
        "href" : "http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/#rel{rel}",
        "name" : "ngcp",
        "templated" : true
    },
    "ngcp:interceptions" : {
        "href" : "/api/interceptions/520"
    },
    "profile" : {
        "href" : "http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/"
    },
    "self" : {
        "href" : "/api/interceptions/?page=1&rows=10"
    }
},
"total_count" : 1
}

```

### Create interception for a specific number

- Request:

```

curl -i --insecure --user administrator:administrator -X POST \
-H "ContentType: application/json" --data \
'{"liid":123, "number":"31032222203", "x2_host":"127.0.0.1", "x2_port":12345,
  "x3_required":true, "x3_host":"127.0.0.2", "x3_port":23456}' \
https://localhost:1443/api/interceptions/

```

- Response:

```

HTTP/1.1 201 Created
TransferEncoding: chunked
Connection: close
Location: /api/interceptions/528
SetCookie: ngcp_panel_session=e7817079d121fae4d86448b10e1fa21d0201c526; path=/;
  expires=Tue, 01 Dec 2015 10:43:18 GMT; HttpOnly
StrictTransportSecurity: maxage=15768000

```

The path to the newly created interception is found in the *Location* header of the response.

## Update specific interception

- Request:

```
curl -i --insecure --user administrator:administrator -X PUT \  
-H "ContentType: application/json" -H 'Prefer: return=representation' --data \  
'{"liid":918273, "number":"0014155550132", "x2_host":"192.168.42.42", "x2_port":5000, \  
  "x3_required":false}' \  
https://localhost:1443/api/interceptions/123
```

- Response:

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK  
ContentType: application/hal+json; profile="http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/";  
  charset=utf8  
ContentLength: 621  
Link: </api/interceptions/>; rel=collection  
Link: <http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/>; rel=profile  
Link: </api/interceptions/530>; rel=self  
PreferenceApplied: return=representation  
SetCookie: ngcp_panel_session=0b56e4a197b0e9f6e22a998e85473a0184770740; path=/  
  expires=Tue, 01 Dec 2015 10:56:17 GMT; HttpOnly  
{  
  "_links" : {  
    "collection" : {  
      "href" : "/api/interceptions/"  
    },  
    "curies" : {  
      "href" : "http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/#rel{rel}",  
      "name" : "ngcp",  
      "templated" : true  
    },  
    "profile" : {  
      "href" : "http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/"  
    },  
    "self" : {  
      "href" : "/api/interceptions/530"  
    }  
  },  
  "id" : 530,  
  "liid" : 918273,  
  "number" : "0014155550132",  
  "x2_host" : "192.168.42.42",  
  "x2_password" : null,  
  "x2_port" : 5000,  
  "x2_user" : null,  
  "x3_host" : null,  
  "x3_port" : null,  
  "x3_required" : false  
}
```

```
}
```

The *Prefer: return=representation* header forces the API to return the content, otherwise status *201* with no content is returned.

### Update only certain items for a specific interception

- Request:

```
curl -i --insecure --user administrator:administrator -X PATCH \
-H "Content-Type: application/jsonpatch+json" -H 'Prefer: return=representation' \
--data ' [{"op": "replace", "path": "/x2_host", "value": "192.168.42.42"}, {"op": "replace",
"path": "/x2_port", "value": 4000}]' \
https://localhost:1443/api/interceptions/530
```

- Response:

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Server: nginx
Date: Tue, 01 Dec 2015 10:06:06 GMT
Content-Type: application/hal+json; profile="http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/";
charset=utf8
Content-Length: 620
Connection: close
Link: </api/interceptions/>; rel=collection
Link: <http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/>; rel=profile
Link: </api/interceptions/530>; rel=self
Preference-Applied: return=representation
Set-Cookie: ngcp_panel_session=0693129d63d543a85f96d464ff9a8f807cfc4d18; path=/;
expires=Tue, 01 Dec 2015 11:06:06 GMT; HttpOnly
Strict-Transport-Security: max-age=15768000
{
  "_links" : {
    "collection" : {
      "href" : "/api/interceptions/"
    },
    "curies" : {
      "href" : "http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/#rel{rel}",
      "name" : "ngcp",
      "templated" : true
    },
    "profile" : {
      "href" : "http://purl.org/sipwise/ngcpapi/"
    },
    "self" : {
      "href" : "/api/interceptions/530"
    }
  },
  "id" : 530,
```

```

    "liid" : 918273,
    "number" : "0014155550132",
    "x2_host" : "192.168.42.42",
    "x2_password" : null,
    "x2_port" : 4000,
    "x2_user" : null,
    "x3_host" : null,
    "x3_port" : null,
    "x3_required" : false
  }

```

### Delete specific interception

- Request:

```

curl -i --insecure --user administrator:administrator -X DELETE \
https://localhost:1443/api/interceptions/123

```

- Response:

```

HTTP/1.1 204 No Content
Server: nginx
Date: Tue, 01 Dec 2015 10:08:49 GMT
Connection: keepalive
Set-Cookie: ngcp_panel_session=570c66b66732629766f86b8ed9bd0d64902ae73e; path=/;
    expires=Tue, 01 Dec 2015 11:08:49 GMT; HttpOnly
XCatalyst: 5.90042
StrictTransportSecurity: maxage=15768000

```

#### 14.3.3.2 X2 Interface

The communication via the X2 interface consists of request-response pairs.

##### **Request**

The request is formatted as: X2/<bodylength>/<body>

**Body** part has the following items:

Table 21: X2 Message Body Items

Element	Type	Length	Description
/x2/header/source	String	arbitrary length	identifier of Sipwise node which captured the data
/x2/header/destination	String	arbitrary length	identifier of LI mediation system

Table 21: (continued)

Element	Type	Length	Description
/x2/header/type	String	arbitrary length	always "sip" (but later potentially "xmpp" and others too)
/x2/header/version	PosInteger	arbitrary length	always "1"
/x2/header/timestamp	String	27 chars	format: YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.ffffffZ; timestamp in UTC when the X2 package is sent to mediation
/x2/body/dialogid	PosInteger	arbitrary length	globally increasing counter for each new communication dialog (e.g. call)
/x2/body/messageid	PosInteger	arbitrary length	increasing counter for each new x2 message within a dialog, starting from 0
/x2/body/timestamp	String	27 chars	format: YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.ffffffZ; timestamp in UTC when the package has been captured on the wire
/x2/body/interceptions			one or more elements containing the following information, one element per intercepted target:
/x2/body/interceptions/liid	PosInteger	arbitrary length	interception id ("liid") as set via X1 interface
/x2/body/interceptions/direction	String	arbitrary length	either "totarget" or "fromtarget" from the soft-switch perspective (if target is the called party, it is "totarget", if target is the calling party, it is "fromtarget").
/x2/body/data	Base64 encoded	arbitrary	content of full IP frame and up on the OSI layer; packets fragmented on the wire are provided in fully assembled format

**Example of full message:**

```

X2/418/
{
  "header": {
    "source": "prx01a.example.com",
    "destination": "x2destination.example.com",
    "type": "sip",
    "version": 1,
    "timestamp": "2015 03 11T09:18:04.729803Z"
  },
  "body": {
    "dialogid": 4,
    "messageid": 0,
    "timestamp": "2015 03 11T09:18:04.729123Z",
    "interceptions": [
      { "liid": 174, "direction": "fromtarget" },
      { "liid": 175, "direction": "totarget" }
    ]
  }
}

```

```

    ],
    "data": "<base64 encoded ip,udp/tcp,sip frame>"
  }
}

```

### Response

- Success: X2-ACK/0/
- Error: X2-ERR/<length>/<error string>

### Keep-Alive Mechanism

A regular keep-alive mechanism with a default value of 10s is used on the connection if it is re-used across multiple messages.

- Request: X2/0/
- Response: X2-ACK/0/

#### 14.3.3.3 X3 Interface

On the X3 interface TLV based packets are sent via secured (TLS) connection on a pre-established stream. X3 messages do not need to be acknowledged, except for keep-alive messages.

### X3 Message Structure

Table 22: X3 Message Structure

Field	Length
Header	arbitrary
CCCID	4 bytes
MessageId	4 bytes
Timestamp	8 bytes
Payload	arbitrary

### Header Details

Table 23: X3: Header Details

Field	Length	Content
type	2 bytes	always "X3"
delimiter	1 byte	always "/"
length	arbitrary	ASCII string

Table 23: (continued)

Field	Length	Content
delimiter	1 byte	always "/"

### **CCCID Details**

`dialogid` (32 bit in network byte order, reset to 0 after  $2^{32}-1$ )

The `dialogid` is referencing the `/x2/body/dialogid` field in order to correlate an X3 packet to an X2 call.

### **MessageID Details**

`messageid` (32 bit in network byte order, reset to 0 after  $2^{32}-1$ )

The `messageid` is a counter within a dialog sequencing the X3 packets sent from the NGCP. This counter is not correlated in any way with X2, rather than starting at 0 with the first RTP packet captured within a dialog.

### **Timestamp Details**

- `seconds` (32 bit in network byte order)
- `fraction` (32 bit in network byte order)

The timestamp represents the Unix epoch starting from 1970-01-01.

### **Payload Details**

Table 24: X3: Payload Details

Field	Length
original ip header	20 bytes for v4, 40 bytes for v6
original udp header	8 bytes
original rtp header	variable, 12-72 bytes
original rtp payload	arbitrary

### **Keep-Alive Mechanism**

A regular keep-alive mechanism with a default value of 10s is used on the connection if it is re-used across multiple messages.

- Request: `X3/0/`
- Response: `X3-ACK/0/`

## A Basic Call Flows

### A.1 General Call Setup

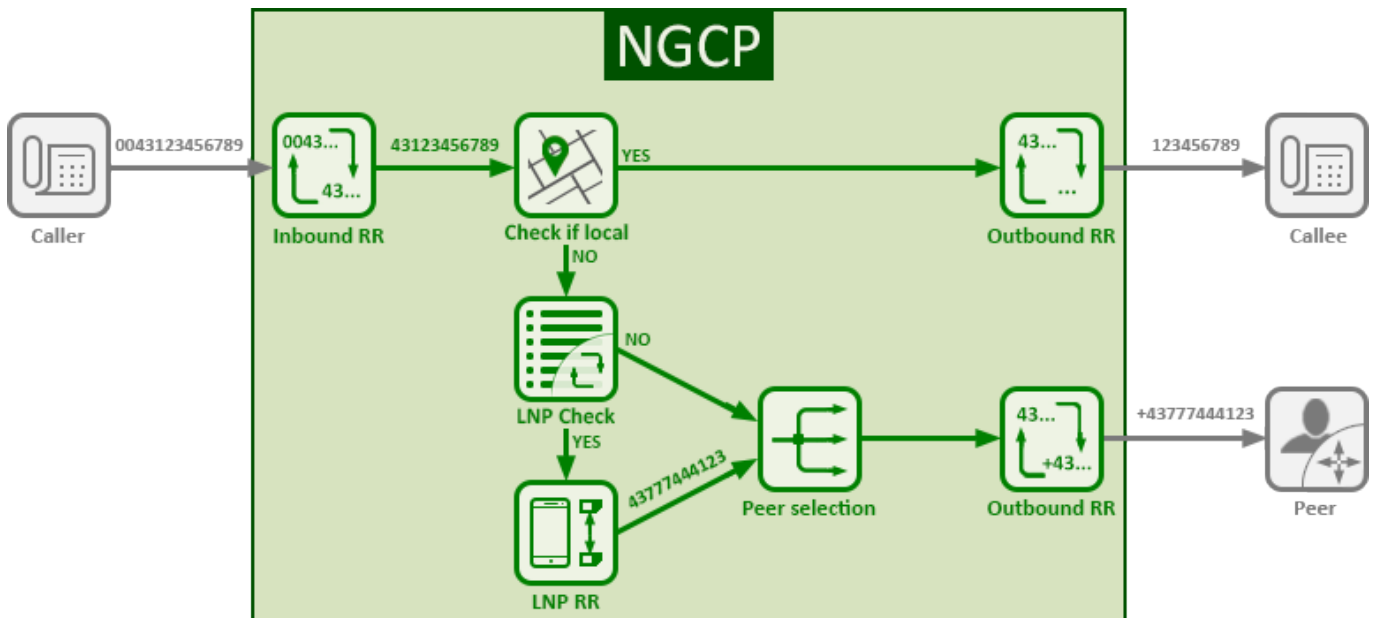


Figure 109: General Call Setup

NGCP performs the following checks when processing a call coming from a subscriber and terminated at a peer:

- Checks if the IP address where the request came from is in the list of trusted IP addresses. If yes, this IP address is taken as the identity for authentication. Otherwise, NGCP performs the digest authentication.
- When the subscriber is authorized to make the call, NGCP applies the Inbound Rewrite Rules for the caller and the callee assigned to the subscriber (if any). If there are no Rewrite Rules assigned to the subscriber, the ones assigned to the subscriber's domain are applied. On this stage the platform normalises the numbers from the subscriber's format to E.164.
- Matches the callee (called number) with local subscribers.
  - If it finds a matching subscriber, the call is routed internally. In this case, NGCP applies the Outbound Rewrite Rules associated with the callee (if any). If there are no Rewrite Rules assigned to the callee, the ones assigned to the callee's domain are applied.
  - If it does not find a matching subscriber, the call goes to a peer as described below.
- Queries the LNP database to find out if the number was ported or not. For details of LNP queries refer to the [Local Number Porting](#) Section 4.4 chapter.
  - If it was ported, NGCP applies the LNP Rewrite Rules to the called number.
- Based on the priorities of peering groups and peering rules (see Section 3.5.2.3 for details), NGCP selects peering groups for call termination and defines their precedence.



- Within every peering group the weight of a peering server defines its probability to receive the call for termination. Thus, the bigger the weight of a server, the higher the probability that NGCP will send the call to it.
- Applies the Outbound Rewrite Rules for the caller and the callee assigned to a peering server when sending the call to it.

## A.2 Endpoint Registration

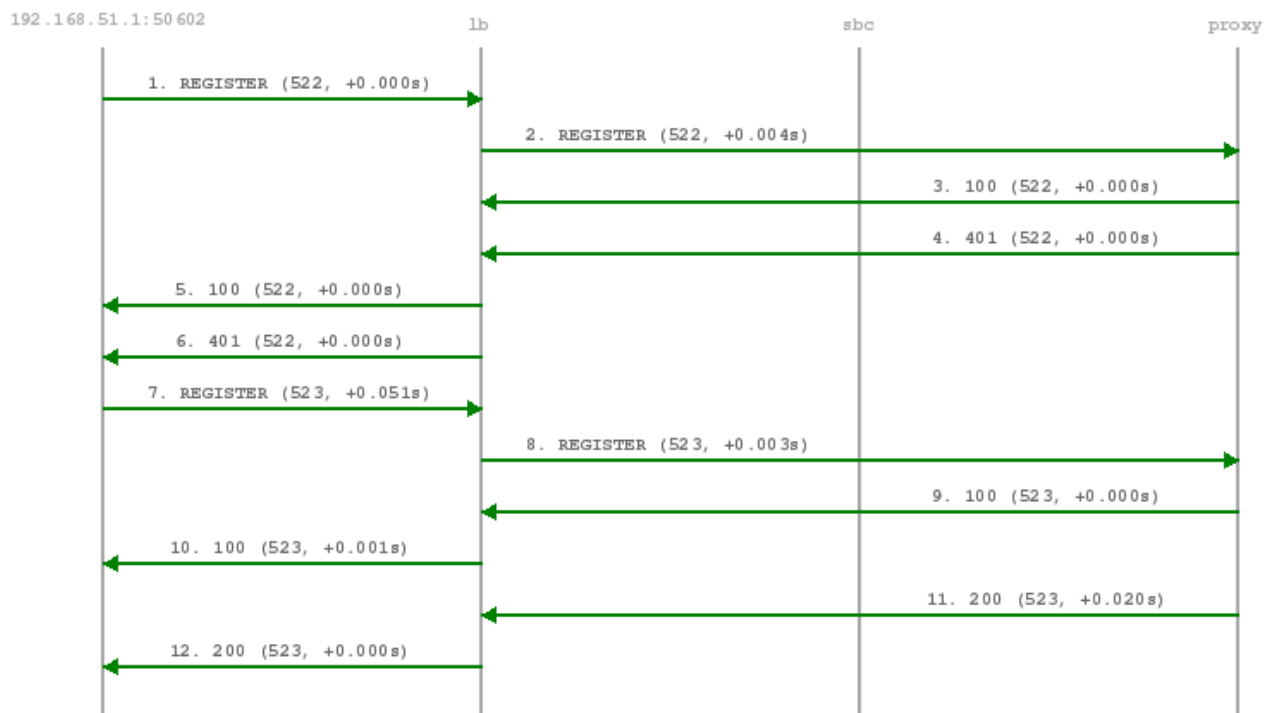


Figure 110: Registration Call-Flow

The subscriber endpoint starts sending a REGISTER request, which gets challenged by a 401. After calculating the response of the authentication challenge, it sends the REGISTER again, including the authentication response. The SIP proxy looks up the credentials of the subscriber in the database, does the same calculation, and if the result matches the one from the subscriber, the registration is granted.

The SIP proxy writes the content of the Contact header (e.g. `sip:me@1.2.3.4:1234;transport=UDP`) into its location table (in case of NAT the content is changed by the SIP load-balancer to the IP/port from where the request was received), so it knows where to reach a subscriber in case of an inbound call to this subscriber (e.g. `sip:someuser@example.org` is mapped to `sip:me@1.2.3.4:1234;transport=UDP` and sent out to this address).

If NAT is detected, the SIP proxy sends a OPTION message to the registered contact every 30 seconds, in order to keep the NAT binding on the NAT device open. Otherwise, for subsequent calls to this contact, the sip:provider PRO wouldn't be able to reach the endpoint behind NAT (NAT devices usually drop a UDP binding after not receiving any traffic for ~30-60 seconds).

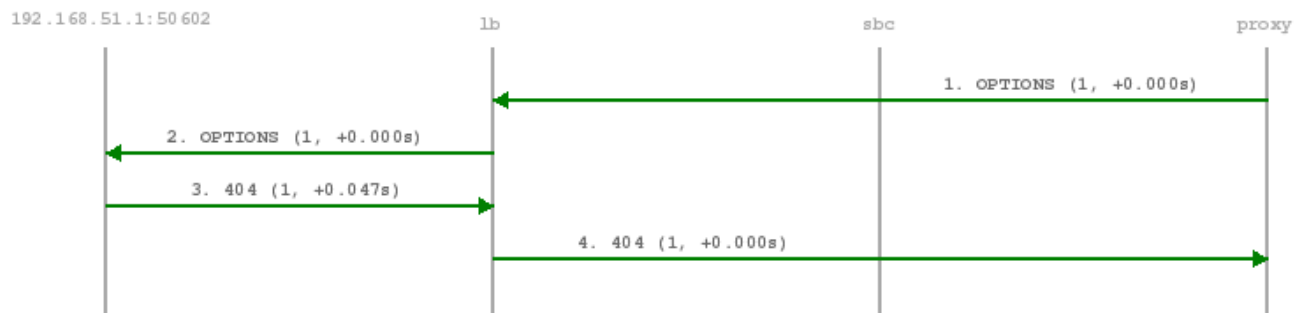


Figure 111: NAT-Ping Call-Flow

By default, a subscriber can register 5 contacts for an Address of Record (AoR, e.g. `sip:someuser@example.org`).



### A.3 Basic Call

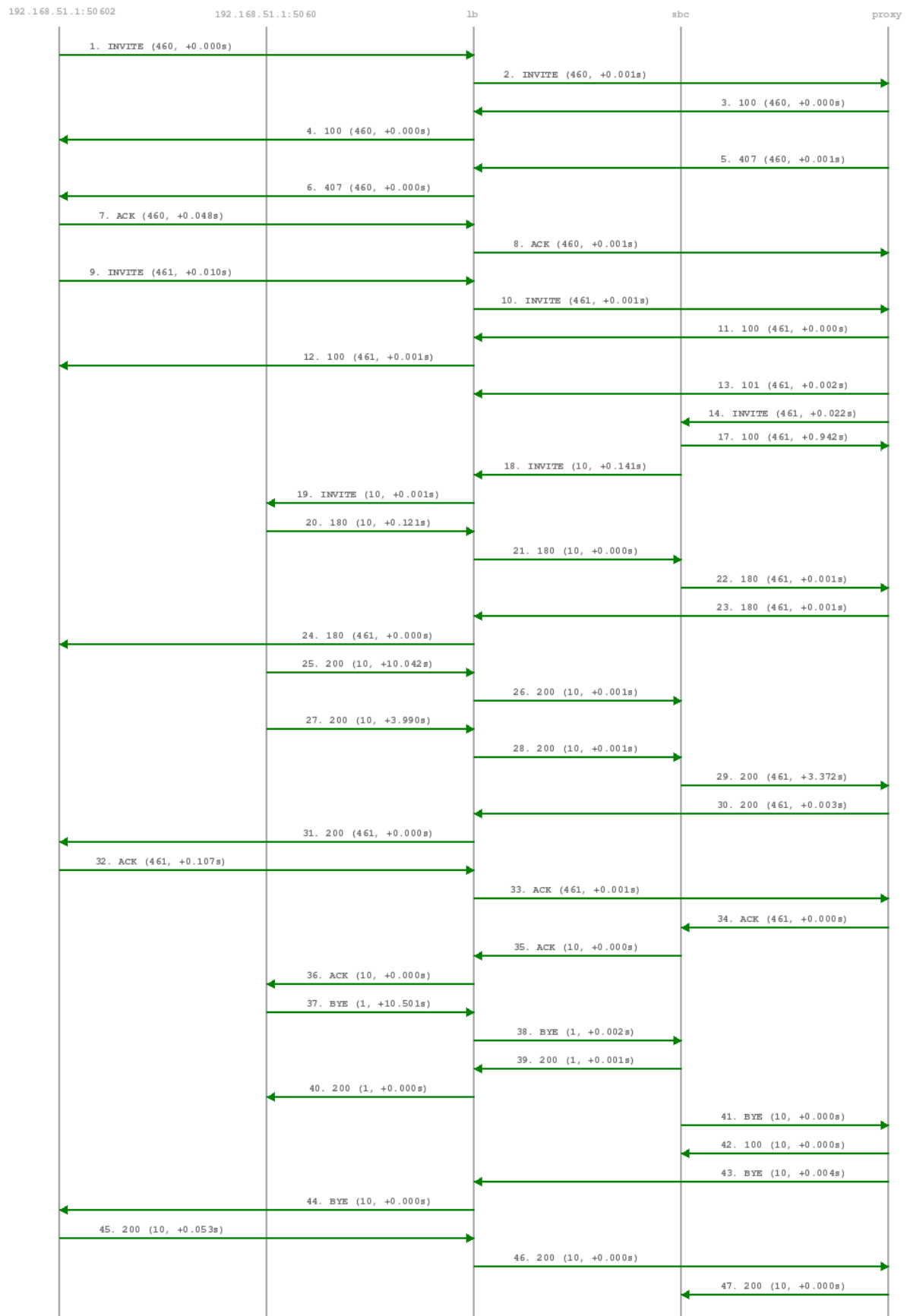


Figure 112: Basic Call Call-Flow

The calling party sends an INVITE (e.g. `sip:someuser@example.org`) via the SIP load-balancer to the SIP proxy. The proxy replies with an authorization challenge in the 407 response, and the calling party sends the INVITE again with authentication credentials. The SIP proxy checks if the called party is a local user. If it is, and if there is a registered contact found for this user, then (after various feature-related tasks for both the caller and the callee) the Request-URI is replaced by the URI of the registered contact (e.g. `sip:me@1.2.3.4:1234;transport=UDP`). If it's not a local user but a numeric user, a proper PSTN gateway is being selected by the SIP proxy, and the Request-URI is rewritten accordingly (e.g. `sip:+43123456789@2.3.4.5:5060`).

Once the proxy has finished working through the call features of both parties involved and has selected the final destination for the call, and - optionally - has invoked the Media Relay for this call, the INVITE is sent to the SIP B2BUA. The B2BUA creates a new INVITE message from scratch (using a new Call-ID and a new From-Tag), copies only various and explicitly allowed SIP headers from the old message to the new one, filters out unwanted media capabilities from the SDP body (e.g. to force audio calls to use G.711 as a codec) and then sends the new message via the SIP load-balancer to the called party.

SIP replies from the called party are passed through the elements back to the calling party (replacing various fields on the B2BUA to match the first call leg again). If a reply with an SDP body is received by the SIP proxy (e.g. a 183 or a 200), the Media Relay is invoked again to prepare the ports for the media stream.

Once the 200 is routed from the called party to the calling party, the media stream is fully negotiated, and the endpoints can start sending traffic to each other (either end-to-end or via the Media Relay). Upon reception of the 200, the SIP proxy writes a start record for the accounting process. The 200 is also acknowledged with an ACK message from the calling party to the called party, according to the SIP 3-way handshake.

Either of the parties can tear down the media session at any time by sending a BYE, which is passed through to the other party. Once the BYE reaches the SIP proxy, it instructs the Media Relay to close the media ports, and it writes a stop record for accounting purposes. Both the start- and the stop-records are picked up by the *mediator* service in a regular interval and are converted into a Call Detail Record (CDR), which will be rated by the *rate-o-mat* process and can be billed to the calling party.

## A.4 Session Keep-Alive

The SIP B2BUA acts as refresher for the Session-Timer mechanism as defined in RFC 4028. If the endpoints indicate support for the UPDATE method during call-setup, then the SIP B2BUA will use an UPDATE message if enabled per peer, domain or subscriber via Provisioning to check if the endpoints are still alive and responsive. Both endpoints can renegotiate the timer within a configurable range. All values can be tuned using the Admin Panel or the APIs using Peer-, Domain- and Subscriber-Preferences.

---

### Tip

Keep in mind that the values being used in the signaling are always half the value being configured. So if you want to send a keep-alive every 300 seconds, you need to provision `sst_expires` to 600.

---

If one of the endpoints doesn't respond to the keep-alive messages or answers with 481 `Call/Transaction Does Not Exist`, then the call is torn down on both sides. This mechanism prevents excessive over-billing of calls if one of the endpoints is not reachable anymore or "forgets" about the call. The BYE message sent by the B2BUA triggers a stop-record for accounting and also closes the media ports on the Media Relay to stop the call.

Beside the Session-Timer mechanism to prevent calls from being lost or kept open, there is a **maximum call length** of 21600 seconds per default defined in the B2BUA. This is a security/anti-fraud mechanism to prevent overly long calls causing excessive costs.

## A.5 Voicebox Calls

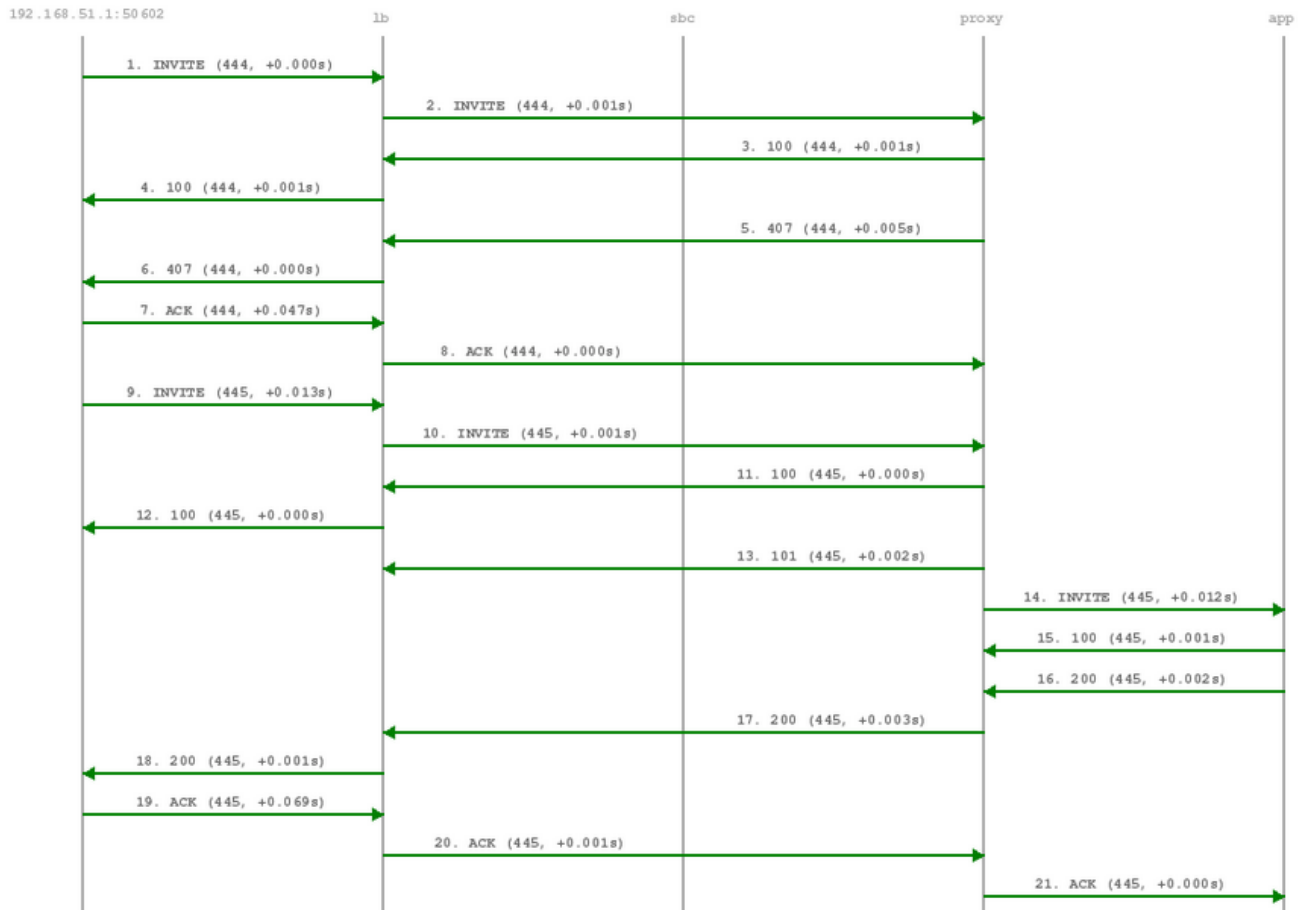


Figure 113: Voicebox Call-Flow

Calls to the Voicebox (both for callers leaving a voicemail message and for voicebox owners managing it via the IVR menu) are passed directly from the SIP proxy to the App-Server without a B2BUA. The App-Server maintains its own timers, so there is no risk of over-billing or overly long calls.

In such a case where an endpoint talks via the Media Relay to a system-internal endpoint, the Media Relay bridges the media streams between the public in the system-internal network.

In case of an endpoint leaving a new message on the voicebox, the Message-Waiting-Indication (MWI) mechanism triggers the sending of a unsolicited NOTIFY message, passing the number of new messages in the body. As soon as the voicebox owner dials into his voicebox (e.g. by calling `sip:voicebox@example.org` from his SIP account), another NOTIFY message is sent to his devices, resetting the number of new messages.

**Important**

The sip:carrier does not require your device to subscribe to the MWI service by sending a SUBSCRIBE (it would rather reject it). On the other hand, the endpoints need to accept unsolicited NOTIFY messages (that is, a NOTIFY without a valid subscription), otherwise the MWI service will not work with these endpoints.

---

## B NGCP configs overview

### B.1 config.yml Overview

`/etc/ngcp-config/config.yml` is the main configuration YAML file used by Sipwise NGCP. After every changes it need to run the command `ngcpcfg apply my commit message` to apply changes (followed by `ngcpcfg push` in the PRO version to apply changes to sp2). The following is a brief description of the main variables contained into `/etc/ngcp-config/config.yml` file.

#### B.1.1 apps

This section contains parameters for the additional applications that may be activated on sip:carrier.

```
apps:
  malicious_call: no
```

- `malicious_call`: if set to `yes`, the Malicious Call Identification (MCID) application will be enabled

#### B.1.2 asterisk

The following is the asterisk section:

```
asterisk:
  log:
    facility: local6
  rtp:
    maxport: 20000
    minport: 10000
  sip:
    bindport: 5070
    dtmfmode: rfc2833
  voicemail:
    enable: 'no'
    fromstring: 'Voicemail server'
    greeting:
      busy_custom_greeting: '/home/user/file_no_extension'
      busy_overwrite_default: 'no'
      busy_overwrite_subscriber: 'no'
      unavail_custom_greeting: '/home/user/file_no_extension'
      unavail_overwrite_default: 'no'
      unavail_overwrite_subscriber: 'no'
    mailbody: 'You have received a new message from ${VM_CALLERID} in voicebox ${VM_MAILBOX} ↵
      } on ${VM_DATE}.'
    mailsubject: '[Voicebox] New message ${VM_MSGNUM} in voicebox ${VM_MAILBOX}'
    max_msg_length: 180
```



```
maxgreet: 60
maxmsg: 30
maxsilence: 0
min_msg_length: 3
normalize_match: '^00|\+([1-9][0-9]+)$'
normalize_replace: '$1'
serveremail: voicebox@sip.sipwise.com
```

- `log.facility`: rsyslog facility for asterisk log, defined in `/etc/asterisk/logger.conf`.
- `rtp.maxport`: RTP maximum port used by asterisk.
- `rtp.minport`: RTP minimum port used by asterisk.
- `sip.bindport`: SIP asterisk internal bindport.
- `voicemail.greetings.*`: set the audio file path for voicemail custom unavailable/busy greetings
- `voicemail.mailbody`: Mail body for incoming voicemail.
- `voicemail.mailsubject`: Mail subject for incoming voicemail.
- `voicemail.max_msg_length`: Sets the maximum length of a voicemail message, in seconds.
- `voicemail.maxgreet`: Sets the maximum length of voicemail greetings, in seconds.
- `voicemail.maxmsg`: Sets the maximum number of messages that may be kept in any voicemail folder.
- `voicemail.min_msg_length`: Sets the minimum length of a voicemail message, in seconds.
- `voicemail.maxsilence`: Maxsilence defines how long Asterisk will wait for a contiguous period of silence before terminating an incoming call to voice mail. The default value is 0, which means the silence detector is disabled and the wait time is infinite.
- `voicemail.serveremail`: Provides the email address from which voicemail notifications should be sent.
- `voicemail.normalize_match`: Regular expression to match the From number for calls to voicebox.
- `voicemail.normalize_replace`: Replacement string to return, in order to match an existing voicebox.

### B.1.3 autoprov

The following is the autoprovisioning section:

```
autoprov:
  hardphone:
    skip_vendor_redirect: 'no'
  server:
    bootstrap_port: 1445
    ca_certfile: '/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/client-auth-ca.crt'
    host: localhost
    port: 1444
```

```
server_certfile: '/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/myserver.crt'
server_keyfile: '/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/myserver.key'
ssl_enabled: 'yes'
softphone:
  config_lockdown: 0
  webauth: 0
```

- `autprov.skip_vendor_redirect`: Skip phone vendor redirection to the vendor provisioning web site.

### B.1.4 backuptools

The following is the backup tools section:

```
backuptools:
  cdrexport_backup:
    enable: 'no'
  etc_backup:
    enable: 'no'
  mail:
    address: noc@company.org
    error_subject: '[ngcp-backup] Problems detected during daily backup'
    log_subject: '[ngcp-backup] Daily backup report'
    send_errors: 'no'
    send_log: 'no'
  mysql_backup:
    enable: 'no'
    exclude_dbs: 'syslog sipstats information_schema'
  rotate_days: 7
  storage_dir: '/var/backup/ngcp_backup'
  temp_backup_dir: '/tmp/ngcp_backup'
```

- `backuptools.cdrexport_backup.enable`: Enable backup of `cdrexport` (.csv) directory.
- `backuptools.etc_backup.enable`: Enable backup of `/etc/*` directory.
- `backuptools.mail.address`: Destination email address for backup emails.
- `backuptools.mail.error_subject`: Subject for error emails.
- `backuptools.mail.log_subjetc`: Subject for daily backup report.
- `backuptools.mail.send_error`: Send daily backup error report.
- `backuptools.mail.send_log`: Send daily backup log report.
- `backuptools.mysql_backup.enable`: Enable daily mysql backup.
- `backuptools.mysql_backup.exclude_dbs`: exclude mysql databases from backup.

- `backuptools.rotate_days`: Number of backups to keep stored.
- `backuptools.storage_dir`: Storage directory of backups.
- `backuptools.temp_backup_dir`: Temporary storage directory of backups.

### B.1.5 bootenv

The following is the bootenv section:

```
bootenv:
  dhcp:
    boot: '/srv/tftp/pxelinux.0'
    enable: 'yes'
    end: 192.168.1.199
    expire: 12h
    start: 192.168.1.101
  http_port: 3000
  ro_port: 9998
  rw_port: 9999
  tftp:
    enable: 'yes'
    root: '/srv/tftp'
```

- `bootenv.dhcp.enable`: enable dnsmasq DHCP server
- `bootenv.dhcp.boot`: PXE image boot location
- `bootenv.dhcp.start`: first IP of DHCP scope
- `bootenv.dhcp.end`: last IP of DHCP scope
- `bootenv.dhcp.expire`: DHCP leasing expiration
- `bootenv.http_port`: HTTP port for iPXE boot files/configs
- `bootenv.ro_port`: HTTP port for read-only access to Approx cache
- `bootenv.rw_port`: HTTP port for read-write access to Approx cache
- `bootenv.tftp.enable`: enable tftp server for PXE boot
- `bootenv.tftp.root`: root folder for tftp server

### B.1.6 cdrexpert

The following is the cdr export section:

```
cdrexport:
  daily_folder: 'yes'
  export_failed: 'no'
  export_incoming: 'no'
  exportpath: '/home/jail/home/cdreexport'
  full_names: 'yes'
  monthly_folder: 'yes'
```

- `cdrexport.daily_folder`:: Set `yes` if you want to create a daily folder for CDRs under the configured path.
- `cdrexport.export_failed`: Export CDR for failed calls.
- `cdrexport.export_incoming`: Export CDR for incoming calls.
- `cdrexport.exportpath`: The path to store CDRs in `.csv` format.
- `cdrexport.full_names`: Use full namen for CDRs instead of short ones.
- `cdrexport.monthly_folder`: Set `yes` if you want to create a monthly folder (ex. 201301 for January 2013) for CDRs under configured path.

### B.1.7 checktools

The following is the check tools section:

```
checktools:
  collcheck:
    cpuidle: 0.1
    dfused: 0.9
    eximmaxqueue: 15
    loadlong: 2
    loadmedium: 2
    loadshort: 3
    maxage: 600
    memused: 0.7
    siptimeout: 15
    swapfree: 0.5
  active_check_enable: 1
  asr_nsr_statistics: 1
  exim_check_enable: 0
  force: 0
  kamailio_check_concurrent_calls_enable: 0
  kamailio_check_dialog_active_enable: 1
  kamailio_check_dialog_early_enable: 1
  kamailio_check_dialog_incoming_enable: 1
  kamailio_check_dialog_local_enable: 1
  kamailio_check_dialog_outgoing_enable: 1
  kamailio_check_dialog_relay_enable: 1
```

```

kamailio_check_shmem_enable: 1
kamailio_check_usrloc_regdevices_enable: 1
kamailio_check_usrloc_regusers_enable: 1
mpt_check_enable: 1
mysql_check_enable: 1
mysql_check_replication: 1
oss_check_provisioned_subscribers_enable: 1
sip_check_enable: 1
sipstats_check_num_packets: 1
sipstats_check_num_packets_perday: 1
sipstats_check_partition_size: 1
snmpd:
  communities:
    public:
      - localhost

```

- `checktools.collcheck.cpuidle`: Sets the minimum value for CPU usage (0.1 means 10%).
- `checktools.collcheck.dfused`: Sets the maximum value for DISK usage (0.9 means 90%).
- `checktools.collcheck.loadlong/loadlong/loadshort`: Max values for load (long, short, medium term).
- `checktools.collcheck.maxage`: Max age in seconds.
- `checktools.collcheck.memused`: Sets the maximum value for MEM usage (0.7 means 70%).
- `checktools.collcheck.siptimeout`: Max timeout for sip options.
- `checktools.collcheck.swapfree`: Sets the minimum value for SWAP free (0.5 means 50%).
- `checktools.exim_check_enable`: Exim queue check plugin for collectd.
- `checktools.active_check_enable`: Active node check plugin for collectd.
- `checktools.asr_nsr_statistics`: enable/Disable ASR/NSR statistics.
- `checktools.force`: Perform checks even if not active from `ngcp-check_active` command.
- `checktools.kamailio_check_*`: Enable/Disable SNMP collective check plugin for Kamailio.
- `checktools.mpt_check_enable`: MPT raid SNMP check plugin.
- `checktools.mysql_check_enable`: MySQL SNMP check plugin.
- `checktools.mysql_check_replication`: MySQL replication check.
- `checktools.oss_check_provisioned_subscribers_enable`: OSS provisioned subscribers count plugin.
- `checktools.sip_check_enable/sipstats_check_*`: Enable/Disable SIP check plugins.
- `checktools.snmpd.communities`: Sets the snmp community and sources (separated by comma , - ex. source: 127.0.0.1, 10.10.10.2, 10.10.10.3).

### B.1.8 cleanuptools

The following is the cleanup tools section:

```
cleanuptools:
  acc_cleanup_days: 90
  archive_targetdir: '/var/backups/cdr'
  binlog_days: 15
  cdr_archive_months: 2
  cdr_backup_months: 2
  cdr_backup_retro: 3
  compress: gzip
  delete_old_cdr_files:
    enabled: 'no'
    max_age_days: 30
    paths:
      -
        max_age_days: ~
        path: '/home/jail/home/*/20[0-9][0-9][0-9][0-9]/[0-9][0-9]'
        remove_empty_directories: 'yes'
        wildcard: 'yes'
      -
        max_age_days: ~
        path: '/home/jail/home/cdrexport/resellers/*/20[0-9][0-9][0-9][0-9]/[0-9][0-9]'
        remove_empty_directories: 'yes'
        wildcard: 'yes'
      -
        max_age_days: ~
        path: '/home/jail/home/cdrexport/system/20[0-9][0-9][0-9][0-9]/[0-9][0-9]'
        remove_empty_directories: 'yes'
        wildcard: 'yes'
  sql_batch: 10000
  trash_cleanup_days: 30
```

- `cleanuptools.acc_cleanup_days`: CDR records in `acc` table in `kamailio` database will be deleted after this time
- `cleanuptools.binlog_days`: Time after MySQL binlogs will be deleted.
- `cleanuptools.cdr_archive_months`: How many months worth of records to keep in monthly CDR backup tables, instead of dumping them into archive files and dropping them from database.
- `cleanuptools.cdr_backup_months`: How many months worth of records to keep in the current `cdr` table, instead of moving them into the monthly CDR backup tables.
- `cleanuptools.cdr_backup_retro`: How many months to process for backups, going backwards in time and skipping `cdr_backup_months` months first, and store them in backup tables. Any older record will be left untouched.
- `cleanuptools.delete_old_cdr_files`:

- enabled: Enable (*yes*) or disable (*no*) exported CDR cleanup.
- max\_age\_days: Gives the expiration time of the exported CDR files in days. There is a general value which may be overridden by a local value provided at a specific path. The local value is valid for the particular path only.
- paths: an array of path definitions
  - \* path: a path where CDR files are to be found and deleted; this may contain wildcard characters
  - \* wildcard: Enable (*yes*) or disable (*no*) using wildcards in the *path*
  - \* remove\_empty\_directories: Enable (*yes*) or disable (*no*) removing empty directories if those are found in the given *path*
  - \* max\_age\_days: the local expiration time value for files in the particular *path*
- cleanuptools.sql\_batch: How many records to process within a single SQL statement.
- cleanuptools.trash\_cleanup\_days: Time after CDRs from *acc\_trash* and *acc\_backup* tables in *kamailio* database will be deleted.

For the description of *cleanuptools* please visit [Cleanuptools Description](#) Section 11.4 section of the handbook.

### B.1.9 cluster\_sets

The following is the cluster sets section:

```
cluster_sets:
  default:
    dispatcher_id: 50
  default_set: default
  type: central
```

- cluster\_sets.<label>: an arbitrary label of the cluster set; in the above example we have *default*
- cluster\_sets.<label>.dispatcher\_id: a unique, numeric value that identifies a particular cluster set
- cluster\_sets.default\_set: selects the default cluster set
- cluster\_sets.type: the type of cluster set; can be *central* or *distributed*

### B.1.10 database

The following is the database section:

```
database:
  bufferpoolsize: 24768M
```

- database.bufferpoolsize: Innodb\_buffer\_pool\_size value in */etc/mysql/my.cnf*

### B.1.11 faxserver

The following is the fax server section:

```
faxserver:
  enable: yes
  fail_attempts: '3'
  fail_retry_secs: '60'
  mail_from: 'Sipwise NGCP FaxServer <voipfax@ngcp.sipwise.local>'
```

- `faxserver.enable`: *yes/no* to enable or disable `ngcp-faxserver` on the platform respectively.
- `faxserver.fail_attempts`: Amount of attempts to send a fax after which it is marked as *failed*.
- `faxserver.fail_retry_secs`: Amount of seconds to wait between "fail\_attempts".
- `faxserver.mail_from`: Sets the e-mail From Header for incoming fax.

### B.1.12 general

The following is the general section:

```
general:
  adminmail: adjust@example.org
  companyname: sipwise
  lang: en
```

- `general.adminmail`: Email address used by `monit` to send notifications to.
- `general.lang`: Sets sounds language (e.g: *de* for German)

### B.1.13 haproxy

The following is the haproxy section:

```
haproxy:
  admin: 'no'
  admin_port: 8080
  admin_pwd: iKNPFuPFHMCHh9dsXgVg
  enable: 'no'
```

- `haproxy.enable`: enable haproxy



### B.1.14 heartbeat

The following is the heartbeat section:

```
heartbeat:
  hb_watchdog:
    action_max: 5
    enable: 'yes'
    interval: 10
    transition_max: 10
  pingnodes:
    - 10.60.1.1
    - 192.168.3.4
```

- heartbeat.hb\_watchdog.enable: Enable heartbeat watchdog in order to prevent and fix split brain scenario.
- heartbeat.hb\_watchdog.action\_max: Max errors before taking any action.
- heartbeat.hb\_watchdog.interval: Interval in secs for the check.
- heartbeat.hb\_watchdog.transition\_max: Max checks in transition state.
- heartbeat.pingnodes: List of pingnodes for heartbeat. Minimum 2 entries, otherwise by default NGCP will set the default gateway and DNS servers as pingnodes.

### B.1.15 intercept

The following is the legal intercept section:

```
intercept:
  captagent:
    port: 18090
    schema: http
  enabled: 'no'
```

- intercept.captagent.enable: Enable captagent for Lawful Interception (additional NGCP module).

### B.1.16 kamailio

The following is the kamailio section:

```
kamailio:
  lb:
    debug: 'no'
    extra_sockets: ~
    max_forwards: 70
    nattest_exception_ips:
```

```
- 1.2.3.4
- 5.6.7.8
pkg_mem: 16
port: 5060
security:
  dos_ban_enable: 'yes'
  dos_ban_time: 300
  dos_reqs_density_per_unit: 50
  dos_sampling_time_unit: 5
  dos_whitelisted_ips: ~
  dos_whitelisted_subnets: ~
  failed_auth_attempts: 3
  failed_auth_ban_enable: 'yes'
  failed_auth_ban_time: 3600
shm_mem: 2012
start: 'yes'
strict_routing_safe: 'no'
tcp_children: 8
tcp_max_connections: 2048
tls:
  enable: 'no'
  port: 5061
  sslcertfile: '/etc/kamailio/kamailio-selfsigned.pem'
  sslcertkeyfile: '/etc/kamailio/kamailio-selfsigned.key'
udp_children: 8
use_dns_cache: 'on'
proxy:
  allow_info_method: 'no'
  allow_peer_relay: 'no'
  allow_refer_method: 'no'
  authenticate_bye: 'no'
  cf_depth_limit: 10
  children: 8
  debug: 'no'
  default_expires: 3600
  enum_suffix: e164.arpa.
  filter_100rel_from_supported: 'yes'
fritzbox:
  enable: 'no'
  prefixes:
    - 0$avp(caller_ac)
    - $avp(caller_cc)$avp(caller_ac)
    - '\+$avp(caller_cc)$avp(caller_ac)'
    - 00$avp(caller_cc)$avp(caller_ac)
  special_numbers:
    - 112
    - 110
    - 118[0-9]{2}
```

```

foreign_domain_via_peer: 'no'
ignore_auth_realm: 'no'
keep_original_to: 'no'
lnp:
  api:
    invalid_lnp_routing_codes:
      - ^EE00
      - ^DD00
    lnp_request_blacklist: []
    lnp_request_whitelist: []
    request_timeout: '1000'
  enabled: no
  type: api
max_expires: 43200
max_gw_lcr: 128
max_registrations_per_subscriber: 5
min_expires: 60
nathelper_dbro: 'no'
natping_interval: 30
natping_processes: 7
nonce_expire: 300
pbx:
  hunt_display_indicator: '[h]'
perform_peer_lcr: 0
pkg_mem: 16
port: 5062
presence:
  enable: 'yes'
  max_expires: '3600'
  reginfo_domain: example.org
proxy_lookup: 'no'
set_ruri_to_peer_auth_realm: 'no'
shm_mem: 2012
start: 'yes'
tcp_children: 4
use_enum: 'no'
usrloc_dbmode: 1

```

- `kamailio.lb.debug`: Enable intensive debug level.
- `kamailio.lb.extra_sockets`: Add here extra sockets for Load Balancer.
- `kamailio.lb.max_forwards`: Set the value for the Max Forwards SIP header for outgoing messages.
- `kamailio.lb.natatest_exception_ips`: List of IPs that don't need the NAT test.
- `kamailio.lb.shm_mem`: Shared memory used by Kamailio Load Balancer. The default value is auto generated by the system, depending on your system architecture.

- `kamailio.lb.pkg_mem`: PKG memory used by Kamailio Load Balancer. The default value is auto generated by the system, depending on your system architecture.
- `kamailio.lb.security.dos_ban_enable`: Enable/Disable DoS Ban.
- `kamailio.lb.security.dos_ban_time`: Sets the ban time.
- `kamailio.lb.security.dos_reqs_density_per_unit`: Sets the requests density per unit (if we receive more then \* `lb.dos_reqs_density_per_u` within `dos_sampling_time_unit` the user will be banned).
- `kamailio.lb.security.dos_sampling_time_unit`: Sets the DoS unit time.
- `kamailio.lb.security.dos_whitelisted_ips`: Write here the whitelisted IPs.
- `kamailio.lb.security.failed_auth_attempts`: Sets how many authentication attempts allowed before ban.
- `kamailio.lb.security.failed_auth_ban_enable`: Enable/Disable authentication ban.
- `kamailio.lb.security.failed_auth_ban_time`: Sets how long a user/IP has be banned.
- `kamailio.lb.strict_routing_safe`: Enable strict routing handle feature.
- `kamailio.lb.tls.enable`: Enable TLS socket.
- `kamailio.lb.tls.port`: Set TLS listening port.
- `kamailio.lb.tls.sslcertificate`: Path for the SSL certificate.
- `kamailio.lb.tls.sslcertkeyfile`: Path for the SSL key file.
- `kamailio.proxy.allow_info_method`: Allow INFO method.
- `kamailio.proxy.allow_peer_relay`: Allow peer relay. Call coming from a peer that doesn't match a local subscriber will try to go out again, matching the peering rules.
- `kamailio.proxy.allow_refer_method`: Allow REFER method. Enable it with caution.
- `kamailio.proxy.authenticate_bye`: Enable BYE authentication.
- `kamailio.proxy.cf_depth_limit`: CF loop detector. How many CF loops are allowed before drop the call.
- `kamailio.proxy.debug`: Enable intensive debug level.
- `kamailio.proxy.default_expires`: Default expires value in seconds for REGISTER messages.
- `kamailio.proxy.foreign_domain_via_peer`: Enable calls to foreign domains via peers.
- `kamailio.proxy.shm_mem`: Shared memory used by Kamailio Proxy. The default value is auto generated by the system, depending on your system architecture.
- `kamailio.proxy.pkg_mem`: PKG memory used by Kamailio Proxy. The default value is auto generated by the system, depending on your system architecture.
- `kamailio.proxy.enum_suffix`: Sets ENUM suffix - don't forget . (dot).
- `kamailio.proxy.filter_100rel_from_supported`: Enable filtering of *100rel* from Supported header, to disable PRACK.

- `kamailio.proxy.fritzbox.enable`: Enable detection for Fritzbox special numbers. Ex. Fritzbox add some prefix to emergency numbers.
- `kamailio.proxy.fritzbox.prefixes`: Fritzbox prefixes to check. Ex. `0$avp(caller_ac)`
- `kamailio.proxy.fritzbox.special_numbers`: Specifies Fritzbox special number patterns. They will be checked with the prefixes defined. Ex. `112`, so the performed check will be `sip:0$avp(caller_ac)112@` if prefix is `0$avp(caller_ac)`
- `kamailio.proxy.ignore_auth_realm`: Ignore SIP authentication realm.
- `kamailio.proxy.keep_original_to`: Not used now.
- `kamailio.proxy.lnp.enabled`: Enable/disable LNP (local number portability) lookup during call setup
- `kamailio.proxy.lnp.type`: method of LNP lookup; valid values are: `local` (local LNP database) and `api` (LNP lookup through external gateways). *PLEASE NOTE*: the `api` type of LNP lookup is only available for NGCP PRO / CARRIER installations.
- `kamailio.proxy.lnp.api.invalid_lnp_routing_codes` [only for `api` type]: number matching pattern for routing numbers that represent invalid call destinations; an announcement is played in that case and the call is dropped
- `kamailio.proxy.lnp.api.lnp_request_whitelist` [only for `api` type]: list of matching patterns of called numbers for which LNP lookup must be done
- `kamailio.proxy.lnp.api.lnp_request_blacklist` [only for `api` type]: list of matching patterns of called numbers for which LNP lookup must not be done
- `kamailio.proxy.lnp.api.request_timeout` [only for `api` type]: timeout in milliseconds while Proxy waits for the response of an LNP query from *Sipwise LNP daemon*
- `kamailio.proxy.max_expires`: Sets the maximum expires in seconds for registration.
- `kamailio.proxy.max_gw_lcr`: Defines the maximum number of gateways in `lcr_gw` table
- `kamailio.proxy.max_registrations_per_subscriber`: Sets the maximum registration per subscribers.
- `kamailio.proxy.min_expires`: Sets the minimum expires in seconds for registration.
- `kamailio.proxy.natping_interval`: Sets the NAT ping interval in seconds.
- `kamailio.proxy.nathelper_dbro`: Default is "no". This will be "yes" on CARRIER in order to activate the use of a read-only connection using `LOCAL_URL`
- `kamailio.proxy.nonce_expire`: Nonce expire time in seconds.
- `kamailio.proxy.perform_peer_lcr`: Enable/Disable Least Cost Routing based on peering fees.
- `kamailio.proxy.port`: SIP listening port.
- `kamailio.proxy.presence.enable`: Enable/disable presence feature
- `kamailio.proxy.presence.max_expires`: Sets the maximum expires value for PUBLISH/SUBSCRIBE message. Defines expiration of the presentity record.
- `kamailio.proxy.presence.reginfo_domain`: Set FQDN of the NGCP domain used in callback for mobile push.
- `kamailio.proxy.set_ruri_to_peer_auth_realm`: Set R-URI using peer auth realm
- `kamailio.proxy.use_enum`: Enable/Disable ENUM feature.

### B.1.17 Inpd

The following section defines configuration of LNP daemon, that is used when LNP queries are served by external gateways → the so called LNP API mode.

```
lnpd:
  config:
    daemon:
      foreground: 'false'
      json-rpc:
        ports:
          - '8095'
      loglevel: '6'
      sip:
        port: '5095'
      threads: '4'
    instances:
      default:
        module: sigtran
        destination: 0.0.0.0
        from-domain: voip.example.com
        headers:
          - header: INAP-Service-Key
            value: '2'
        reply:
          tcap: raw-tcap
  enabled: no
```

- Inpd.enabled: Enable/disable LNP daemon
- Inpd.config: details are shown in [Configuration of LNP daemon](#) Section 4.4.2.3

### B.1.18 mediator

The following is the mediator section:

```
mediator:
  interval: 10
```

- mediator.interval: Running interval of mediator.

### B.1.19 nginx

The following is the nginx section:

```
nginx:
  status_port: 8081
  xcap_port: 1080
```

- `nginx.status_port`: Status port used by nginx server
- `nginx.xcap_port`: XCAP port used by nginx server

### B.1.20 ntp

The following is the ntp server section:

```
ntp:
  servers:
    - 0.debian.pool.ntp.org
    - 1.debian.pool.ntp.org
    - 2.debian.pool.ntp.org
    - 3.debian.pool.ntp.org
```

- `ntp.servers`: Define your NTP server list.

### B.1.21 ossbss

The following is the ossbss section:

```
ossbss:
  apache:
    port: 2443
    proxyluport: 1080
  restapi:
    sslcertfile: '/etc/ngcp-panel/api_ssl/api_ca.crt'
    sslcertkeyfile: '/etc/ngcp-panel/api_ssl/api_ca.key'
    serveradmin: support@sipwise.com
    servername: "\"myserver\""
    ssl_enable: 'yes'
    sslcertfile: '/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/myserver.crt'
    sslcertkeyfile: '/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/myserver.key'
  frontend: 'no'
  httpasswd:
    -
      pass: '{SHA}w4zj3mxbmynIQ1jsUEjSkN2z2pk='
      user: ngcpsoap
  logging:
    apache:
    acc:
```

```

    facility: daemon
    identity: oss
    level: info
  err:
    facility: local7
    level: info
  ossbss:
    facility: local0
    identity: provisioning
    level: DEBUG
  web:
    facility: local0
    level: DEBUG
  provisioning:
    allow_ip_as_domain: 1
    allow_numeric_usernames: 0
    auto_allow_cli: 1
  carrier:
    account_distribution_function: roundrobin
    prov_distribution_function: roundrobin
  credit_warnings:
    -
      domain: example.com
      recipients:
        - nobody@example.com
      threshold: 1000
  faxpw_min_char: 0
  log_passwords: 0
  no_logline_truncate: 0
  pw_min_char: 6
  routing:
    ac_regex: '[1-9]\d{0,4}'
    cc_regex: '[1-9]\d{0,3}'
    sn_regex: '[1-9]\d+'
  tmpdir: '/tmp'

```

- `ossbss.frontend`: Enable/disable SOAP interface. Set value to `fcgi` to enable old SOAP interface.
- `ossbss.htpasswd`: Sets the username and SHA hashed password for SOAP access. You can generate the password using the following command: `htpasswd -nbs myuser mypassword`.
- `ossbss.provisioning.allow_ip_as_domain`: Allow or not allow IP address as SIP domain (0 is not allowed).
- `ossbss.provisioning.allow_numeric_usernames`: Allow or not allow numeric SIP username (0 is not allowed).
- `ossbss.provisioning.faxpw_min_char`: Minimum number of characters for fax passwords.
- `ossbss.provisioning.pw_min_char`: Minimum number of characters for sip passwords.



- `ossbss.provisioning.log_password`: Enable logging of passwords.
- `ossbss.provisioning.routing`: Regexp for allowed AC (Area Code), CC (Country Code) and SN (Subscriber Number).

### B.1.22 pbx (only with additional cloud PBX module installed)

The following is the PBX section:

```
pbx:
  bindport: 5085
  enable: 'no'
  highport: 55000
  lowport: 50001
  media_processor_threads: 10
  session_processor_threads: 10
  xmlrpcport: 8095
```

- `pbx.enable`: Enable Cloud PBX module.

### B.1.23 prosody

The following is the prosody section:

```
prosody:
  ctrl_port: 5582
  log_level: info
```

- `prosody.ctrl_port`: XMPP server control port.
- `prosody.log_level`: Prosody loglevel.

### B.1.24 pushd

The following is the pushd section:

```
pushd:
  apns:
    certificate: '/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/PushChatCert.pem'
    enable: yes
    endpoint: gateway.push.apple.com
    feedback_endpoint: feedback.push.apple.com
    feedback_interval: 3600
    key: '/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/PushChatKey.pem'
    socket_timeout: 0
  enable: yes
  gcm:
```

```
enable: yes
key: 'google_api_key_here'
priority:
  call: high
  groupchat: normal
  invite: normal
  message: normal
one_device_per_subscriber: no
port: 45060
processes: 4
ssl: yes
sslcertfile: /etc/ngcp-config/ssl/CAsigned.crt
sslcertkeyfile: /etc/ngcp-config/ssl/CAsigned.key
unique_device_ids: no
```

- `pushd.enable`: Enable/Disable the Push Notification feature.
- `pushd.apns.certificate`: Specify the Apple certificate for push notification https requests from the NGCP to an endpoint.
- `pushd.apns.enable`: Enable/Disable Apple push notification.
- `pushd.apns.key`: Specify the Apple key for push notification https requests from the NGCP to an endpoint.
- `pushd.gcm.enable`: Enable/Disable Google push notification.
- `pushd.gcm.key`: Specify the Google key for push notification https requests from the NGCP to an endpoint.
- `pushd.ssl`: The security protocol the NGCP uses for https requests from the app in the push notification process.
- `pushd.sslcertfile`: The trusted certificate file purchased from a CA
- `pushd.sslcertkeyfile`: The key file that purchased from a CA
- `pushd.unique_device_ids`: Allows a subscriber to register the app and have the push notification enabled on more than one mobile device.

### B.1.25 qos

The following is the QOS section:

```
qos:
  tos_rtp: 184
  tos_sip: 184
```

- `qos.tos_rtp`: TOS value for RTP traffic.
- `qos.tos_sip`: TOS value for SIP traffic.

### B.1.26 rate-o-mat

The following is the rate-o-mat section:

```
rateomat:  
  enable: 'yes'  
  loopinterval: 10  
  splitpeakparts: 0
```

- `rateomat.enable`: Enable/Disable Rate-o-mat
- `rateomat.loopinterval`: How long we shall sleep before looking for unrated CDRs again.
- `rateomat.splitpeakparts`: Whether we should split CDRs on peaktime borders.

### B.1.27 redis

The following is the redis section:

```
redis:  
  database_amount: 16  
  port: 6379  
  syslog_ident: redis
```

- `redis.database_amount`: Set the number of databases in redis. The default database is DB 0.
- `redis.port`: Accept connections on the specified port, default is 6379
- `redis.syslog_ident`: Specify the syslog identity.

### B.1.28 reminder

The following is the reminder section:

```
reminder:  
  retries: 2  
  retry_time: 60  
  sip_fromdomain: voicebox.sipwise.local  
  sip_fromuser: reminder  
  wait_time: 30  
  weekdays: '2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7'
```

- `reminder.retries`: How many times the reminder feature have to try to call you.
- `reminder.retry_time`: Seconds between retries.
- `reminder.wait_time`: Seconds to wait for an answer.

### B.1.29 rsyslog

The following is the rsyslog section:

```
rsyslog:
  elasticsearch:
    action:
      resumeretrycount: '-1'
    bulkmode: 'on'
    dynSearchIndex: 'on'
    enable: 'yes'
    queue:
      dequeuebatchsize: 300
      size: 5000
      type: linkedlist
  external_address:
  external_log: 0
  external_loglevel: warning
  external_port: 514
  external_proto: udp
  ngcp_logs_preserve_days: 93
```

- `rsyslog.elasticsearch.enable`: Enable/Disable Elasticsearch web interface
- `rsyslog.external_address`: Set the remote rsyslog server.
- `rsyslog.ngcp_logs_preserve_days`: Specify how many days to preserve old rotated log files in `/var/log/ngcp/old` path.

### B.1.30 rtpproxy

The following is the rtp proxy section:

```
rtpproxy:
  allow_userspace_only: 'yes'
  maxport: 40000
  minport: 30000
  rtp_timeout: 21600
  rtp_timeout_onhold: 3600
```

- `rtpproxy.allow_userspace_only`: Enable/Disable the user space failover for rtpengine (yes means enable). By default rtpengine works in kernel space.
- `rtpproxy.maxport`: Maximum port used by rtpengine for RTP traffic.
- `rtpproxy.minport`: Minimum port used by rtpengine for RTP traffic.
- `rtpproxy.rtp_timeout`: Maximum limit in seconds for a call (6h).
- `rtpproxy.rtp_timeout_onhold`: Maximum limit in seconds for an onhold (1h).

### B.1.31 security

The following is the security section:

```
security:
  firewall:
    blacklist_networks_4: ~
    blacklist_networks_6: ~
    enable: 'yes'
    sipwise_support_access: 'no'
    whitelist_networks_4: ~
    whitelist_networks_6: ~
```

- security.firewall.enable: Enable/Disable security configuration for IPv6 and IPv4 (sysctl\_ipv6.conf, sysctl\_ipv4.conf).

### B.1.32 sems

The following is the SEMS section:

```
sems:
  bindport: 5080
  conference:
    enable: 'yes'
    max_participants: 10
  debug: 'no'
  highport: 50000
  lowport: 40001
  media_processor_threads: 10
  prepaid:
    enable: 'yes'
  sbc:
    calltimer_enable: 'yes'
    calltimer_max: 3600
    outbound_timeout: 6000
    sdp_filter:
      codecs: PCMA,PCMU,telephone-event
      enable: 'yes'
      mode: whitelist
    session_timer:
      enable: 'yes'
      max_timer: 7200
      min_timer: 90
      session_expires: 300
  session_processor_threads: 10
  vsc:
    block_override_code: 80
    cfb_code: 90
```

```
cfna_code: 93
cft_code: 92
cfu_code: 72
clir_code: 31
directed_pickup_code: 99
enable: 'yes'
park_code: 97
reminder_code: 55
speedial_code: 50
unpark_code: 98
voicemail_number: 2000
xmlrpcport: 8090
```

- `sems.conference.enable`: Enable/Disable conference feature.
- `sems.conference.max_participants`: Sets the number of concurrent participant.
- `sems.highport`: Maximum ports used by sems for RTP traffic.
- `sems.debug`: Enable/Disable debug mode.
- `sems.lowport`: Minimum ports used by sems for RTP traffic.
- `sems.prepaid.enable`: Enable/Disable prepaid feature.
- `sems.sbc.calltimer_max`: Sets the maximum call duration for inter-domain calls.
- `sems.sbc.outbound_timeout::` Sets the maximum call duration for outbound calls.
- `sems.sbc.session_timer.enable`: Enable/Disable session timers (deprecated, use the web interface configuration).
- `sems.vsc.*`: Define here the VSC codes.

### B.1.33 snmpagent

The following is the SNMP Agent section:

```
snmpagent:
  daemonize: '1'
  debug: '0'
  update_interval: '30'
```

- `daemonize`: Enable/Disable ngcp-snmpp-agent daemonization.
- `debug`: Enable/Disable debug output.
- `update_interval`: Sets the interval in seconds used to update the fetched data.

### B.1.34 sshd

The following is the sshd section:

```
sshd:
  listen_addresses:
    - 0.0.0.0
```

- **sshd:** specify interface where SSHD should run on. By default sshd listens on all IPs found in network.yml with type *ssh\_ext*. Unfortunately sshd can be limited to IPs only and not to interfaces. The current option makes it possible to specify allowed IPs (or all IPs with 0.0.0.0).

### B.1.35 voisniff

The following is the voice sniffer section:

```
voisniff:
  admin_panel: 'no'
  daemon:
    bpf: 'port 5060 or 5062 or ip6 proto 44 or ip[6:2] & 0x1fff != 0'
    external_interfaces: 'eth0 eth1'
    filter:
      exclude:
        -
          active: 0
          case_insensitive: 1
          pattern: '\ncseq: *\d+ +(register|notify|options)'
      include: []
    internal_interfaces: lo
    mysql_dump_threads: 4
    start: 'no'
    threads_per_interface: 10
  partitions:
    increment: 700000
    keep: 10
```

- **voisniff.admin\_panel:** Enable/Disable SIP STATS on Admin interface. Default is *no*.
- **voisniff.daemon.external\_interfaces:** Define binding interfaces.
- **voisniff.daemon.start:** Change to yes if you want voisniff start at boot. Default is *no*.

### B.1.36 www\_admin

The following is the WEB Admin interface (www\_admin) section:

```
www_admin:
  ac_dial_prefix: 0
  apache:
    autoprov_port: 1444
  billing_features: 1
  callingcard_features: 0
  callthru_features: 0
  cc_dial_prefix: 00
  conference_features: 1
  contactmail: adjust@example.org
  dashboard:
    enabled: 1
  default_admin_settings:
    call_data: 0
    is_active: 1
    is_master: 0
    read_only: 0
    show_passwords: 1
  domain:
    preference_features: 1
    rewrite_features: 1
    vsc_features: 0
  fastcgi_workers: 2
  fax_features: 1
  fees_csv:
    element_order:
      - source
      - destination
      - direction
      - zone
      - zone_detail
      - onpeak_init_rate
      - onpeak_init_interval
      - onpeak_follow_rate
      - onpeak_follow_interval
      - offpeak_init_rate
      - offpeak_init_interval
      - offpeak_follow_rate
      - offpeak_follow_interval
      - use_free_time
  http_admin:
    autoprov_port: 1444
    port: 1443
    serveradmin: support@sipwise.com
    servername: "\"myserver\""
    ssl_enable: 'yes'
    sslcertfile: '/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/myserver.crt'
```



```
    sslcertkeyfile: '/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/myserver.key'
http_csc:
  autoprov_bootstrap_port: 1445
  autoprov_port: 1444
  port: 443
  serveradmin: support@sipwise.com
  servername: "\"myserver\""
  ssl_enable: 'yes'
  sslcertfile: '/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/myserver.crt'
  sslcertkeyfile: '/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/myserver.key'
logging:
  apache:
    acc:
      facility: daemon
      identity: oss
      level: info
    err:
      facility: local7
      level: info
peer:
  preference_features: 1
peering_features: 1
security:
  password_allow_recovery: 0
  password_max_length: 40
  password_min_length: 6
  password_musthave_digit: 0
  password_musthave_lowercase: 1
  password_musthave_specialchar: 0
  password_musthave_uppercase: 0
  password_sip_autogenerate: 0
  password_sip_expose_subadmin: 1
  password_web_autogenerate: 0
  password_web_expose_subadmin: 1
speed_dial_vsc_presets:
  vsc:
    - '*0'
    - '*1'
    - '*2'
    - '*3'
    - '*4'
    - '*5'
    - '*6'
    - '*7'
    - '*8'
    - '*9'
subscriber:
  auto_allow_cli: 0
```

```
extension_features: 0
voicemail_features: 1
```

- `www_admin.http_admin.*`: Define the Administration interface and certificates.
- `www_admin.http_csc.*`: Define the Customers interface and certificates.
- `www_admin.contactmail`: Email to show in the GUI's Error page.

## B.2 constants.yml Overview

`/etc/ngcp-config/constants.yml` is one of the main configuration files that contains important (static) configuration parameters, like NGCP system-user data.



### Caution

NGCP platform administrator should not change content of `constants.yml` file unless absolutely necessary. Please contact Sipwise Support before changing any of the parameters within the `constants.yml` file!

## B.3 network.yml Overview

`/etc/ngcp-config/network.yml` is one of the main configuration files that contains network-related configuration parameters, like IP addresses and roles of the node(s) in sip:carrier system.

The next example shows a part of the `network.yml` configuration file. Explanation of all the configuration parameters is provided in [Network Configuration](#) Section 9 section of the handbook.

### Sample host configuration for sip:carrier

```
web01a:
  bond0:
    bond_miimon: '100'
    bond_mode: active-backup
    bond_slaves: 'eth0 eth1'
    hwaddr: 00:00:00:00:00:00
    ip: 192.168.1.2
    netmask: 255.255.255.0
    shared_ip:
      - 192.168.1.1
    type:
      - boot_int
  eth0:
    hwaddr: 00:00:00:00:00:00
  eth1:
    hwaddr: 00:00:00:00:00:00
  interfaces:
```

```
- vlan11
- vlan666
- vlan35
- vlan100
- vlan80
- vlan90
- vlan15
- vlan20
- lo
- eth0
- eth1
- bond0
lo:
  advertised_ip: []
  hwaddr: 00:00:00:00:00:00
  ip: 127.0.0.1
  netmask: 255.0.0.0
  shared_ip: []
  shared_v6ip: []
  type:
    - ssh_ext
    - api_int
  v6ip: '::1'
peer: web01b
role:
  - mgmt
vlan20:
  advertised_ip: []
  hwaddr: 00:00:00:00:00:00
  ip: 172.31.3.75
  netmask: 255.255.255.240
  shared_ip:
    - 172.31.3.74
  type:
    - web_int
  vlan_raw_device: bond0
  post_up:
    - 'route add -host 172.30.172.247 gw 172.31.3.65 dev vlan20'
vlan100:
  hwaddr: 00:0a:f7:8d:32:ec
  ip: 172.31.3.5
  netmask: 255.255.255.224
  shared_ip:
    - 172.31.3.4
  type:
    - ha_int
    - web_int
    - ssh_ext
```

```
vlan_raw_device: bond0
vlan11:
  dns_nameservers:
    - 172.31.3.244
    - 192.168.56.11
    - 192.168.57.11
  gateway: 172.31.3.33
  hwaddr: 00:00:00:00:00:00
  ip: 172.31.3.37
  netmask: 255.255.255.224
  shared_ip:
    - 172.31.3.36
  shared_v6ip: []
  type:
    - mon_ext
    - ssh_ext
  vlan_raw_device: bond0
vlan15:
  hwaddr: 00:00:00:00:00:00
  ip: 192.168.181.201
  netmask: 255.255.255.0
  post_up:
    - 'route add -net 172.25.240.0/24 gw 192.168.181.1 dev vlan15'
    - 'route add -net 192.168.6.0/24 gw 192.168.181.1 dev vlan15'
  shared_ip:
    - 192.168.181.200
  type:
    - ssh_ext
    - web_int
    - mon_ext
  vlan_raw_device: bond0
vlan35:
  hwaddr: 00:00:00:00:00:00
  ip: 172.31.3.101
  netmask: 255.255.255.240
  shared_ip:
    - 172.31.3.100
  type:
    - sip_int
  vlan_raw_device: bond0
vlan666:
  hwaddr: 00:00:00:00:00:00
  ip: 46.5.10.37
  netmask: 255.255.255.240
  shared_ip:
    - 46.5.10.36
  type:
    - web_ext
```

```
    vlan_raw_device: bond0
vlan80:
  hwaddr: 00:00:00:00:00:00
  ip: 172.31.3.237
  netmask: 255.255.255.248
  shared_ip:
    - 172.31.3.236
  type:
    - phone_ext
    - web_ext
  vlan_raw_device: bond0
  post_up:
    - 'ip route add default via 172.31.3.233 dev vlan80 table phones_ext'
    - 'ip rule add from 172.31.3.236 lookup phones_ext prio 1000'
vlan90:
  hwaddr: 00:00:00:00:00:00
  ip: 46.5.10.53
  netmask: 255.255.255.248
  post_up:
    - 'route add -host 77.244.249.93 gw 46.5.10.49 dev vlan90'
  shared_ip:
    - 46.5.10.52
  type:
    - repos_ext
  vlan_raw_device: bond0
```

## C NGCP-Faxserver Configuration

For an overview of Faxserver architecture and features, please see the [Faxserver](#) Section 4.8 chapter.

### C.1 Faxserver Components

Starting from mr4.3 release there is a completely reworked fax server in a form of standalone daemon that uses Asterisk as its transmission component. No other component—such as `hylafax` or `iaxmodem`—is necessary to send and receive faxes on sip:carrier platform.

### C.2 Enabling Faxserver

In order to configure functions of NGCP Faxserver one needs to update the main NGCP configuration file `/etc/ngcp-config/config.yml` with the correct fax options:

```
faxserver:
  enable: yes
  fail_attempts: '3'
  fail_retry_secs: '60'
  keep_failed_fax: yes
  keep_failed_fax_days: '60'
  keep_received_fax: yes
  keep_received_fax_days: '60'
  keep_sent_fax: yes
  keep_sent_fax_days: '60'
  mail_from: 'Sipwise NGCP FaxServer <voipfax@ngcp.sipwise.local>'
```

Parameters are:

- `enable`: must be `yes` to enable Faxserver
- `fail_...` : the number and timeout of fax sending retrials
- `keep_...` : fax retention definitions: enabling and length in days
- `mail_from`: the *From* header in the e-mail that is sent by Fax2Mail feature when a fax is received

### C.3 Fax Templates Configuration

One needs to update `/etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/ngcp-faxserver/faxserver.conf.tt2` if he wants to use custom content in the fax and e-mail templates that are used by Faxserver to generate the actual fax or e-mail. This may be done under the "User templates" section in the file.

#### Applying new Faxserver configuration

Once the above mentioned configuration files have been modified the new settings must be applied:

```
ngcpcfg apply 'Configured fax server'
ngcpcfg push all
```

## C.4 Fax Services Configuration per Subscriber

Fax services must be explicitly activated for subscribers before they can send or receive faxes. This activation and the custom settings may be set on the NGCP Web panel in the following way (as an administrator):

- Go to *Subscribers* and find the subscriber that you want to modify settings for
- Click on *Preferences* button
- Select *FaxFeatures*

In both sections *Fax2Mail* and *SendFax* and *Mail2Fax* there is a field: *Active*. This must be changed from *no* to *yes* if the particular fax service must be activated.

When fax services have been activated the user sees a summary of settings in *FaxFeatures* section on his Preferences page:

Voicemail and Voicebox

Fax Features

Fax2Mail and Sendfax

Name	Value	
Name In Fax Header for Sendfax		
Active	yes	
Destinations	subscriber1@example.org as TIFF	

Mail2Fax

Name	Value	
Active	yes	
Secret Key (empty=disabled)		
Secret Key Renew	never	
Last Secret Key Modify Time		
Secret Key Renew Notify		
ACL	regex from_email <u>subscriber1@example.org</u> and received_from <u>any</u> to <u>^4399.+</u> destination	

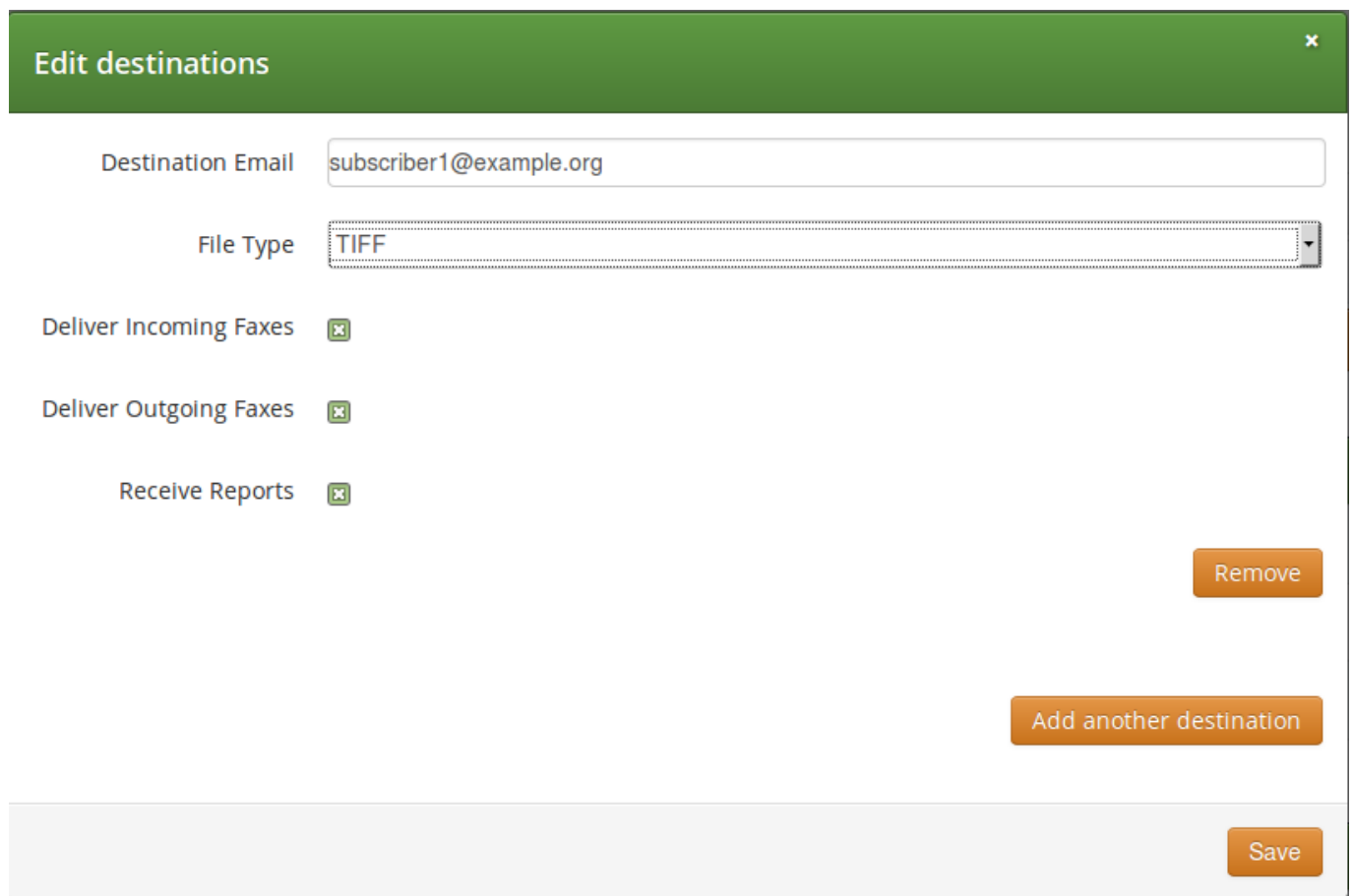
Speed Dial

Figure 114: Fax Settings

Details of Fax2Mail, SendFax and Mail2Fax settings are described in subsequent paragraphs.

## C.5 Fax2Mail and SendFax Settings

- **Name in Fax Header for SendFax:** optional field that contains the subscribers name on faxes sent from the Web panel directly
- **Destinations:** e-mail addresses and selections of notification items that define about which event and where an e-mail is sent; this is a list of such definitions



The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Edit destinations" with a green header bar. Below the header, there is a form with the following fields and controls:

- Destination Email:** A text input field containing "subscriber1@example.org".
- File Type:** A dropdown menu with "TIFF" selected.
- Deliver Incoming Faxes:** A checkbox that is checked.
- Deliver Outgoing Faxes:** A checkbox that is checked.
- Receive Reports:** A checkbox that is checked.

At the bottom right of the form, there are three buttons: "Remove" (orange), "Add another destination" (orange), and "Save" (orange).

Figure 115: Fax2Mail Destination

The parameters for a destination are as follows:

- **Destination Email:** the e-mail address where the notification must be sent
- **File Type:** file format of faxes attached to e-mails
- **Deliver Incoming Faxes:** select this in order to receive incoming faxes in e-mail
- **Deliver Outgoing Faxes:** select this in order to receive a report about sent faxes
- **Receive Reports:** select this in order to receive reports about success / failure of fax transmissions



## C.6 Mail2Fax Settings

A subscriber can restrict access to his Mail2Fax service with some methods, those can also be combined:

- using a *secret key* that is only known to him, and is inserted in every mail that he sends to NGCP to be forwarded as fax
- using an *access control list (ACL)* that determines from which endpoint and for which destination a mail-to-fax is accepted by NGCP platform
- `Secret Key`: the secret key used to validate the sender of an e-mail; not used if left empty
- `Secret Key Renew`: secret key renewal period; NGCP platform will enforce renewal of the secret key when the defined time has elapsed
- `Last Secret Key Modify Time`: information about the last secret key modification time
- `Secret Key Renew Notify`: an e-mail address where the notification about secret key modification is sent
- `ACL`: access control list, see the details below; this is a list of access control rules

**Edit acl**

From email

Received from IP

Destination

Use Regex ☒

[Remove](#)

[Add another rule](#)

[Save](#)

Figure 116: Mail2Fax Access Control List

The parameters for access control rules:

- `From email`: this sender is allowed to use Mail2Fax service

- **Received from IP:** this IP address or host name must be present in From e-mail header
- **Destination:** either a complete phone number in E.164 format, or a regular expression ("Use Regex" checkbox must be ticked) that may define a range of numbers. Examples: "4313334445" as a single number; "4399.+" as a regular expression: all destinations starting with "4399"

**Caution**

When neither *Secret Key*, nor *ACL* is defined then Mail2Fax service will deny accepting any e-mail for sending faxes!

---

## C.7 Sending Fax from Web Panel

A subscriber can log in to his *Customer Self Care* website and send faxes directly from there. In order to do this, one needs to do the following:

- Go to *Settings* → *Web Fax* page

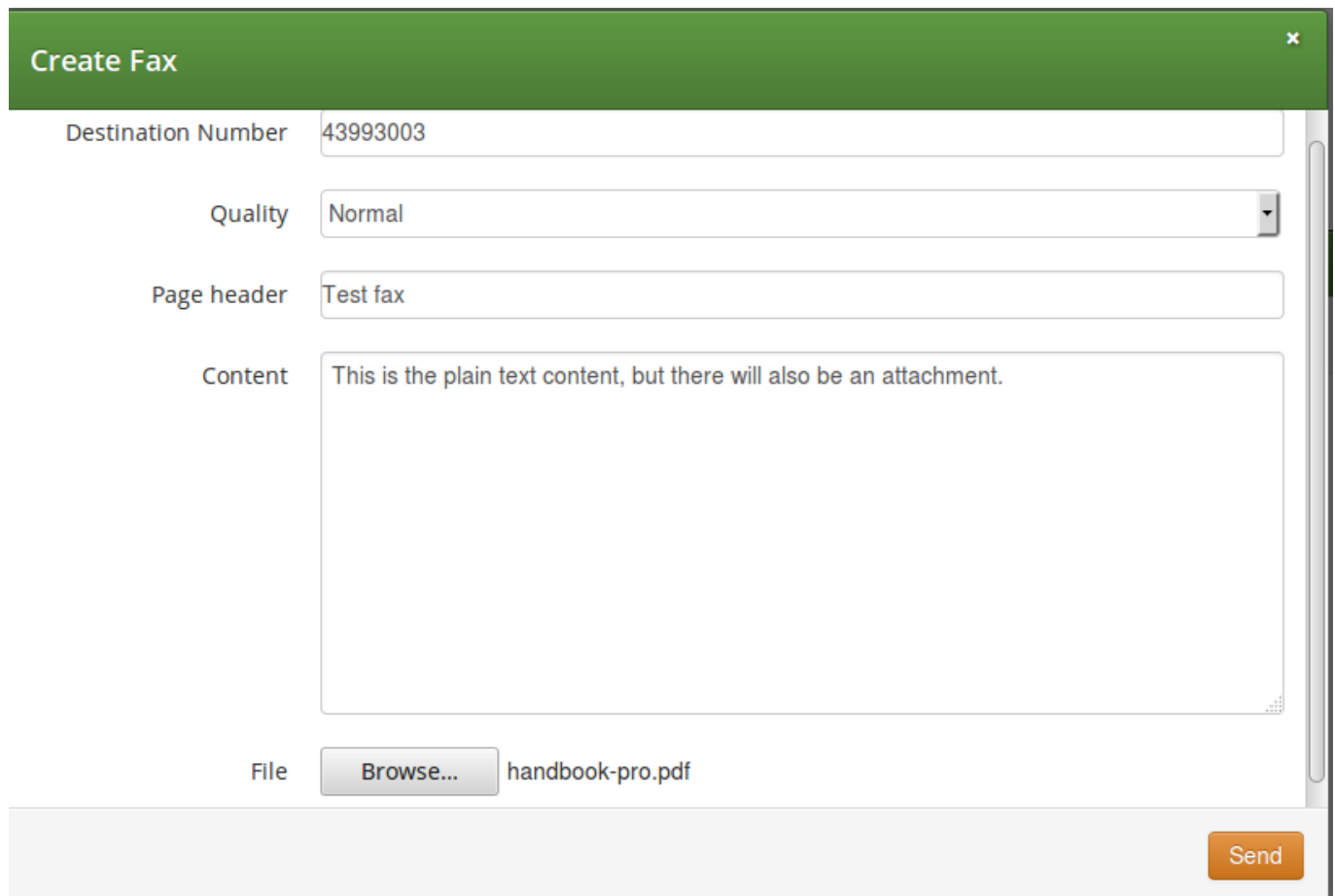
---

**Tip**

The list of received faxes is also available here.

---

- Press *Send Fax* button to start entering data, such as recipient and content for the fax being sent:



The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Create Fax" with a green header bar. Below the header, there are several input fields and a button:

- Destination Number:** A text input field containing "43993003".
- Quality:** A dropdown menu with "Normal" selected.
- Page header:** A text input field containing "Test fax".
- Content:** A large text area containing the text "This is the plain text content, but there will also be an attachment."
- File:** A section with a "Browse..." button and the filename "handbook-pro.pdf" displayed next to it.
- Send:** An orange button located at the bottom right of the form.

Figure 117: Sending Fax from Web Panel

Both plain text message and attached files can be sent in the fax. First page(s) will contain the plain text message and the content of attached files will follow that.

## C.8 Faxserver Mail2Fax Configuration

Using NGCP Faxserver's Mail2Fax service requires the configuration of sip:carrier's local mail server that is *Exim*. It has to be configured in a way that it can receive mails from outside of the server, because *Exim* by default listens only on the local interfaces for incoming mails.

### Exim Configuration

The NGCP platform administrator must reconfigure *Exim* in order to enable receiving e-mails for fax sending:

```
dpkg-reconfigure exim4-config
```

**PLEASE NOTE:** When entering configuration data the following points must be kept in mind:

- operation mode has to be set to "mail sent by smarthost;no local mail"

- "mail2fax.example.org" must be added to accepted domains, where "example.org" is the domain name of the NGCP platform operator

## DNS Configuration

It is necessary to add a subdomain starting as `mail2fax.` to the list of domain names. That is where the faxes will be sent by users to trigger Mail2Fax service.

---

### Tip

Alternatively, edit `/etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/exim4/conf.d/router/999_mail2fax.tt2` file and adjust it to your personal preferences. Although this is not recommended and should only be done by Sipwise support engineers.

---

## C.9 Sending Fax Using E-mail Clients

When sending an e-mail that should be converted to a fax, there are some points to keep in mind so that Faxserver properly processes the e-mail.

- **To header:**
  - must contain the subscriber's number who is sending the fax, as the username part of the mail address
  - must contain the specific domain starting with `mail2fax.`
- **Subject header:** must contain the fax destination number
- **Body** should consist of plain text data
- Adding **attachments** is possible, but only plain text and PDF formats are supported

### Secret Key

In order to use the "secret key" access control feature, it should be either put in the first row of the e-mail body followed by an empty line, or included as a plain text attachment. Once it has been validated, it will be removed from the email.



### Important

Either add the secret key to the body, or attach it. Never do both as only one will be recognized and removed, leaving the other one to be sent as part of the fax.

---

### Mail Example

Provided there is a subscriber on sip:carrier platform with the 43130111 number, the destination fax is 43130222 and the secret key is "MySecretKey":

```
From: User Name <username@example.org>
To: 43130111@mail2fax.example.org
```

```
Subject: 43130222
```

```
- - - - -
```

```
MySecretKey
```

```
This is a test fax.
```

```
Cheers
```

## C.10 Managing Faxes via the REST API

It is possible to send and receive faxes and configure fax settings using the built-in REST API interface.

In subsequent sections you can find examples of using the API for sending, receiving faxes and changing fax settings.

### C.10.1 Configuring Fax Settings

#### C.10.1.1 Retrieving Fax Settings

The following example retrieves the fax settings for the subscriber with ID 3.

```
Method: GET
```

```
Content-Type: application/hal+json
```

```
https://127.0.0.1:1443/api/faxserversettings/3
```

The output format is as follows (only the relevant output data is shown):

```
"active" : true,
"destinations" : [
  {
    "destination" : "user@company.com",
    "filetype" : "PDF14",
    "incoming" : true,
    "outgoing" : true,
    "status" : true
  }
],
"name" : null,
"password" : null
```

#### C.10.1.2 Updating Fax Settings

The following example updates a specific parameter. Namely, it deactivates the fax feature for the subscriber with ID 3.

```
Method: PATCH
```

```
Content-Type: application/json-patch+json
```

```
https://127.0.0.1:1443/api/faxserversettings/3

--data-binary '[ { "op" : "replace", "path" : "/active", "value" : 0 } ]'
```

### C.10.2 Sending a Fax

The following request sends a PDF file located at `/tmp/test_fax.pdf` as fax to 431110002 from the subscriber with ID 3.

```
Method: POST
Content-Type: multipart/form-data

https://127.0.0.1:1443/api/faxes/

--form 'json={"destination" : "431110002", "subscriber_id" : 3}' --form 'faxfile=@/tmp/ ↵
test_fax.pdf'
```

### C.10.3 Receiving a Fax

All received faxes are stored on the server and can be retrieved on demand. You can retrieve a stored fax by following these steps:

1. Firstly, obtain the internal ID of the fax:

```
Method: GET
Content-Type: application/json

https://127.0.0.1:1443/api/faxes/3
```

This request returns the list of stored faxes for the subscriber with ID 3. One of the available faxes is returned like this:

```
"callee" : "431110002",
"caller" : "431110001",
"direction" : "out",
"duration" : "0",
"filename" : "d9799276-b7d9-454f-98c3-714edf7e3072.tif",
"id" : 5,
"pages" : "1",
"quality" : "8031x7700",
"reason" : "Normal Clearing / SIP 200 OK [1/3]",
"signal_rate" : "14400",
"status" : "SUCCESS",
"subscriber_id" : 1,
"time" : "2016-07-30 09:49:59"
```

2. Now, to retrieve the fax with ID 5, use the following request:

```
Method: GET
Content-Type: application/hal+json

https://127.0.0.1:1443/api/faxerecordings/5
```

By default, the fax is in the TIFF format. It is also possible to request it in a different format. To retrieve the same fax in PDF14, use the following request:

```
https://127.0.0.1:1443/api/faxerecordings/5?format=pdf14
```

## C.10.4 Configuring Mail2Fax Settings

The configuration of Mail2Fax settings via the REST API is similar to the fax settings configuration.

### C.10.4.1 Retrieving Mail2Fax Configuration

To get the Mail2Fax configuration for the subscriber with ID 3, use the following request:

```
Method: GET
Content-Type: application/hal+json

https://127.0.0.1:1443/api/mailtofaxsettings/3
```

The output format is as follows (only the relevant output data is shown):

```
"acl" : [],
"active" : false,
"secret_key" : "secretkeypassword",
"secret_key_renew" : "daily",
"secret_renew_notify" : [
  {
    "destination" : "user1@company.com"
  }
]
```

### C.10.4.2 Updating Mail2Fax Configuration

The following set of requests changes the Mail2Fax configuration with new secret key settings.

- Secret key value:

```
Method: PATCH
Content-Type: application/json-patch+json
```

```
https://127.0.0.1:1443/api/faxserversettings/3
```

```
--data-binary '[ { "op" : "replace", "path" : "/secret_key", "value" : " ↵
newsecretkeypassword" } ]'
```

- Secret key renewal interval:

```
Method: PATCH
```

```
Content-Type: application/json-patch+json
```

```
--data-binary '[ { "op" : "replace", "path" : "/secret_key_renew", "value" : "monthly" } ↵
]'
```

- List of email addresses that receive the automatic secret key update notifications:

```
Method: PATCH
```

```
Content-Type: application/json-patch+json
```

```
--data-binary '[ { "op" : "replace", "path" : "/secret_renew_notify", "value" : [ { " ↵
destination": "user2@company.com" }, { "destination": "user3@company.com" } ] } ]'
```

### C.10.5 Using Advanced Faxserver and Mail2Fax Settings via the REST API

On the NGCP REST API documentation web page you can find the complete list of available Faxserver and Mail2Fax configuration parameters: [https://<ngcp\\_ip\\_address>:1443/api](https://<ngcp_ip_address>:1443/api)



#### Important

The information on the web page is relevant for your platform version and may change in next releases.

---

After visiting the API documentation main page, you can find the following entries related to Faxserver operations:

- Faxes ([https://<ngcp\\_ip\\_address>:1443/api/#faxes](https://<ngcp_ip_address>:1443/api/#faxes))
- FaxRecordings ([https://<ngcp\\_ip\\_address>:1443/api/#faxrecordings](https://<ngcp_ip_address>:1443/api/#faxrecordings))
- FaxserverSettings ([https://<ngcp\\_ip\\_address>:1443/api/#faxserversettings](https://<ngcp_ip_address>:1443/api/#faxserversettings))

## C.11 Troubleshooting

The following log file may be used to check Faxserver functionality: `/var/log/ngcp/faxserver.log`



### C.11.1 Session ID (SID)

Faxserver stores basic information about each processed fax in a session file. The most important element within this set of data is the *Session ID* (SID) that uniquely identifies a fax throughout its lifetime.

Session ID is a long hexadecimal string (a kind of UUID) that can be read from the above mentioned Faxserver logfile, and which itself is used also as the filename in files that belong to a specific sent / received fax. An example:

```
root@sp1:~# cat /var/spool/ngcp/faxserver/failed/1e480167-5de6-4cc2-948b-de58d1a0bb8c.err

created: 2016-09-06 04:41:32
caller: 111111111
callee: 222222222
file: 1e480167-5de6-4cc2-948b-de58d1a0bb8c.tif
sid: 1e480167-5de6-4cc2-948b-de58d1a0bb8c
dir: out
attempts: 0
fail_attempts: 3
fail_retry_secs: 60
quality: normal
status: FAILED
error: Internal error
modified: 2016-09-06 17:41:30

root@sp1:~#
```

The data element `sid` is the session ID. Other important elements are:

- `caller` and `callee`: these are probably searched for when trying to figure out what happened to a specific fax transmission, if you don't know the SID
- `dir`: direction of fax transmission: *in'coming* or *'out'going* or *'mtf* for mail-to-fax
- `status`: shows success or failure
- `error`: the error cause in case of failed faxes

### C.11.2 Fax Storage Location

Faxserver stores all of its processed faxes at the path: `/var/spool/ngcp/faxserver/...` Within that directory the most relevant subdirectories are `failed` and `completed` that store the SID file and the fax itself in TIFF format of those faxes that failed or were successful, respectively.

## D RTC:engine

### D.1 Overview

WebRTC is an open project providing browsers and mobile applications with Real-Time Communications (RTC) capabilities. The RTC:engine protocol is a light weight messaging and signaling protocol for WebSocket clients. Technically it is a WebSocket sub protocol. It consists of JSON messages that are used to initiate and control call dialogs, send chat messages, join and control conferences and share files. It is similar to well known signaling protocols like SIP, but much simpler. It does not care about the underlying network protocols, like SIP does.

### D.2 RTC:engine enabling

The RTC:engine is not activated by default and needs a few steps to setup.

#### D.2.1 Enabling services via CLI

First you have to enable it first on your server via CLI. Connect with SSH on your server, open `/etc/ngcp-config/config.yml` with your editor of choice and change the following properties:

```
fileshare:
  enable: yes

rtcengine:
  conference:
    relay:
      app_id: bormuth
      url: http://xms.sipwise.com:81
    call:
      relay:
        app_id: bormuth
        url: http://xms.sipwise.com:81
  enable: yes
  expose_provisioning_api: yes

www_admin:
  http_csc:
    servername: '$IP_OF_VM'
```

Save the config.yml file and run `$ ngcpcfg apply enable rtcengine`. After the script ran, check the status of all services via `$ monit summary` or `$ monit status`.

### D.2.2 Enabling via Panel for resellers and subscribers

The WebRTC subscriber is just a normal subscriber which has just a different configuration in his Preferences. You need to change the following preferences under *Subscribers→Details→Preferences→NAT and Media Flow Control*:

- **use\_rtpproxy**: Always with rtpproxy as additional ICE candidate
- **transport\_protocol**: RTP/SAVPF (encrypted SRTP with RTCP feedback)

The `transport_protocol` setting may change, depending on your WebRTC client/browser configuration. Supported protocols are the following:

- Transparent (Pass through using the client's transport protocol)
- RTP/AVP (Plain RTP)
- RTP/SAVP (encrypted SRTP)
- RTP/AVPF (RTP with RTCP feedback)
- RTP/SAVPF (encrypted SRTP with RTCP feedback)
- UDP/TLS/RTP/SAVP (Encrypted SRTP using DTLS)
- UDP/TLS/RTP/SAVPF (Encrypted SRTP using DTLS with RTCP feedback)



#### Warning

The below configuration is enough to handle a WebRTC client/browser. As mentioned, you may need to tune a little bit your `transport_protocol` configuration, depending on your client/browser settings.

In order to have a bridge between normal SIP clients (using plain RTP for example) and WebRTC client, the normal SIP clients' preferences have to have the following configuration:

**transport\_protocol**: RTP/AVP (Plain RTP)

This will teach Sip Provider to translate between Plain RTP and RTP/SAVPF when you have calls between normal SIP clients and WebRTC clients.

### D.2.3 Create RTC:engine session

#### D.2.3.1 Create sessions

##### Request:

```
curl -i -X POST --insecure --user SUBSCRIBER_ID:SUBSCRIBER_PW -H 'Content-Type: application ←
  /json' --data-binary '{}' https://IP_OF_VM/api/rtcsessions/
```

**Response Header:**

```
Location: /api/rtcsessions/7
```

**D.2.3.2 Receive sessions****Request:**

```
curl -i -X GET --insecure --user SUBSCRIBER_ID:SUBSCRIBER_PW -H 'Content-Type: application/ ↵  
json' https://IP_OF_VM/api/rtcsessions/{ID_FROM_LAST_REQUEST_HEADER}
```

**Response Header:**

```
{  
  ...  
  "rtc_app_name" : "default_default_app",  
  "rtc_browser_token" : "22fz8e51-ad6e-481e-a389-15c58c3fe5ac",  
  "rtc_network_tag" : "",  
  "subscriber_id" : "263"  
}
```

---

**Tip**

Use `rtc_browser_token` in your `cdk.Client`.

---

**D.3 RTC:engine protocol details****D.3.1 Terminology****D.3.1.1 Connector**

There are two kinds of connectors. The front and the back connectors. The only front connector is the `BrowserConnector`. It has access to all WebSocket connections and is responsible for delivering RCT:engine protocol messages to the WebSocket clients, and for forwarding messages from the WebSocket clients to the router.

Currently there are four back connectors (`SipConnector`, `XmppConnector`, `WebrtcConnector`, `ConferenceConnector`). Every back connector implements a certain communication use case.

**D.3.1.2 Router**

The router is very simple stateless message broker, that is responsible for delivering the messages to the right connector. To decide where to send the message, the router takes a look at the recipient address (to) and forwards the message to the specified connector.

### D.3.1.3 User

### D.3.1.4 App

An app is a scope for a certain RTC:engine integration. Every user can have multiple apps. And an app contains sessions.

### D.3.1.5 Network

A network is a user wide configuration, that maps a custom network name (tag) to a certain back connector. Additionally it can also store network specific configurations. And any account that is related to a certain network, will merge its custom configs with the network configs, and send its messages to the specified connector.

### D.3.1.6 Session

### D.3.1.7 Account

An account represents the credentials for a specific network. Usually it consists of an identifier like a SIP uri (sip:user@domain.tld) and an access token or rather a password.

### D.3.1.8 Browser SDK

The Browser SDK is an abstraction layer on top of the RTC:engine protocol. It is served as bundled javascript library, and provides convenient components and methods for all use cases.

## D.3.2 Messages

A typical message created by the browser sdk contains the following fields:

```
{
  "method": "module.action",
  "from": "connector:id",
  "to": "connector:id",
  "session": "session",
  "body": {
    ...
  }
}
```

### D.3.2.1 Fields

### D.3.2.2 method

It is separated in two parts. The first part is the module. It is a delegation key to separate concerns in the code. The second part is the action, which represents a specific method in a module.

### D.3.2.3 from

It represents the current sender of a message. For example the user creates a new call via the browser sdk, the message would look like this:

```
{
  "method": "call.start",
  "from": "",
  "to": "webrtc:b2bua1",
  "session": "session1",
  "body": {
    ...
  }
}
```

The content of the field is completely irrelevant, because the BrowserConnector will overwrite this field. The reason is to avoid user manipulation.

```
{
  "method": "call.start",
  "from": "browser:ws1",
  "to": "webrtc:b2bua1",
  "session": "session1",
  "body": {
    ...
  }
}
```

### D.3.2.4 to

In general this field represents the recipient of a message. The recipients address consists of two parts. First part is the prefix that targets the connector. Second part is the identifier of the recipient.

### D.3.2.5 session

If you provisioned with the RTCEngine, you get a session and its token property. The browser SDK adds this token to every message.

### D.3.2.6 body

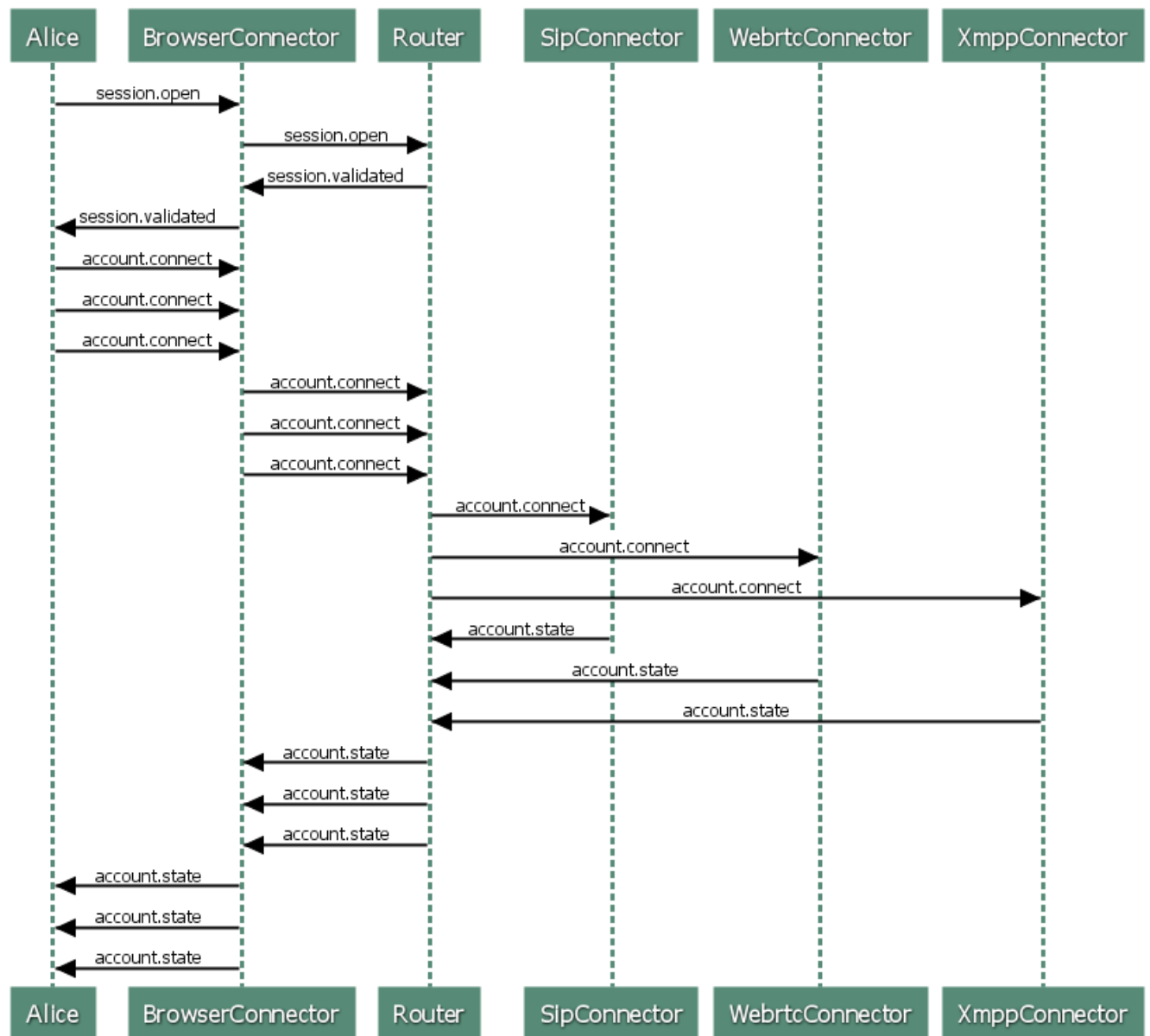
The body contains the payload of the message. Every message type has its own body schema.

### D.3.3 Account

Mainly an account consists of credentials (identifier, accessToken), that are needed to authenticate against the related network. Its lifecycle is bound to the lifecycle of the related session.

After RTC:engine received session.open, it responds a session.validated message. This message contains all provisioned accounts in its property "body.accounts".

#### D.3.3.1 Flow



www.websequencediagrams.com

### D.3.3.2 Messages

#### D.3.3.3 account.connect

RTC:engine needs one message per account. The message should contain the id of the account. The id is the object key in the accounts object from the [session.validated](../session/index.md) message.

```
{
  "from": "",
  "to": "...:...",
  "method": "account.connect",
  "session": "...",
  "body": {
    "id": "..."
  }
}
```

#### D.3.3.4 account.state

This message gives state information about the authentication and registration process of the related network and the corresponding connector. For example, if the related connector is the SipConnector, it creates a new SIP B2BUA in background, and notify the browser if any state change happens.

```
{
  "from": "...:...",
  "to": "browser:...",
  "method": "account.state",
  "session": "...",
  "body": {
    "id": "...",
    "reason": "...",
    "state": "..."
  }
}
```

#### D.3.3.5 State reasons

- OK
- CONNECTING
- DISCONNECTING
- SERVICE\_UNAVAILABLE
- SERVICE\_ERROR
- BAD\_CONFIGURATION



- WRONG\_CREDENTIALS
- CONNECTOR\_UNAVAILABLE
- CONNECTOR\_BUSY
- CONNECTOR\_ERROR
- ACCOUNT\_NOT\_FOUND

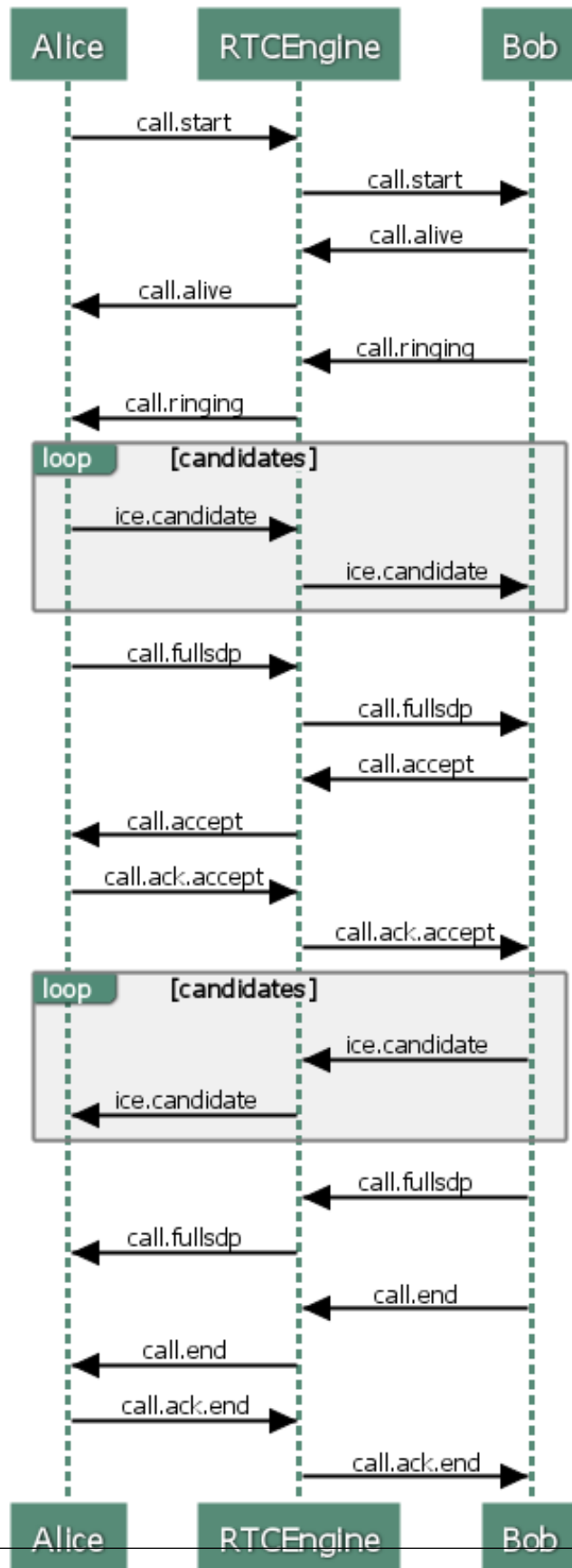
#### **D.3.3.6 States**

- CONNECTED
- DISCONNECTED



### D.3.4 Call

#### D.3.4.1 Flow



#### D.3.4.2 call.start

The caller sends this message to the RTC:engine to initiate a new call dialog.

```
{
  "from": "local",
  "to": ["...:..."],
  "method": "call.start",
  "session": "...",
  "body": {
    "id": "...",
    "gcid": "...",
    "account": "...",
    "replace": true|false,
    "trickle": true|false,
    "target": "...",
    "sdp": "..."
  }
}
```

#### D.3.4.3 Body properties

##### D.3.4.4 id

The id is a UUID version 4 that identifies the call dialog in the system. But caller and callee never have the same.

##### D.3.4.5 gcid

Whereas the gcid is a system wide and end-to-end consistent call identifier. It is necessary to track the entire call dialog.

##### D.3.4.6 account

It contains the callers account id. [(See accounts)](../account/index.md)

##### D.3.4.7 replace

This property is not used yet. It should support a call handover scenario.

##### D.3.4.8 trickle

If is set to true, the callee expects ice candidates, before the full sdp delivered by the caller, to accelerate the negotiation process.

#### D.3.4.9 target

It's the URI (sip:user@domain.tld) of the callee.

#### D.3.4.10 sdp

The sdp property contains a very early state of the browsers media machine. It contains no ice candidates so far.

#### D.3.4.11 call.alive

After the callee received the "call.start" message, it responds with a "call.alive" to the RTC:engine, immediately.

```
{
  "from": "...",
  "to": "...",
  "method": "call.alive",
  "session": "...",
  "body": {
    "id": "...",
    "gcid": "..."
  }
}
```

#### D.3.4.12 call.ringing

After the callee received the "call.start" message, it responds with a "call.ringing" to the RTC:engine, immediately.

```
{
  "from": "...",
  "to": "...",
  "method": "call.ringing",
  "session": "...",
  "body": {
    "id": "...",
    "gcid": "...",
    "account": null
  }
}
```

#### D.3.4.13 call.accept

The callee sends this message after accepting the call explicitly.

```
{
  "from": "...",
  "to": "...",
```

```
"method": "call.accept",
"session": "...",
"body": {
  "id": "...",
  "gcid": "...",
  "account": null,
  "trickle": true|false,
  "sdp": "..."
}
}
```

#### D.3.4.14 call.ack.accept

Caller sends this message after it received the "call.accept" message from the callee.

```
{
  "from": "...",
  "to": "...",
  "method": "call.ack.accept",
  "session": "...",
  "body": {
    "id": "...",
    "gcid": "..."
  }
}
```

#### D.3.4.15 call.candidate

Both, caller and callee send ice candidates immediately after initiating respectively accepting the call.

```
{
  "from": "...",
  "to": "...",
  "method": "call.candidate",
  "session": "...",
  "body": {
    "id": "...",
    "gcid": "...",
    "candidate": {
      "payload": "...",
      "type": "WEBRTC_LEGACY"
    }
  }
}
```

**D.3.4.16 call.fullsdp**

Both, caller and callee send this message after the ice gathering finished and all candidates are available.

```
{
  "from": "...",
  "to": "...",
  "method": "call.fullsdp",
  "session": "...",
  "body": {
    "id": "...",
    "gcid": "...",
    "sdp": "..."
  }
}
```

**D.3.4.17 call.change....**

All messages, that begin with "call.change", are important for renegotiation and glare handling.

**D.3.4.18 call.change.lock.reset****D.3.4.19 call.change.lock****D.3.4.20 call.change.lock.ok****D.3.4.21 call.change.offer****D.3.4.22 call.change.answer****D.3.4.23 call.dtmf**

Only works if the connector of the related account supports DTMF messages.

```
{
  "from": "...",
  "to": "...",
  "method": "call.dtmf",
  "session": "...",
  "body": {
    "id": "...",
    "gcid": "...",
    "dtmf": "...",
    "account": null
  }
}
```

#### D.3.4.24 call.end

Both, caller and callee can send this message. It forces the counter part to end and destroy the call.

```
{
  "from": "...",
  "to": "...",
  "method": "call.end",
  "session": "...",
  "body": {
    "id": "...",
    "gcid": "...",
    "reason": "..."
  }
}
```

#### D.3.4.25 call.ack.end

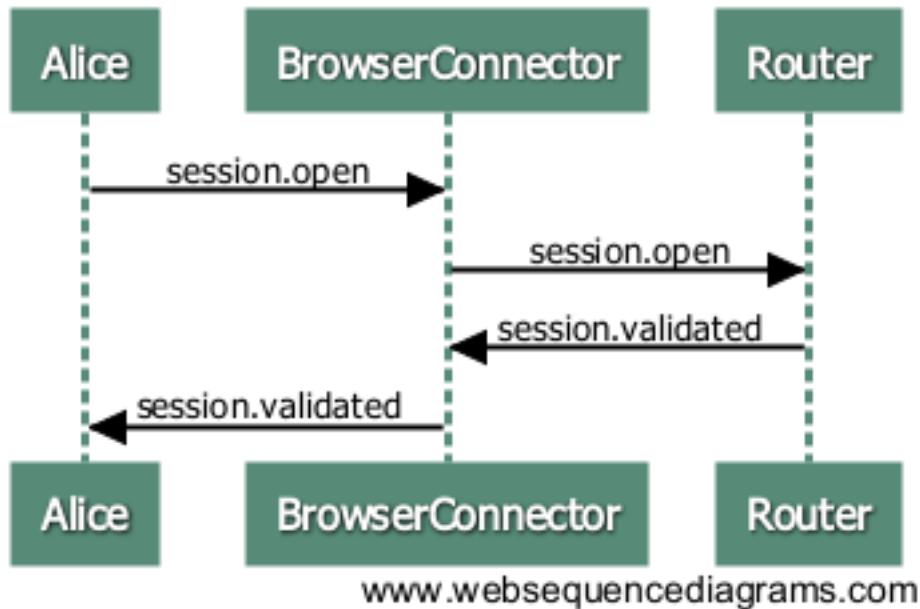
The counter part, that receives the "call.end" message, sends the "call.ack.end" message.

```
{
  "from": "...",
  "to": "...",
  "method": "call.ack.end",
  "session": "...",
  "body": {
    "id": "...",
    "gcid": "...",
    "account": null
  }
}
```



### D.3.5 Session

#### D.3.5.1 Flow



#### D.3.5.2 Messages

##### D.3.5.3 session.open

```

{
  "method": "session.open",
  "from": "",
  "to": "",
  "session": "session1",
  "body": {
    "credentials": {
      "userSession": "session1"
    }
  }
}

```

##### D.3.5.4 session.validated

This message is the response to **session.open**. If the session property is a valid session, you get a response where the result property is true. In addition you get the account information to connect to the networks.

```

{
  "method": "session.validated",
  "from": "core",

```

```
"to": "browser:wsl",
"session": "session1"
"body": {
  "result": true,
  "accounts": {
    "account1": {
      "identifier": "sip:account1@foo.bar"
      "target": "sip-connector:b2bua-account1",
      "network": {
        "tag": "sip-network"
      }
    }
  }
},
}
```

If something went wrong, result is set to false and an error reason appears.

```
{
  "method": "session.validated",
  "from": "core",
  "to": "browser:wsl",
  "session": "session1"
  "body": {
    "result": false,
    "reason": {
      "type": "invalidToken",
      "message": "Your token is not a valid user session token!"
    }
  }
},
}
```

#### D.3.5.5 Reason types

- invalidToken
- tokenExpired
- missingCredentials

## E NGCP Internals

This chapter documents internals of the sip:carrier that should not be usually needed, but might be helpful to understand the overall system.

### E.1 Pending reboot marker

The sip:carrier has the ability to mark a pending reboot for any server, using the file `/var/run/reboot-required`. As soon as the file exists, several components will report about a pending reboot to the end-user. The following components report about a pending reboot right now: *ngcp-status*, *ngcpcfg status*, *motd*, *ngcp-upgrade*. Also, *ngcp-upgrade* will NOT allow proceeding with an upgrade if it notices a pending reboot. It might affect *rtengine* dkms module building if there is a pending reboot requested by a newly installed kernel, etc.

### E.2 Redis id constants

The list of current sip:carrier Redis DB IDs:

Service	Redis DB N:	central	local	Release	Ticket	Description
<b>sems</b>	redis_db:	-	0	mr3.7.1+	-	HA switchover
<b>rtengine</b>	redis_db:	-	1	mr3.7.1+	-	HA switchover
<b>proxy</b>	redis_db:	2	-	mr3.7.1+	-	Counter of hunting groups
<b>proxy</b>	redis_db:	3	-	mr3.7.1+	-	Concurrent dialog counters
<b>proxy</b>	redis_db:	-	4	mr3.7.1+	-	List of keys of the central counters
<b>prosody</b>	redis_db:	5	-	mr3.7.1+	-	XMPP cluster
<b>sems PBX</b>	redis_db:	-	6	mr3.7.1+	-	HA switchover
<b>sems</b>	redis_db:	7	-	mr4.1.1+	MT#12707	Sems malicious_call app
<b>captagent</b>	redis_db:	-	8	mr4.1.1+	MT#15427	Captagent internal data
<b>monitoring</b>	redis_db:	9	-	mr4.3+	MT#31	SNMP agent monitoring data
<b>proxy</b>	redis_db:	10	-	mr4.3+	MT#16079	SIP Loop detection

### E.2.1 Redis monitoring keys

The redis monitoring database contains a cache of several current monitoring values. These values are stored in namespaced hashes:

node:<nodename>	Cluster node information.
fsys:<nodename>:<fsysname>	Mounted filesystems information.
proc:<nodename>:<procname>	Monitored processes information.
mysql:<nodename>	MySQL database information.

To access all *fsys* and *proc* hashes there are two sets that list them:

fsys-list:<nodename>	Set of mounted filesystems.
proc-list:<nodenam>	Set of monitored processes.

The *node* hashes contain the following keys:

hb_proc_state	Cluster node heartbeat process state (boolean: stopped/running).
hb_host_state	Cluster node host state (boolean: up/down).
hb_node_state	Cluster node HA state (ngcp-check_active -p).
num_cpus	Total number of CPUs on cluster node.

The *fsys* hashes contain the following keys:

name	The mounted filesystem name (such as /).
size	The filesystem total size in bytes.
used	The filesystem used size in bytes.

The *proc* hashes contain the following keys:

name	The process name.
proc_status	The process status.
monit_status	The monit status.
pid	The process ID.
ppid	The process parent ID.
children	The number of children.
uptime	The process uptime.
cpu_percent	The CPU usage in percent for this process.
cpu_percent_total	The CPU usage in percent for the process group.
memory	The memory in bytes for this process.
memory_total	The memory in bytes for the process group.
memory_percent	The memory in percent for this process.
memory_percent_total	The memory in percent for the process group.

data_collected	The timestamp when the data was collected.
----------------	--

The *mysql* hashes contain the following keys:

last_io_errno	Last IO error number.
last_io_error	Last IO error description.
last_sql_errno	Last SQL error number.
last_sql_error	Last SQL error description.
seconds_behind_master	Delay in seconds since last db replication.
slave_io_running	Status of slave IO thread.
slave_sql_running	Status of slave SQL thread.

### E.3 Enum preferences

All tables are in database "provisioning".

So called "enum preferences" allow a fixed set of possible values, an enumeration, for preferences. Following the differences between other preferences are described.

Setting the attribute "data\_type" of table "voip\_preferences" to "enum" marks a preferences as an enum. The list of possible options is stored in table "voip\_preferences\_enum".

voip\_preferences\_enum is:

id

boring pkey

preference\_id

Reference to table voip\_preferences.

label

A label to be displayed in frontends.

value

Value that will be written to voip\_[usr|dom|peer]\_preferences.value if it is NOT NULL. Will not be written if it IS NULL. This can be used to implement a "default value" for a preference that is visible in frontends as such (will be listed first if nothing is actually selected), but will not be written to voip\_[usr|dom|peer]\_preferences.value. Usually forcing a domain or peer default. Should also be named clearly (eg. \_\_"use domain default"\_\_). (Note: Therefore will also not be written to any kamailio table.)

usr\_pref

dom\_pref

peer\_pref

Flag if this is to be used for [usr|dom|peer] preferences.

default\_val

Flag indicating if this should be used as a default value when creating new entities or introducing new enum preferences (both done via triggers). (Note: For this to work, value must also be set.)

#### Relevant triggers:

enum\_update

Propagates changes of voip\_preferences\_enum.value to voip\_[usr|dom|peer]\_preferences.value

enum\_set\_default

Will create entries for default values when adding a new enum preference. The default value is the tuple from voip\_preferences\_enum WHERE default\_val=1 AND value NOT NULL.

trigger voip\_dom\_crepl\_trig

trigger voip\_phost\_crepl\_trig

trigger voip\_sub\_crepl\_trig

These three triggers will set possible default values (same condition as for enum\_set\_default) when creating new subscribers/domains/peers.

Find a usage example in a section in *db-schema/db\_scripts/diff/9086.up*.